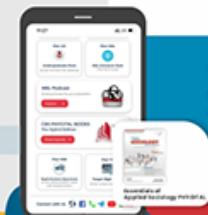


Now make your learning More Interactive, Integrated & Simplified with this **PHYGITAL** Edition

Golden Points • Solved/Unsolved papers • MCQs • Important Topics from the book • Mini Tests/Semester Tests &
Grand Tests • High Yield Images/Tables • Important Mastermind Videos • Recent Updates

Essentials of Applied
Sociology **PHYGITAL**

Based on INC Syllabus 2021-22



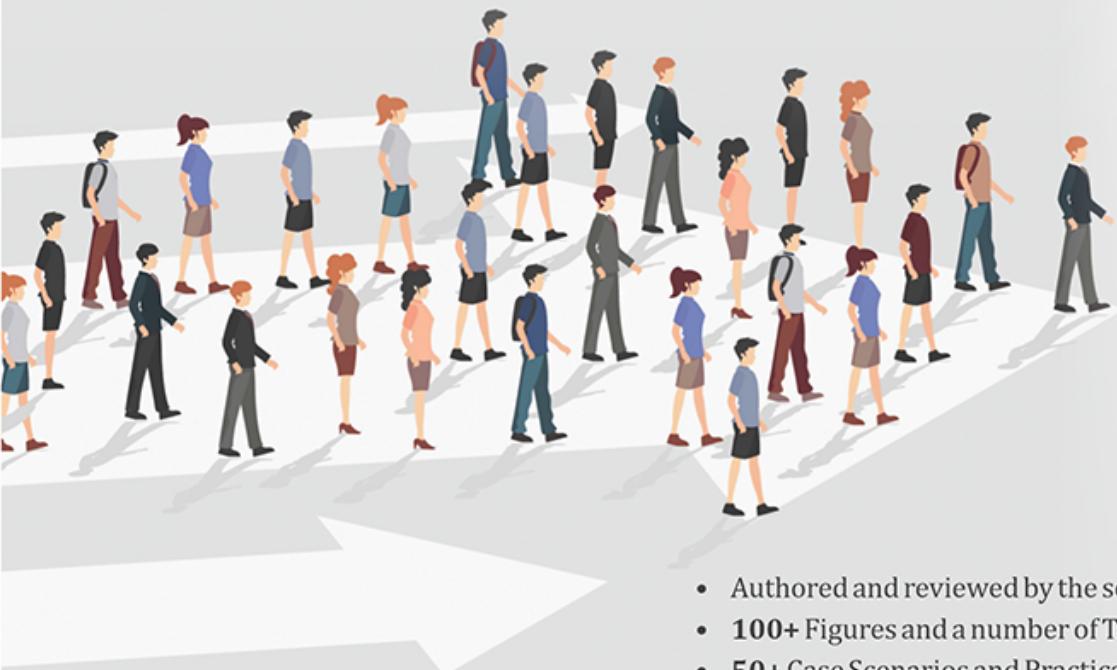
LOOKinside

I
Semester

Essentials of *Applied* **SOCIOLOGY**

for BSc Nursing Students

As per the Revised INC Syllabus (2021-22) for BSc Nursing



Special Features

- Authored and reviewed by the senior subject experts
- 100+ Figures and a number of Tables and Flowcharts included
- 50+ Case Scenarios and Practical Examples covered extensively
- Integrated and Applied Text approach
- Includes Solved Model paper
- Enriched with recent advancements



6 Amazing Features

Listen, Learn and Practice

My PHYGITAL Book

- Golden Points:** Get 500+ one liners of Chapter summary in the PODCAST form
- Solved Exercises:** Subjective and Objective exercise of the book have been given with their solution to evaluate and assess the complete chapter knowledge
- MCQs:** Chapter-wise Multiple Choice Questions in Practice & Review mode.

Search and Read Digitally

Search on the GO

Mapping of the most important topics from the Book at one place with one click search

Read & Learn

My Exam Centre

- Solved Papers:** Get Qs Bank covering the complete subject in the form of subjective exercises and extra exercises with their solutions in PDF Format (Subjective form)
- Unsolved Papers:** Explore the pool of unsolved previous year exam papers of top Universities in PDF Format

Every Step Counts

Assess Yourself

- Mini Test** (Topic-wise) : 6 Tests based on important topics of the Respective subjects in Objective Mode / Practice & Review Mode
- Semester-wise Test:** 2 Tests based on all the subjects of particular semester
- Mega Grand Test (All subject):** 2 Tests based on all the UG subjects (1 Test from Target High book)

Revise on the Go

High Yield Topics

Get Topic-wise Selective Images & Tables with their description for LMR and Quick reference, based on the topics of University examination

Dil Mange more content

Add Ons

- See & Perceive:** Watch and learn with the selective important Topic-wise Videos (UG & NORCET centric) by subject expert
- Recent Update:** Regular updates related to Recent advancement and Book Errata
- E-book:** Get PDFs of important chapters/sections (Annexures/ Appendices) of book (Optional and Exclusive for pro-users and Institutions)

Essentials of Applied Sociology PHYGITAL

How to Access in

The Nursing Next Live App

Content will be unlocked on 1st January 2023

Only valid for 1 year from the date of activation

1 Scratch above to reveal the unique code

2 Download the app from
► Google Play Store

3 Complete the SIGNUP Process

4 Tap over "CBS Phygital Books"

5 Tap over "Essentials of Applied Sociology PHYGITAL"

6 Enter the unique code & start exploring

Terms & Conditions:

- Essentials of Applied Sociology PHYGITAL is free for the buyers of Essentials of Applied Sociology for BSc Nursing Students which will be valid for 1 year and the reader can't claim any refund in case he/she is not able to access Essentials of Applied Sociology PHYGITAL.
- Content given in this section is completely different from other packages of Nursing Next Live.
- Essentials of Applied Sociology PHYGITAL cannot be clubbed with any other package of Nursing Next Live App. The reader needs to buy other packages of Nursing Next Live in order to access them.
- The Unique Code is for one-time use only. In case the unique code given in this book is already in use, company will not issue any new code in any circumstances.
- The validity of this package is 1 year from the date of Activation of Code.**
- In case there is no unique code in the book, kindly share the image of this page along with a copy of the bill on the helpline number.

For any assistance:

Call/WhatsApp: +91-9811132333

Email: cbsphygitalbooks@nursingnextlive.in
(Mon to Sat / 10am to 6pm)



Scan the QR Code &
Download the App

Disclaimer: The sole purpose of "Essentials of Applied Sociology PHYGITAL" is to provide the additional content and it is purely non commercial. Any dispute arising from this comes under Delhi Jurisdiction.

Essentials of
Applied
SOCIOLOGY

for BSc Nursing Students



As per the New INC Syllabus (2021-22) for BSc Nursing

Essentials of
Applied
SOCIOLOGY

for BSc Nursing Students



As per the New INC Syllabus (2021-22) for BSc Nursing

Mamta Verma MSc (N), PhD (Scholar) (Public Health)

Associate Professor

All India Institute of Medical Sciences (AIIMS)
Bhopal, Madhya Pradesh

Vandana Pakhide MSc (N)

Associate Professor

Pragyan College of Nursing
Bhopal, Madhya Pradesh



CBS Publishers & Distributors Pvt Ltd

- New Delhi • Bengaluru • Chennai • Kochi • Kolkata • Lucknow
- Mumbai • Hyderabad • Nagpur • Patna • Pune • Vijayawada

Disclaimer

Science and technology are constantly changing fields. New research and experience broaden the scope of information and knowledge. The authors have tried their best in giving information available to them while preparing the material for this book. Although, all efforts have been made to ensure optimum accuracy of the material, yet it is quite possible some errors might have been left uncorrected. The publisher, the printer and the authors will not be held responsible for any inadvertent errors, omissions or inaccuracies.

eISBN: 978-93-490-5761-6

Copyright © Authors and Publisher

First eBook Edition: 2023

All rights reserved. No part of this eBook may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or any information storage and retrieval system without permission, in writing, from the authors and the publisher.

Published by Satish Kumar Jain and produced by Varun Jain for
CBS Publishers & Distributors Pvt. Ltd.

Corporate Office: 204 FIE, Industrial Area, Patparganj, New Delhi-110092

Ph: +91-11-49344934; Fax: +91-11-49344935; Website: www.cbspd.com; www.eduport-global.com;
E-mail: eresources@cbspd.com

Head Office: CBS PLAZA, 4819/XI Prahlad Street, 24 Ansari Road, Daryaganj, New Delhi-110002, India.

Ph: +91-11-23289259, 23266861, 23266867; Fax: 011-23243014; Website: www.cbspd.com;
E-mail: publishing@cbspd.com; eduportglobal@gmail.com.

Branches

-
- **Bengaluru:** Seema House 2975, 17th Cross, K.R. Road, Banasankari 2nd Stage, Bengaluru - 560070, Karnataka Ph: +91-80-26771678/79; Fax: +91-80-26771680; E-mail: bangalore@cbspd.com
 - **Chennai:** No 7, Subbaraya Street Shenoy Nagar Chennai - 600030, Tamil Nadu Ph: +91-44-26680620, 26681266; E-mail: chennai@cbspd.com
 - **Kochi:** 36/14 Kalluvilakam, Lissie Hospital Road, Kochi - 682018, Kerala Ph: +91-484-4059061-65; Fax: +91-484-4059065; E-mail: kochi@cbspd.com
 - **Mumbai:** 83-C, 1st floor, Dr. E. Moses Road, Worli, Mumbai - 400018, Maharashtra Ph: +91-22-24902340 - 41; Fax: +91-22-24902342; E-mail: mumbai@cbspd.com
 - **Kolkata:** No. 6/B, Ground Floor, Rameswar Shaw Road, Kolkata - 700014 Ph: +91-33-22891126 - 28; E-mail: kolkata@cbspd.com

Representatives

- **Hyderabad**
- **Pune**
- **Nagpur**
- **Manipal**
- **Vijayawada**
- **Patna**



Dedicated
to
Novice Students

Reviewers' List

Abhishek Sharms MSc (N)
(Mental Health Nursing)

Principal
Athina Nursing College
Bhiwadi, Alwar, Rajasthan



Afsal Ahammed Kunju MSc (N)
(Mental Health Nursing)

Principal
BR College of Paramedical Sciences
and Nursing
Gangyal, Jammu and Kashmir



Frank JC MSc (N), PhD (Scholar)
(Community Health Nursing)

Principal
BEE ENN College of Nursing
Kainkh, Jammu and Kashmir



Jagmohan Nagar MSc (N)
(Medical Surgical Nursing)

HOD & Professor
Jaiswal College of Nursing
Kota, Rajasthan



Jesudian K Nath MSc (N), RN, RPN
Associate Professor & Principal Incharge
United Institute of Nursing
United University
Prayagraj, Uttar Pradesh



Kannammal C RN, RM, MSc, PhD (Scholar)
(Community Health Nursing)

Vice-Principal & HOD
Hind Institute of Medical Sciences
Barabanki, Uttar Pradesh



Kanu Priya MSc (N)
(Community Health Nursing)

Vice Principal cum Assistant
VVM Institute of Nursing
Malkwal, Nurpur, Himachal Pradesh



Lily Podder MSc (N) PhD (N)
(Obstetrics and Gynecological Nursing)

Associate Professor
Nursing College, AIIMS
Bhopal, Madhya Pradesh



Mahipal Singh MSc (N), PhD (N)
(Psychiatric Nursing)

Director cum Principal
Akhil Bharati Vidyapeeth
College of Nursing
Jaipur Road, Sikar, Rajasthan



Vice Principal
TNAI, Rajasthan



Manju Rajput PhD (Scholar)
(Obstetrics and Gynecological Nursing)

Vice Principal
School of Nursing
Noida International University
Greater Noida, Uttar Pradesh

Nancy Thakur MSc (N) PhD (Scholar)
(Psychiatric Nursing)

Associate Professor
Galgotias School of Nursing
Greater Noida, Uttar Pradesh



Neelam Dass MSc (N)
(Medical Surgical Nursing)

Professor
College of Nursing
Mohandai Oswal Hospital
(Cancer Hospital)
Sherpur, Ludhiana, Punjab



The name of the reviewers are arranged in an alphabetical order

Nochovono Tase MN

(Child Health Nursing)

Professor cum Principal

College of Nursing

NEIGRIHMS

Mawdiangdiang, Shillong

Meghalaya

**Praveen Suthar MSc (N)**

(Mental Health & Psychiatric Nursing)

Assistant Professor

Bhagyalaxmi Nursing College

Modasa, Aravalli, Gujarat

**Priyanka Sharma MSc (N)**

(Medical Surgical Nursing)

(Critical Care Nursing)

Assistant Professor

Abhilashi Nursing College

Sayoli, Mandi, Himachal Pradesh

**Pushpalata Tak***Vice Principal*

Bhopal Nursing College

Bhopal Memorial Hospital and

Research Centre (BMHRC)

Bhopal, Madhya Pradesh

**R Naganandini MSc (N), PhD (N)**

(Psychiatric Nursing)

HOD & Associate Professor

Vinayaka Mission's

Annapoorana College of Nursing

Vinayaka Missions Research

Foundation

Salem, Tamil Nadu

**Rahul Sharma MSc (N), PhD (N)***Associate Professor*

Seedling School of Nursing

Jaipur National University (JNU)

Jaipur, Rajasthan

**Rajratan Gupta MSc (N)**

MPhil (Psychology), (Psychiatric Nursing)

Assistant Professor

Nursing College, AIIMS

Bhopal, Madhya Pradesh

**Sahil George Lal BSc (N), MSc (N)**

PhD (Scholar)

Assistant Professor

Apex Trust Nursing College

Samaspur, Chunaw, Uttar Pradesh

**Saumya Srivatava MSc (Oncology**

Nursing), RN RM

Nursing Tutor

Vivekanand College of Nursing

Lucknow, Uttar Pradesh

**Shailaja M J Mathews MSc (N)**

(Obstetrics and Gynecological Nursing)

Assistant Professor

Maharshi Karve Stree Shikshan Samstha

Smt Bakul Tambat Institute of Nursing

Karve Nagar, Pune, Maharashtra

**Shradhanjali Biswal BSc (N), MSc (N)***Community Health Officer*

Mancheswar Health and Wellness

Centre (HWC)

Athagarh, Cuttack, Odisha

**Suchitrarani Rathod MSc (N)**

PhD (Pursuing) (Medical Surgical Nursing)

Principal

Dr. D. Y. Patil College of Nursing

Education

Kolhapur, Pune, Maharashtra

**Varun Toshniwal MSc (N), PhD (Pursuing)**

(Psychiatric Nursing)

Professor cum Head of Department

College of Nursing

IIMT University

Meerut, Uttar Pradesh

**Vishwanath S Biradar MSc (N), PhD (N)**

RN, RM (Medical Surgical Nursing)

Professor & HOD

MGM Mother Teresa

College of Nursing

Aurangabad, Maharashtra



Preface

Sociology is the science of society or of social phenomena. It is the systemic study of social behavior and human groups. It focuses on social relationships; how those relationships influence the people's behavior; and how societies, the sum total of those relationships, develop and change. Sociology has interest in society, human relationships, groups, culture, laws, customs, structure of society and social system. Sociology is the study of relationships between the different aspects of social phenomenon.

The study of sociology is extremely useful to all, more especially in medical and nursing and in the field of social welfare. A thorough knowledge of the social interactions, and the culture of the people as a whole, is imperative for nurses. Today, nursing is not simply an effort to cure illness rather preventive services and promotion of health are also important aspect of nursing. To be an effective agent of health promotion, knowledge of community and facilities and resources available therein is essential. Sociology will help us to study social problems, changing pattern of social institutions, and to plan future development of the society.

The units of textbook have been organized systematically according to new INC syllabus to explore and validate current knowledge. This book is studded with theoretical concepts of sociology. The contents of the book have been designed in the manner that students will correlate theoretical knowledge to their clinical practice. We are pretty sure that this book will be surely useful for nursing students.

**Mamta Verma
Vandana Pakhide**

Acknowledgments

We express our sincere thanks to God Almighty, for giving an idea to accomplish this book. We express our heartiest gratitude to our family members for their unconditional support and motivation to fulfil this commitment.

We would like to thank **Mr Satish Kumar Jain** (Chairman) and **Mr Varun Jain** (Managing Director), M/s CBS Publishers and Distributors Pvt Ltd for providing us the platform in bringing out the book. We have no words to describe the role, efforts, inputs and initiatives undertaken by **Mr Bhupesh Aroraa**, Sr. Vice President – Publishing and Marketing (Health Sciences Division) for helping and motivating us.

We sincerely thank the entire CBS team for bringing out the book with utmost care and attractive presentation. We would like to thank Ms Nitasha Arora (Publishing Head and Content Strategist – PGME and Nursing), and Dr Anju Dhir (Product Manager cum Commissioning Editor – Medical) for their editorial support. We would also extend our thanks to Mr Shivendu Bhushan Pandey (Sr. Manager and Team Lead), Mr Ashutosh Pathak (Sr. Proofreader cum Team Coordinator) and all the production team members for devoting laborious hours in designing and typesetting the book.



CBS Nursing Knowledge Tree

Extends its Tribute to



Florence Nightingale

“
For glorifying the role of women as nurses,
For holding the title of “The Lady with the Lamp,”
For working tirelessly for humanity—
Florence Nightingale will always be
remembered for her
selfless and memorable services to the
human race.



Florence Nightingale
(May 1820 – August 1910)



Nursing Knowledge Tree

An Initiative by CBS Nursing Division

*"Coming together is a beginning. Keeping together is progress.
Working together is success."*

It gives us immense pleasure to share with you that Nursing Knowledge Tree—An initiative by CBS Nursing Division, has successfully established itself in the field of nursing as we have been standing as a strong contender by sharing approximately 50% of market share. This growth could not have been possible without your invaluable contribution as our reader, author, reviewer, contributor and recommender, and your outstanding support for the growth of our titles as a whole. Before I enunciate in detail, I would like to thank each and every Clinical Nurse, Academician and Nursing Student for the phenomenal support during the COVID-19 pandemic. It is all your support that instilled a sense of responsibility in us and provided us with strength and motivation to survive under the worst circumstances of the pandemic.



The last two years were the most crucial phase when the entire world stood still due to adversity of COVID-19. The normal life was in turmoil, and people had no idea what would be their next step and how long this crisis would persist. In the midst of all, a few things which nobody could stop is 'Change', which is inevitable. During the last two years, we have done a lot of innovations and put our best efforts in implementing those innovations to bring quality education and make sure that every person should have access to best possible education.

It is worth mentioning that with all your support we have made some remarkable innovations in the field of nursing education, which are:

1. More quality books by the top Authors from the top institutes
2. Entered into Nursing EdTech Segment with NNL App (Nursing Next Live Application)
3. NN Social
4. Phygital Books
5. Social Media Presence
6. Build Strong Community (Faculty/Student Ambassador Program)

As a publisher, we have been contributing to the field of Medical Sciences, Nursing and Allied Sciences and have many established titles in the market. Tradition is carrying forward the legacy of the old pattern and approach in the contemporary time. We broke the boundary of being a traditional publisher through innovations and changes. As far as publishing industry is concerned, we are the first to enter in **Nursing EdTech** with the Launch of **Nursing Next Live App**.

Through Nursing Next Live, we made possible the reach of quality education from Jammu and Kashmir to Kanyakumari and from Gujarat to Arunachal Pradesh.

We started with the mission:

"We are bringing Learning to the People Instead People are going for the Learning."

When pandemic halted everything, the future seemed to be doomed, Nursing Next Live made it possible for the Nursing Professionals from across the nation to keep continuing their learning and helped them to achieve their dream career.

In a step toward strengthening the Nursing Segment, we have melded the four important pillars—Print, Digital, Nursing Professionals and Social Media—to work in a homogenized manner for the better future of the nursing education through:

NN Social, a community of 20K+ professionals, is an initiative of Nursing Next Live as India's knowledge-sharing network platform for the nursing segment. Nursing Next Social is curated with the aim to bring all the nursing faculty members from across the nation closer and together on a single platform. Through **NN Social**, we aim to connect the sharp minds from across the nation to use their knowledge for the better future of Nursing Professions. With NN Social **India's top-notch societies, like TNAI, SOCN, NTA, KINS, etc. are associated with us**. Apart from this, NN Social has a

strong network of 100+ authors, 500+ reviewers and contributors. They all are dedicated and committed as we are, toward imparting quality nursing education.

In the era of digitalization, to make study interactive and convenient, we have conceptualized the idea of **Hybrid Edition of the books**. In this series, our many bestseller titles are available in the hybrid form. This hybrid learning is a blended learning wherein printed booklets are thoughtfully integrated with the digital support to reconceptualize the learning method in a more interactive manner with added values to knowledge. Hybrid edition is an endeavor to facilitate the next level of preparation for any nursing competitive exams through quality content, flexibility, customization and engaging interactive learning experiences.

We have also increased our **social media presence** through meaningful and innovative ideas and are committed to assist the nursing professionals in gaining and sharing the knowledge. We have taken the initiative to learn from the experience of the others and started **NNL Talks**. It is a platform where every nursing professional who has done exceptionally well in his/her career, toppers of any Nursing Exams and those who manage themselves in all the odds and stand firm and determined and succeed in his/her life, can share the success journey. We aim to motivate, educate and encourage the nursing professionals through various activities and posts on our social media platform.

Whatever initiative we take, we always make sure that it is for a noble cause of promoting the quality education accessible to everyone.

Today we can say this with confidence, we “CBS Publishers & NNL” have an edge over all other Indian and International Publishers. Our Approach, Vision, Mission, Concept, Content, Reach, Ideas all have a single goal that is better nursing education can lead to a better healthcare system.

Long way to go.... Together!

Looking forward to invite more young and experienced minds who can join us as Authors, Reviewers, Contributors, and Faculties and accomplish our mission of providing quality nursing education to all.

With Best Wishes

Mr Bhupesh Aarora

Sr. Vice President – Publishing & Marketing
(Health Sciences Division)



Special Features of the Book

These enlist what the students will learn after studying the Unit.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- On completion of this unit, the students will be able to:
- Define social stratification.
 - Explain meaning and origin of social stratification.
 - Discuss characteristics and forms of stratification.
 - Describe functions of social stratification.
 - Talk about major perspectives on social stratification.
 - Give explanation about Indian caste system, its origin and characteristics.
 - Describe about impact of caste in society and features of caste in India today.
 - Examine positive and negative impact of caste in society.

UNIT OUTLINE

- Introduction
- Concept of Social Stratification
- Meaning of Social Stratification
- Origin of Stratification
- Systems of Stratification
- Definitions of Social Stratification
- Major Theoretical Perspectives on Social Stratification
- Characteristics of Social Stratification
- Types or Forms of Social Stratification
- Functions of Social Stratification
- Factors of Social Stratification
- The Indian Caste System
- Features of Caste in India Today
- The Indian Class System
- Social Mobility
- Race
- Influence of Caste, Class and Race on Health and Health Practices

Every Unit starts with a **Unit Outline** that gives a glimpse of the content covered in the Unit.

Key Terms are the important must-know terminology for the students to enhance their understanding.

KEY TERMS

- Achieved status: Class system not based on birth, as person matures, the status has to be achieved by own merits.
- Ascribed social status: Ascribed social status is position that is naturally given and is acquired by birth without an effort or hard work.
- Capitalism: Capitalism is an economic system in which the means of production are held largely in private sectors and the main incentive for economic activity is the accumulation of profits.
- Caste: Caste is a hereditary endogamous social group in which a person's rank and its accompanying rights and obligations are ascribed on the basis of his birth into a particular social group.
- Class: Max Weber used the term class to refer to a group of people who have a similar level of wealth and income.

TABLE 4.2 Sociological perspectives on family

Theoretical perspective	Emphasis
Functionalist	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• The family as a contributor to social stability• Roles of family members
Conflict	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• The family as a perpetrator of inequality• Transmission of poverty or wealth across generation
Interactionist	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Relationships among family members• Family is a unit that shares understandings of their various situations
Feminist	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• The family as a perpetrator of gender roles• Female-headed households

Numerous **Tables** summarizing important information have been included wherever necessary, for quick recall.



Numerous **Figures & Flowcharts** are used to make learning easy for students.

Figure 6.4: Functions of voluntary associations

Case Study 1 Nursing Skills Important for Identifying and Managing Social Issues

Rani is a 28-year-old young Indian female admitted in oncology ward for chemotherapy treatment as she has been diagnosed with acute lymphoblastic leukemia recently. She is having AB negative blood group. Her blood report suggested severe anemia. Doctor advised blood transfusion. She had no history of blood transfusion in the past. One of her relatives (male) was ready to donate blood for her. She asked one question that gender of the donor and recipient should be matched, and she is worried about transfusion reaction.

Applied sociology: Social inequality

Nursing skills required: Effective listener, evidenced-based knowledge impartation.

Explanation: Nurse can explain that over 60% of patients treated with chemotherapy develop anemia. Blood transfusion mandates matching of the blood types so that the donor and the recipient are compatible in their blood types. There is no other matching between the blood components and the recipient such as race, ethnicity, religion, gender, etc. Matching the donor product to the recipient is crucial in avoiding serious transfusion reactions. Provide assurance that she will be monitored throughout the procedure. She is also advised for dietary modification with appropriate supplemental therapy with folic acid, vitamin B₁₂, and iron supplementation to correct nutritional deficiencies. Nurse also explains that if anemia is not managed early what serious complications it will lead to.

Number of clinical case studies have been added for better understanding of applied part of the sociology.

A list of the respective Unit have been presented at the last of the Unit under summary for quick glance.

At the end of Units, **Assess yourself** section is given which contains frequently asked questions in exams and multiple choice questions to help you attain mastery over the subject.

SUMMARY

Social structure is the combination of various components such as activities, people and places. Because every individual needs to work together, combine and organize for specific purposes, so that no man lives to himself. This unity of effort is important to construct a good society. In present unit, we discussed basic concept of society, community, association and institutions. Social group, its meaning, characteristics and classification, social processes such as cooperation, accommodation, assimilation, competition and conflict, etc. and also the impact of isolation. This unit also examined the role of socialization in human development, nature and process of social change and nurse's role. It discussed rural, urban and tribal communities and their major health problems and finally, importance of social structure in nursing profession.

- According to Talcott Parsons, "Social structure is the term applied to describe a particular arrangement of interrelated institutions, agencies and social patterns as well as the status and role which each person assumes in groups". Elements of social structure; statuses, social roles, groups, social networks, and social institutions.
- Individual and society are inseparable. There are two main theories regarding the relationship of the individual and society: Social contract theory and Organismic theory.
- According to Giddings, "Society is the sum of formal relations in which individuals are associating together or bounded together". Characteristics of society are: It consists of people, system of relationships, likeness and differences, dynamic, system of authority, system of control, system of cooperation, division of work, unique culture, and system of interdependence, personality development, and abstract in nature.
- According to Bogardus, "Community is a social group with some degree of 'we feeling' and 'living in a given area'."

ASSESS YOURSELF
Short Answer Questions

1. Write any two definitions of sociology.
2. What do you understand by the nature of sociology?
3. Differentiate between sociology and social anthropology.
4. Define sociology as a social science.
5. Write about the application of sociology in nursing.

Long Answer Questions

1. Discuss sociology and its significance in nursing.
2. Define sociology and explain its nature.
3. Describe sociology as social science.
4. Explain the importance of study of sociology.
5. Discuss the scope of sociology in our society.
6. Explain the meaning and importance of sociology in nursing.

Multiple Choice Questions

1. The science which helps us to understand ourselves, our relationship to significant others and our interaction with environment and how these three things, i.e., individual, significant others and environments are interrelated is known as:

a. Anthropology	b. Sociology
c. Ecology	d. Psychology
2. Who is considered the Father of Sociology?

a. Morris Ginsberg	b. Auguste Comte
c. Max Weber	d. Emile Durkheim
3. The study of humanity which keeps focus on cultural practices, human behavior and environment and its changes is:

a. Sociology	b. Psychology
c. Ecology	d. Anthropology
4. Sociology at societal level mainly deals with:

a. Social institutions	b. Global population
c. Individual beliefs	d. Environment

Syllabus

Applied Sociology

Placement: I Semester

Theory: 3 Credit (60 Hours)

Unit	Time (Hrs)	Learning Outcomes	Content	Teaching/Learning Activities	Assessment Methods
I	3 (T)	Describe the scope and significance of sociology in nursing	Introduction <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Definition, nature and scope of sociology • Significance of sociology in nursing 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Lecture • Discussion 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Essay • Short answer
II	15 (T)	Describe the individualization, groups, processes of socialization, social change and its importance	Social structure <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Basic concept of society, community, association and institution • Individual and society • Personal disorganization • Social group—meaning, characteristics, and classification • Social processes—definition and forms, cooperation, competition, conflict, accommodation, assimilation, isolation • Socialization—characteristics, process, agencies of socialization • Social change—nature, process, and role of nurse • Structure and characteristics of urban, rural and tribal community. • Major health problems in urban, rural and tribal communities • Importance of social structure in nursing profession 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Lecture cum Discussion 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Essay • Short answer • Objective type
III	8 (T)	Describe culture and its impact on health and disease	Culture <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Nature, characteristic and evolution of culture • Diversity and uniformity of culture • Difference between culture and civilization • Culture and socialization • Transcultural society • Culture, modernization and its impact on health and disease 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Lecture • Panel discussion 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Essay • Short answer
IV	8 (T)	Explain family, marriage and legislation related to marriage	Family and Marriage <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Family—characteristics, basic need, types and functions of family 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Lecture 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Essay • Short answer

Contd...

Unit	Time (Hrs)	Learning Outcomes	Content	Teaching/Learning Activities	Assessment Methods
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Marriage—forms of marriage, social custom relating to marriage and importance of marriage • Legislation on Indian marriage and family • Influence of marriage and family on health and health practices 		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Case study report
V	8 (T)	Explain different types of caste and classes in society and its influence on health	<p>Social Stratification</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Introduction—Characteristics & forms of stratification • Function of stratification • Indian caste system—origin and characteristics • Positive and negative impact of caste in society • Class system and status • Social mobility—meaning and types • Race—concept, criteria of racial classification • Influence of class, caste and race system on health 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Lecture • Panel discussion 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Essay • Short answer • Objective type
VI	15 (T)	Explain social organization, disorganization, social problems and role of nurse in reducing social problems	<p>Social Organization and Disorganization</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Social organization—meaning, elements and types • Voluntary associations • Social system—definition, types, role and status as structural element of social system • Interrelationship of institutions • Social control—meaning, aims and process of social control • Social norms, moral and values • Social disorganization—definition, causes, control and planning • Major social problems—poverty, housing, food supplies, illiteracy, prostitution, dowry, child labor, child abuse, delinquency, crime, substance abuse, HIV/AIDS, COVID-19 • Vulnerable group—elderly, handicapped, minority and other marginal group • Fundamental rights of individual, women and children • Role of nurse in reducing social problem and enhance coping • Social welfare programs in India 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Lecture • Group discussion • Observational visit 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Essay • Short answer • Objective type • Visit report
VII	5 (T)	Explain clinical sociology and its application in the hospital and community	<p>Clinical Sociology</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Introduction to clinical sociology • Sociological strategies for developing services for the abused • Use of clinical sociology in crisis intervention 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Lecture • Group discussion • Role play 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Essay • Short answer

Contents

<i>Reviewers' List</i>	v
<i>Preface</i>	vii
<i>Acknowledgments</i>	ix
<i>Special Features of the Book</i>	xv
<i>Syllabus</i>	xvii

UNIT I. INTRODUCTION TO SOCIOLOGY 1–28

■ Introduction	3
■ Importance of Sociology in Nursing	3
■ Historical Perspective of Sociology	5
■ Modern Development of Sociology	6
■ Sociology in Indian Context.....	6
■ Major Theoretical Perspectives.....	7
■ The Feminist View.....	9
■ Definitions of Sociology	10
■ Relationship of Sociology with Other Social Sciences	11
■ Importance of Sociology.....	13
■ Nature of Sociology	15
■ Scope of Sociology.....	17
■ Sociology and its Fields	20
■ Significance of Sociology in Nursing	23

UNIT II. SOCIAL STRUCTURE 29–111

■ Introduction.....	32
■ Social Structure in Global Perspective	32
■ Lenski's Sociocultural Evolution Approach	33
■ Definitions of Social Structure	35
■ Elements of Social Structure.....	35
■ Individual and Society	36
■ Society	40
■ Community	42
■ Association.....	46
■ Institutions	48
■ Social Groups	52

■ Other Group Classification	57
■ Social Processes.....	61
■ Social Isolation.....	68
■ Socialization.....	69
■ Social Change.....	76
■ Structure and Characteristics of Rural Urban and Tribal Community.....	88
■ Tribal Community	101
■ Importance of Social Structure in Nursing Profession	107

UNIT III. CULTURE

113-137

■	Introduction	115
■	Development of Culture Around the World	116
■	Meaning of Culture	117
■	Definitions.....	117
■	Nature of Culture	118
■	Special Characteristics of Culture	119
■	Elements of Culture	120
■	Evolution of Culture	122
■	Diversity and Uniformity of Culture	123
■	Major Theoretical Perspectives of Culture	125
■	Factors Responsible for Cultural Variability.....	126
■	Components of Culture	127
■	Civilization	128
■	Culture and Socialization	128
■	Transcultural Society	129
■	Modernization	130
■	Cultural Influences on Health and Diseases	133

UNIT IV. FAMILY AND MARRIAGE

139-167

■ Family	141
■ Marriages	153
■ Legislation on Indian Marriage and Family	159
■ Problems Related to Family and Marriage	161
■ Influence of Marriage and Family on Health and Health Practices	162

UNIT V. SOCIAL STRATIFICATION

169-192

■	Introduction	171
■	Concept of Social Stratification	171
■	Meaning of Social Stratification	172
■	Origin of Stratification	172

■ Systems of Stratification	173
■ Definitions of Social Stratification	173
■ Major Theoretical Perspectives on Social Stratification	174
■ Characteristics of Social Stratification	175
■ Types or Forms of Social Stratification	176
■ Functions of Social Stratification	178
■ Factors of Social Stratification	179
■ The Indian Caste System	180
■ Features of Caste in India Today	182
■ The Indian Class System	183
■ Social Mobility	185
■ Race	186
■ Influence of Caste, Class and Race on Health and Health Practices	188

UNIT VI. SOCIAL ORGANIZATION AND DISORGANIZATION 193–310

■ Social Organization	197
■ Voluntary Associations	202
■ Social System	207
■ Status	211
■ Role	214
■ Role and Status as Structural Elements of Social System	216
■ Interrelationship of Institutions	217
■ Family as a Social Institutions	217
■ Education as a Social Institutions	218
■ Recreational Institutions	219
■ Religious Institution	220
■ Economic Institutions	222
■ Political Institution	222
■ Social Control	224
■ Social Norms	236
■ Mores	239
■ Values	240
■ Social Disorganization	242
■ Major Social Problems	250
■ Poverty	250
■ Housing	252
■ Food Supplies	253
■ Illiteracy	255
■ Prostitution	257
■ Dowry	262
■ Child Labor	266

■ Child Abuse	270
■ Juvenile Delinquency	276
■ Crime	278
■ Substance Abuse	283
■ Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome	284
■ COVID-19	286
■ Vulnerable Group	287
■ Elderly	290
■ Handicapped	291
■ Minority and Other Marginal Group	292
■ Fundamental Rights of Individual	293
■ Role of Nurse in Reducing Social Problems and Enhance Coping	298
■ Social Welfare Programs in India	299
■ Welfare Schemes for Women in India	302
■ Welfare Schemes for Scheduled Castes/Tribes	303
■ Schemes for Aged	304

UNIT VII. CLINICAL SOCIOLOGY**311–327**

■ Introduction	313
■ Historical Perspective of Clinical Sociology	313
■ Meaning of Clinical Sociology	313
■ Need for Clinical Sociology	314
■ Definitions of Clinical Sociology	315
■ Clinical Sociology and Applied Sociology	315
■ Characteristics of Clinical Sociology	316
■ Clinical Sociologists	319
■ Role of Nurse in Sociological Strategies for Developing Services for the Abuse....	321
■ Use of Clinical Sociology in Crisis Intervention.....	323
■ Scopes of Clinical Sociology	324

Annexure—A Review about Sociological Research..... 329–330

Model Test Paper..... 331–346

Index 347–356

UNIT I

Introduction to Sociology

This unit explores how sociology as a social science develops. In what way does it differ from other social sciences? As a field of study, sociology is extremely broad in scope. It also explains the works of pioneer social thinkers in the development of sociology and examines the theoretical perspectives that grew out of their works. The unit will study the nature, importance, and scope of sociology including its fields and subfields, and finally, the significance of sociology in nursing.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

On completion of this unit, the students will be able to:

- Explain sociology as a social science.
- Discuss the historical perspectives, major theoretical perspectives and modern development of sociology.
- Define sociology.
- Develop understanding about relationship of sociology with other social sciences.
- Describe nature of sociology.
- Differentiate between sociology and anthropology.
- Identify the scope and significance of sociology in nursing.

UNIT OUTLINE

- Introduction
- Importance of Sociology in Nursing
- Historical Perspective of Sociology
- Modern Development of Sociology
- Sociology in Indian Context
- Major Theoretical Perspectives
- The Feminist View
- Definitions of Sociology
- Relationship of Sociology with Other Social Sciences
- Importance of Sociology
- Nature of Sociology
- Scope of Sociology
- Sociology and its Fields
- Significance of Sociology in Nursing

KEY TERMS

Anomie: Anomie refers to the loss of direction felt in society when social control of individual behavior becomes ineffective. The state of anomie occurs when people have lost their sense of purpose or direction, often during a time of profound social change.

Applied sociology: The application of sociological knowledge, principles, methods, concepts and theories to provide the solution to the contemporary social pathologies. Sociology plays practical roles to deal with social pathologies.

Conflict perspective: A sociological approach assumes that social behavior is best understood in terms of conflict or tension between competing groups.

Dramaturgical approach: A view of social interaction in which people are seen as theatrical performers.

Dysfunction: An element or process of a society that may disrupt the social system or reduce its stability.

Feminist view: A sociological approach that views inequality in gender is central to all behavior and organization.

Functionalist perspective: A sociological approach that emphasizes the way in which the parts of society are structured to maintain its stability.

General sociology: Studies the properties and uniformities common to all social and cultural phenomena in their structural and dynamic aspects.

Ideal type: A construct or model for evaluating specific cases.

Interactionist perspective: A sociological approach that generalizes about everyday forms of social interaction in order to explain society as a whole.

Latent function: An unconscious or unintended function that may reflect hidden purposes.

Macrosociology: Sociological investigations that concentrate on large-scale phenomena or entire civilizations.

Manifest function: An open, stated, and conscious function.

Microsociology: Sociological imagination that stresses the study of small groups, often through experimental means.

Natural science: The study of physical features of nature and the ways in which they interact and change.

Science: The body of knowledge obtained by methods based on systematic observation.

Social morphology: Contains primarily geographic subjects, like population and its size, density, distribution, mobility, etc. Social morphology investigates and studies the size, density, or quality of the population to know how these factors affect the relationships among people and social groups.

Social physiology: It is divided into a number of branches such as sociology of religion, morals, law, economic life, language, etc. each branch of these fields' deals with a set of social facts, that is activities related to the social groups.

Social pathology: Generally, it refers to the pathos of society "social diseases" that affect society.

Social science: The study of social features of humans and the ways in which they interact and change.

Sociological imaginations: Awareness of the relationship between an individual and the wider society.

Sociology: The systematic study of social behavior and human groups.

Special sociology: Study a specific sociocultural phenomenon which is selected for detailed study.

Theory: In sociology, a set of statements that seeks to explain problems, actions, or behavior.

Verstehen: The German word for "understanding" or "insight"; used to stress the need for sociologists to take into account the subjective meanings people attach to their actions.

INTRODUCTION

The word ‘sociology’ is imitative from the Latin word **societus**, meaning ‘society’, and the Greek word **logos**, meaning ‘study’ or ‘science’. Thus, sociology means the science of society. Sociology is the “science of companionship” which generally refers to the science of society.

When a patient seeks health care to a hospital or clinic, most of the time, he is accompanied by family member, relative or friend. Patient hardly remains alone in the hospital; he is always surrounded by family members, relatives or friends. People don't visit so frequently in wealthy days as much as they visit to a patient in hospital when he is on sick bed. This visiting history even continues at home too, after discharge of patient from hospital. Patient and his family, relatives, friends, hospital and their interconnection actually is a social science; and is and formally termed sociology.

IMPORTANCE OF SOCIOLOGY IN NURSING

The study of sociology is extremely useful to all, more especially in medical and nursing and in the field of social welfare. Sociology will help us to study social problems, changing pattern of social institutions, and to plan future development of the society.

Sociology is essential for social planning and development. Sociology has interest in society, human relationships, groups, culture, laws, customs, structure of society and social system. Sociology just gives the knowledge about the problems and strategies of society. Sociology is the study of relationships between the different aspects of social phenomenon (Fig. 1.1).

Sociology is very simple and systemic study of social behavior and human groups. It focuses on social relationships; how those relationships influence the people's behavior; and how societies, the sum total of those relationships, develop and change.

Sociology literally means to speak about society. We use sociology to investigate everyday life situations or even large social issues.

Sociology is a Science

The term **science** refers to the body of knowledge obtained by methods based on systematic observation. Just like other disciplines, sociology involves the organized, systematic, study of phenomena (human behavior) in order to enhance understanding. As far as defining any science is concerned, it could be defined in two ways: firstly, science is a body of systematic, organized and tested knowledge which has been justified through scientific investigations. Secondly, science is a method of study which reveals a body of systematic, organized and verified knowledge.

The first definition puts emphasis on the fact that sociology is a science to some extent because it develops a body of systematic, organized, verified knowledge which is based on scientific inquiry.

The second definition clarifies that sociology is a method of study, and it's a science which takes the help of scientific methods of study. The scientific study of Nature is possible through application of scientific methods. All types of behaviors, such as atom, animal, or an adult, come under the scope of scientific study.



Figure 1.1: Science of companionship

The science which helps us to understand ourselves, our relationship to significant others and our interactions with environment and how these three things, i.e., individual, significant others and environment, are interrelated, are the core components of sociology. It essentially and fundamentally deals with the network of social relationships we call 'society'. Sociology is one of the youngest social science obedience. Sociology is a part of family of social sciences which include anthropology, psychology, economics and political science, and parts of history; all social sciences are concerned with human behavior.

Sociology focuses on the study of human behavior. Like other social scientists, sociologists do not accept something as a fact because "everyone knows it." Instead, each piece of information must be tested and recorded, then analyzed in relationship to other data. Sociologists rely on scientific studies in order to describe and understand a social environment. However, there is a genuine difference between sociology and chemistry, between psychology and numerology.

Therefore, the sciences are divided into two, i.e., natural and social. **Natural science** is the study of the physical structures of nature and the manners in which they interact and transform. Numerology, chemistry, geology and chemistry are natural sciences. **Social science** is the study of the social structure of humans and the ways in which they interact and transform. The social sciences consist of sociology, anthropology, economics, history, psychology, and political science.

The core value of social science is social behavior, however each has a distinct nature.

- Anthropologists generally study past cultures along with the origin of humans.
- Economists discover the traditions in which people create and exchange goods and services, along with money and other resources.
- Historians study events of past and their interconnection with present.
- Political scientists study worldwide relations, the workings of administration, and the exercise of supremacy and authority.
- Psychologists explore personality and behavior of individual.
- And sociologists emphasize on the impact that society has on people's attitudes and behavior and the ways in which people interact and structure society. As humans are social animals, sociologists scientifically study their interpersonal social relationships.

As compared with other sciences, sociology is a new science. Many people have some sociological knowledge and an understanding of some aspects of social life, but they lack the sociological imagination to see their own position in the society. The science of sociology helps us to make not only relationships within society but also a greater understanding of ourselves.

The Sociological Imaginations

A Sociologist examines social behavior by using his creative thinking. A chief sociologist, C. Wright Mills, defined such thinking as the **sociological imagination**—a cognizance of the relationship between an individual and the society. This cognizance helps us to understand our immediate and remote social system. The ability of observing own society, as an outsider world rather than only from the perspective of personal experiences and cultural biases, is the key element in the sociological imagination.

Divorce, for example, is unquestionably a personal hardship for a husband and wife who split apart. However, C. Wright Mills advocated the use of the sociological imaginations to view divorce not simply as an individual's personal problem but rather as a societal concern. Using this perspective, we can see that an increase in the divorce rate actually redefines a major social institution—the family. The sociological imagination is an empowering tool. It allows us to look beyond a limited understanding of human behavior to see the world and its people in a new way and through a broader lens than we might otherwise use.

HISTORICAL PERSPECTIVE OF SOCIOLOGY

Philosophers and religious authorities of ancient and medieval societies made countless observations about human behavior. In the beginning of the 19th century, European theorists made pioneering contributions to the development of a science of human behavior. There are various eminent social thinkers who contributed enough to term sociology as a science.

Auguste Comte (1798–1857), a French philosopher, is considered the father of sociology. He is the most influential philosopher of the early 1800s, who believed that a theoretical science of society and a systematic investigation of behavior were needed to improve society. In 1839, Auguste Comte coined the term “sociology”. Sociology has been considered a recent modern science. The study of human society is not recent. It is as old as human social existence. The founder of modern sociology made a scientific approach to the study of society. Sociology is a modern social science recognized as an independent branch of knowledge. Comte defines sociology as the study of social dynamic and social static, the former signifying the changing, progressing, and developmental dimensions of society. Comte introduced a scientific approach to the study of human society and made it logical with an independent subject matter and methods of study.

Harriet Martineau (1802–1876) offered insightful observations of the customs and social practices of her native country Britain and also that of the United States. Martineau’s writings emphasized the impact that the economy, law, trade, health, and population could have on social problems. She spoke out in favor of the rights of women, the emancipation of slaves, and religious tolerance.

Herbert Spencer (1820–1903) was the early contributor to the discipline of sociology. Spencer applied the concept of evolution of the species to societies in order to explain how they change, or evolve, over time. Similarly, he adapted Darwin’s evolutionary view of the “survival of the fittest” by arguing that it is “natural” that some people are rich while others are poor. Spencer’s approach to societal change was extremely popular in his lifetime; he suggested that societies are bound to change eventually.

Emile Durkheim (1858–1917) developed the fundamental thesis to help explain all forms of society as well as growing division of labor in industrial societies. Durkheim’s main interest was the consequences of work in modern societies. In this view, the growing division of labor in industrial societies, as worker became much more specialized in their tasks, led to what he called anomie. **Anomie** refers to the loss of direction felt in society when social control of individual behavior becomes ineffective. The state of anomie occurs when people lose their sense of purpose or direction, often during a time of profound social change. Durkheim is concerned about the danger that alienation, loneliness, and isolation might pose for modern industrial societies. Other than social behavior, his thinking toward crime and punishment, religion, and the workplace is also mentioned. He advocated the creation of new social groups—mediators between the individual’s family and the state—which would provide a sense of belongingness for members of huge impersonal societies. He shared Comte’s belief that sociology should provide direction for social change.

Max Weber (1864–1920) studied legal and economic history, but gradually developed an interest in sociology. He pointed out that we cannot analyze our social behavior by the same type of objective criteria we use to measure weight or temperature. To fully comprehend behavior, we must learn the subjective meanings people attach to their actions—how they themselves view and explain their behavior. Weber taught his students that they should employ **Verstehen**, the German word for “understanding” or “insight”, in their intellectual work. He developed a key conceptual tool: the **ideal type**. An ideal type is a construct or model for evaluating specific cases. We will use the concept of ideal type to study the family, religion, authority, and economic system, as well as to analyze bureaucracy.

Karl Marx (1818–1883) shared with Durkheim and Weber a dual interest in abstract philosophical issues and the concrete reality of everyday life. In Marx analysis, society was fundamentally divided between two classes that clashed in pursuit of their own interests. When he examined the industrial societies of his time,



he saw the factory as the center of conflict between the exploiters (the owner) and the exploited (the worker). Marx viewed these relationships in systematic terms; that is, he believed that a system of economic, social, and political relationships maintained the power and dominance of the owners over the workers. Apart from political revolutions; he emphasized the group identifications and associations that influence an individual's place in society. This area of study is the major focus of contemporary sociology. This will also help to consider how membership in a particular gender classification, age group, racial group, or economic class affects a person's attitudes and behavior.

MODERN DEVELOPMENT OF SOCIOLOGY

Sociology builds a firm foundation through the contributions of Karl Marx, Emile Durkheim, Max Weber, and Herbert Spencer. However, the field certainly has not remained stagnant; European has continued to make contributions to the discipline, sociologists from throughout the world, especially the United States, have advanced sociological theory and research.

Charles Horton Cooley (1864–1929) was typical of the all sociologists who came to prominence in the early 1900s. Cooley preferred to use the sociological perspective to look first at smaller units—intimate, face-to-face groups such as families, gangs, and friendship networks. He saw these groups as the seedbeds of society, in the sense that they shape people's ideals, beliefs, values, and social nature. Cooley's work increased our understanding of groups of relatively small size.

Jane Addams (1860–1935), a member of the American Sociological Society and other sociologists commonly combined intellectual inquiry, social service work, and political activism—all with the goal of assisting the underprivileged and creating a more democratic society. By the middle of 20th century, sociologists revolve their discipline to the aim of transforming society. A new organization, the Society for the Study of Social problems, was created in 1950 to deal more directly with social inequality and other social problems.

Robert Merton (1910–2003) made an important contribution to the discipline by successfully combining the research. Merton (1968) proposed a theory of deviant behavior. He explained various ways through which people try to achieve success in life. Merton also emphasized that to study society in true sense of the term, one should blend macro and micro level of sociology. **Macrosociology** focuses on wide phenomena or whole civilizations. Emile Durkheim's cross-cultural study of suicide is an illustration of macro-level research. In contrast, **microsociology** portrays the study of small groups, quite often through experiment. Sociological research on micro level has included studies of how divorced men and women separate from significance social roles; of how conformity can influence the expression of prejudiced attitudes; and of how a teacher's expectations can affect a student's academic performance.

The historical background for the emergence of sociology as an independent science is witnessed by the intellectual and social conditions prevailing in Europe during the latter part of the 18th century and the early part of the 19th century. Before the advent of sociology as an independent science, the study of human society was based on philosophical analysis and it was identified with social philosophy. Thinker like Morris Ginsberg observed that the backgrounds of sociology are of philosophical history, biological theory of evolution and social and political reform movements. The development of science during the last century is closely connected with its separation from philosophy and sociology reorganized as the science of society.

SOCIOLOGY IN INDIAN CONTEXT

Sociology focuses on the urban-industrial groups, whereas anthropology focuses on tribes, castes and communities. Sociology as a discipline emerged as the contributions made by social thinkers, philosophers,

Unit I Introduction to Sociology

administrators, who worked for understanding the Indian society. M.N. Srinivas, Gail Omvedt, Andre Beteille, G.S. Ghurye, Yogendra Singh, Louis Dumont, A.R. Desai are some of the remarkable sociologists of India. The others who firmly contributed to the development of sociology in India are D.N. Majumdar and N.K. Bose.

Govind Sadashiv Ghurye (1893–1984) is an eminent figure in intellectual and academic circles for his unique contribution to the field of Indian sociology. He has often been acclaimed as the ‘father of Indian sociology’, ‘the doyen of Indian sociologists’ or ‘the symbol of sociological creativeness. Ghurye had been engaged in building up; almost single-handedly, the entire first generation of Indian sociologists in post-independence period.

Certain trends of development of sociology may be identified in the pre-independence period. Sociology was taught along with economics, both in Bombay and Lucknow. However, in Calcutta, it was taught along with anthropology, and in Mysore it was part of social philosophy.

In India, study of sociology started in 1919, at the University of Bombay, but the study of sociology as separate discipline was started in 1930. Some Indian writers, like G.S. Ghurye, R.K. Mukherjee, and H.T. Mazumdar have made true contribution toward sociological studies and these studies pertain to Indian villages, caste system, marriage, kinship, family and social disorganization.

Teaching of sociology got well established in the fifties. According to Rao (1982), three things manifest in the establishment of sociology as a teaching subject. First, sociology achieved greater academic status. Secondly, sociology established its identity as discipline by separating itself from psychology, anthropology, social philosophy and social work. Thirdly, diversification followed the lines of extension of sociological approach to different areas of social life. Sociology exists including such specialization as rural and urban sociology, sociology of kinship, sociology of religion, sociology of stratification, sociology of education, political sociology, medical sociology, social demography and sociology of economic development. It was related to the growing needs of development in independent India.

Sociologists think in terms of abstractions. Sociology has wrought a revolutionary change in man’s assumptions and brought hope for a future harmony in human society.

The sociology is the science of human society. Sociology is one of the significant subjects in the way of describing human nature. Sociology is one of the oldest sciences, and it is most ambitious of all the social sciences. Although it is not very old in its origin, as Mack and Young have commented “Sociology is the youngest of social sciences”, even then it has assumed a remarkable place in the menu of the subject taught in the schools, colleges, and universities. It is an endeavor to lay bare the foundations of all living together, to illuminate the laws which lie at the basis of social communication. Sociologists put their sociological imaginations to work in a variety of areas – including aging, the family, human ecology, and religion. Thus, according to Seligman, “Sociology is the social science par excellence”.

Nowadays, it has become essential for every person to keep voluminous knowledge of the subject. Whether he is doctor, or manager, whether he works in a factory or in the laboratory; directly or indirectly he cannot shed his responsibility from understanding various social phenomena affecting human nature.

MAJOR THEORETICAL PERSPECTIVES

In sociology, a **theory** is a set of statements that seeks to explain problems, actions, or behavior. An effective theory may have both explanatory and predictive power. That is, it can help us to see the relationship among apparently isolated phenomena, as well as to understand how one type of change in an environment leads to other changes.

For example, suicide is very common unlawful act. The World Health Organization (WHO, 2002) estimated that a total of 815,000 people committed suicide in 2000. Why do people commit suicide? One traditional

commonsense answer is that people inherit the desire to kill themselves. Sociologists are more concerned with identifying the social forces that systematically cause some people to take their own lives. In order to undertake this research, sociologists develop a theory that offers a general explanation of suicidal behavior.

Emile Durkheim (1897) developed a highly original theory about the relationship between suicide and social factors.

He investigated deep routes of suicidal tendencies. He published his research findings on suicide in 1897. Durkheim rejected unscientific explanations regarding suicide, such as the beliefs that hidden power forces or inheritance causes such deaths. Instead, he put emphasis on social factors, like the strong or weaker bonds of religious, social, and occupational groups. He pointed out the influence of groups and societal forces on individual. Durkheim proposed a more scientific explanation for the causes of suicide than that of unscientific. His theory has predictive influence since it predicts that suicide rates will align with certain social and economic changes. Emile Durkheim, like many other social scientists, developed a theory to explain how individual behavior can be understood within a social context.

Sociologists view society in three ways. These are the Functionalist, Conflict, and Interactionist perspectives. Together, they construct the sociological discipline.

Functionalist Perspective

Society is a living organism in which each part of the organism contributes to its survival. The parts are structured in such a manner that it maintains stability in society.

Talcott Parsons (1902–1979), a sociologist of Harvard University, has contributed immensely to the development of Functionalist Theory. Emile Durkheim, Marx Weber and other European sociologists had left huge impact on Parsons. Parsons saw any society as a vast network of connected parts, each of which helps to maintain the system as a whole. His functionalist approach holds that if an aspect of social life does not contribute to a society's stability or survival—if it does not serve some identifiably useful function or promote value consensus among members of a society—it will not be passed on from one generation to the next.

A societal institution plays many functions in the society, some of them are quite subtle. **Robert Merton (1968)** described two unique functions: **Manifest functions and Latent functions**. **Manifest functions** of institutions are conscious open ended functions. They involve the intended, rationalized consequences of an aspect of society, such as accreditation agencies' role in certifying credentials, competence and excellence. In contrast **Latent functions** are unconscious that may reflect hidden purposes of an institution. One hidden function of accreditation agency is to maintain universal standard. Another is to serve as a meeting ground for people seeking expertise in a professional relationship. Functionalist acknowledges that not all parts of a society contribute to its stability all the time. Sometimes dysfunctions may occur. A **dysfunction** refers to an element or process of a society that may actually disrupt the social system or reduce its stability.

Conflict Perspective

Where functionalist see stability and consensus, conflict sociologists see a social world in continual struggle. The **conflict perspective** assumes that social behavior is best understood in terms of conflict or tension between competing groups. Such conflicts need to be violent; it can take the form of labor organization, party politics, competition between religious groups for new members, or disputes over the federal budget.

Karl Marx (1848, The Communist Manifesto) observes the struggle between social classes as inevitable and spontaneous. Expanding on Marx work, sociologists and other social scientists have analyzed that conflict is not merely a class phenomenon but as a part of everyday life irrespective of societies. While studying any culture, organization, or social group, sociologists investigate about who benefits, who suffers, and who

dominates at the expense of others. They study the conflicts between women and men, parents and children, cities and suburbs, White and Blacks, etc. Conflict theorists are interested in how society's institutions—including the family, government, religion education, and the media—may help to maintain the privileges of some groups and keep others in a subservient position.

W.E.B. Du Bois (1868–1963) made a major contribution to sociology through his in-depth studies of urban life, both White and Black. He contended, and had to draw on scientific principles to study social problems. Du Bois believed that knowledge was essential in combating prejudice and achieving tolerance and justice.

Interactionist Perspective

Workers interacting on his job, encounter at public places, like bus stops and parks, behavior in small groups—all these aspects of microsociology catch the attention of Interactionists. Theorists who take the **Interactionist perspectives** generalize about everyday forms of social interaction in order to explain society as a whole. Interactionism is a sociological framework for viewing human beings as living in a world of meaningful objects. Those “objects” may include material things, actions, other people, relationships, and even symbols. Because Interactionist see symbols as an important part of human communication, the Interactionist perspective is sometime referred to as symbolic Interactionist perspective. Interactionists would be interested in the social significance of team mascots and symbols.

George Herbert Mead (1863–1931) is widely regarded as the founder of Interactionist perspective. His sociological analysis is often focused on human interactions in one-to-one situations and small groups. Mead keenly observed most tiny forms of human interactions—smiles, frowns, nods—and explored how such individual behaviors were influenced by the larger context of a group or society.

Erving Goffman (1922–1982) deliberated on a particular type of Interactionist method known as **dramaturgical approach**, in which people are seen as theatrical performers. The dramaturgist contrast everyday life to the setting of the theatre and stage. Just as actors project certain images, we seek to manifest particular features of our personalities while we suppress other qualities. Thus, in a class, we may feel the need to project a serious image; at an event, we want to look content and friendly.

THE FEMINIST VIEW

Sociologists began applying the feminist perspective only in the 1970s. The **feminist view** sees inequality in gender as a reason to all behavior and organization. Since it clearly focuses on one aspect of inequality, it is often associated with the conflict perspective.

Ida Wells-Barnett (1862–1931), she became an advocate in the women's rights campaign, especially the struggle to win the vote for women. Well-Barnett used her analysis of society as a means of resisting oppression. For example, a family's social standing is no longer defined solely by the husband's position and income. The feminist perspective has given sociologists new views of familiar social behavior (Table 1.1).

TABLE 1.1: Comparing major theoretical perspectives

	Functionalist	Conflict	Interactionist
View of society	Stable, well integrated	Characterized by tension	Active in influencing and affecting everyday social interaction
Level of analysis emphasized	Macro	Macro	Micro, as a way of understanding the larger macro phenomena Symbols

Contd...

	Functionalist	Conflict	Interactionist
Key concepts	Manifest functions Latent functions Dysfunctions	Inequality Capitalism Stratification	Non-verbal communication Face-to-face interaction
View of the individual	People are socialized to perform societal function	People are shaped by power. Coercion, and authority	People manipulate symbols and create their social world through interaction
View of social order	Maintained through cooperation and consensus	Maintained through force and coercion	Maintained by shared understanding of everyday behavior
View of social change	Predictable, reinforcing	Change takes place all the time and may have positive consequences	Reflected in people's social positions and their communications with others
Examples	Public punishments reinforce the social order	Laws reinforce the positions of those in power	People respect laws or disobey them based on their own past experience
Proponents	Emile Durkheim Talcott Parson Robert Merton	Karl Marx W.E.B. Du Bois Ida Wells-Barnett	George Herbert, Mead Charles Horton, Cooley Erving Goffman

DEFINITIONS OF SOCIOLOGY

Human beings are social animals creating various societies; living together by common pattern of interactions, institutions and means of social control. Social behavior arises from the fact that people live together and interact or communicate. The interaction of people and groups is the central subject for the social science.

Recent changes in world situation have transformed the attitude to the study of society. It is not easy to give a clear and comprehensive definition of sociology since it covers a wide variety of human relationships.

Several sociologists have defined the term sociology from their own perspective. The definition of sociology is based on interactions as it includes all types of human relationships and forms of social behavior.

Different Definitions Offered by Different Sociologists

“Science of social phenomena, subject to natural and invariable laws, the discovery of which is the object of investigations” Comte identified three basic methods for discovering these invariant laws, observation, experimentation, and comparison.

—Auguste Comte

- “Sociology is the study of human interactions and interrelations, their conditions and consequences”
—Morris Ginsberg
- “Sociology is a science which attempts the interpretative understanding of social action in order thereby to arrive at a causal explanation of its course and effects”
—Max Weber
- “Sociology is the scientific study of society”.
—Giddings & Giddings
- “Sociology is the science of society or of social phenomena”
—L.F. Ward
- “Sociology is the study of the relationships between man and his human environment”.
—H.P. Fairchild
- “Sociology is a science of social relationships”.
—A.W. Small
- “Sociology is a science of social institutions”.
—Emile Durkheim

Unit I Introduction to Sociology

- “Sociology is a science of collective behavior”. —**Park & Burgess**
- “Sociology is the study of interactions arising from the association of living beings”. —**Gillin & Gillin**
- “Sociology is the science that deals with social groups, their internal forms or modes of organization, the processes that tend to maintain or change these forms of organization and in which they change”. —**Harry M. Johnson**
- “Sociology is the special social science, concentrating on inter-human behavior” —**Von Wiese**
- “Sociology is the study of man-in-relationship-to men”. —**Marshall Jones**
- “Sociology is the scientific study of social life”. —**Ogburn & Nimkoff**
- “Sociology is on the whole of the theory of human living together.” —**Tonnies**
- “Sociology is the scientific study of the social aspects of human life”. —**Kimball Young & R.W. Mack**
- **Reuter** “the purpose of sociology is to establish a body of valid principles, a fund of objective knowledge that will make possible the direction and control of social and human reality”.

These definitions indicate the different methods of approach with an underlying common principle of human relationship. In simple words we can say that the essence of all definitions is that the human is a social being and interconnected with each other by means of different kinds of relationship to survive within the society.

RELATIONSHIP OF SOCIOLOGY WITH OTHER SOCIAL SCIENCES

Social science is general term applied to all branches of knowledge dealing with different aspects of human behavior. Since the interacting individuals are the same in all these, it is but natural that all the social sciences should be closely linked to each other.

Sociology and Social Anthropology

Anthropology refers to the study of what makes us human. Anthropologists take a vast approach to understand numerous aspects of the human experience, which is termed holism. Anthropologists study the past, through archaeology, to distinguish how human groups lived hundreds or thousands of years ago and what was significant to them. They judge what makes up our biological bodies and genetics, as well as our bones, diet, and health. Additionally, Anthropologists contrast humans with other animals.

Anthropology studies the physical, social, cultural, and evolutionary characteristics of people, especially pertaining to the primitive ones. ‘Anthropo’ means man; logy means study. Thus, Anthropology is the study of man. There is close relationship between sociology and anthropology, in the sense that their interests and field of study are similar. Kroeber has said that these two are “twin sisters”. Tyler has well-linked the anthropological approach to sociology. Physical anthropology deals with the physical characteristics of man, and is very helpful in understanding the concept, like race. The pre-historic anthropology deals with the characteristics of primitive man, sociology deals with the contemporary man, and the modern complex societies.

Kluckhohn stated that the sociological attitude has tended toward the practical and present the anthropological attitude toward pure understanding and the past”.

According to him, “Anthropology studies human behavior more at the individual level, while sociology focuses more on group behavior and relations with social structures and institutions.” Anthropologists conduct research using ethnography (a qualitative research method), while sociologists use both qualitative and quantitative methods (Table 1.2).



TABLE: 1.2: Differences between sociology and social anthropology

Features	Sociology	Social anthropology
Meaning	Sociology is the study of society and its process, like social class, caste, social institutions	Anthropology is the study of humanity which focuses on cultural practices, human behavior and environment and its changes as time passes.
Area of focus	Civilized society	Primitive society
Level	Macro	Micro
Approach	Specific aspect of society	Holistic toward primitive society
Method of study	Document collection through observation, survey, interview, and questionnaire.	Field work
Mode of study	Qualitative	Quantitative

Sociology and Economics

Economics studies only the economic behavior of man, with regards to production, consumption, and distribution. Economics is study of man in relation to wealth. Sociology is related to economics in various ways. Social behavior is much conditioned by the economic aspects of life. Social customs, traditions, and values affect the economic life and institutions. The founder of sociology was an economist and also social thinkers (Karl Marx, Max Weber, and Veblen). In spite of close relations, both sociology and economics have separate existence.

Sociology and Political Science

The political behavior of man is related to social behavior. Authority, power, and leadership are some of the main concerns of political science. The state and its organ the Government exercise maximum control over the behavior of man. While religion, family and other institutions exert informal control, the state exerts coercive control over individuals and groups. These are days of democracy. For the success of the democratic form of Government, the structure and function of the society are very important. Thus, sociology and political science are interrelated.

Sociology and History

Howard has said that "history is the sociology of the past, and sociology is the history of the present." It is very true because we get knowledge about past institutions and social life only from history and what we study in sociology today will be a part of history very soon. History helps us to understand the development of human society. To understand the present, a basic knowledge of the past is essential.

Sociology versus Psychology (Table 1.3)

The internal mode of function of human behavior is studied in Psychology. To know about human behavior, the study of the internal aspects is absolutely essential. Almost all our actions are the overt expressions of our motives, desires, instincts, impulses, and emotions. At the same time, our actions are also guided or modified through external conditions and stimuli. Sociologists study these external conditions and this knowledge is helpful to Psychologists in their analysis of human behavior. To get knowledge about the changing aspects of social life which affect our thinking, attitudes, and values, psychologists have to depend upon sociologists.

Unit I Introduction to Sociology

TABLE: 1.3: Differences between sociology and psychology

Psychology	Sociology
Psychology is concerned with the mental process of an individual.	Sociology is concerned with the social process and social system.
Psychology studies the inter-relationship of different activities of an individual.	Sociology studies the interaction among different persons.
The subject matter of psychology is restricted, since it studies only mental process of an individual.	The subject matter of sociology is boundless, it studies the whole society, like social relationships; social interactions, etc.
Psychology is a formal or special science since it has limited subject matter.	Sociology is a common or general science, since it studies all aspects associated to society.
Psychology is the study of attitude of an individual toward cultural values and laws related to these attitudes.	Sociology discusses existing form of society, its structure and functions.
Psychology analyses the framework of social relationships.	Sociology studies the interaction of human being with the environment.
Psychology uses the experimental methods and psychological training and evaluation methods for its study.	Sociology uses historical method, structural and functional methods, sociometry method for its study.

Sociology is a social science which is concerned with group life, whereas psychology is related to human being only as an individual. Sociology mainly deals with the external aspects of behavior, while psychology analyzes the internal aspects. The methodology of the two sciences are also different. If psychology applies experimental method and testing, sociologists rely on survey and statistical method in general.

Sociologists view society in different ways. Some see the world basically as a stable and ongoing entity. They are impressed with the endurance of the family, organized religion, and other social institutions. Other sociologists see society as composed of many groups in conflict, challenging for scarce resources. In the view of other sociologists, the most fascinating aspect of the social world is the everyday routine interactions among individuals that we sometimes take for granted. Today sociology reflects the diverse contributions of earlier theorists. Contributions from the discipline now come from sociologists studying and researching human behavior in other parts of the world.

Social psychology helps us a great deal in tackling several social problems. As they are inseparable from normal social processes and normal social behavior, the knowledge of social psychology should be brought to bear on the solution of these problems.

According to **MacIver and Page** “When we study nature the individual consciousness which expresses itself in social relationship, we are taking the psychological point of view. When we study the relationship themselves, we take the sociological point of view. Both sciences are concerned with different aspects of an invisible reality. Individuals cannot be understood apart from their relations with one another; the relations cannot be understood apart from the units of relationships.

IMPORTANCE OF SOCIOLOGY

Society is a complex structure as well as largest organization of individuals. Society has its own problems in every field. Study of society contributes to the formulation of social policies; Sociologists seek to provide

analysis of the human society with sociological perspective. Sociology studies the primary unit of social life, such as social acts, relationships and individual personality, etc. It studies the development, structure and function of a wide variety of basic social institutions, such as family and kinship, religion and prosperity, economics, education and science, recreation and welfare. It studies the social processes, such as cooperation, accommodation, assimilation, conflict and competition, etc. It studies the scientific methods by collecting the data and establishing the connection between them, as well as specialization on the explosion of knowledge on history, literature, art, culture, religion family, etc. (Fig. 1.2).

- **Sociology is the science of society:** Sociology is important for understanding and planning of society. It helps us to understand society; sociology describes multiple dimensions of society in relation to individual, social group and process, community and its type, social organization, social problems, social control and entire social systems.
- **Sociology studies the social relationships:** It acts as a liaison between individual and society; man is a social animal and society has a profound impact on shaping the personality of individual. Our family, peer, school, teacher, religion and mass media are integral part of our individuality and all these collectively reflect society.
- **Sociology helps in study of human behavior in group situation:** Sociology helps person's to behave in a controlled or systematic ways. It helps students to overcome their prejudices, misconceptions, egoistic ambitions, class and religious conflicts. It made our life richer, fuller and meaningful. The study of societies has made people to become broad-minded. Sociology helps us to understand how social forces influence our goals, attitudes, behavior and personality.
- **Sociology has made great contribution to enrich human culture:** It contributes to understand human culture in a better way, to make good citizens.

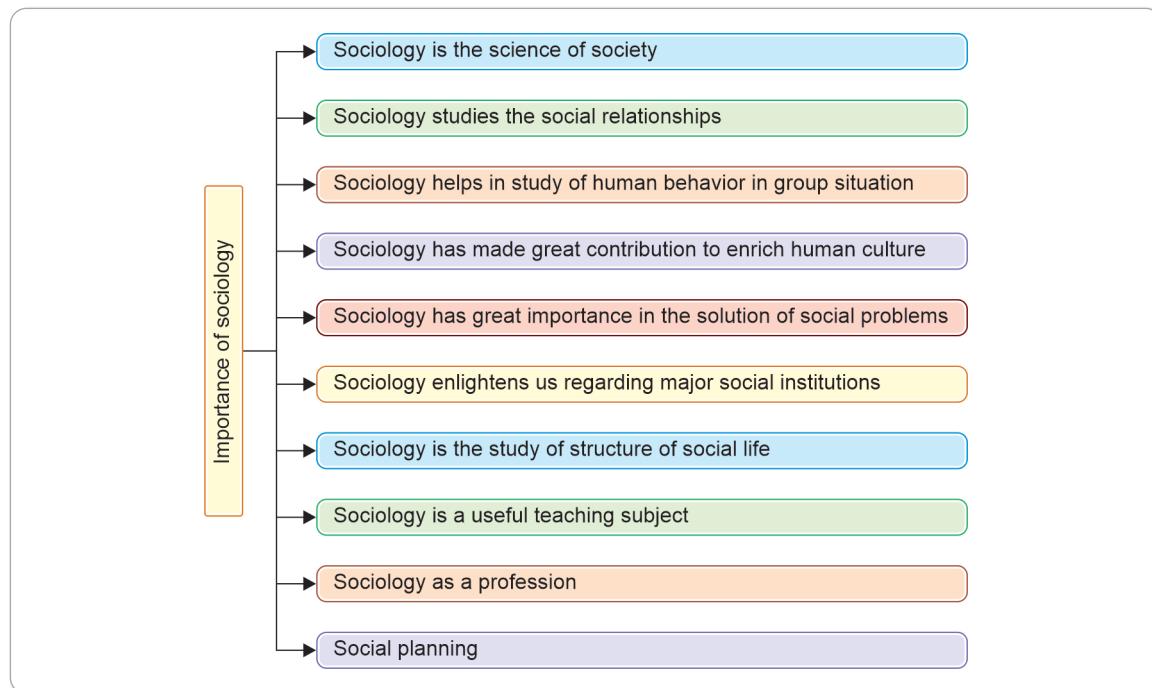


Figure 1.2: Importance of sociology



Unit I Introduction to Sociology

- **Sociology has great importance in the solution of social problems:** It deals with social actions. It is a tool for management of social problem; sociology helps to assess nature and intensity of social problems and guide different ways to resolve them. Sociology has changed outlook with regards to the problem of crime, etc. sociology is also helpful in formulating the law by knowing both formal and informal means of social control.
- **Sociology enlightens us regarding major social institutions:** Sociology studies the role of the institutions in the development of an individual. It helps in keeping updated information on modern institution. Social institutions, like school, college, temple, church and work place act as an agent of society. These social institutions strengthen social environment and society. Sociology draws our attention to the institutional worth and dignity of man.
- **Sociology is the study of structure of social life:** Social groups, social institutions, their function and change in trends, etc. All these help us to lead an effective meaningful social life. Sociology identifies good government with the community. With the help of sociology many government organizations undertake various social welfare measures to promote the wellbeing of tribal people.
- **Sociology is a useful teaching subject:** The study of sociology has a great value, especially in modern multifarious society. Scientific knowledge about human society is needed in order to achieve progress in various fields.
- **Sociology as a profession:** Sociology is not confined to social sciences, it has become popular in other subjects also, such as medical sciences, law and engineering. Several international and national research organizations recruit social scientists in most of the researches. After having a degree in sociology, students are hired in several public and private organizations of repute.
- **Social planning:** Social planning has been made easier by sociology. Sociology is often regarded as the vehicle of social reform and social reorganization. Sociology is of great importance in the solution of international problems.

Importance of Sociology in Nursing

Most of the illnesses have social causes and consequences. Sociology is included in the curriculum of nursing because health is a fundamental right of each and every individual. Sociology imparts knowledge to deal with the patient and to understand their culture, habit, behavior, customs, traditions, norms, etc. The nurses need to understand the necessity of changing environment. Sociology helps the nurses to understand demographic factors and approach the patient in a comprehensive manner; this is important to avoid prejudice and discrimination. To understand community, the knowledge of sociology is must. Sociology helps the nurse to understand social position, status and responsibilities.

NATURE OF SOCIOLOGY

Sociology at personal level deals with individuality, beliefs, value, customs, gender, family and conflict.

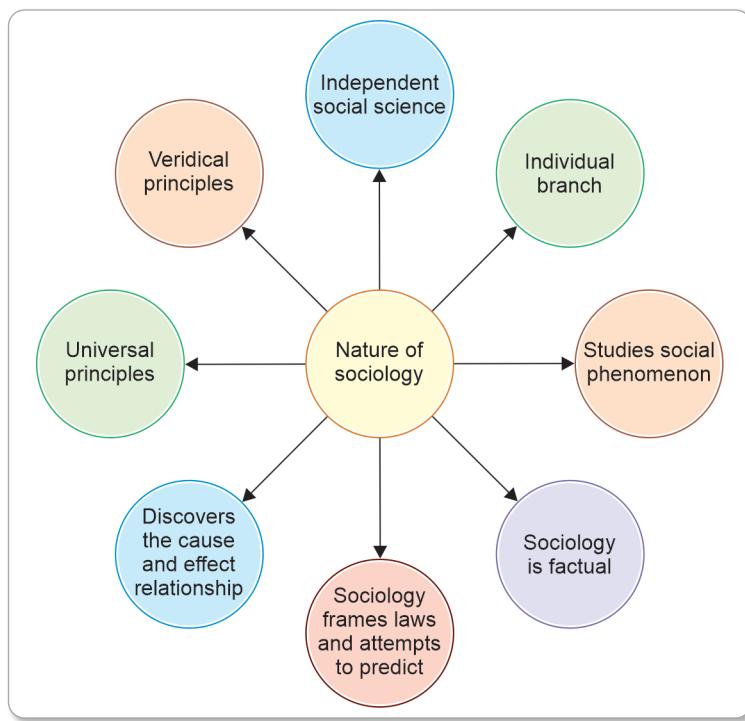
Sociology at societal level examines social control, social problems, social disorganization and social institution.

Sociology at Global level describes global population, global harmony and peace.

Thus, sociology is a general science; the areas of investigations of sociology are general, such as study of human life and human interactions. Sociology is a systematic and objective study of human society.

The nature or characteristics of sociology (Fig. 1.3) are as follows:

- **Independent social science:** Sociology is an independent science; not a branch of any other science. Sociology is a social science and not a physical science and is different from astronomy, physics, and chemistry.
- **Individual branch:** Sociology is individual branch; it is not included with any other science. It is abstract not a concrete science.

**Figure 1.3:** Nature of sociology

- **Studies social phenomenon:** Sociology is a social science; and deals with individual in relation to his social surroundings. When a social scientist investigates any social phenomena, he utilizes scientific method. It is a systemic way of dealing with ideas, careful observation of recording of the factual data, which is classified, analyzed and organized in a systematic way by logical basis through which generalization can be made. It studies the human social relationship. Man cannot exist in vacuum. Man has to interact and establish relationship with significant other and with environment. Sociology focuses upon the interconnection of man with his environment. It is the study of social life. Sociology enables us to view social world from society perspective. It illuminates light on social life of individual group and society.
- **Sociology is factual:** It deals with facts only. Sociology uses scientific principles to solve the problems. Social scientist deals with the social facts. Sociology is rationale and empirical science; Empiricism emphasizes on the observations and experimentations. Rationalism emphasizes on the logical inferences. It passes some important information based on theoretical knowledge with practical experience. It makes the individual to organize society by solving certain social problems. Sociology observes the society in a theoretical way but excluding in practical way.
- **Sociology frames laws and attempts to predict:** It can make predictions on the basis of universal and valued laws relating to the problem-solving approach. It supplies the information about the elements of social system to facilitate the introduction of any described changes. To construct society by observing existing problems, customs, traditions, institutions, etc. It can make the people understand the changing situations.
- **Discovers the cause and effect relationship:** It structures the cause and effect relationship in its subject matter and in this connection; it provides universal and valid laws. Sociology helps to develop a selfless

Unit I Introduction to Sociology

tendency and understands the society in a well-planned manner. In India, each individual comes across different religion and culture. We have to understand all the social institutions to develop a feeling of universal brotherhood.

- **Universal principles:** The law of sociology proved to be true at all time and places, as long as the condition does not vary. Sociology is generalizing and not particularizing science.
- **Veridical principles:** The laws of sociology proved true at every verification and reverification. Anyone can examine their validity. Sociology is based on pure or theoretical basis and is not an applied science.

Robert Bierstedt in his book ‘The Social Order’ mentioned the following characteristics of sociology:

- Sociology is a social not a natural science.
- Sociology is a categorical or positive and not a normative science.
- Sociology is a pure or theoretical science and not an applied science.
- Sociology is an abstract science and not a concrete one.
- Sociology is generalizing and not particularizing science.
- Sociology is both rational and empirical science.

Some Limitations about the Nature of Sociology

Sociology is the science of human interaction or relationship, social behavior, social activities and social life. There are some limitations about scientific nature of sociology.

These are:

- **Lack of experimentation:** Sociology deals with human relationships which can neither be measured or weighed nor can be seen or analyzed.
- **Lack of objectivity:** The sociologists cannot preserve complete objectivity in order to understand its external action. Objectivity is necessary to get an accurate explanation of how things work in the world.
- **Lack of exactness:** The law and conclusions cannot be expressed in precise terms. True findings are often restricted within time and space.
- **Inability to measure subject matter:** Suitable criteria are not available for all of the underlying issues. Human response to their surroundings and the presence of the researcher could affect the behavior of the subject. Some changes that occur naturally in people's behavior because they know they are being studied.
- **Inaccurate predictions:** Sometimes predictions may be inaccurate. It is very difficult to predict individual actions accurately because human behavior is dynamic and very complex. It is difficult to reorganize and control personal values.

SCOPE OF SOCIOLOGY

Meaning of scope is the subject matter or the areas of the study. Every science has its own field of inquiry. It becomes difficult to study a science systematically unless its boundary or scope is determined precisely. Sociology as a social science has its own individual scope or boundaries.

There is no single opinion concerning the scope of sociology. **Calverton** describes sociology as an elastic science. It is difficult to determine where its boundary begins and where it ends. It is impossible to decide as it studies human interactions, interrelations, their conditions and consequences.

Two Different Views about the Scope of Sociology

There are two schools of thought with different viewpoints regarding scope and subject matter of sociology—formalistic school and synthetic school as shown in Figure 1.4.

- One group of writers led by German sociologists, George Simmel distinguish sociology clearly from other branches of social studies and confine it to the inquiry into certain defined aspects of human relationships.
- The other group maintains that the field of social investigation is too wide for any individual science and that if any progress is to be made, there must be specialization and division of labor.

Formalistic School of Thought

According to formal school, sociology was visualized to be a social science with a specifically defined field. Formal school argues in support of giving sociology a specific area under discussion to make it a distinct discipline. It emphasized the study of forms of social relationships and considers sociology as independent science.

- According to **G. Simmel**, the distinction between sociology and other social sciences is that sociology is a specific social science which describes, classifies, analyses and delineates the forms of social relationships or in other words social interactions should be classified into various outline or form and analyzed. Simmel argued that social interactions have various forms. He approved the studies of such formal relationships as cooperation, competition, sub and super ordinate relationships and so onward.
- **Vierkandt** maintained that sociology should be concerned with crucial forms of mental or psychic relationship which bind the people together in a society. Sociology is a special branch of knowledge concerned with the ultimate forms of mental relationships which link man to one another in society.
- **Leopold von Wiese**, describes there are two kinds of fundamental social processes in human society. Firstly, the associative process concerning contact, approach, adaptations, etc. and secondly, disassociate processes, like competition and conflict. Separately from these two processes a mixed form of the associative and dissociative also exists.
- **A.W. Small's** view; according to the Small's view, sociology does not undertake to study all the activities of society. Every science has certain limitations and sociology is not an exception. He describes sociology as the study of the generic forms of social relationships, behaviors and activities.
- **Max Weber** also makes out a distinct field for sociology. According to him, the aim of sociology is to interpret or comprehend social behavior. But social behavior does not cover up the whole field of human relations. Indeed, not all human communications are social. Sociology is concerned with the investigation and categorization of types of social relationships.
- **Tonnies** alienated societies into two categories, namely community and association; on the basis of degree of intimacy among the members of the society. He distinguished on the basis of forms of relationship and tried to differentiate between community and society.

Criticism of Formal School

- The most prominent criticism of formal school of thought is that it focuses upon the abstract aspects of social life rather than the concrete. Abstract forms are distinct from concrete relations; and concrete form cannot be explored. Ginsberg states that a study of social relationships would remain invisible if it is conducted in the abstract without the base of reality.
- Sociology doesn't alone study the forms of social relationship. Political science, International law also study forms of social relationship.
- Social science is attached to other sciences, it can't survive in isolation.

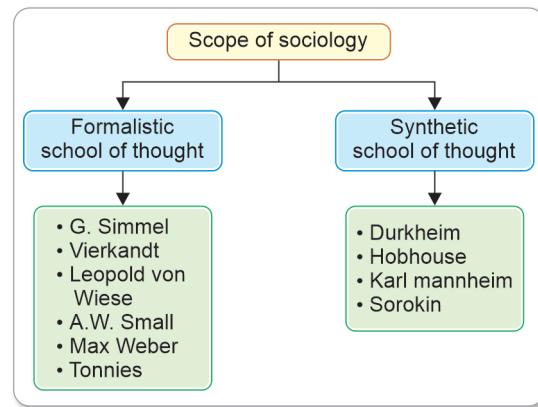


Figure 1.4: Scope of sociology

Synthetic School of Sociology

Synthetic school desired sociology to be the synthesis of the social sciences and thus intended to broaden the scope of sociology.

- In view of **Durkheim**, the scope of sociology can be alienated into three divisions or fields of study. They are as social morphology, social physiology, and general sociology. Emile Durkheim used the word in sociology in order to classify the basis of the society, the structural relationship among people. This categorization was based on how the different types of human populations are distributed and organized across the world. This is known as social morphology and it is one of Durkheim's moves toward studying society.
- **Social morphology** contains primarily geographic subjects, like population and its size, density, distribution, mobility, etc. Social morphology investigates and studies the size, density, or quality of the population to know how these factors affect the relationships among people and social groups. For an individual, or corporate groups, or organization, the aim of social morphology is to measure their nature, number, the way they are arranged, and the nature of their interrelations.
- **Social physiology** is divided into number of branches such as sociology of religion, morals, law, economic life, and language, etc. each branch of these fields deals with a set of social facts—the activities related to the social groups.
- **General sociology** discovers the general character of social facts and determines whether there are any general social laws which differentiate by special social science.
- **Hobhouse**, considered sociology as a science which has the whole social life of man as its sphere. It has a mutual nexus with other social sciences.
- **Karl Mannheim** classified sociology into two main sections—systematic and historical sociology. **Systematic sociology** describes in sequence one by one the reasons behind living together in different types of society. The **historical sociology** deals with the historical features and reality of the general structure of society. It is further divided into two types—comparative sociology and social dynamics. **Comparative sociology** pertains mainly to the historical variations of the same phenomenon. **Social dynamics** pertains to the interrelations between the various social factors and institutions in a certain given society, for instance, in a primitive society.
- According to **Sorokin**, the subject matter of sociology includes, the study of relationships between the different aspects of social phenomena; the study of relationship between social and non-social; and study about general features of social phenomena. According to Sorokin, Sociology can be of two types—General sociology and special sociology. **General sociology** explains the properties and uniformities common to all social and cultural phenomena in their structural and dynamic features. The nexus between the sociocultural and biological phenomena. In the structural aspect sociology studies varieties of groups and institutions as well as their nexus. In the dynamic aspect sociology studies various social processes, like marriage, social contact, social gathering, socialization, conflict, social control, subordination, etc. **Special sociology** studies a unique sociocultural phenomenon which is selected for in-depth study. According to Sorokin, some of the most developed branches of sociology are: sociology of population, rural sociology, sociology of law, sociology of medicine.
- As per to **Ginsberg**, sociology studies the types and forms of social relationships. It determines the relation between different factors of social life, social change and to discover sociological principles governing social life. Thus the scope of sociology is very wide. It studies the various aspects of society. For example, it studies about social process, traditions, social control, social morphology, etc. Ginsberg has analyzed the main tasks of sociology as it provides a classification of types and forms of social relationships, especially of those which have come to be defined institutions and associations. Study of sociology attempts to evaluate the relation between different parts of factors of social life, for instance, the religion and political, the moral and the legal, the intellectual and the social elements. It tries to find out the basic conditions of social change and identifies the sociological principles governing social life.

SOCIOLOGY AND ITS FIELDS

Sociology explores all aspects of social life such as economic, political, religious, cultural, moral, legal, and historical and many more.

General Sociology

It is a general social science not an individualize science. According to **Albion W. Small** “General sociology is the study of the condition (physical and psychical), elements, forms, forces, processes, results (at given stage), and implications of human association.”

Historical Sociology

Historical sociology is a branch of sociology focusing on how societies develop through history. It studies that how social structures that many regard as natural are in fact twisted with complex social processes.

Juridical Sociology

Relating to the administration of justice; used in court. Within this field, it is key to consider legal structures (i.e., the legal system), legal process (how law is made) and the interaction of the law in societal change and social control. It is essential to critically analyze the impact, positive and negative, of law on race, class, gender and other social differential values, as well as highlighting that:

- Law needs to be understood by each and every individual as a component of social institutions.
 - It is highly important to examine critically how law and society interplay with each other.
 - Legal categories and legal reasoning interplay by means of social hierarchies based on race, class, gender and sexuality.
 - It is quite essential to examine relations between law and social control and social change.
- Application of sociology enhances interpretation of law in social context.

Moral Sociology

Moral sociology deals with the moral values of the family and society. Sociology of morality is a branch of sociology which deals through the sociological exploration of the nature, causes, and consequences of people's ideas about morality.

Criminal Sociology

Sociology changed our outlook towards crime and punishment. Criminal sociology studies about all those physical and social conditions of life that are responsible for originating the criminal act, and deals with remedies to the various causes of crime.

Religious Sociology

Religious sociology deals with religious history of family and society. Sociology of religion is the study of the beliefs, practices and organizational forms of religion by means of the tools and methods of the discipline of sociology. Traditionally the study of religion was central to the discipline of sociology with early influential figures, such as Emile Durkheim and Max Weber writing extensively on the role and function of religion in human society. The discipline of sociology of religion has to a great extent to teach about how religion functions for the individual and in society.

Economic Sociology

Economic sociology deals with the economic status of the society and nation. It is concerned with how technologies and cultures of expertise shape institutions, cultures, money and markets. Economic sociology focuses on the economic activities and how they are structured into organization.

Social Morphology

Social morphology is concerned by way of geographical basis of the life. **Emile Durkheim** was one of the pioneers of the synthetic school of thought. The synthetic school of thought arose in response to the formalist school of thought. Social morphology explicitly denotes structure of sociology. Synthetic school of thought also used the term social morphology. Synthetic school of thought considers sociology as a general science. It endorsed sociology as a whole and hence the scope of sociology is wide and open.

Social Psychology

According to psychologist **Gordon Allport**, social psychology employs scientific methods to understand and explain how the thoughts, feelings, and behavior of an individuals are influenced by the actual, imagined, or implied the presence of other human beings. Essentially, social psychology is about understanding how each person's individual behavior is influenced by the social environment in which that behavior takes place. Social psychology mainly deals with wide range of social problems such as group behavior, social perception, leadership, non-verbal behavior, conformity, prejudice, and aggression. The researches social psychologists perform have a powerful influence on our understanding of mental health and well-being. These can help teenagers resist potentially harmful behaviors such as smoking, drinking, and substance use.

Family Sociology

Families are the basic structure of society. Different families offer different values and upbringing to their child. In this branch, we study different methods of parenting found in families. How different families can bring different changes in a child is studied under this branch.

Demography Sociology

Sociology is a study of society and society is made up of a population. Demography determines the population rate. It deals with every aspect related to the population, like the number of people residing in a particular area, increment or decrement of the population in past years.

Subfields of Sociology

Industrial Sociology

Industrial Sociology is a fairly young branch of sociology. Industrialization brought a lot of development alongside class divisions among the people, however, social problems have arisen with all the complexities. According to J. H. Smith, "Industrial Sociology is concerned with industry (or any form of work organization) as a social system, including those factors (technical, emotional, political) which affect the structure, the function and the changes in that system".



Rural Sociology

Rural Sociology is a field of sociology traditionally linked with the study of social structure and conflict in rural areas while topical areas such as food and agriculture or natural resource access transcend traditional rural spatial boundaries.

Urban Sociology

Urban Sociology is the sociological study of life and human interaction in metropolitan cities. It is a normative discipline of sociology that studies the structures, environmental processes, changes and problems of an urban area and by doing so provides inputs for urban planning and policy making. Besides, it is the sociological study of cities and their role in the development of society. Similar to the majority areas of sociology, urban sociologists exercise statistical analysis, observation, social theory, interviews, and other methods to study a range of topics, including migration and demographic trends, economics, poverty, race relations and economic trends. Urban sociology is single of the oldest sub-disciplines of sociology dating back to the mid-nineteenth century.

Educational Sociology

Educational Sociology is also referring to as sociology of education. Educational sociology is the study of the social aspect that influence and are influenced by all educational structures and processes, both within and between societies.

Political Sociology

The study of power and the relationship among societies, states, and political conflict is political sociology. It overlaps political science and sociology, with "macro" and "micro" components. At macro level, it deals with the reasons of big political changes and its attachment with social life and at micro level it deals with the impact of social identities and group influence at individual political behavior such as decision on whom to vote.

Medical Sociology

Medical Sociology deals with medicine in modern society. Medical sociology is the sociological study of medical organizations and institutions; the production of knowledge and selection of methods, the actions and interactions of healthcare professionals, and the social or cultural (rather than clinical or bodily) effects of medical practice. The field commonly interrelates with the sociology of knowledge, science and technology studies, and social epistemology. Sociologists have made imperative contributions to public health research and practice in a variety of areas, such as the link between the individual, community, institutions, and social systems (Quah, 2015). Most remarkably, sociological research on the social determinants of health, health inequalities, social class and stratification, the organization and utilization of services, health policy, and family health has dominated sociological studies of population-based health. Medical sociology is extremely useful for the entire health service. According to Suchman (1968), the knowledge of sociology can prove helpful in implementation of public health programs.

Clinical Sociology

Clinical Sociology is an applied practice that is the center of attention on health intervention, such as working with medical practitioners, community health services, and social policy and public health campaigns.

Glasser and freedman stated that "Clinical sociology is the application of a variety of critically applied practices which attempt sociological diagnosis and treatment of groups and group members in the community". The three main features of Clinical Sociology are:

1. The focus of the investigator is on a “case,” i.e., on a person presenting concrete problems;
2. It is a cooperative enterprise.
3. Clinical procedure has an immediate therapeutic aim and it is, therefore, not merely a study of the “case,” but the formulation of a program of adjustment or treatment.

Clinical sociology is a kind applied sociology which involves intimate, sharply realistic investigations correlated with efforts to look for the problems and to form the strategies to tackle these problems. Clinical sociology denotes a sociological perspective to intervention and action for change.

Sociology has a very wide scope. It is both general and special science. The viewpoint of study distinguishes the science from one another. As a special study, sociology studies human behavior in a society and social relationship, as a part of general science, sociology automatically studies all aspects of social life that directly or indirectly affect human behavior. It is both general and special science.

SIGNIFICANCE OF SOCIOLOGY IN NURSING

The study of sociology helps nurses recognize the psycho-social problems of patients, which helps them in deciding the quality of treatment. Sociology helps understand those forces and pressures which affect patients adversely. Nursing plays a vital role in healthcare profession. Sociology helps the doctor and nurses to know the social life of the patient. In India, people have different religions, caste, tribes and communities. It is essential to know the culture of the group; for this, knowledge of sociology is essential as well as the knowledge of society is extremely useful (Fig. 1.5).

Nurse will act as an effective person between the patient and health team members. The knowledge of sociology helps the nurse to identify and analyze different social situations which are responsible for the

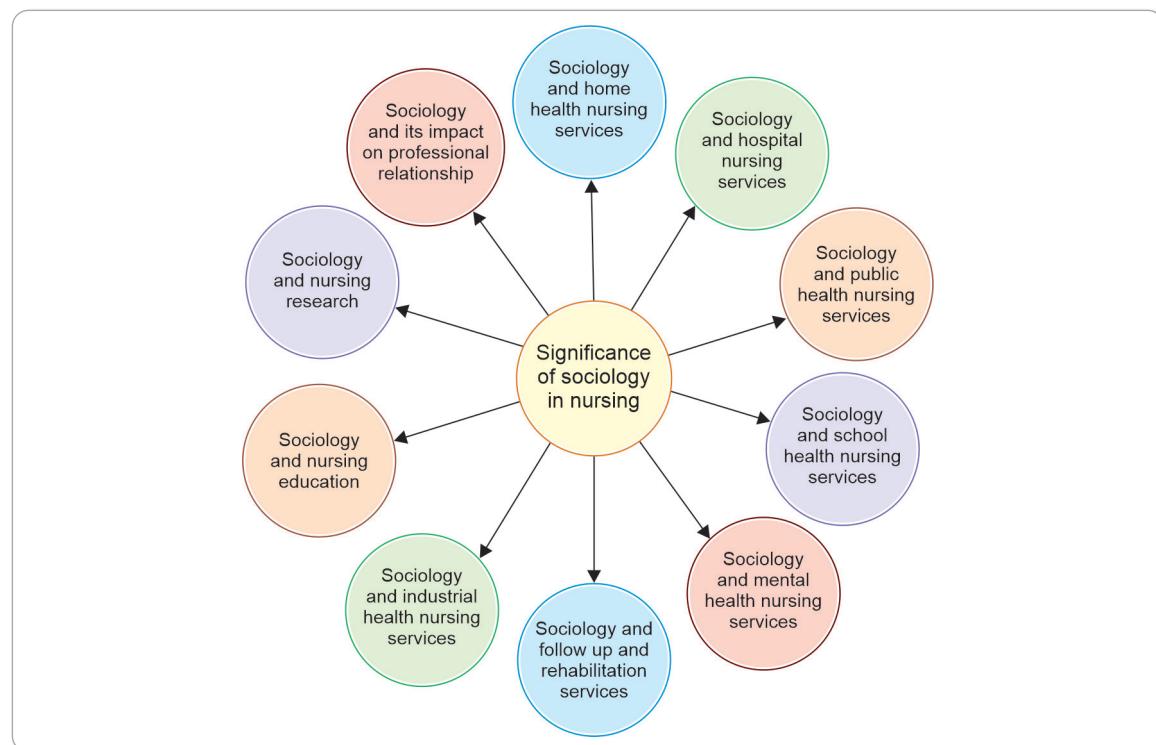


Figure 1.5: Significance of sociology in nursing

incidence and prevalence of morbidity and mortality conditions of the individuals. Treatment of diseases; mental or physical is a cooperative attempt in which a united effort of various medical, paramedical and non-medical personnel are required, because nurse acts as a key person in a hospital situation. Sociology is the science of human society, can play an important role in the understanding the importance of community life.

Programs like public health, industrial health, school health, military health nursing, etc. The nurse has to work very close with different sections of the society.

Significance of sociology in nursing are:

- **Sociology and home health nursing services:** Sociology helps us to understand human behavior, interpersonal relationship and social interactions in context of family, community and society. A nurse who understands social dimensions of home and family environment can render effective health care at home. To meet the needs of the patient adequately, it is essential that the nurse develops self-understanding. The nurse must strive constantly to become emotionally, mentally, morally and socially mature. Good observation, communication and guidance skills are essential to understand the behavior of the patient. For example, if a nurse advises to antenatal women about diet and if she is aware of cultural practices related to diet and antenatal status she can customize her nursing care plan.
- **Sociology and hospital nursing services:** Hospital is an integral institute of any society. Hospital witnesses several social scenes in everyday affairs ranging from outpatient department to inpatient department. A powerful nexus of social relationship exists among health team members. An efficient nurse must collaborate with all the components of sociology in her services to patient and for effective interpersonal relationship. The most important person who can help in the recovery is the patient himself, unless he is desires to heal and cooperative in the process, treatment and nursing care become very difficult indeed. The nurse must be able to gain full confidence of the patient. In this process knowledge of social systems and social relationships is very vital. Medical sociology is extremely useful for the entire health care services. For example, if a nurse understands process of socialization, individualization, diversity and uniformity of culture, mob, crowd, public reactions, etc. How health is related with caste, class and race; what are of role of family in disease condition; nurses possibly will upgrade her nursing care accordingly. Similarly, if nurse understands and implement sociological concepts like social groups and social processes, such as cooperation, accommodation and assimilation, conflict and competition, theories of social change, social system, and social control then possibly will be an active and remarkable health team member.
- **Sociology and public health nursing services:** Public health nurses serve to community in their social surroundings if a public health nurse understands and integrates social dimensions like primary group, secondary group, individualization, socialization, and type of community such as rural, urban, regional community, etc., then nurse can improve health-seeking behavior of community. The study of sociology helps the nurses to improve the quality of family welfare programs and the community health services with the government. Knowledge of sociology helps the nurses to understand social structure. In a country like India, where people have their affiliation with different religions, caste, tribes and communities, it is essential to know the culture of these groups. For example, local geographical health care worker is more acceptable in community. Nurses who speaks native language can communicate effectively and perceive health need effectively. This will help nurses to gain patient's confidence and provide holistic care in an efficient way. The primary role of the nurse is to carry out the health education activities in the community along with the participation and involvement of local people in planning and implementation of health care programs for their attainment of good quality of life, prevention of diseases and disability and promotion of health.
- **Sociology and school health nursing services:** School is the elementary institution of socialization. Children learn values, custom and tradition from their teachers and peers. If a school health nurse applies

Unit I Introduction to Sociology

principles of socialization; this will enhance psychosocial development of children. For example, a nurse who works in school as school health nurse are capable of early identification of physical or mental illness in children. School health nursing services play vital role in treatment, follow up and rehabilitation of children in society.

- **Sociology and mental health nursing services:** Primary cause of mental health lies in society. Family conflict, workplace pressure, personal disorganization all yield mental sickness. In these conditions mental health nursing services are vital. Role of environment modification in the treatment of mental health is crucial. Better social context promotes better mental health.
For instance, if a nurse doing psychotherapy should also consider social network of the patient and give equal importance to social relationships.
- **Sociology and follow up and rehabilitation services:** When a patient gets well and discharged from hospital; he goes back to the same society to live as normal as he can. Many time disease relapses because of various social and personal reasons. Positive sociological environment is the key for effective rehabilitation services. The patient suffering from permanent disabilities; in this very deep understanding of human behavior is very essential. The sociology as well as psychology is very useful in handling such situations.
For example, a nurse who takes care of a patient in rehabilitation unit must assess and analyze social setting of patient for better prognosis. If a young drug addict after de-addiction treatment, rehabilitates in same social environment then he is at risk for relapses.
- **Sociology and industrial health nursing services:** Nurses who works in factory as a health care provider mainly responsible for safety and prevention from occupational health hazards, maintenance and promotion of worker's health, improvement of working atmosphere. Every work-play has its own social dynamics. Industry success depends upon devotion of its employee and the good social atmosphere.
For instance, industrial sociological dimensions help to understand social component in industrial worker.
- **Sociology and nursing education:** Significance of sociological concepts in education is vital. It helps educators and teachers to accept and understand each other's differences and similarities. It dilutes boundaries of caste, class and religion. Knowledge of sociology helps students to adjust with fellow students, patients and co-worker. For instance, if a student nurse has critical understanding of social circumstances in teaching and learning—such as how competition, cooperation, conflict can affect his/her education—can develop positive attitudes toward nursing education.
- **Sociology and nursing research:** Studying sociology helps nursing student to analyze data and generate theories. Knowledge of sociology helps nurses to promote research and evidences-based nursing care. Understanding health and health care in perspective of social context can help us to promote research and its utilization. Sociology helps in updating of skills and knowledge, monitoring and evaluating activities. It also helps in analyzing health conditions of people and bringing about changes and innovation in health care based on research.
- **Sociology and its impact on professional relationship:** Effective professional relationship is the core of any organization. Wherever nursing professionals work, the knowledge and application of sociological concepts can promote their interpersonal relationship. Sociology not only facilitates understanding of self and guides social networking but also helps to understand the behavioral pattern of others. For instance, a nurse manager who considers individual and group dynamics could utilize best of every employee and in conflict situation she can manage any crisis with guidance of sociological principles thus she promotes professionalism. Nurses has to study the broader issues of the community involvement in service development requiring the knowledge of cultural aspects of health services; political organizations; distribution of power; modes of prediction; social structure; mobilization of resources and pattern of their uses within the community. Nurses will develop discipline and sensitivity that give the meaning of compassion and understanding in order to study the stress in social relationships.



The horizon of sociology is expanding and the possibilities are endless. Gradually, it will cover man's entire life. Thus, sociology is helping nurses in:

- Understanding human behavior
- Planning nursing process
- Maintaining continuity of patient care
- Providing evidenced-based health care
- Providing quality care through holistic approach
- Maintaining effective interpersonal relationship with patient, patient's relatives and among health care team members.
- Understanding cultural value identification and clarification
- Enhancing health promotion activities in community
- Adopting preventive and remedial approach in all levels of disease prevention
- Analyzing social situations
- Performing as effective liaison
- Professional development and career advancement
- Effective collaboration with other health care agencies

The study of sociology is extremely useful to all, more especially in medical and nursing and the field of social welfare. A thorough knowledge of the social interactions, and the culture of the people as a whole, is imperative for nurse. Today, nursing is no longer merely an effort to cure illness rather preventive services and promotion of health are also important aspect of nursing. To be an effective agent of health promotion, knowledge of community and facilities and resources available therein are essential. Sociology, which is called the science of human society, can play an important role in the understanding of community.

Nursing skills important for identifying and managing social issues are enlisted in case study 1:

Case Study 1 Nursing Skills Important for Identifying and Managing Social Issues

Rani is a 28-year-old young Indian female admitted in oncology ward for chemotherapy treatment as she has been diagnosed with acute lymphoblastic leukemia recently. She is having AB negative blood group. Her blood report suggested severe anemia. Doctor advised blood transfusion. She had no history of blood transfusion in the past. One of her relatives (male) was ready to donate blood for her. She asked one question that gender of the donor and recipient should be matched, and she is worried about transfusion reaction.

Applied sociology: Social inequality

Nursing skills required: Effective listener, evidenced-based knowledge impartation.

Explanation: Nurse can explain that over 60% of patients treated with chemotherapy develop anemia. Blood transfusion mandates matching of the blood types so that the donor and the recipient are compatible in their blood types. There is no other matching between the blood components and the recipient such as race, ethnicity, religion, gender, etc. Matching the donor product to the recipient is crucial in avoiding serious transfusion reactions. Provide assurance that she will be monitored throughout the procedure. She is also advised for dietary modification with appropriate supplemental therapy with folic acid, vitamin B₁₂ and iron supplementation to correct nutritional deficiencies. Nurse also explains that if anemia is not managed early what serious complications it will lead to.



SUMMARY

Sociology is the systematic study of social behavior and human groups. It focuses on social relationships; how those relationships influence the people's behavior. In this unit, we studied about the nature of sociological theory, the founder of discipline, theoretical perspectives and relationship of sociology with other social sciences, definitions of sociology by different sociologists and nature, scope of sociology according to formalistic and synthetic school of thought, importance and significance of sociology in nursing. Besides, we also learned about the following:

- There are various eminent social thinkers who contributed enough to term sociology as a science. In 1839, Auguste Comte, a French philosopher coined the term "sociology". Sociology has been considered a recent modern science. Other 19th century thinkers who contributed to sociological insight include Harriet Martineau, an English sociologist; and Herbert Spencer, an English scholar. In the 20th century, the roles of Charles Horton Cooley and Robert Merton are important.
- Govind Sadashiv Ghurye is a well-known figure in intellectual and academic circles for his unique contribution to the field of Indian sociology. M.N. Srinivas, Gail Omvedt, Andre Beteille, G.S. Ghurye, Yogendra Singh, Louis Dumont, A.R. Desai are some of the remarkable sociologists of India. The others who firmly contributed to the development of sociology in India are D.N. Majumdar and N.K. Bose.
- Sociologists make use of all three perspectives, since each offers unique insight into the same issue: The *functionalist perspective* emphasizes the way in which the parts of society are structured to maintain its stability. The *conflict perspective* assumes that social behavior is best understood in terms of conflict or tension between competing groups. The *Interactionist perspective* is primarily concerned with fundamental or everyday forms of interaction, including symbols and other types of non-verbal communication.
- Auguste Comte defines sociology as "Science of social phenomena, subject to natural and invariable laws, the discovery of which is the object of investigations".
- Sociology is general social science: The areas of investigations of sociology are general such as study of human life and human interactions. In contrast to other social sciences, sociology emphasizes the influence that groups can have on people's behavior and attitudes and the way in which people shape society.
- Importance of sociology: It is the science of society; it studies social relationships; study of human behavior in group situation; enriches human culture; important for solution of social problems; social planning, etc.
- Nature: It is an independent social science; individual branch; it studies social phenomena; it is factual; frames law; discovers the cause and effect relationship; its principles are universal and veridical.
- Most of the illnesses have social causes and consequences: Sociology is included in the curriculum of nursing because health is a fundamental right of each and every individual and is a social component. Sociology gives knowledge to deal with the patients and to understand their culture, habit, behavior, customs, traditions, norms, etc. The nurses need to understand the necessity of changing environment. Sociology helps nurses to understand demographic factors and approach the patient in a comprehensive manner; this is important to avoid prejudice and discrimination. The study of sociology is extremely useful to all, more especially in medical and nursing and in the field of social welfare.

ASSESS YOURSELF

Short Answer Questions

1. Write any two definitions of sociology.
2. What do you understand by the nature of sociology?
3. Differentiate between sociology and social anthropology.
4. Define sociology as a social science.
5. Write about the application of sociology in nursing.

Long Answer Questions

1. Discuss sociology and its significance in nursing.
2. Define sociology and explain its nature.
3. Describe sociology as social science.
4. Explain the importance of study of sociology.
5. Discuss the scope of sociology in our society.
6. Explain the meaning and importance of sociology in nursing.

Multiple Choice Questions

1. The science which helps us to understand ourselves, our relationship to significant others and our interaction with environment and how these three things, i.e., individual, significant others and environments are interrelated is known as:

a. Anthropology	b. Sociology
c. Ecology	d. Psychology
2. Who is considered the Father of Sociology?

a. Morris Ginsberg	b. Auguste Comte
c. Max Weber	d. Emile Durkheim
3. The study of humanity which keeps focus on cultural practices, human behavior and environment and its changes is:

a. Sociology	b. Psychology
c. Ecology	d. Anthropology
4. Sociology at societal level mainly deals with:

a. Social institutions	b. Global population
c. Individual beliefs	d. Environment
5. Sociology is a:

a. Natural science	b. Applied science
c. Social science	d. Physical science

Answer Key

1. b 2. b 3. d 4. a 5. c

FURTHER READINGS

1. Gowda Krishne, Sociology for Nurses. 5th edition. Noida: CBS Publishers and Distributors Pvt. Limited: 2009.
2. Kendra Cherry. An Overview of Social Psychology. 5 July 2020; www.verywellmind.com
3. Neelam Kumari, A Textbook of Sociology. 1st edition, S. Vikas and Company Medical Publisher: 2017.
4. Neerja K. P. Textbook of Sociology for Nursing Students. Kundli; JP Brothers Publishers Pvt. Limited: 2005.
5. P. Ganesh., Textbook of Sociology for B.Sc. Nursing. 3rd edition, Emmess Medical Publisher: 2019.
6. Pothen K. P. & Pothen S. Sociology for Nurses. 2nd edition. N. R. Brothers Publisher: 2011.
7. Richard T. Schaefer. Sociology: A Brief Introduction. 6th edition, Tata McGraw-Hill Publishing Company Limited; New Delhi: 2006.
8. Sociology Guide. A Student Guide to Sociology. www.sociologyguide.com



UNIT

II

Social Structure

The term *Social Structure* refers to the way in which society is organized into predictable relationships. In this unit, we will study social structure and its effects in our social interactions. What do determine a person's status in a society? How do our social roles affect our social interactions? What is the place of social institutions such as family, religion, and government in our social structure? This unit considers the impact of groups, institutions, association and organizations on social interactions. The unit also explores the lifelong nature of socialization process, as well as important agents of socialization. Analyze how a society manages to control its members and how it convinces them to conform to its rules and regulations. Finally, we will examine the process of social change, with special emphasis on the technological advances. We will also learn the importance of social structure in nursing profession.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

On completion of this unit, the students will be able to:

- Define social structure and its elements.
- Discuss theories on relationship between individual and society.
- Describe social groups its meaning, characteristics, functions and classification.
- Explain about social processes and its types.
- Understand the meaning, importance, characteristics, types, process and agencies of socialization.
- Interpret the social change, its nature, process, factors influencing social change and role of nurse in process of social change.
- Discuss structure and characteristics of rural, urban and tribal community.
- Identify major health problems in rural, urban and tribal communities.
- Develop understanding about importance of social structure in nursing profession.

UNIT OUTLINE

- » Introduction
- » Social Structure in Global Perspective
- » Lenski's Sociocultural Evolution Approach
- » Definition of Social Structure
- » Elements of Social Structure
- » Individual and Society
- » Society
- » Community
- » Association
- » Institutions
- » Social Groups
- » Other Group Classification
- » Social Processes
- » Social Isolation
- » Socialization
- » Social Change
- » Structure and Characteristics of Rural Urban and Tribal Community
- » Tribal Community
- » Importance of Social Structure in Nursing Profession

KEY TERMS

Accommodation: “The term accommodation refers predominantly to the process in which man attains a sense of harmony with his environment”.

Achieved status: An achieved status comes to us largely through our own efforts and hard work.

Agrarian societies: The last stage of preindustrial development is the agrarian societies which emerged about 5,000 years ago. The comparative permanence and greater surpluses of an agrarian society allow or permit members to create artifacts such as statues, public monuments, and art objects and to pass them on from one generation to the next.

Ascribed status: An ascribed status is assigned to a person by society without regards or consideration of the person’s unique talents or characteristics. Generally, this assignment takes place at birth; thus, a person’s racial background, gender, and age are all considered ascribed statuses.

Assimilation: “Assimilation is the process whereby individuals or groups once distinct or diverse in nature become similar and identified in their interest and outlook”.

Association: Association is an organized group. People unite together to fulfil certain activities or short term and long-term goals.

Community: Community is a social group with some degree of ‘we feeling’ and ‘living in a given area’.

Competition: “Competition is the striving two or more persons for the same goal which is limited so that all cannot share”.

Conflict: “Conflict is a process of economic development, a revolutionary change by class struggle between labors and capitalists.”

Cooperation: “Cooperation is the continuous and common endeavor of two or more persons to perform a task or to reach the goal that is commonly desired”.

Groups: In sociological terms, a group is any number of people with similar norms, values, and expectations who interact or act together with one another on a regular basis.

Gemeinschaft: The Gemeinschaft is typical of rural life. It is a small community in which people have similar backgrounds and life experiences. Virtually everyone knows one another, and social interactions are intimate and familiar, almost as among kinfolk (nearest and dearest).



Unit II Social Structure

Gesellschaft: The Gesellschaft is an ideal community that is characteristics of modern urban life. In this community, most people are strangers who feel little in common with other residents. Relationships are governed by social roles that grow out of immediate or instant tasks, such as purchasing a product or arranging a business meeting.

Horticultural societies: Horticultural societies, in which a person plants seeds and crops rather than merely subsists on available foods.

Industrial society: An industrial society is a society that depends on mechanization to produce its goods and services. Industrial societies rely on new inventions that facilitate agriculture and industrial production, and on new sources of energy, such as steam.

Institution: "An institution is the organization of several folkways and mores into one unit, which serves a number of social functions".

Postmodern society: A postmodern society is a technologically sophisticated society that is preoccupied with consumer goods and media images.

Preindustrial society: The first type of preindustrial society to emerge in human history was the hunting-and-gathering society, in which people simply rely on whatever foods and fibers are readily available.

Reference group: Individuals use a standard for evaluating themselves and their own behavior known as a reference group.

Social change: Social change is significant alteration over time in behavior patterns and culture, including norms and values.

Social group: "Social group is a collection of human beings who are brought into social relationship with one another".

Social isolation: Social isolation can be defined structurally as the absence of social interactions, contacts, and relationships with family and friends, with neighbor or an individual level, and with "society at large" on a broader level.

Social networks: A chain of social relationships that link a person directly to others and through them indirectly to still more people.

Social process: People constantly interact with each other based on social situation, their interpretation and shared pre-existing expectations. These modes of interaction are referred to as social processes.

Social role: A social role is a set of expectations for people who occupy or get engaged in a given social position or status. Roles are significant components of social structure.

Social structure: "Social structure is the term applied to describe a particular arrangement of interrelated institutions, agencies and social patterns as well as the status and role which each person assumes in groups".

Socialization: Socialization is a process of learning that enables the learner to perform social roles and ability to participate in a social system.

Society: "Society is the sum of formal relations in which individuals are associating together or bounded together".

Sociocultural evolution: This term refers to the "process of change and development in human societies that results from cumulative growth in their stores of cultural information".

Tribal community: Tribal population have some specific characteristics which are entirely or exclusively different from others tribes. They are simple people with unique customs, traditions and practices. They lived a life of isolation or you can say that geographical isolation.

Urban community: Urban community has a limited area, a local government and certain striking traits are quite different from the rural community.

Village community: "The group of people living permanently in a definite geographical boundary is called a village community".

Vested interest: Social economist Thorstein Veblen (1857-1929) coined the term vested interest to refer to those people or groups who will suffer in the event of social change. For example, the American Medical Association (AMA) taken strong stand against health insurance and professionalization of midwifery.

INTRODUCTION

Social structure is the combination of various components such as activities, people and places. While all of these components are required to define a social structure; the nature of each component is different for every person and can change for each person, as affected by a variety of external influences. Because every individual needs to work together, combine and organize for specific purposes, so that no man lives to himself. These unities of effort or attempts are necessary to make society.

The social structure is the way a society is organized into expected relationships and interactions; consists of many parts or institutions like family, schools, factories, offices, governmental and nongovernmental organizations law, police, and health care facilities, etc. Social structure plays an important role to know the nature of society and relationships between people.

SOCIAL STRUCTURE IN GLOBAL PERSPECTIVE

Modern societies are complex, especially compared to previous or earlier social arrangements. Sociologists Emile Durkheim, Ferdinand Tonnies, and Gerhard Lenski developed ways to construct modern societies with simpler forms of social structure.

Durkheim's Mechanical and Organic Solidarity

Durkheim described that social structure of society depends on the division of the labor in a society. It mainly focuses upon mechanism of task carried out in society. For instance, preparation of food can be performed by an individual or group of people. However, in modern societies, the cultivation, to retailing of a single food item are performed by many people. In societies in which many people collectively perform a task cohesiveness develops. Durkheim called this cohesiveness as mechanical solidarity, implying that all individuals perform the similar or identical tasks. In such society all people perform same type of work like food preparation, cultivation, and rearing of children. for instance, in Chanderi village of Madhya Pradesh all villagers weave a particular type of weaving called Chanderi, therefore every individual does the same task in this village.

As societies progressed technologically, they initiated greater division of labor. The person who lays down the foundation of home is not the same person who puts on roof of home. Popularity of specialization, has promoted job specification. Even in manufacturing a single item, such as mobile phone required multiple people and expertise. It promoted interdependence which is must for group survival. In Durkheim's expressions, mechanical solidarity is substituted by organic solidarity, a collective consciousness resting on the need a society's members have for each other, in the same way as organs of the human body.

Tonnies Gemeinschaft and Gesellschaft (Table 2.1)

Ferdinand Tonnies (1855-1936) was native of Germany. He has witnessed the rise of an industrial city during the late 1800s . He mentioned that the city undergone a huge change from the ideal of a close-knit community,

TABLE: 2.1: Comparison of the gemeinschaft and gesellschaft

Gemeinschaft	Gesellschaft
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Rural life typifies this form. People share a feeling of community that results from their similar or equivalent backgrounds and life experiences. Social interactions, including negotiations, are intimate and familiar. People maintain a spirit of cooperation as well as unity of will. Tasks, responsibilities and personal relationships cannot be separated. People place little emphasis or importance on individual privacy. Informal social control predominates. People are not very tolerant or open-minded about deviance. Emphasis is on ascribed statuses. Social change is relatively limited. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Urban life typifies this form. People have little sense of commonality. Their differences appear more striking and remarkable than their similarities. Social interactions, as well as negotiations, are likely to be impersonal and task-specific. Self-interest dominates. The task being performed is paramount or dominant; relationships are subordinate. Privacy is valued. Formal social control is evident. People are more tolerant and open-minded about deviance. Emphasis is on achieved status. Social change is very evident or obvious, even within a generation.

which Tonnies termed a Gemeinschaft, to that of an impersonal mass society, known as Gesellschaft. The **Gemeinschaft** is actually a rural life. It is a tiny community in which people have similar interest and life experiences. Everyone knows one another, and social interactions are intimate and familiar. A sense of commitment among members is vital in this community. Social control in Gemeinschaft is maintained through informal means such as moral persuasion, gossip, and even gestures. These techniques work because people seriously care how others feel about them. As the group is homogenous so social change is relatively less in the Gemeinschaft; the lives of one generation may be quite similar to other generation.

In distinction, the **Gesellschaft** is an ideal community typically of modern urban life. In this community, most people are stranger. Relationships are governed by social roles that grow out of immediate tasks, like purchasing a good or arranging a business conference, etc. group. People are self-centered and has different sets of opinion on a common issue. Social control is maintained by formal techniques, such as law and punishments. Social change is an integral aspect of life in the Gesellschaft; it can be obviously within a single generation.

However, the more intimate relationships of the *Gemeinschaft* come at a price. The prejudice and discrimination found there can be quite confining; ascribed status such as family background often outweighs a person's unique talents and achievements. In addition, the *Gemeinschaft* tend to distrust or doubt individuals who seek to be creative or just to be different.

LENSKI'S SOCIOCULTURAL EVOLUTION APPROACH

Sociologist Gerhard Lenski takes a very different view about society as well as about social structure. To a certain extent than distinguishing between two opposite types of society, as Tonnies carry out, Lenski perceives human societies as undergoing a process of change characterized by a dominant pattern known as *Sociocultural evolution*. This term means that "process of change and development in human societies that results from cumulative growth in their stores of cultural information".

In Lenski's viewpoint, a society's level of *technology* is critical to the way it is organized. Lenski identify technology as "cultural information about how to use the material resources of the environment to satisfy human needs and desires". The existing or available technology does not completely define the form that a particular society and its social structure take. Nevertheless, a low level of technology may limit the degree to which a society can depend on such things as irrigation or complex machinery. As technology advances, Lenski writes, a community evolves from a preindustrial to an industrial and finally at least a post-industrial society.

Preindustrial Societies

The first type of preindustrial society to emerge or come into view in human history was the *hunting-and-gathering society*, in which people simply rely on whatever foods and fibers are readily available. Technology in such societies is minimal. People organized in groups, people move constantly and continuously in search of food. There is little division of labor into specialized tasks. Hunting-and-gathering societies are self-possessed and composed of small, widely-dispersed groups. Each group consists almost entirely of people who are related to one another in maximum aspects of life. As a result, kinship ties are the source of authority and influence, and the social institution of the family takes on particularly important role. Social differentiation within the hunting-and-gathering society is based on ascribed statuses such as gender, age, and family background. Since resources are scarce or insufficient, there is relatively little inequality in terms of material goods. By the close of 20th century, hunting-and-gathering societies had virtually disappeared. *Horticultural societies*, in which a person plants seeds and crops rather than merely subsists on available foods. Members of horticultural societies are much less nomadic than hunters and gatherers. This type of society places greater emphasis on the production of tools and household objects. The last stage of preindustrial development is the *agrarian societies* which emerged about 5,000 years ago. The comparative permanence and greater surpluses of an agrarian society allow or permit members to create artifacts such as statues, public monuments, and art objects and to pass them on from one generation to the next.

Industrial Societies

It depends on mechanization of production of goods and services. Industrial societies based on new discoveries that enable agriculture and industrial production, and on new sources of energy, such as solar. Due to industrial revolution, a new form of social structure emerged. Many societies underwent a permanent shift from an agrarian-oriented economy to an industrial based. In a family each person has expertise in one or another skill and most of them works in an industry. Industrialization had peculiar social consequences. Families and communities could not keep on functioning as self-sufficient units. They became interdependent. Individuals, villages, and regions began to exchange goods and services to become independent.

Postindustrial and Postmodern Societies

Sociologist Daniel Bell (1970) wrote and discussed the technologically advanced *postindustrial society*, whose economic system is operated on primarily in the information exchange system. The main output or productivity of a postindustrial society is services rather than manufactured goods. Majority of people involved in occupations dedicated to the education, creation, or dissemination of ideas and information. Jobs in fields such as mass media, public relations, human resources, and digital information systems would be classical representation of a postindustrial society. A *postmodern society* is a technologically-driven society that is blended with consumer goods as well as mass media images. Such society consumes goods and information on a mass scale. Postmodern theorists obtain a global perspective, believing the ways that culture has no boundaries.

DEFINITIONS OF SOCIAL STRUCTURE

The term ‘social structure’ refers to the way in which society is organized into predictable relationships. On other hand, social structure refers to the enduring orderly and patterned relationship between the elements of a society.

- According to **Talcott Parsons**, “Social structure is the term applied to describe a particular arrangement of interrelated institutions, agencies and social patterns as well as the status and role which each person assumes in groups”.
- According to **Ginsberg**, “Social structure is concerned with the principal form of social organizations, like the types of groups, associations and institutions and a complex of these which constitute societies”.
- According to **Karl Mannheim**, “Social structure refers to the web of interacting social forces from which have raised the various modes of observing and thinking. Social structure is an abstract and intangible phenomenon. Individuals are the units of association and institutions are the unit of social structure”. These institution and associations are interrelated in a particular arrangement and thus create the pattern of social structure.
- **S. F. Nadal** stated that structure refers to a definable articulation and ordered arrangement of parts. It is related to the outer aspects or the framework of the society and is totally unconcerned with the functional aspects of society”.

He has thus emphasized that the social structure refers to the network of social relationship which is created among the human beings when they interact with each other according to their statuses in accordance with the pattern of society”.

The Indian social structure is characterized by unity and diversity. People of all the great religions of the world live here. People see diversity in cultures and social behavior, and the caste system is an organizing principle of Indian society. This principle is changing in the urban areas where class is replacing caste.

ELEMENTS OF SOCIAL STRUCTURE

We can examine expected and predictable social relationships in terms of five elements: statuses, social roles, groups, social networks, and social institutions. These elements make up social structure just as a foundation, walls, and ceilings make up buildings structure. The elements of social structure are developed throughout the lifelong process of socialization (Fig. 2.1).

Statuses

Sociologists use the term status to refer to any of the full range of socially defined positions within a large group or society, from the lowest to the highest. Within our society, a person can hold a number of statuses at the same time. Sociologists observed some statuses as ascribed and others as achieved. An *ascribed status* is assigned to a person by society without regards or consideration of the person’s unique talents or characteristics. Generally, this assignment takes place at birth; thus, a person’s racial background, gender, and

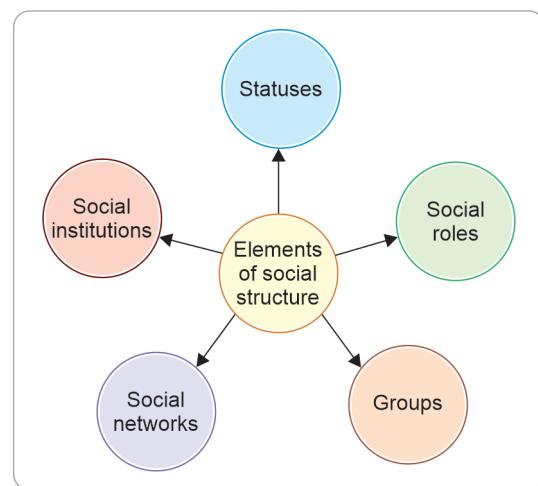


Figure 2.1: Elements of social structure

age are all considered the same as ascribed statuses. Unlike ascribed statuses, an *achieved status* comes to us largely through our own efforts and hard work. We must do something to acquire or get an achieved status—go to school, learn a skill, establish a friendship, invent a new product. Our society gives such importance or attention to race and gender that they often dominate our lives.

Social Roles

Throughout our lives, we earn different positions and sociologist called it social roles. A ***social role*** is a set of expectations for people who occupy in a given social status. Roles are important components of social structure. According to perspectives from functionalist roles contribute to a society's stability by enabling members to anticipate the behavior of others and to pattern their own actions accordingly. However social roles can also inhibit if they restrict people's interactions and relationships. For example, if we view a person only as a 'nursing officer' or 'nurse supervisor' it will be difficult to relate to him or her as a friend or neighbor.

Groups

A ***group*** is any number of people who follow similar norms, values, and expectations, and who interact or act together with one another frequently. For example, members of a health team, a business office, a musical band constitute a group. Such group is a very essential part in a society's social structure. Our social interactions take place within groups to a great extent and are influenced by their norms and sanctions. New technology has broadened or expanded the definition of groups to include those who interact electronically. Groups do not merely serve to define other elements of the social structure, like roles and statuses; they also link the individual with the larger society we all belong to a number of different groups, and through our acquaintance make connections with people in different social circle.

Social Networks

A chain of social relationships that link a person directly to others and through them indirectly to more people. These connections are known as social network. ***Social network*** may constrain people by limiting the range of their interactions, yet network may also empower people by making available to them vast resources (Lin 1999). These kinds of contacts—even those that are weak and distant—can be crucial in establishing social networks and facilitating the transmission of information. With progresses in technology, we can now maintain social networks electronically; we don't need face-to-face contacts. According to sociologists Manuel Castells views these emerging electronic social networks as fundamental to new organizations and the growth of existing business and associations. One such network, in particular, is changing the way in which people interact.

Social Institutions

The social media, the public system, finance system, the family, and the health care system are all kind of social institutions exist in our society. Social institutions are organized patterns of beliefs and behavior centered on fundamental social needs, like replacing personnel and preserving order. For example, the institution of religious conviction adapts to the segment of society that it serves. A religious agency serves to a specific religion in the society.

INDIVIDUAL AND SOCIETY

Long before, **Aristotle**, the ancient Greek Philosopher, affirmed that man is essentially a social animal by nature. A man has to live in society for his existence, survival, and welfare. Man is a product of group life;

the group socialize with him, converts a neonate into a human being. It is a fact that without belonging to a society or a group, one cannot exist. In almost all aspect of his life man feels the need of society. Biologically and psychologically man compelled to live in a society.

Relationship between individual and society described as:

- **Individual is a core of society:** Just like a body is made up of individual units (cell); the society also made up of units (human beings).
- **Individual and society always go together:** Lots of individual has to function cooperatively for effective functioning as a member in that society. In society, if an individual fails to perform his function other individual may come and occupy and fulfil those functions. But individual cannot survive independently without society. Even though the individual is a product of his society. Social life is an intrinsic need for man. Emotional, intellectual and material developments are impossible without society.
- **Individuals are part of society:** Mike O' Donnell, 1997, stated individuals are the part of society. Without individual society cannot be constructed (Fig. 2.2).
- **Individual and society complementary or supplementary with each other:** Society cannot be made without individuals and individual needs society to function properly and to survive. According to Peter L. Berger, man lives in a member of a group, isolated he ceases to exist. We depend on society not on livelihood but for life itself. "Society not only controls our movements, but also configuration of our own consciousness".
- **Individual and society are inseparable:** The relationship between individual and society is basically social, that the individual cannot develop his personality outside society. Society is real in itself, unique and different from other natural objects. The existence of society has no meaning except as an expression of the lives of individuals.
- **Individual and society necessary to maintain harmony with environment:** The environment is anything that surrounds us or those things which, though distinct from us, affect our life or activity in some way. The relation of life and environment is extremely friendly. E.J. Ross defines environment as "any external force which influences us". To maintain harmony or balance with the environment, existence of both individual and society is crucial.
- **Society not only controls our movements but form our identity, our thought and our emotions:** According to Peter Berger, the structures of society become the structures of our own consciousness. Society does not stop at the surface of our skins. We are entrapped by our own social nature.
- **Society is external to ourselves, it encompasses our entire life:** According to Emile Durkheim, society confronts us as an objective fact. Society is external to us. It encompasses our entire life. The institution of society molds our actions and even shapes our expectations. We are situated in society not only in space but also in time. Our society is a historical and chronological entity that extends beyond the temporary life of any individual.
- **Organization of groups:** According to John Holmwood, Human beings are social animals and organize their activities in groups. The word or phrase "society" is used to describe a level of organization of groups that is relatively self-contained.

Theories on Relationship Between Individual and Society

Human beings are social animals. They live in social groups in communities and in society. Human life and society almost go together. Human beings cannot live without society.

There are two main theories regarding the relationship of the individual and society (Fig. 2.3).

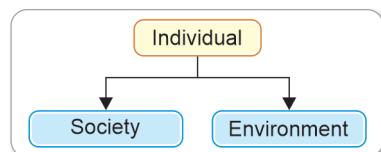


Figure 2.2: Relationship between individual and society with environment

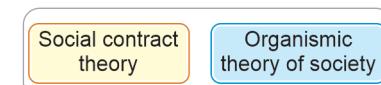


Figure 2.3: Theories on relationship between individual and society

I. Social Contract Theory

The social contract theory throws radiance on the origin of the society. According to this theory, all human beings are born free, independent and equal. Society came into reality or existence because of the agreement entered into by the individuals. The classical and traditional representatives of this school of thought are Thomas Hobbes, John Locke and Jean Jacques Rousseau.

- **Thomas Hobbes:** According to Thomas Hobbes's opinion that creation of society is due to protection of human beings against the consequences of their own nature. Human beings in the state of nature were in perpetual conflict with their neighbors on account of their essentially selfish nature. The life of human beings was solitary poor, deprived, nasty, and brutish and short". Every human being was an opponent to each other's. Hobbes in his book *Leviathan* has clarified that human beings found nothing but unhappiness in the company of others. People make social contract to sustain peace and property in the society. By mutual agreement they decided to surrender their natural rights into the hands of one with authority to command. The agreement was of each with all and of all with each other. The agreement became vital in binding whole community as perpetual social bond.
- **John Locke** opined that human beings in the state of nature were relishing an ideal freedom free from all sorts of rules and regulations. The state of nature was a state of peace, goodwill, benevolence, mutual support and preservation. But there was no standard system of law, justice, and fair dealing. Hence, to lead the peaceful life free from corruption and violence by deteriorate human beings, societies are formed. In order to escape from this and to gain certainty and security, human beings made a contract to enter into civil society or the state. Locke called this contract social contract. This contract put an end to the state of nature and substituted it by civil society. According to Locke, the social contract later transformed into the governmental control. The governmental contract was constructed by the society when it established a government and selected a ruler to get rid of the embarrassments of ill-condition.
- **Jean Jacques Rousseau**, the French writer of the 18th century in his famous book "The Social Contract", described those human beings in the state of nature were a noble savage who led a life of primitive simplicity and tranquil happiness. They were independent, content, self-determining, self-sufficient, healthy and free from any fear. It was only primordial instinct and sympathy which bonded them together. Human beings enjoyed a pure, blissful, innocent life of perfect freedom, fairness and equality in the state of nature. But these conditions were short lived. Population increased and reason was dawnd. Simplicity and relaxing happiness vanished. Families were established, institution of property emerged and human inequality emerged. Human thinking was confined to ownership . Consequently, war, murder, conflicts became the order of the day. It is the origin of the construction of a civil society. Natural freedom was replaced by civil freedom through a social contract. As a result of this contract, a group of individuals became a cooperative unity, a civil society.

Criticism: The social contract theory has been widely criticized;

- Historically, the theory to be a mere fiction. It is irrational to think of man entering into contracts during the time when he was extremely simple, ignorant and brutal.
- The theory is far from facts. "The State of Nature" is an imaginary concept as it actually never existed.
- The theory says that contract took place in order to provide individual safety and security of property. But the laws of those days were more communal than individual. According to Sir Henry Maine contract is not the commencement or beginning of society but the end of it.
- For a contract there should be at least two parties, there cannot be something like a one-sided contract as convinced by Hobbes.
- Concepts of liberty cannot be in the state of nature—"Rights arise only in a society". Therefore, the law is unscientific and fallacious.

II. Organismic Theory of Society

This view, at least as ancient as the contract idea, conceives society as a biological system, a greater organism, alike in its structure and its functions. This theory can yet be dated back to Plato and Aristotle. Plato evaluated society and state to a magnified human being. He divided society into three classes of rulers, the warriors and artisans based upon the three faculties of the human soul that is wisdom, courage and desire. Aristotle represents a comparison between the symmetry of the state and symmetry of the body and firmly held that the individual is an intrinsic part of society. The parallelism between an individual organism and social organism has been worked out to the minute's possible extent by Herbert Spencer during the recent times. They tried to analyze the structure and function of society in contrast with those of an organism.

- **Views of Herbert Spencer:** English social philosopher Herbert Spencer has been the chief exponent or supporter of this theory. He believed that society is an organism and it does not differ in essential principle from the other biological organisms. The attributes of an organism and the society, he maintained, are similar or parallel. Both exhibit the same process of expansion or development. The animal and social bodies, Spencer acknowledged, begin as germs, all similar and simple in structure. As they grow and develop, they become unlike, different and complex in structure. Their course of development is the same, both moving from similarity and simplicity to dissimilarity and complexity.
Spencer gives striking structural equivalence between society and organism. He pronounces, society, too, has three systems corresponding to the:
 - Sustaining system
 - The distributor system
 - The regulating system

The sustaining system: An organism consists of mouth, throat, stomach and intestines. It is by means of this system that food is digested and the whole organic machine is sustained. Societies have possession of sustaining system or the productive system made up of the manufacturing districts and agricultural areas.

The distributors system: It is based on the concept of the anatomical structure of human body. In our body, heart, blood vessels and lymphatic system are distributors. Similarly, society the wholesalers, retailers, bankers, railway and social media and others may correspond to the distributor or vascular system of an organism. Individuals are like human cell in society. And what the tissues, arteries, veins mean to the human body, institutions and associations mean to society.

The regulating system: It is nervous system that controls the whole human body similarly government in society regulates and controls the activities of the individuals. Further, as Spencer mentioned, 'society also sails through the organic processes of birth, youth, adulthood, old age, and eventually, death exactly like human body.'

Criticism

- On the other hand, Spencer holds opposing views from society and human organism in the following important aspects:
 - In organic growth, nature plays a dominant role and an organism naturally grows. Social growth may be checked or stimulated by means of human beings themselves.
 - The units of a society are not fixed in their respective positions like those of the individual organism.
 - In an organism, consciousness is concentrated in the small part of the aggregate, that is, in the nervous system while in a society it is diffused throughout whole aggregate.
- Society is not simply aggregation of individuals; there must be certain kinds of relationships among individuals to survive in a society.

- Cells and individuals differ a lot; cells are fixed and have no independent and intellect.
- A society does not emerge from a union of two organisms also it grows of its own conscious efforts; a society cannot die like an organism. It is almost permanent or stable.

Limitations of theories: Even with their truths, no sociologist subscribes those theories nowadays. The *Social Contract Theory* appears to be more narrative. There may be less evidence available to justify these facts. The *Organismic Theory* is equally imaginary. This analogy is well appreciated but the theory is almost rejected.

SOCIETY

Society is the subject matter of the study of sociology. Sociology is the scientific study of the society. In society, we have groups, associations and institutions. Timasheff has stated that society means “Men in interdependence”. Auguste Comte, the father of sociology said, society as a social organism possessing a harmony of structure and function.

Basic Concept of Society

A concept is a general about all that surrounds us such as objects, person, events, etc., including concrete and abstract experiences. All concepts or ideas represent a category of phenomenon. The term or word “society” is derived from Latin word **societus** means “companionship or friendship”. Man is social being expressive in nature. Human needs society to enjoy group life or social life. ‘Society’ is one of the most inclusive concepts in sociological literature. In fact, the entire field of sociology has grown around the concept of society. The important aspect of society is the system of relationships and the pattern of norms of interaction that arise among the members of the society. Hence, there exists a great deal of close relationships or dealings between man and society. Both are closely interrelated, interconnected, consistent, organized and inter-dependent.

Meaning of Society

The term “society” means relationships; social beings, men, express their nature by creating and re-creating an organization which guides and controls their behavior in countless ways. Society liberates and limits the activities of men and it is a necessary condition of every human being and need to fulfilment of life. An individual is born in a society, then he grows, lives and dies in the society. In the common parlance society has different meanings. For example, high class, low class, middle class society meaning a particular section in the community. Cooperative society means public distributive system. But in sociology, the world society is used with specific meaning.

In fact, the entire field of sociology has grown around the concept of “society”. However, in sociology, the word society is used with a specific meaning and inference.

Definitions of Society

Different definitions of sociology given by different sociologists are:

- “Society is the sum of formal relations in which individuals are associating together or bounded together”.
—**Giddings**
- Society is “A group of people, the complex pattern of norms of interactions that arise among and between them”.
—**Lapiere**
- “Society is the complex of organized associations and institutions within the community”.
—**G.D.H. Cole**

- “A society is the larger group to which any individual belongs”. —**Green**
- “Society is a web of social relationships” —**MacIver**
- “Society is a system of usage and procedures, of authority and mutual aid, of many groupings and divisions controls of human behavior and liberties. This ever changing complex system we call society. It is web of social relationships and it is always changing”. —**MacIver and Page**
- “Society is not a group of people; it is the system of relationships that exists between the individual of the group”. —**Wright**
- “Society is the union itself, the organizations, the sum of formal relations in which associating individuals are bound together”. —**Giddings**
- “Society is an abstract term that connotes the complex of interrelations that exist between and among the members of the group”. —**L.B. Reuter**

So society means the pattern of relationships or interactions among individuals and this pattern may be ever changing according to changing needs of an individual. The connected nature of social relationships is very significant. MacIver and Page have correctly held that it is a web of relations. The individual cannot have an isolated life.

Characteristics of Society

Society is one of the most inclusive concepts in sociological structure. The characteristics of society are as follows (Fig. 2.4):

- **Consists of people:** Society consists of group of people interacting with each other to fulfil basic necessities. We cannot imagine society without people. Man is a product of group life.
- **System of relationships:** Society is a system of relationships that exists between the individuals of the group. Not only a group of people is called society but also when the group of people have interaction with each other than a society is constructed.
- **Likeness and differences:** In smaller societies, the likeness may be based on family, kinship, caste and other groups. But in the modern societies; likeness may be just based on occupation, interest and hobby. The society also needs differences; family is based on gender differences. People have tendency to live in a group, differ in their looks, personality, ability, attitude, tasks, intelligence and faith, etc.
- **Society is dynamic:** Society is dynamic in nature. Changes may take place abruptly or slowly; gradually or suddenly according to changing situations. Man is highly innovative and he changes everything that comes on his way.
- **System of authority:** Society is organized association or institution. We can observe pattern of authority in all spheres of life; in the family, father or mother, in village; headman or Pradhan, in a religious group; priest, in a play team; a captain, and in a nation; ministers and police.
- **System of control:** Society has its own ways and means of social control. In society, we observe existence of all types of social

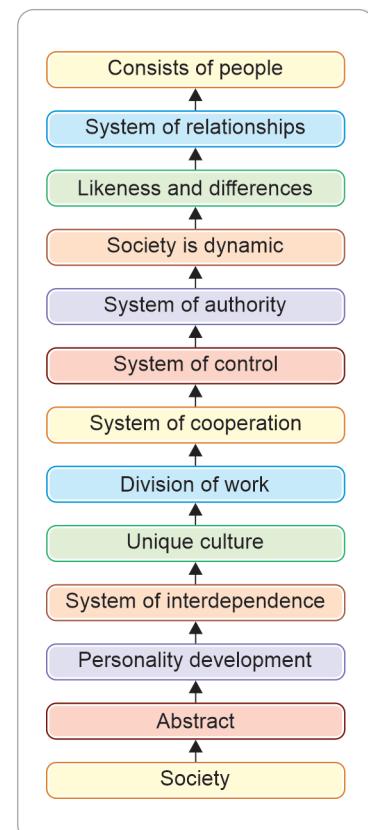


Figure 2.4: Characteristics of society

processes, such as cooperation, accommodation, assimilation competition and conflict. The behavior and activities of the people will be controlled through formal and informal means of social control. Example, customs, traditions, mores, law, rules, regulation legislation, etc.

- **System of cooperation:** Mutual interactions of individuals and mutual relationship between individuals are necessary. People have to cooperate with each other by means of common interest. Cooperation is the base of social life.
- **Division of work:** People hold responsibilities by means of division of work and delegation of authority. Division of work is based on specialty. Individual satisfies their desires and fulfil their interests with joined or continued efforts.
- **Unique culture:** Each society has its own unique or distinct culture. It is the expression of human behavior such as attitude, judgements, morals, values. Both society and culture goes together. Society safeguards our culture transmits to future generations.
- **System of interdependence:** Individual and society are interdependent. Individual and society interact with each other and depend on each other. They are harmonizing, balancing, complementary and supplementary to each other. Interdependence is observed among the groups, communities, societies and nations, and it is essential to meet the social needs. The entire social system is dependent on each other. The family is considered the basic unit of the society. It is the basis of all other social institutions, like religion, politics, economy and education. All these institutions in turn affect the family life.
- **Personality development:** Society shapes the personality of the individual and meets the basic needs and provides comforts. Man lives in the society for his mental, psychological and intellectual development. Society controls individual talent and capacities.
- **Abstract:** The society is abstract; it is intangible. Society is composed of people; people have mutual awareness; interactions and interrelationships among societal members necessary for effective functioning. We can only visualize it and understand its existence. Reuter said "Just as life is not a thing, but a process of living, so society is not a thing but a process of associating".

COMMUNITY

Community includes a variety of associations and institutions. It is somewhat and relatively natural for people living in a particular locality for a longer period of time to develop a sort of likeness or similarity among themselves. They develop common ideas, background, common customs, common feelings, common traditions, etc. They also develop or build-up a sense of belonging together or a sense of "we-feeling". This kind of common social living in a specific locality gives rise to the formulation of community. The examples of community include a village, a tribe, a city or town.

Concept of Community

Community is an organized and planned social life of a locality. We can observe the social relations within the community. People develop attachment and sentimental identification with the area in which they live. It represents the common interest of the group. Thus, community is a ring or circle in which common life survives.

For example, in a village community, all the villagers support each other in the event of need in agriculture, cultivation and in other occupations. They participate in all important occasions which occur in a neighbor's home. They take part in at any special social events, like marriages, deaths, births. They celebrate festivals together, worship common idols and jointly confront all calamities. It instills a sense of belongingness among village community.

Meaning of Community

It has been derived from two words of Latin, namely ‘com’ and ‘munis’. In English ‘com’ means together and ‘munis’ means to serve. Hence, community means to serve together. It is an organization of human beings constituted for the aim of serving together. Community is a people residing within a common geographical area with inter-dependence. It co-exists within the society. It is bound by the regional units. Community is a specific group while society is abstract in nature.

An individual is born and he grows in the community. Community is a mini version of world wherein people live with interdependence and under control. Through mutual interactions they create a sense of togetherness, belongingness and an attachment to their habitat. A community is an organized habitat with strong community sentiments.

Definitions of Community

Community is an organized social life of a locality. Community has been defined in different ways:

- According to **Bogardus**, “Community is a social group with some degree of ‘we feeling’ and living in a given area”.
- “Community is a smallest territorial group that can embrace all aspects of social life”. —**Kingsley Davis**
- “Group of people who live and belong together and share whole set of interests”. —**Manheim**
- According to **Lundeberg**, “Community means a human population living within a limited geographic area and carrying on a common interdependent life”.
- As **Sutherland** points out, “It is a local area over which people are using the same language, conforming to same mores, feeling more or less the same sentiments and acting upon the same attitudes.”
- **Maclver**, defines community as “an area of social living, marked by some degree of social coherence”.
- According to **Ogburn and Nimkoff** “A community is a group or collection of groups that inhibits a locality”.

Community is therefore a concentrated settlement of people in a limited territorial area; within which they satisfy many of their daily needs through a system of interdependent relationships. A community is a self-conscious social unit and a focus of group identification.

Elements of Community

According to **Maclver** and **Page**, there are two elements on the basis of which community is constructed:

1. **Locality**: Locality involves a specific area where people live together and build interpersonal relationship. Living together provides people protection, safety and security. Locality continues to be a basic or crucial factor of community life. Maclver says that due to technology, the community territory might be diffused but locality demarcation is not going to be fade in community.
2. **Community sentiment**: Community sentiments are the fundamental aspects of community. It instills ‘we feeling’ among community. People living in a community lead a common life, speak the same language, similar occupation, closely working with one another, conform to the same mores, feel almost the same sentiment and therefore, they develop a feeling of unity among themselves (Fig. 2.5).

In other words, it can be said that community sentiments have the four important aspects such as we-feeling, interdependence, participation and community control. The community sentiments are developed by we-feeling. The members of community develop we-feeling through their mutual cooperation and interdependence.

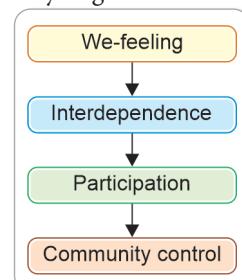


Figure 2.5: Aspects of community sentiments

They contribute to the progress of the community by participating in its activities related to progress. Community controls the behavior of its members. The obedience to community rules brings uniformity among the members of the community.

Characteristics of Community

Community is entirely different from society. Every community grows itself spontaneously and impulsively. A community is not deliberately, intentionally or purposively created. A kind of natural or expected force acts behind the origin and development of communities. Various factors, like traditions, customs, conventions, and religious beliefs bind the individuals together.

Community has some special characteristics as shown in Figure 2.6:

- **Locality:** Locality is a basic factor of community life. A community is a territorial group. It occupies defined geographical area. People will develop social contacts; provide safety, security and protection. Community promotes the people to fulfil their common interests and needs.
- **Community sentiments:** People will stay together, share their common interests. A community sentiment represents a feeling of belonging together. The members develop a sense of “we-feeling”. Without community sentiments community cannot exists.
- **Natural set-up:** Community is established in a normal and natural way. Individuals become members of the group by birth itself; that is voluntary membership.
- **Stability:** A community is not a temporary group like crowd. It is relatively stable. It includes a permanent group life of people in a definite place.
- **Group of people:** Groups of people share the basic conditions of life. Group members can act collectively in an organized manner.

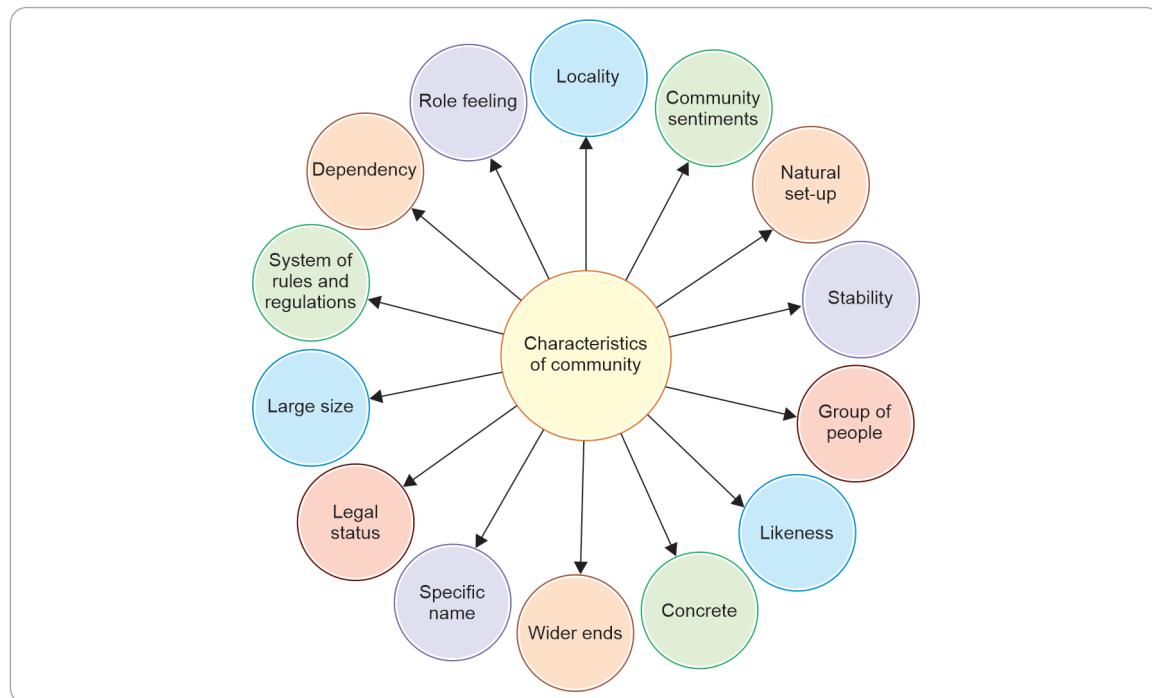


Figure 2.6: Characteristics of community

Unit II Social Structure

- **Likeness:** Language, customs, traditions, folkways and mores are common. People share the common way of life and work through customs and traditions.
- **Concrete:** Community is concrete or real in nature. In community various groups of people live in a particular locality with feeling of solidarity. It essentially includes a permanent life in a definite locality.
- **Wider ends:** The membership of community is wide significance. A community forms a local geographic and economic unit, providing many of the primary goods services for its inhabitants.
- **Specific name:** Each community will have its own specified name indicating the reality in individuality and describes the total personalities.
- **Legal status:** Community has no specific legal status. People are connected with each other through their close relations.
- **Large size:** There are bigger or wider communities which include small community like village, town, cities, tribes, etc. But there are groups, institutions and individual in the community.
- **System of rules and regulations:** In the rural community, informal means of social control is observed; like customs, traditions, culture, whereas in urban community formal means of social control (law, police, court, armed force, etc.) are observed.
- **Dependency:** An individual in community is physically dependent on community for fulfilment and satisfaction of needs.
- **Role feeling:** Each person feels that he has a role to play his own functions to fulfil in the reciprocal exchanges of the social prospect. This feeling involves subordinates to the whole on the part of an individual. This also will increase discipline in their social life.

Types of Community

Different types of community are:

- Rural community—Village
- Urban community—Town and cities
- Tribal community—Tribal areas

Differences between society and community are depicted in Table 2.2.

TABLE 2.2: Differences between society and community

Sl. no.	Society	Community
1.	Society is a large group.	As compared with society, community is limited group.
2.	Web of relationship.	Consists of group of individuals.
3.	Society composed of community.	Community exists in a society.
4.	Society is a system of social relationships. It is abstract.	It is formed by group of human beings. It is concrete.
5.	Society is not limited by geographical area or boundaries.	Community has a definite geographical area.
6.	Society is wider.	Community is smaller than society.
7.	Within the society there are many communities.	Community is limited group as compared to society.
8.	Society is highly complex.	Community is less complex.
9.	Society is an ever changing system.	Community is relatively stable.
10.	Society comprises likeness and differences.	Lots of common things in communities, people share their common interest.

Contd...

Sl. no.	Society	Community
11.	Sentiments are not essential.	Sentiments are essential; people remain conscious of their unity; 'community sentiments' and 'we-feeling' are important elements.
12.	The objective and interests of society are more extensive and varied.	The objective and interests of community are comparatively less extensive and varied.
13.	Society involves both formal and informal means of social regulations.	Informal means of regulations are more important in community.
14.	Society has no name.	Community has its specific name.
15.	In society, group is merely a means to end.	In a community, group members have their own pattern of living.
16.	In the society, members have doctrine, public opinion, contractual solidarity and individual will.	In the community, members have faith, reliance, confidence, customs, natural solidarity and a common will.

ASSOCIATION

An association is a formal group organized for a specialized and specifically assured or known purpose. An association has established rules and procedure; a formalized system of leadership, and common interest among its members. Because of the limited involvement of the members; there is predominance of impersonal or secondary relations among the members of the group.

Concept of Association

Association is an organized group. People unite together to fulfil certain activities or short term and long-term goals. Association also needed to survive in a society with designated aims. It is a cooperative, supportive and mutual unit and having certain rules, regulations, system and policies to achieve the specific goals.

Meaning of Association

An **association** is a group of people organized for a particular purpose or a limited number of purposes. To constitute an association there must be, firstly, a group of people; secondly, these people must be organized one, i.e., there must be certain rules for their conduct in the groups, and thirdly, they must have a common purpose or intention of a specific nature to pursue. Thus, family, church, trade union, cultural group, music club all are the instances of association (Fig. 2.7).

Associations may be formed or created on several bases, for example, on the basis of duration, i.e., temporary or permanent, like Flood Relief Association which is temporary in nature and State which is permanent in nature; or on the basis of power, i.e., self-governing like state, semi-government, like university and non-governmental like club, or on the basis of function, i.e., biological means family, vocational such as Trade Union or Teachers' Association, recreational like Tennis Club or Music Club, Philanthropic like charitable societies.

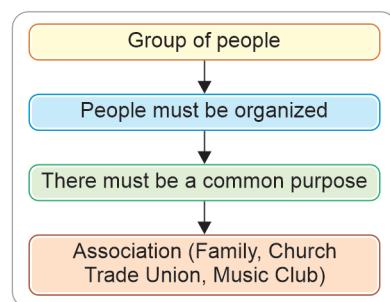


Figure 2.7: Important clause to form association

Definitions of Association

Association is simply a group of people united together to fulfil certain goals. Different views according to different sociologists are discussed here:

- According to **MacIver**, "An organization deliberately formed for the collective pursuit of some interest or set of interest, which the members of it share, is termed association."
- **Ginsberg** calls, "An association is a group of social beings related to one another by the fact that they possess or have instituted in common an organization with a view to securing specific end or specific ends".
- **G.D.H. Cole** stated, "By an association I mean any group of persons pursuing a common purpose by a course of corporative action extending beyond a single act and for this purpose agreeing together upon certain methods of procedure, and laying down, in however, rudimentary a form, rule for common action."
- **Bogardus** stated, "An association usually a working together of people to achieve some purpose".
- According to **D. Lowton** "An association is a number of individuals who interact with each other for a specific and limited purpose, an association of people is held together by clear rules, rather than by personal relationships".

Thus, an association means usually a working or functioning together with collaborative efforts to achieve some specific targets or goals.

Characteristics of Association

The nature or characteristics of association are as follows:

- **Group of people:** Group of people is important to construct association.
- **Organized activity:** Association is an organized group. Organization gives stability and designates the role and status to an individual.
- **Common purpose:** An association is not only a collection of individuals. Individuals who join together have common or mutual interest. For example, people having interest in politics join political association.
- **Concrete:** Association is a group of persons collected together with some particular aim. It is, thus, a concrete or material group which can be seen; while at work. Thus, in divergent to society' Association is a concrete or tangible form of organization of human beings.
- **Stability:** An association may be temporary or permanent. An association, like family, the state is permanent in nature.
- **Established or created:** Association does not grow spontaneously. It has no natural or usual growth and it does not grow itself. They are created by men to satisfy some motives or intentions.
- **Aims and objectives:** No association is formed without any aim. First, there are certain problems existing and the solution of such problems is necessary or extremely important, the aim of the creation of association is to solve such problems. The life of an association is up to the achievement or accomplishment of the aim for which it has been created. The existence of association after his achievement of the aim becomes, immaterial, irrelevant and has no importance. It becomes nominal, insignificant and lifeless body of formalities only.
- **Rules and regulations:** Every association floats on the ground of certain rules and regulations and system of policy and procedures. It also contains specific code of conduct for the members.
- **Voluntary membership:** Membership of an association is voluntary. A person becomes the members because he wants it or he is required in that association.

- **Unity between members:** To fulfil the designated purpose, there must be unity among the members of association.
- **Cooperative attempt of members:** Cooperation for human being is both a psychological and social necessity. All the progresses made by mankind in the various fields became possible because of cooperative effort. So an association is based on the cooperative as well as supportive spirit of its members.
- **Formal ways of social control:** In association there must be formal means of social control exercised. Men have diverse needs, desires and interests and ends, which demand their satisfaction. Hence, they establish different associations to fulfil them. They have a number of associations of different kinds. Thus associations are important to fulfil the needs and purposes, to provide opportunities, to build-up new relations, to get new knowledge and information, to share experience and mutual respect, to save time and workload, and to improve quality of life. Indian Nursing Council (INC) and Indian Medical Association are important associations built to look after the health care services throughout India.

INSTITUTIONS

An institution is an established form or procedure, a characteristic of group activity. It is a system of norms comprises folkways, customs, mores and even law. Individuals are to follow these procedural norms in fulfilling the needs or desires. An institution is also a system of reciprocal role affiliations.

Each institution has a member of folkways, mores, ethnicity, background and laws which all members of society are expected to follow to make their life in society easier. These folkways, ethnicity, mores, background and laws, vary from society to society because institutional norms are different. All individuals follow these norms to some extent for effective function.

Concept of Institutions

The concept of institution is an important, significant and essential one in the social sciences. An institution is an organized and structured way of doing something. The simple words social institutions are the established ways through which the social interaction among the individuals are structured, regulated and controlled for the purpose of satisfaction of human needs. Usually the family, the economic, the educational, the political and the religious institutions are regarded as basic institutions.

Meaning of Institutions

In Sociology, recognized standard usage and procedures are known as *Institutions*. These come up as social expedients in the interest of harmony. It is the recognized and established rules, usage, traditions and conduct. They exist to discipline and control individual behavior in the society.

Institutions are the established ways of doing things. Institution is an abstract thing which refers to those rules and regulations, norms and values, conducts, which come into being through social interaction and subsequently regulate the behavior pattern of the members of the society. The well-known or established ways of doing things not only bring unity among the members of the society but also help the members to predict the behavior of others.

Definitions of Institutions

All individuals follow certain norms for useful social function in the society.

- According to **MacIver**, “an institution is a set of formal, regular and established procedures, characteristic of a group or number of groups that perform a similar function within a society. In short, an institution is an organized way of doing something”.

Unit II Social Structure

- **Barnes** defines social institution as “the social structure and machinery through which human society organizes, directs and executes the multifarious activities required to satisfy human needs”.
- According to **Kingsley Devis**, “An institution is a set of interwoven folkways and mores and law built around one or more functions”.
- **A.W. Green** stated, “An institution is the organization of several folkways and mores into one unit, which serves a number of social functions”.
- **Morris Ginsberg** opined “Institutions as reorganized and established usage governing the relations between individuals and groups”.

Thus, Institutions is a means of social control, controlling the behavior of an individual in a society through established rules and regulations.

Characteristics of Institutions

Characteristics of institutions which are discussed here:

- **Cluster of social customs and tradition:** Institutions are made up of customs, traditions, mores, rules systematized into a functioning unit. An institution is a set of organization of rules, conduct and behavior. It is manifested through social activity and its material products. In other way, the institution functions as a unit in the socio-cultural system perceived as a whole. Each institution has an own fairly, distinct, and definite tradition, oral or written. Such tradition projects the purpose, attitude and the behavior of the members. The tradition unites people together into functioning whole through established behavior, common symbols, code of conduct and objectives. Rigid and inflexible tradition become rituals.
- **Universal:** Institutions are universal in nature. They are found in all societies, primitive and civilized. They are as old as human culture and are found in all stages of human development. Everyone is bound to depend upon the social institutions, for provisions and stability of life.
- **Abstract:** Institutions are abstract in nature. They are not visible or substantial things. They are organized system of relationships and functional arrangement of behavior. They include norms of action, ideas, attitudes, customs, etc. They are procedures of activity and not physical entities. Institutions are not group or buildings. Individuals do not belong to the institutions; they are only the followers.
- **Relative degree of permanency:** Our beliefs, conduct and roles are not institutionalized until they are validated and accepted by others over a period of time. Once these beliefs and behaviors get recognition, they become the standard for appraisal of the beliefs and actions of others. In brief, institutions are permanent in nature. But they do change. As new ways of performing things introduce and are found workable, they challenge stability and force or compel institutions toward change. Thus institutions function in harmony with cultural norms.
- **Well-defined objectives:** Institutions have justly, clear and well-defined objectives which are in conformity with the cultural norms. For instance, the institution of marriage has the objective of regulating the network of social relationships.
- **A set of standard norms:** An institution is a set of standardized norms of actions. These norms define proper behavior oriented to the social need. They prescribe the way of doing things. For example, college is an institution and it has its own rules and regulations.
- **Cultural objects of functional value:** Cultural objects aid in the attainment of institutional objectives. The cultural beliefs, code of conduct and values system must facilitate the institutions to achieve their objectives. Cultural objects of functional value such as infrastructure, equipment, furniture are used to accomplish or fulfil the purposes of the institution.
- **Symbols are a characteristic feature of institution:** A symbol may be defined as anything which portrays something relevant. Symbols may be material or non-material in appearance. The institutions can have permanency, identity and solidarity if they have some symbols. Due to symbol, members of that institution feel quite closer and united to each other.

- **Institutions are transmitters of the social heritage:** Social institutions are the great reservoir of the social heritage. Institutions are the fundamental source of life skills in human. The child initially plays a role of general receptivity in the basic and multi-functional institution of the family and in this way get the largest share of the social heritage. He obtains many of the important elements of culture from elder and passes it to next generation.
- **Institutions are resistant to social change:** As patterned forms of behavior, social institutions are more resistant to social change than behavior.

Types of Institutions

Sumner has classified institutions into two main categories:

1. **Crescive institutions:** Crescive Institutions such as property, marriage and religion which originate from mores. These are unconscious in origin. They were also called the most primal or prehistoric institutions.
2. **Enacted institutions:** Such as credit institutions, trade, business and commerce institutions which are deliberately organized for definite drives.

Ballard has distinguished basic institutions from subsidiary institutions.

- **Basic institutions:** The Basic institutions are those which are regarded as being vital for the maintenance of social order in a given society like the Family, the Economic institutions, the Religious Institutions, the Educational and the Political Institutions, Law and government are viewed as basic institutions.
- **Subsidiary institutions:** The Subsidiary or supplementary institutions are not regarded as quite so necessary for the maintenance of social order, for example, recreational centers, clubs, leisure activity and activities.

Chapin has classified institutions with reverence to their generality or restrictions in the society.

- **Universal institutions:** The cultural component involved in general institutions are usually “universals,” for example; family, religion as such is a general institution.
- **Specialties institution:** Some restricted institutions are usually called “specialties.” For example, Hinduism is a kind of restricted institution.

Ross described two types of institutions:

1. **Operative institutions:** Operative Institutions are those of which the main function is to operationalize or look in to the functional aspects of the institution. It aims to attain objective of the institution, e.g. the Institution of Industrialism.
2. **Regulative institutions:** Relative Institutions are organized for the control of behavior. It promotes regulation in the society therefore it helps in maintenance of uniformity law and order. Legal institution, like court is example of regulative institution.

Functions of Institutions

There are various important functions of the institutions (Fig. 2.8). They are as follows:

- **Institutions simplify action for the individual:** Set of different social behavior is combined together and becomes a unified pattern. It happens only due to institution. The participant in an institution is familiarized to go through from one complex set of behavior traits to another toward a familiar goal. One of the most highly unified institutions in modern society is Military and Police establishment. The soldiers learn to go through in orderly manner from one type of behavior to another without hesitancy toward the goal of eliminating enemy.

Unit II Social Structure

- **Institutions helps in fulfilment of basic needs:**

Institutions are the means of satisfaction of basic needs of individuals. For example, the institution of family provides comfort and protections to the child during their childhood period.

- **Institutions provide a means of social control:**

The institutions are the most important and crucial agencies through which the sanctions of the society are brought to bear on the individual. In other words, institutions play a central and vital part in the process of social control. All major institutions, the family, the school, the religious institution, the State, political, and economic inculcate basic values and definitions to the young one. Thus most of the social control that deals with the basic concerns of life is transmitted through the social institutions.

- **Institutions provide a role and status for individuals:**

Some people serve society as government servant. Some would like to serve as a social activist. Someone is exceptionally good at a sport and one could be brilliant in space science. The institutions to a degree provide for the individual the opportunity and chance for the development of his peculiar characteristics and determine his role and status.

- **Institutions provide order to the society:** Institutions enable societies to keep better and continue functioning. It facilitates 'we-feeling' and sense of togetherness.

- **Institutions act as stimulant:** The institutions stimulate certain individuals to react against it and formulate new patterns of behavior. Sometimes individual feels the disharmony, disagreement and conflict between the various institutions. He discovers a new way and convince other about his strong believes. They take less travelled path and set standard for society.

- **Institutions play as harmonizing agent in cultural configuration:** The institutions are not independent or self-governing, but are dependent to each other in a cultural configuration. Majority of the institutions in the system tend to support and hold-up one another and the configuration as a whole. Hence, courtship supports marriage, which in turn, supports the family, all three institutions like law, religion and family being mutually interdependent.

- **Institutions display change as changing needs of society:** Institutions sometimes change as new ways of doing things appear and are found workable, they challenge stability and push or force institutions toward change. Function of the institutions also going for some changes, since they are not static. Like any other part of culture, they change over time. The expanding or intensifying area of state activity, industrialization and the urbanization has compressed the function of the primary institutions in certain respects, while the secondary institutions are on the expansion.

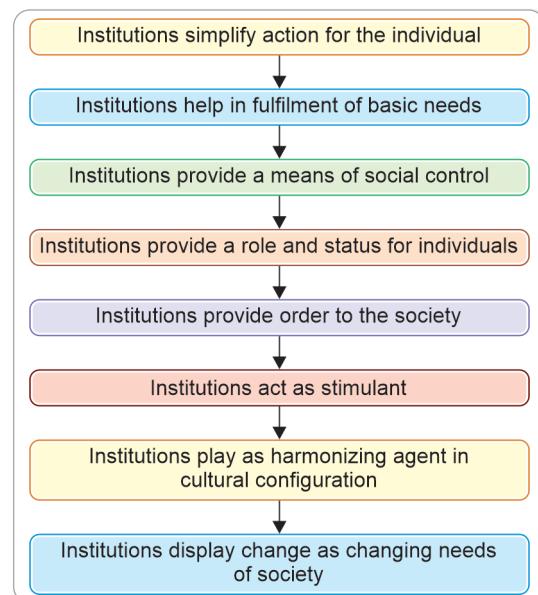


Figure 2.8: Functions of institution

Differences between Association and Institutions

Human beings form associations to fulfil their aims and objectives. Along with this he forms some rules, regulations and procedures which are known as institution. However, following differences are found between the two (Table 2.3).

TABLE 2.3: Differences between association and institution

Sl. no.	Association	Institutions
1.	Association refers to an organized group of people having definite aims.	Institutions are forms of procedures and way of doing things.
2.	Examples: State, Government, Flood relief association, political party are examples of association.	Examples: College, family, marriage, etc. are the examples of institution.
3.	Association lacks stability and temporary in nature.	Institutions are stable and permanent in nature as compared with association.
4.	Association represents human aspects because it is comprised of human beings. When a group of people organize themselves to accomplish or carry out some specific aims association is formed.	An institution refers to a social condition of conduct and behavior. Because institutions consists of rules, regulations, laws, order, policies and procedures.
5.	Associations are concrete in nature because it has its own form.	But institutions are abstract in nature because it does not have a concrete design and have no form.
6.	Associations are things and denote membership. Men form association and live in it but they act through institution.	Whereas institutions are modes or ways of service or conduct of doing things. In other words institution gives life or existence to association.
7.	Association are formed to fulfil man's needs and necessities	An institution grows naturally and spontaneously.
8.	Association is an organized group.	Institution refers to the organized way of doing things and a procedure of working.
9.	Association has specific name by which it is known.	Institutions do not have any name rather it identifies itself through a symbol which may be material or non-material.
10.	Association exercises control in a formal ways of social control.	Institutions exercises control in an informal means.

SOCIAL GROUPS

Society is a web of social relationships. Relationships exist between individuals, between groups and between nations. These social relationships can be classified on the basis of mode of interaction. People constantly interact with each other based on social situation, their interpretation and shared pre-existing expectations. Human beings cannot survive in vacuum. By virtue of nature human beings need multiple people to share thoughts, feelings and ideas. A social group is organized collection of individual who share common goal.

Sociological Concept of Group

Most of us use the term *group* freely to describe any collection of individuals, whether three strangers sharing an elevator or hundreds attending a rock concert. However, in sociological terms a group is any number of people with similar norms, customs, values, and expectations who interact with one another on a regular basis. The important point is that members of a group share some sense of belongings. This peculiar characteristic distinguishes groups from mere aggregates of people. The study of groups has become an important as well as vital part of sociological investigation because they play such a key role in the transmission of culture. As we interact with others, we pass on our ways of thinking and acting – from language and values to ways of dressing and leisure activities.

Meaning of Social Groups

According to **MacIver and Page**, “*Social group* is a collection of human beings who are brought into social relationship with one another”. A social relationship consists of some degree of reciprocity and mutual awareness among the members of the group. Either groups are formed naturally or organized for some particular aims and objectives.

Thus, a social group consists of such members as have reciprocal or mutual relations. The members are bound by a sense of unity and togetherness. Their interest is common; behavior is almost similar. They are bound by the common consciousness of interaction or connections. Viewed in this way, a family, a village, a nation, a political party, government or a trade union is a social group.

Necessity of Social Groups

Living in a group is a natural phenomenon, apart from human being even birds, animals and insects living in a group. Greek philosopher Aristotle remarks, “Man by nature is a social animal”. Group life is essential and unavoidable for human individual. No man lives in isolation. Individuals become humans only in social groups. Neither the individual nor the group alone; showing evidence of all aspects of social life.

Social groups are important for division of labor, for support among members, for effective teamwork as well as for effective functioning of the society. Ultimately social groups are necessary for survival and continued existence of people in a society.

Definitions of Social Group

All societies in the human pursuit have some types of groups.

- According to **MacIver and Page**, “A collection of human beings who are brought into social relationship with one another” called social group.
- According to **Green**, “A group is an aggregate of individuals which persist in time, which has one or more interests and activities in common and which is organized.”
- According to **Williams**, “A social group is a given aggregate of people, playing interrelated roles and recognized by themselves or others as a unit of interaction”.
- According to **Ogburn and Nimkoff**, “Whenever two or more individual come together and influence one another, they may be said to constitute a social group.”
- According to **Bogardus**, “A social group may be thought of as a number of persons, two or more, who have some common objects of attention, who are stimulating to each other, who have common loyalty and participate in similar activities”.

Thus, a social group is a collection of individuals interacting with each other, who have common objects and sense of unity. For example, family, state, neighborhood, play group, political group, government, city, village, school, college, university, bank, factory, trade union, crowd, mob and public, etc.

Some important clauses necessary to form a Group are shown in Figure 2.9:

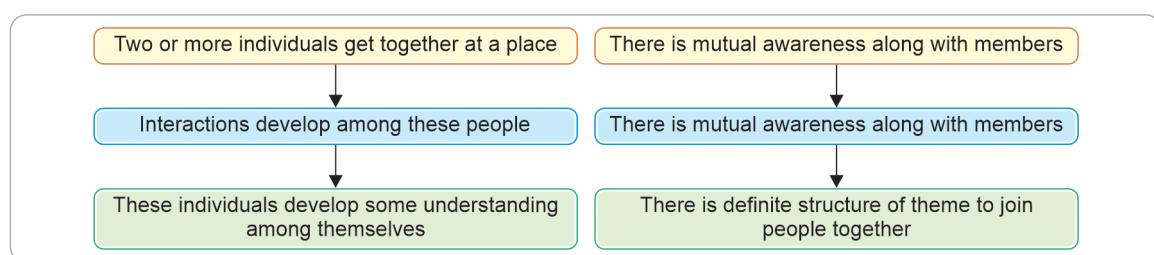


Figure 2.9: Important clauses necessary to form a group

Conditions for Formation of Social Group

There are several conditions important for formulations of social group. These are:

- **Common aims and objectives:** There must be similarity of aims and objectives for the formation of social group.
- **Social relations:** Without people establishing contacts and relationships with each other, social groups cannot be formed or constructed. Social interactions must be essential for group.
- **Prerequisite or requirements:** There must be some prerequisites or requirements necessary to formulate group.
- **Ability to influence each other:** Inter-action or inter-relationship involves mutual influence.
- **Physical presence or commitment toward goal:** In order to form a social group, people should be present physically. Physical presence of people is important to function properly and to achieve the goal, but due to advancement of social media people forming social groups and showing commitment toward goal without influencing physical presence.

Characteristics of Social Groups

The important characteristics of social group (Fig. 2.10) are as follows:

Collection of Individuals

By nature, man is a social animal. Group life is essential and inevitable for human being. No man lives in isolation. Individuals become human only in social groups. The main attribute is the collection of individual least numbers or enormous number of individuals, but there must be particular relationships among them.

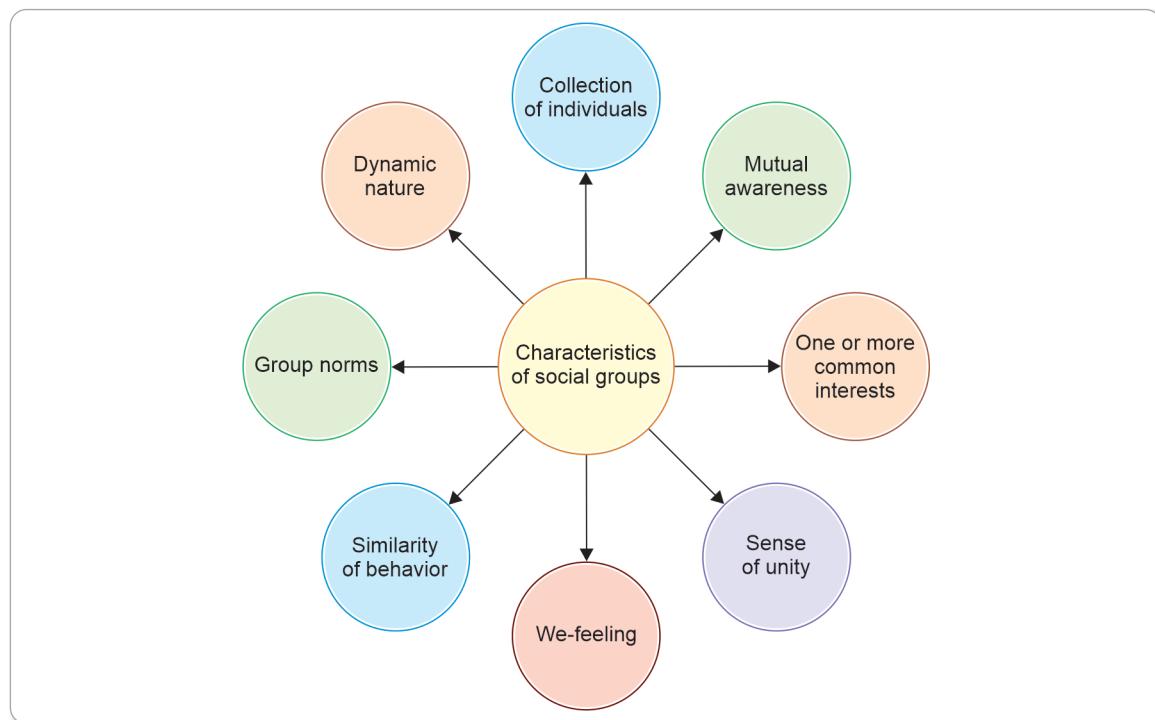


Figure 2.10: Characteristics of social groups



Mutual Awareness

The members of a social group must be mutually related to one another. A more aggregate of individuals cannot constitute a social group unless reciprocal, common, joint or mutual awareness exists among them. Mutual attachment, friendliness and affection, is therefore, regarded as its important and distinctive feature of the group. The members of group are united by sense of unity and a feeling of sympathy. Group members interrelated with each other by give-and-take relationships and mostly having common interest.

One or more Common Interests

Groups are mostly formed for the fulfilment of certain interests. The individuals who form a group should possess and acquire one or more than one common interests and ideals. It is for the realization and understanding of common interests that they meet together. A group always originates, starts and proceeds with a common interest.

Sense of Unity

Each social group requires sense of unity and a feeling of sympathy for the development of a sense of belongingness. The members of a social group build up common loyalty or feeling of sympathy among themselves in all matters because of this sense of unity.

We-feeling

A sense of we feeling means the tendency on the part of the members to identify themselves with the group. They treat the members of their own group as friends and the members belonging to other groups as outsiders from their group. They cooperate with those who belong to their groups and all of them protect their interests with united efforts. We-feeling generates sympathy, understanding, compassion, loyalty and fosters cooperation among members.

Similarity of Behavior

For the fulfilment of common interest, the members of a group behave in a similar way. Social group represents collective behavior. The modes of behavior of the members on a group are more or less comparable.

Group Norms

Each and every group has its own ideals and norms and the members are supposed to follow these rules and regulations. One who deviates from the existing group-norms is severely punished. These norms may be in the form of customs, folk ways, mores, traditions, conduct, laws, etc. They may be written or unwritten. The group exercises some control over its members through the prevailing rules, code of conduct or norms.

Dynamic Nature

The groups may be small or large and may be permanent or temporary and may vary according to the changing need of society or individual. Individual can be a member of many different groups at a time to meet his different types of needs.

Importance or Functions of Social Groups

There are societies and communities in order to form social groups to fulfil certain basic social needs, as well as individual needs. Social groups are important:

- **To ensure continuity of society:** The family group is actually commended with this essential function.
- **To maintain and carry on culture:** Social groups are maintaining culture and transmitting it to the coming generation.
- **As human social system:** Group functions as important units of social system.
- **For regulation and civilization:** Social groups are important for regulation of controlled and well-civilized life.
- **To promote “we-feeling”:** Social groups promotes “we-feeling” among members of group, this is very important for the output.
- **To satisfy gregarious character of man:** Man has a basic need for living in association or in the company of others.
- **To satisfy basic physical, psychological and social needs:** Social groups are important to satisfy basic physical, psychological and social needs of man. For example, the basic needs of man like food, shelter, emotional stability, recreation, religious activity are met in and by the group.
- **For process of socialization:** A social group helps in socialization of an individual. A person is made a human being by long process of socialization. This process starts from the time of birth till the end of life. Many social groups play their significant role in the process of socialization.
- **To provide comfort in adverse situation:** Social groups provide help and comfort in adverse circumstances; such as sickness and death are clear instances when man needs the help of the others.
- **To provide mutual trust and sense of security:** Social groups also provide mutual trust and sense of security. Individuals feel secure and safe in a group situation as compared with isolation.
- **To accomplish new venture:** Social groups also helps individual to reorganize and fulfil new needs. As the society is an ever changing pattern of life, so needs also changed.

Classification of Social Group

Sociologists have made a number of useful distinctions between types of groups—primary and secondary groups, in-groups and out-groups, and reference groups. Various sociologists have classified social groups on different ways are discussed here (Fig. 2.11):

C.H. Cooley classified groups on the basis of kind of contact into **primary and secondary groups**. In primary group, there is face-to-face, close and intimate relationship among the members such as in the family. But in a secondary group, the relationship among the members are indirect, impersonal and superficial such as the political party, a city and trade union, etc.

W.G. Sumner made a division of groups into **in-group and out-group**. The groups with which the individual identifies himself are his in-groups such as his family, tribe, college, occupation, etc. All other groups to which he does not belong are his out-groups.

According to **Sorokin** horizontal groups are those, in which the status of the member is similar, and vertical groups are those in which the status of the members is dissimilar.

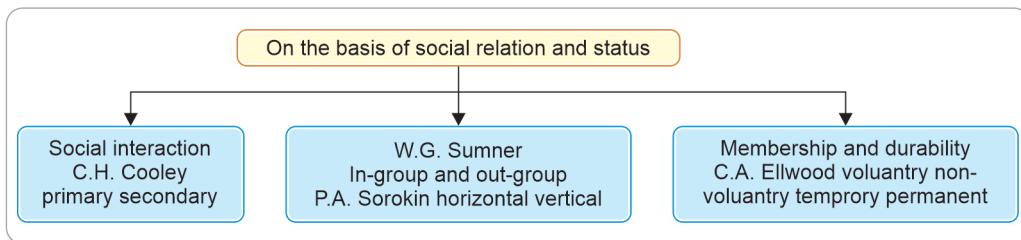


Figure 2.11: Classification of group

According to classification of **Elewood**, voluntary group are those in which members participate out of free will. Involuntary groups are those in which person becomes member automatically, for example, family, village, city, and nation. **Elewood** gives another classification of groups; temporary groups are those which last for relatively very short period. For example, crowd and audience are the temporary group because of short duration. Permanent groups last for longer time. For example, family neighborhood, and community are the long lasting groups.

Burges and Park have classified groups as:

- **Family group:** Groups based on blood relationships and kinship; such as family, ancestry, etc.
- **Language group:** Those who speak the same language form a group; for example, group of people using Malayalam language, people with Panjabi, Marathi language, etc.
- **Racial group:** People with same race form the distinct group; for example, group of Negroes, group of Mongoloids people, etc.
- **Territorial group:** People residing in the same geographical areas; for example, state, nation, village and city.
- **Conflict group:** They are the groups having conflict relation among each other. Usually, the interest of one group is against that of the others; for example, political party group labor union group, etc.

OTHER GROUP CLASSIFICATION

- **Focus group:** Focus groups were expounded by Robert Merton (1987) at Columbia University in the early 1940s. Robert Merton developed it to evaluate the effectiveness of radio advertising. A *focus group* comprises 10–15 people gathered by a researcher to discuss a predetermined topic. It is guided by a moderator, the representatives offer their own opinions on the topic and react to other representative's views. Focus group members are usually rewarded for their participation and their views are recorded. Moderator of focus group seeks views of each member and maintain a sociogram for qualitative or quantitative research.
- **Reference group:** Sociologists call any group that individuals use a standard for evaluating themselves and their own behavior known as a *reference group*. Reference groups have two basic purposes. They serve a normative function or purpose by setting and enforcing standards of conduct and belief. Reference group also performs a comparison function by serving as a standard against which people can measure themselves and others.

Primary Groups

The Primary group is the simplest, common, widespread and universal form of an association. It is nucleus or center point of all social organizations. Primary group is a small group in which a small number of persons regularly come into direct contact with one another. They meet “face to face” for mutual help, companionships, conversation and discussion of common questions. They live in the presence, existence and thought of one another.

For example, family is considered a primary group, in a family, people live together in a close face-to-face relationship.

Definitions of Primary Group

The primary group is a small group in which the members live together with close primary contact. According to **C.H. Cooley** “By primary groups means those characterized by intimate face to face association and cooperation called primary groups; they are primary, in several senses, but chiefly in that they are fundamental in framing the social nature and ideal, of the individual”. Such groups in Cooley’s phrase are “the nursery of human nature” where the essential.

Characteristics of a Primary Group

Primary group possesses certain essential traits. The following are the characteristics of primary group (Fig. 2.12):

Physical Proximity

Physical proximity provides a way for the development of intimate, direct and close relations.

For instance, we may have direct relations with our home helpers or there may not be intimacy or primary group relationship with them. On the other hand, we may built-up contact with our close friends through the correspondence of letter even though we may not have seen for many years. Relationships among primary group members are based on intimacy, familiarity or closeness not on contractual obligations.

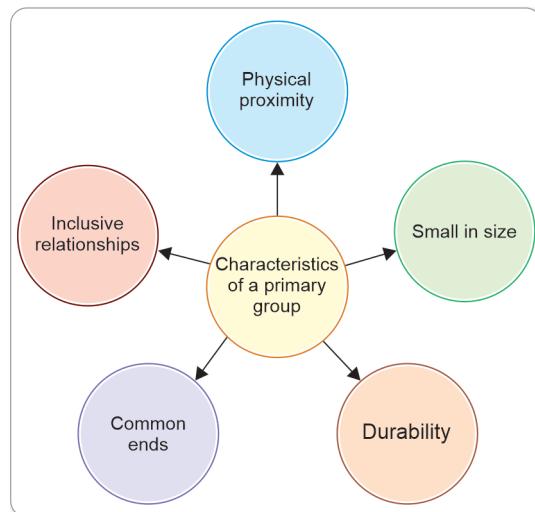


Figure 2.12: Characteristics of a primary group

Small in size

Primary groups are smaller and limited in size. As it is a small group so people have intimacy with each other. The limited or small size of the group promotes the participation of all its members in its common activity. It has better understanding, compassion and fellow feeling among the members.

Durability

Primary group is permanent and everlasting group. Relationship between people in this group are close and durable. All the members of the primary group try to fulfil the condition of continuity or durability of relationship at any cost.

Common Ends

Primary group members possess similar attitudes, and objectives. They strive together for the fulfilment of their common end. Every member tries to promote and uphold the general welfare of his group. The victory, failure, prosperity and adversity of an individual member are shared by all the members of the group.

Inclusive Relationships

In the primary group, primary relationships are non-contractual, non-economic, non-political and non-specialized; they are personal, spontaneous, comprehensive, holistic, sentimental and inclusive.

Primary groups play a pivotal role both in the socialization process and in the development of roles and statuses of each individual in a family. Indeed, primary groups can be instrumental in a person's day-to-day existence and survival. When we find ourselves identifying closely with a group, it is probably a primary group.

Secondary Group

The Secondary groups are of special and extraordinary significance in modern industrial society. Their appearance is mainly due to the growing emergent cultural complexity. Secondary groups are also called "special interest groups" or "self-interest groups". The examples of secondary groups include a city, a nation, a political party, corporation, labor union, cooperative societies, an army, a large crowd, etc. These groups have

no direct bearing among its members. Here members are numerous, too many and too scattered. Here human contacts are superficial, exterior, outward basis, undefined and mechanical.

Definitions of Secondary Group

Different sociologists have defined secondary group in different ways:

- According to **C.H. Cooley**, "Secondary groups are wholly lacking in intimacy of association and usually in most of the other primary and quasi-primary characteristics".
- As **Ogburn and Nimkoff** say, "The groups which provide experience lacking in intimacy are called secondary groups".
- According to **Kingsley Davis**, "Secondary groups can be roughly defined as the opposite of everything said about primary groups".
- **Robert Bierstedt** says, "Secondary groups are all those that they are not primary".
- **H.T. Majumdar** defines secondary group as "In secondary group face-to-face contacts are not present in the relations of members".

We also participate in many groups that are not characterized by close bonds of friendship or companionship, such as large college classes and business associations.

The term secondary group refers to a formal, official, executive, impersonal group in which there is little or no social intimacy or mutual understanding.

All definitions providing same meaning that in secondary group there is no close contact among members. They are only united on the basis to carry out some specific functions to fulfil their needs.

Characteristics of Secondary Group (Fig. 2.13)

The important or main characteristics of secondary group are as follows:

- **Large in size:** Secondary groups are relatively large and huge in size. These groups consist of a very large number of persons. For example, a political party, a trade union, international associations, such as Rotary Club, Lions Club, and the Red Cross Society which consist of thousands of members scattered widely throughout the world.
- **Formality:** The relations of members in a secondary group are of a formal and official type. It does not exercise primary or main influence over its members. Secondary groups exert influence on the members in an indirectly manner. They are controlled by means of formal rules and regulations. Informal means of social control are less successful in regulating the relation of members. Formal social controls such as law, justice, legislation, police, court, etc. are very much important to control or regulate the behavior of the members. Members must follow written procedures and protocols.
- **Impersonality:** Among group secondary relations are impersonal in nature. There is no sentiment, emotions or feelings attached to the contacts. It is not required that each person knows each other. For example, in the large scale factory organization, the members are known to each other as the administrator, boss, the foreman, supervisor, skilled workers, ordinary workers and others.

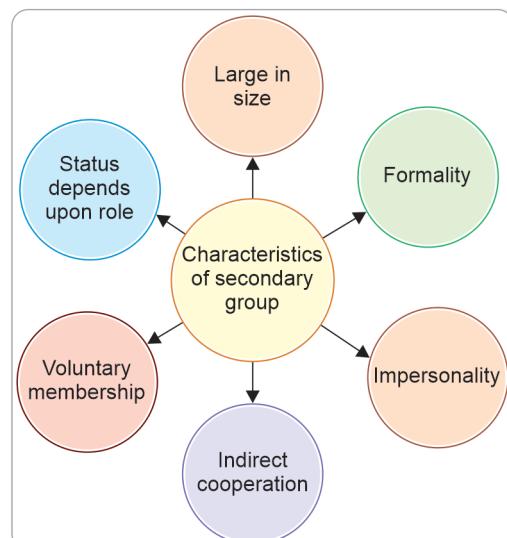


Figure 2.13: Characteristics of secondary group

- **Indirect cooperation:** Indirect cooperation is another characteristic of secondary groups. In it, members do different things interdependently. They do unlike things together. In the large scale organization where division of labor is complex, the members have not only different functions but different powers and politics, different degrees of participation, different rights and obligations.
- **Voluntary membership:** The membership of most of the secondary groups is not compulsory but on voluntary basis. Individuals are at liberty or freely independent to join or to go away from the groups.
- **Status depends upon role:** In secondary groups the status or position of every member depends on his role in the society. The determination of his status is not influenced by ascription or by his birth or personal qualities but on the basis of achievement or the role he plays. For example, the status of the President in a trade union totally depends upon the role he plays in the union and not according to by birth or ascribed status.

Difference between Primary Group and Secondary Group

The individual belongs to number of social groups to fulfil their social functions. The distinction between primary and secondary groups is not always clear-cut. Some social clubs may become so large and impersonal that they no longer function as primary group.

There are some significant points discussed which will help us for easy understanding about primary and secondary groups (Table 2.4).

In-group and Out-group

William Graham Sumner, an American Sociologist in his book “Folkways” made distinction between in-group and out-group from the individual point of view and it is based on preferential bonds (ethnocentrism) among the members of the groups.

TABLE 2.4: Significant differences between primary group and secondary group

Primary group	Secondary group
• Small in size	• Large in size
• Limited in a small area	• Spread in extensive area
• Durable in nature, relatively long period of interaction	• Temporary in nature, relatively short duration
• Close, face to face, direct, intimate and personal relationships	• Distant and formal relationships
• Direct cooperation, friendly	• Indirect cooperation, more formal and impersonal
• Inborn membership	• Membership due to some specific purpose or goals
• Involuntary membership	• Voluntary membership
• Status due to inheritance	• Status depends upon role
• Spontaneous and natural relation	• Impersonal or artificial relation
• Primary groups are as old as human society itself	• Relatively new concern
• Made of mostly blood relatives	• Group members other than blood relatives
• Universal	• Not universal
• Mutual cooperation	• Competition
• Deep ‘we-feeling’ among the members	• No ‘we-feeling’ united with some specific goals
• Intrinsic valuation of the persons and relationships	• Extrinsic valuation of the persons and relationships
• Some emotional depth in relationships	• Relationship generally superficial
• The whole personality of the individual involved in relationship	• Only limited aspects of personality of the individual involved in relationship
• Stable and durable relationships	• Unstable relationships; duration according to accomplishment of goals

According to **Sumner**, "The groups with which the individual identifies himself are his **in-groups**, his family or tribe or gender or college or occupation or religion, by virtue of his awareness of likeness or consciousness of kind". An in-group can be defined as any group or category to which people feel they belong. Basically we can say, it comprises everyone who is regarded as "we" or "us". The in-group may be as narrow as a teenage circle or as broad as an entire society.

The very existence of an in-group entails that there is an out-group that is viewed as "they" or "them". An **out-group** is a group or category to which people feel or believe that they do not belong. The individual belongs or fits to a number of groups which are his in-groups; all other groups to which he does not belong or fit are his out-groups.

In-groupness creates or generates among the members the sense of belonging together which is the core or central part of the group life. An in-group attitude includes some element of sympathy and a sense of attachment, affection to the other members of the group. It embodies the collective pronoun 'we'. The members of the in-group exhibit cooperation, goodwill, teamwork, mutual help and respect for one another's rights.

According to **C.A. Ellwood** on the basis of membership and durability group are classified as voluntary, involuntary, permanent and temporary. The categorization of groups is: economic division such as (low, middle and high economic group); political group such as (ruling and opposition political parties) and religious group such as (Hindu, Muslim, Christian), etc.

SOCIAL PROCESSES

The society has its structural forms—groups and institutions but it is also a dynamic living organization constantly changing and presenting different types of behavior under various conditions. Social processes deal with these functional aspects of human association.

Togetherness is integral part of society. Society is a web of social relationships. Relationships exist between individuals, between groups and between nations. These social relationships can be classified on the basis of mode of interaction. People constantly interact with each other based on social situation, their interpretation and shared pre-existing expectations. These modes of interaction are referred to as **social processes**. Man united by each other through network of relationship. In society how do we meet, greet and enrich our relationship with each other is social process. For instance, a student newly-admitted to nursing college; initiates social life by making new relationship with classmates and others, it is an example of social process.

Meaning of Social Process

The process means no beginning and no end. No beginning because there were antecedent or forerunner actions and no end because there is continuity or link. These processes become social when these are oriented to others or take others into account. Social process is a cyclic process and necessary in the sociological perspectives. These social processes are important for an individual to survive in a society.

Definitions of Social Process

Process is a continuous change taking place in a definite manner through the operation of force. A process may be up or down, forward or backward, toward integration or disintegration. All that is meant by process is the definite step by step manner through which one stage merges with the other.

The definitions of social processes given by different sociologists are:

- According to **Horton and Hunt**, “The term social process refers to the repetitive forms of behavior which are commonly found in social life.”
- According to **Gillin and Gillin**, “By social processes we mean those ways of interacting which we can observe when individuals and groups meet and establish systems of relationships or what happens when changes disturb already existing modes of life”.
- R.M. MacIver** has said, “Social process is the manner in which the relation of the members of a group, once brought together, acquires a distinctive character.”
- According to **A.W. Green**, “Social processes are merely the characteristic ways in which interactions occur”.

Social interaction is the first stage in the making of a social process. When two or more individuals are brought in contact with each other and communication starts between them, an interaction process has started.

Elements of Social Process (Fig. 2.14)

- Sequence of events:** Sequence of events in the social process is of much importance. One event leads to other event; like marathon race.
- Repetition of events:** Repetition of events in social process is common. An event is repeated many times till its achievement for efficacy and effectiveness. For instance, we keep on meeting or doing same events in our day-to-day life.
- Relationship between events:** The events are linked with one another. Social process is the interconnection between events.
- Continuity of events:** Continuity is very essential in social process, for stability and degree of permanence.
- Social results:** Outcome or final result is a final step in social process. For example, we compete for job and giving entrance examination, performing better at each attempt till our goal is achieved.

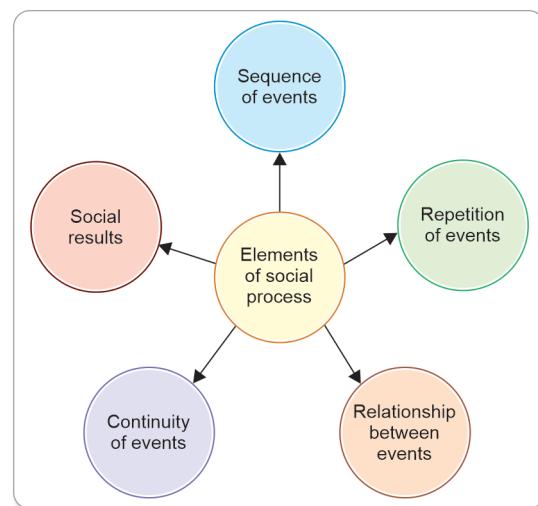


Figure 2.14: Elements of social process

Types of Social Processes (Fig. 2.15)

Basically five social processes are visible in society. They can be broadly divided into two types based on modes of interaction:

- Conjunctive processes:** Cooperation, Accommodation and Assimilation are conjunctive processes. Also known as associative processes, these interactions are positive in nature and bind people together.
- Disjunctive processes:** Competition and conflict are disjunctive processes. Also referred to as dissociative processes, these interactions are considered negative and create hostility in society.

All these processes are universal. Let's understand these processes in detail:

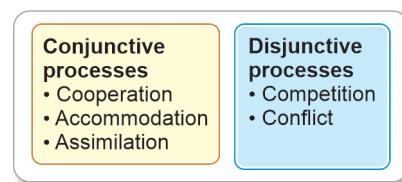


Figure 2.15: Types of social processes

Conjunctive Processes

No society is completely organized associative and dissociative processes are found in all societies.

Cooperation

Society cannot exist without cooperation. Cooperation is required to reach common goals, fulfil human needs and is important for the progress and welfare of society. Cooperation is one of fundamental or elementary processes of social life. It is a form of social process in which two or more individuals or groups work together jointly to achieve some common goals. **Cooperation** is the form of social interaction in which all participants benefited by achieving their goals.

Definitions of cooperation are as follows:

- According to **A.W. Green**, “Cooperation is the continuous and common endeavor of two or more persons to perform a task or to reach the goal that is commonly desired”.
- According to **Merrill and Eldredge**, “Cooperation is a form of social interaction wherein two or more persons work together to gain a common end”.
- In the words of **Fairchild**, “Cooperation is the process by which the individuals or groups combine their effort in a more or less organized way for the attainment of common objective”.

Cooperation involves two elements: Firstly, Common end and Secondly, Organized effort. When different persons have the same goals and also realize that individually they cannot achieve these goals, they work jointly for the fulfilment of these goals.

Types of cooperation: Cooperation is of different types. **MacIver** and **Page** have divided cooperation into two types:

1. Direct
2. Indirect

Cooperation can be **direct**, wherein two or more individuals perform a joint task. For example, it could be completion of a project in school, college or a football team playing together to win.

Cooperation can also be **indirect**, where different people work separately for a common end. Here the delegation of work is based on different capabilities. For example, a car is a final product where different parts of the car are produced by different companies, such as tyres, battery, engine, etc.

According to **A.W. Green** the types of cooperation may be:

- Primary
- Secondary
- Tertiary

Cooperation which exists in primary groups such as family or neighborhood is **primary cooperation**.

Cooperation which exists in secondary groups is **secondary cooperation**. Both these are voluntary in nature and permanent as individual and societies cannot survive without them.

A third type, **tertiary cooperation** exists when larger groups or nations cooperate with each other to achieve goals. For example, a few nations may come together to fight another one or impose economic sanctions together against the opposing one. This type of cooperation is temporary and based on mutual necessities.

- According to **Ogburn** and **Nimikoff** cooperation is divided into three main types:
 1. **General cooperation:** When some people cooperate for the common or general goals then there is cooperation, which is known as general cooperation. For example, cooperation found in cultural functions like (social events, marriage) is the general cooperation.
 2. **Friendly cooperation:** When we want to accomplish the happiness and contentment of our group we provide cooperation with each other, and then this type of cooperation is known as friendly cooperation. For example, dancing, singing, performing leisure time activity with friends, dating, etc.
 3. **Helping cooperation:** When some people work for the victims of famine or flood and feel satisfaction for serving people, this type of cooperation is known as helping cooperation. For example, relief group foundation, helping hand foundation. They work on volunteer basis.

The features of cooperation are:

- It is a universal process; societies cannot exist without cooperation.
- It is conscious process; people understand that to achieve common goals which are necessary for everyone's welfare they have to come together.
- It is continuous; cooperation between members of society is required at all times.
- People are personally involved in cooperation, whether as individuals or as groups.
- It is an associative process and brings people and groups of society together.
- It is based on common social needs and is necessary for the welfare and progress of society.

Role of cooperation: Cooperation is the most elementary or basic form of social process without which society cannot exist. According to Kropotkin, it is so important in the life of an individual is that it is difficult to survive without it. Even among the smallest possible animals such as ants and termites, cooperation is evident for survival.

Cooperation is the foundation of our social life. The continuation or prolongation of the human race requires the cooperation of male and female for reproduction and upbringing of children. Cooperation for human beings is both a psychological and social necessity and prerequisite. It is crucial at every step in our day-to-day life.

Accommodation

Adjustment is the way of life. Accommodation is the process of adjustment with one's environment. Society comprises differing elements which lead to continuous conflict which is resolved by accommodation.

Definitions of accommodation are as follows:

According to **MacIver**, "The term accommodation refers particularly to the process in which man attains a sense of harmony with his environment".

Ogburn and **Nimkoff** have defined accommodation as, "the term used by sociologists to describe the adjustment of hostile individuals or groups".

Horton and **Hunt** defines accommodation as a "process of developing temporary working agreements between conflicting individuals or groups".

In the words of **Gillin** and **Gillin** "Accommodation is the process by which competing and conflicting individuals and groups adjust their relationship to each other in order to overcome the difficulties which arise in competition, contravention or conflict".

It is the termination or cessation of competing or conflicting relations between individuals, groups and other human relationship structures. It is a way of inventing social arrangement which facilitate people to work together with joint efforts whether they like it or not.

The features of accommodation are as follows:

- It is also a universal process, conflicting elements are present in society all over the world but, conflict cannot happen continuously and it is resolved through accommodation.
- It is continuous process as people are constantly adjusting to new social situations and people.
- It is an outcome of conflict in society. If there was no conflict, there would be no need to accommodate.
- It happens both on the conscious and unconscious level. Wars between nation and feuds between individuals or groups are ended through accommodation as a conscious effort, while when individuals go to school or college, etc. They accommodate or adjust unconsciously.
- Accommodation is essential for peace and harmony in society.

Importance of accommodation: Accommodation is the means which enable people to work together whether they like it or not. Society can hardly go on without accommodation. Because conflict disturbs social



Unit II Social Structure

integration, disrupts social order and damages social stability, accommodation is extremely essential to check conflict and to maintain cooperation in social life. It not only reduces or controls conflict but also enables the individuals and groups to adjust themselves to changed circumstances.

Assimilation

Assimilation is a fundamental and essential social process; it is that process by which individuals belonging to different cultures are united or joined into one. Assimilation is a slow and gradual ongoing and continuous process and it is a type of accommodation which happens unconsciously and is permanent in nature.

Definitions of assimilation are as follows:

As per **Ogburn** and **Nimkoff**, “Assimilation is the process whereby individuals or groups once distinct become similar and identified in their interest and outlook”.

Assimilation happens when children come from different background into school and slowly blend with each other. Different religious or caste groups who come into contact also adopt each other's cultural patterns. Similarly, in inter-caste or inter-religious marriage, the husband and wife over a period of time assimilate and become similar in their outlook and culture.

The features of assimilation are:

- Assimilation is universal process like the others.
- Assimilation is a slow, continues, ongoing and gradual process.
- Assimilation is a two-way process; assimilation happens when two different individuals or groups incorporate each other's cultural elements in their lives.
- It is a positive process and brings about solidarity in society.

It happens on an unconscious level when people gradually like the norms and values of other cultures and adopts them in their lives.

Factors influencing assimilation: There are some factors that influence process of assimilation:

- **Physical differences:** Differences in features, complexion of skin and other physical trait or peculiarity may also help or hinder in assimilation.
- **Cultural differences:** Language and religion are usually considered to be most important constituents of culture. Immigrants having the same religion, belief and language can easily adjust themselves in other area or country.
- **Prejudice:** Prejudice is a barrier to assimilation. Prejudice is the attitude on which segregation depends for its accomplishment.
- **Sense of superiority and inferiority:** Assimilation is hindered by the belief of superiority and inferiority. The people, who have strong belief of superiority, generally hate the people who suffer from a sense of inferiority.
- **Domination and subordination:** Assimilation between two groups of people is almost impossible where one group dominate the other.
- **Isolation:** People who live in isolation fail to establish social contacts with others. The isolated people cut off whole social relationship with other people in society. Therefore, the process of assimilation becomes very hard and complex.

Disjunctive Processes

The processes by which harmonious relationships are hampered may be termed dissociative processes. This results in social disorganization.

Competition

Competition is a process opposed to cooperation. It is a result of limited resources or rewards which are being sought after by many persons. Human beings are constantly striving to satisfy their desires and needs, which lead to competition with other fellow beings.

Definitions of competition are as follows:

According to **Biesanz**, “Competition is the striving two or more persons for the same goal which is limited so that all cannot share”.

Horton and Hunt have defined competition as “the struggle for possessions of rewards which are limited in supply, goods, status, power, love – anything”.

Competition can be **personal** such as—if two persons are competing to become president of a college union, or it can be **impersonal** such as—if many people are trying to clear an entrance exam for medical college. Most of the competitions take place in society are impersonal in nature—directed toward achieving goals and not targeted toward individuals.

Competition is governed by norms. There are rules and regulations regarding, who can compete or not. For example, an individual has to be an Indian citizen and has to be 25 years of age to be eligible for an election of member of parliament.

Features of competition are:

- It is a universal process like cooperation, found in all groups of society (even among animals).
- It is also a continuous process, to fulfil the needs of money, power, status, etc. People have to constantly compete with each other as everything in society is limited in supply.
- It is found in all fields of life—political, economic, educational, social, etc.
- Generally, it is impersonal where the efforts are not directed toward individual but toward goals.
- Rules and regulations are there in each competition and participants have to abide by them.
- It serves important functions—it is due to competition that progresses and social changes in society take place and further a fair division of labor or rewards based on individual capabilities. It motivates or stimulates people to do their best.
- Competition can also have negative results—those who are left behind or unable to achieve, can become frustrated and emotionally disturbed. Competition can lead to conflict if it is not fair and healthy.

Role of competition: Competition is considered to be very healthy and a needed social process. It is indispensable in social life. Competition has played a major role in the survival of human beings. It is the basic law of life. It is extremely dynamic.

Competition performs many useful functions in society, according to **H.T. Mazumdar**, it performs both positive and negative functions.

Positive functions of competition are as follows:

- **Assignment of right individual to proper place:** Competition assigns right individual to a place in the social system. Competition provides the individuals better opportunities to satisfy their desires for new experiences and recognition.
- **Source of motivation:** Competition motivates or stimulates others to excel or to obtain recognition or to win an award.
- **Conducive to progress:** Healthy and fair competition is considered essential or crucial for economic, social as well as technological and scientific progress. Through competition a proper individual is selected and placed in the proper position.

Negative functions of competition are as follows:

- **Competition may lead to frustration:** Competition may create emotional disturbances and turbulence. Competition may develop unfriendly and unfavorable attitudes among the persons or groups toward one another. Unfair and unhealthy competition has the most disintegrating and bad effects.
- **Competition may lead to monopoly:** Unlimited competition in a capitalist economy gives rise to monopoly or domination. Competition throws the real needs of the people into waste and causes starvation in the midst of plenty. Competition may cause fear, insecurity, instability and panic.
- **Competition may lead to conflict:** Competition, if it is uncontrolled, may lead to conflicts which are considered unfavorable to group solidarity or cohesion. Sometimes it may become violent or aggressive involving unethical and unfair means to divert the competitors' attention from sportsmanship which is outcome of fair competition. For that reason, competition should always be healthy and fair.

Conflict

Conflict is an ever and constantly present process in human relation. It is one of the forms of struggle among individuals or groups. Conflict is also a process which is opposed to the principle of cooperation.

Definitions of conflict are as follows:

Davis: "Conflict is a modified form of struggle."

Karl Marx: "Conflict is a process of economic development, a revolutionary change by class struggle between laborers and capitalists."

Characteristics of conflict are:

- **Conflict is a universal process:** It exists at all places and all times.
- **Emotional basis:** Conflict tends to be more intense when individuals and groups who have close relationship with one another are involved.
- **It is a personal process:** Conflict is personal and its aim is to eliminate the opposite party. The defeat or beat of the opponent is the main objective in conflict.
- **It is a conscious process:** Conflict is a deliberate attempt to oppose or resist the will of another. Conflict aims at causing loss or injury to persons or groups.
- **Conflict is an intermittent process:** There is no continuity in conflict. It is occasional. It lacks continuity. Conflict is not as continuous as competition and cooperation.
- **The character of conflict is personal and direct:** In conflict the incumbents or participants known each other.

Type of conflict: Conflict expresses itself in more than thousands of ways and various degrees and over every range of human contact.

Maclver and Page have distinguished two fundamental and primary types of conflict. Direct and Indirect conflict.

- **Direct conflict:** When a person or a group injures, thwarts or destroys the opponent in order to secure or protect a goal or reward, direct conflict occurs; such as litigation, revolution and war.
- **Indirect conflict:** In indirect conflict, attempts are made by individuals or groups to frustrate the efforts of their opponents in an indirect approach. For example, when two manufacturers go on lowering the prices of their commodities, goods or product till both of them are declared insolvent, indirect conflict in that case takes place.

Causes of conflict are:

- Social change
- Individual differences and cultural differences

- Maladjustment and clash of interests
- Different groups and dominance
- Differences in opinion

SOCIAL ISOLATION

Social isolation can be defined structurally as the absence or deficiency of social interactions, contacts, and relationships with family and friends, with neighbor or an individual level, and with “society at large” on a broader level. Social isolation is considered a risk and hazardous factor in the development of disease and in the disability that can occur in the course of existing disease. The absence or deficiency of communicative interaction or social contact is isolation. It is a situation, deprived of social contacts; both the individuals and group can be isolated.

Types of Isolation

Two types of isolation are common:

1. Spatial isolation
2. Organic isolation

Spatial Isolation

It is external. It is an enforced or compulsory deprivation of contacts as for criminals when somebody is banished from the community or put to solitary imprisonment. The individual in such cases is deprived of the protection and security of his group. The individuals subjected to spatial isolator become aggressive, violent, and destructive and show a greater propensity for antisocial behavior. At one time it was thought that solitary confinement would improve the character of the convicts but it produced nasty and horrible results. This led to development of melancholic mental conditions, sexual abnormalities and anti-social attitudes.

Organic Isolation

This type of isolation caused by certain organic defects of the individual such as deafness or blindness or other physical abnormalities. It is not imposed by an external authority but is organic in nature. The deaf and the blind are deprived of experiences compared with all healthy individuals.

Several factors can contribute to increased isolation:

- Loss of loved one
- Family violence
- Physical and mobility impairments
- Mental health conditions
- Aging
- Poverty
- Living alone
- Societal adversity

Effects of Social Isolation

- Social isolation significantly increases the risk of premature death of an individual from all causes, a risk that may rival those of smoking, obesity, and physical inactivity.



Unit II Social Structure

- Social isolation was associated with about a 50% percent increased risk of dementia.
- Poor social relationships (characterized by social isolation or loneliness) were associated with a 29% increased risk of heart disease and a 32% increased risk of stroke.
- Loneliness was associated with higher rates of depression, sadness, hopelessness, anxiety, apprehension, and suicidal ideation.
- Loneliness among heart failure patients was associated with a nearly 4 times increased risk of death, 68% increased risk of hospitalization, and 57% increased risk of emergency department visits.

SOCIALIZATION

We all have various perceptions, feelings, opinion, judgment and beliefs about who we are and what we are like. How and why do we come to develop these? Do they change as time goes beyond as we age?

Sociologists and psychologists in a similar way have expressed interest in how the individual develops and modifies the sense of self as a result of social interaction.

According to Jean Piaget, social interaction is the basis or key to development. As they grow older, children pay increasing attention to how other people think and why they act in particular ways. In order to develop a distinct personality, each of us needs opportunities and chance to interact with others. Piaget suggested that moral development becomes an important as well as vital part of socialization as children develop the ability to think more abstractly. When children learn the rules of a game such as checkers or jacks, they are learning to obey or comply with societal norms. Those under eight years, display a rather basic level morality; rules are rules, and there are no concepts of "explanatory circumstances". As they mature, children become capable of greater autonomy, and begin to experience moral dilemmas and doubts as to what constitutes proper behavior.

Socialization is a process of learning that enables the learner to perform social roles and ability to participate in an entire social system. Socialization essentially represents the whole process of learning throughout the life course and is a central influence on the individual's behavior, beliefs, and actions of adults as well as of children.

Socialization is a process with the help of which a living organism is changed into a well-behaved social being. It is a process through which the younger generation learns the adult role which it has to play subsequently or later on. It is a continuous, permanent and constant process in the life of an individual and it continues from generation to generation.

Meaning of Socialization

Socialization means the process of learning one's culture and living within it. Socialization is the lifelong process of inheriting, disseminating and circulating norms, customs and ideologies, providing an individual with the skills and habits necessary for participating within his or her own society. Socialization is the process by which human infants acquire or get hold of the skills necessary to perform as a functioning member of their society, a process that continues throughout an individual's life.

Socialization is the process through which people are taught to be a proficient member of a society. It describes the ways and means that people come to understand societal norms and expectations, to accept society's beliefs, and to be aware of societal values. Socialization is simply not as interacting with others like family, friends, co-workers, it is sociological process that occurs through socializing and learning how to act in a way that is appropriate for the situation.

Importance of Socialization

From the individual point of view, socialization is the process by which the individual learns social behavior, develops his self. Socialization plays a unique role in total personality development (physical, mental, social and spiritual) of the individual. Socialization is the process through which people learn the attitude, values, and actions appropriate for a member of a particular culture. Socialization affects the overall cultural practices of our society; it also outlines the images that we hold of ourselves.

The process of socialization is not only important for the society but also for the individual. Every society is facing the challenge of making a responsible member out of each child born into it. The child must learn the expectations and projections of the society so that his behavior can be trusted upon. The child must acquire the group norms so that he can learn group behavior. Socialization means transmission or diffusion of culture, the process by which men understand and learn the rules and practices of social groups to which they belong. It is through it that a society maintains its social system, transmits its culture from one generation to the other generation.

Definitions of Socialization

The development of the social life is literally a lifelong transformation that begins in the crib and continues throughout one's life course.

Socialization is a comprehensive as well as complete process. Through the process of socialization, the individual becomes a social person and attains his personality at maxims.

- According to **Horton and Hunt**, Socialization is the process whereby one internalizes the norms of his groups, so that a distinct 'self emerges, unique to this individual.
- **Green** defined socialization "as the process by which the child acquires a cultural content, along with selfhood and personality".
- According to **Bogardus**, "Socialization is the process of working together, of developing group responsibility or being guided by the welfare needs of others".
- According to **Lundberg**, socialization consists of the "complex processes of interaction through which the individual learns the habits, skills, beliefs and standard of judgement that are necessary for his effective participation in social groups and communities".
- **Peter Worsley**, explains socialization "as the process of "transmission of culture, the process whereby men learn the rules and practices of social groups".
- **H.M. Johnson** defines socialization as "learning that enables the learner to perform social roles". He further says that it is a "process by which individuals acquire the already existing culture of groups they come into".
- "Socialization is the process by which the individual learns to conform to the group norms". —**Ogburn**
- "Socialization enables the learner to perform social roles and transmit culture". —**Harry M. Johnson**
- In socialization, "original nature is transformed into human nature and the individual into person". —**Mazumdar**

The individual tries to adjust into the new situation and environment in the society. The process of adjustment by learning new things is called socialization. The children learn culture, norms, values, belief, and custom to survive in a society.

Characteristics of Socialization (Fig. 2.16)

Inculcates Basic Discipline

Socialization inculcates basic discipline among individuals. A person learns to control his impulses, wishes, urge, and desires. He may show a disciplined behavior to achieve as well as expand social approval.

Helps to Control Human Behavior

Socialization helps to control human behavior and make people well mannered. An individual from birth to death undergoes various types of trainings and his behavior is controlled through numerous ways. In order to maintain the social order or norms, there are definite procedures, means, methods in society. These procedures become part of the man's life and man gets very well adjusted to the society. Through process of socialization, society intends to control the behavior of its-members unconsciously.

Is Influenced by factors Like Ideas or Skills

Socialization happens at fast pace if the agencies' of socialization are more undisputed in their ideas and skills. When there is conflict between the ideas, background, it harm the society, for example, skills transmitted in home and those transmitted by school or peer are different, then socialization of the individual tends to be slower, ineffective as well as unproductive.

Socialization Takes Place Formally and Informally

Formal socialization takes through direct instruction, teaching and training as well as through education in schools and colleges. Family is, however, the primary, crucial and the most influential source of education. Children learn their language, customs, conduct, behavior, norms and values in the family.

Socialization is Continuous Process

Socialization is a life-long and ongoing, continuous process. It does not come to an end when a child becomes an adult. As socialization does not finish when a child becomes an adult, transmission of culture continues from generation to generation. Society perpetuates itself through the transmission of culture. Its members transmit culture to the next or succeeding generation and society continues to exist.

Increasingly, researchers are emphasizing the importance of early socialization experiences for children who grow up in more normal environments.

Types of Socialization

Socialization process starts before the birth of the child and continues until death; associates with various life processes. In this process individual is entering into social life through the process of wisdom and learning. There are different kinds of social life and these depend on various factors and reasons. There are also more immediate or direct things that can affect one's social life on a day-to-day basis. Such as availability of friends, mode of interaction, the nature of activities, positive attitude, and how often you socialize and where such social activities take place. These types of factors of social life are normal for common people.

Although socialization occurs during early days, childhood and adolescence, it also continues in middle and adult age. **Orville F. Brim** has described socialization as a life-long process. He maintains that socialization

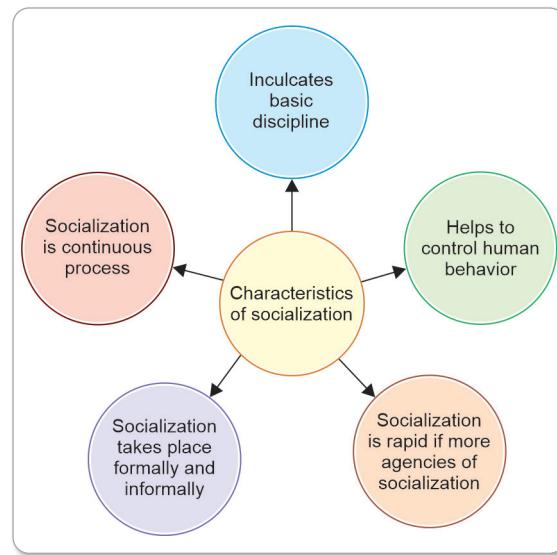


Figure 2.16: Characteristics of socialization

of adults entirely differs from childhood socialization. In this context it can be said that there are various types of socialization (Fig. 2.17).



Primary Socialization

Figure 2.17: Types of socialization

Primary socialization signifies that socialization of the infant in the primary or earliest years of his life. It is a process by which the infant learns language and cognitive skills, internalizes norms, values and conduct. The infant learns the ways of a given grouping and is molded or transformed into an effective social participant of that group. Primary socialization occurs when a child learns the attitudes, values, belief and actions appropriate to individuals as members of a particular culture. This is mainly influenced by the immediate family and early childhood friends.

The norms of society become part of the personality of the every individual. The child learn such norms by observing. The primary socialization takes place definitely through the family.

Secondary Socialization

The process of secondary socialization can be found out at work outside the immediate family, in the 'peer group'. The growing child learns vital and important lessons in social conduct from his peers. He also learns lessons or courses in the school. Hence, socialization continues beyond as well as outside the family environment. Secondary socialization generally denotes to the social training and instructions received by the child in institutional or formal settings and continue throughout the rest of his life.

Secondary socialization is the process of learning; what is the appropriate, suitable and correct behavior as a member of a smaller group within the larger society. It is the behavioral patterns reinforced by socializing agents of society, like schools, peer group and workplaces. For example, as new employees become socialized in an organization, they learn about its history, values, jargon, ethics, and code of conduct, culture and procedures.

Adult Socialization

In the adult socialization, actors enter roles (for example, becoming an employee, a husband or wife) for which primary and secondary socialization may not have prepared them fully. Adult socialization teaches people to take on new duties, opportunities and challenges. The aim of adult socialization is to bring change in the outlook of the individual. Adult socialization is more likely to change overt behavior, whereas child socialization molds the basic values.

Anticipatory Socialization

Anticipatory socialization is the processes socialization in which a person 'rehearses' for future propositions, occupations, interactions, and social relationships. A culture can function more efficiently and smoothly if members become acquainted with the norms, values, conduct, and behavior associated with a social position before actually assuming that status. Preparation of many aspects of adult life begins with anticipatory socialization during childhood and adolescence, and continues throughout one's life as we prepare for new responsibilities and challenges. Anticipatory socialization refers to a process by which men learn the culture of a group with the expectation or anticipation of joining that group. As a person learns the proper beliefs, values, conduct and norms of a status or group to which he aspires, he is learning how to act in his new role.

For example, when a high school student starts considering himself as college student; he learns new things with new technologies, more and more students are using the Web to begin their college experiences. Even colleges are investing more time and money in developing attractive websites through which students can take "virtual" campus walks and hear audio clips of everything from the college anthem to a specific sample subject lecture.



Re-socialization

Re-socialization refers to the process of discarding or neglecting former behavior patterns and accepting new ones as part of a transition in one's life. Often re-socialization occurs during an explicit effort to transform an individual, as happens in reform schools, therapy groups, prisons, religious conversion settings, and political indoctrination camps. Such re-socialization takes place mostly when a social role is radically or completely changed. It involves abandonment of one way of life for another which is not only different from the former but incompatible or contrary with it. For example, when a criminal is rehabilitated, he has to change his basic role radically and completely.

Re-socialization is particularly effective when it occurs within a total institution. Erving Goffman (1961) coined the term total institution to refer to an institution, such as a prison, the military, a mental hospital, or a convent, that regulates all aspects of a person's life under a single authority, because the total institution is generally cut off or totally isolated from the rest of society, it provides for all the needs of its members.

Goffman (1961) has identified four common traits of total institutions:

1. All aspects of life are conducted in the same place under the control of a solitary or single authority.
2. Any activities within the institution are conducted in the company of others in the same situations or circumstances. For example, army recruits or novices in a convent.
3. The authorities devise or work out rules and schedule activities without consulting the participants.
4. All aspects of life within a total institution are designed to fulfil or accomplish the purpose of the organization.

People often lose their individuality within total institutions, for example, a person entering prison may experience the humiliation of a degradation ceremony as he or she is stripped of clothing, jewelry, and other personal possessions. From this point on, scheduled daily routines allow for little or no personal plan or initiative. The individual becomes secondary and to a certain extent invisible in the overbearing social environment (Garfinkel 1956).

Process or Stages of Socialization

The American psychologist George Herbert Mead (1934) theory of self was shaped by his overall view of socialization as a lifelong process.

According to him the process of forming the self occurs in three distinct stages. Self develops as children grasp or take hold of the roles of others in their lives.

- **Imitation:** The first is imitation, in this stage children copy the behavior of adults without understanding it. For example, a little boy might 'help' his parents vacuum the floor by pushing a toy vacuum cleaner or even a stick around the room.
- **Play stage or role identification:** During this stage, children understand behaviors as actual roles—doctor, fire-fighter, and race-car driver and so on and begin to take on those roles in their play. This shifting or transforming from one role to another; builds children's ability to give the same meanings to their thoughts; and actions that other members of society give them another important step in the building of a self. According to Mead, the self is compassed of two parts, the 'I' and the 'me'. The 'I' is the person's response to other people and to society at large; the 'me' is a self-concept that consists of how significant and important others—that is, relatives and friends—see the person. The 'I' thinks about and reacts to the 'me' as well as to other people.
- **Arbitrator or Judgement stage:** In the third stage, the child must learn what is expected not just by one other person but by a whole group. Children judge their behavior by standards thought to be held by the "other out there". By this stage, children have gained or expanded a social identity.

Jean Piaget

Jean Piaget's (1896-1980) has understood the importance of social interactions in developing a sense of self. Piaget found that newborns have no self in the sense of a looking-glass image or illustration. Ironically, though, they are quite self-centered; they demand the all attention be directed toward them. Newborns have not yet unconnected or separated themselves from the universe of which they are a part. However, as they mature, children are gradually socialized into social relationships, even within their rather self-centered world. His theory deals with cognitive development, or the process of learning how to think. According to Piaget, each stage of cognitive development involves new skills that define the limits of what can be learned. In his well-known cognitive theory of development Piaget (1954) identified four stages of cognitive development; moral development linked to socialization.

Sensorimotor Stage

The first stage, from birth to about age 2, is the "sensorimotor stage". During this period, children develop and expand the ability to hold an image in their minds permanently. Before they reach this stage; they might assume and take for granted that an object ceases to exist when they don't see it.

Preoperational Stage

The second stage, from about age 2 to age 7 is called the preoperational stage. During this period, children learn to tell or notify the difference between symbols and their meanings. Children imitate their elder role and enjoy role-playing like mamma, papa and teacher's role.

Concrete Operations Stage

From about age 7 to age 11, children learn to mentally perform certain tasks that they formerly did by hand. Piaget termed this the "concrete operations stage". The child becomes less egocentric. For example, if children in this stage are shown a row of six blocks and are asked to get the same number from the nearby block, they can choose six block without having to match each stick in the row to one in the quantity or number.

Stage of Formal Operations

The last stage, from about age 12 to age 15, is the "stage of formal operations". Adolescents in this stage can consider abstract mathematical, reasonable, logical and moral problems and reason about the future. Subsequent as well as succeeding mental developments build on and elaborate the abilities and skills gained during this stage.

Factors of Socialization Process

Different factors that enable the process of socialization are shown in Figure 2.18.

- **The family:** In family, a child learns social behavior through imitation. Children perform social activities exactly what they observe. They learn language pronunciation through imitation. First school of children is their family.
- **Mutual relationship between family members:** Healthy and mutual relationships between parents and other family member is necessary for better social development of a child. For example, in broken families, the behavior of child may be diverted to other anti-social activities such as crime, juvenile delinquency, etc.
- **Age or level of maturity:** In the childhood, the activities are random and cannot be able to distinguish between organism and environment. As the child grows he identifies the things, which satisfy his needs. Such things become the objectives of identification. Identification increases as the age advances.



Figure 2.18: Factors of socialization process

- **Intellectual ability:** Person lacking in intellectual capabilities, this will lead to the process of socialization very difficult. Intellectual ability, temperament, educational level, emotional excitement and even mental maturity influence the pattern of suggestibility, thus it helps in process of socialization.
- **Neighbors and companions:** The ideas and opinions of peer groups and close friends are of great importance to the individual. A child may even get antisocial activities through the influence of companions.
- **Social status:** Social status and positions also influence the process of socialization. For example, person feels superior when giving reference with people holding strong position in the society. This will increase their confidence; thus, this affects process of socialization.
- **Economic status:** Economic status of an individual also influence the process of socialization.
- **Culture:** There is the culture of the society in which the person is born and this cultural influence factors is responsible for early or gradual socialization process.
- **Caste and class:** There must be influence of caste and class on the process of socialization.
- **Education institutions:** Child gets education in school which molds his ideas and attitudes. Good education makes the child good citizen, whereas bad education turns the child into criminal activities.

- **Methods of communication:** Language is the powerful medium of social interactions. It is a means of cultural transmission. Language is the key factor which molds the personality of the individual.
- **Voluntary associations:** Some professional organizations, religious associations, political organizations also help individual in development of their personality. People feel superior when connected with these types of associations. This will obviously influence the process of socialization.

Agencies of Socialization (Fig. 2.19)

Socialization makes the child a useful member of a society. The socialization occurs by two sources;

1. First source includes those who have authority over him. For example, parents, teachers, elderly person and others.
 2. Second source includes who are equal in authority for example, friends, playgroups, fellow on job or in club.
- **Family:** The family members are closely related to the child. They are the first one, who socialize the child; the child learns languages, speech, and gesture; his first lesson of cooperation, tolerance, sacrifices, love and affection in the family. The environment of family influences the growth of child. In disturbed or broken family, the child learns bad habits, and in a happy and disciplined family he learns good habits.
 - **School:** Functionalists point out that schools, as agents of socialization, fulfil the function of teaching children the values and customs of the larger society.
 - **Playmates:** The child acquires something from his friends which he cannot acquire from parents. He learns cooperation, morality, fashion, etc., which are important from social perspectives.
 - **The religion:** In every religion, religious practices are performed or carried out on occasions. These religious activities continue to mold our belief and way of life.
 - **Occupation/workplace:** Learning to behave appropriately within in occupation is a fundamental or basic aspect of human socialization. In the occupational world, the individual finds himself with new shared interests, aims, objectives, ambitions and goals. He makes adjustments with the position he holds and also learns the ways to make adjustment with other workers who may occupy equal or higher or lower position. While working, the individual enters into relations of cooperation, involving specialization of tasks and at the same time learns the nature or character of class divisions. Work, for him, is a basis and source of income but at the same time it gives identity and status within society as a whole.
 - **The state:** State makes law for people and lay down to mold the behavior of people. If anyone fails to adjust his behavior in accordance with the law of the state, then punishment is given to mold his behavior.
 - **Political parties:** Political parties attempt to seize political power and maintain it. They try to win the support of the members of the society on the basis of a socioeconomic policy and program. In the process they disseminate political values and norms and socialize the citizen. The political parties socialize the citizen for stability, strength and change of political system.
 - **Mass media:** The mass media of communication, particularly television, or nowadays social media play an important role in the process of socialization. The mass media of communication transmit and exchange information, and messages which influence the personality of an individual to a great extent.

Agencies of socialization

- Family
- School
- Playmates
- Religion
- Occupation/workplace
- State
- Political parties
- Mass media

Figure 2.19: Agencies of socialization

SOCIAL CHANGE

Change is the law of nature, what is today will be different from what it would be tomorrow. Society is not a static phenomenon, but it is a dynamic entity. Social change has occurred in all societies and at all times. Society passes through various stages. It has an ever changing phenomenon growing, decaying, renewing, and



Unit II Social Structure

accommodating itself to changing conditions. Change symbolizes life. All living things transform in one form to another form. Since society is a living institute, it is also changing subtly. Social change refers to observable differences in social phenomena such as social processes, institutional structures, structural arrangements of a society, etc.

Concept of Social Change

Change means alteration, substitution of one for another. *Social change* is significant alteration over time in behavior patterns and culture, including norms and values. Sometimes social change is promoted by social movements, but more often it is the unintended effect of technological progress. Society has changes. The dynamic nature of society is emphasized by sociologists. MacIver and Page have held that Society is an ever changing complex system...it is always changing. Lord Tennyson, the famous English poet, has said: "The old order changed yielding place to new." The nineteenth and twentieth centuries have witnessed the maximum amount of changes in human society. Changes, of course, result in disequilibrium and disorganization, bringing in several problems. Anybody who reads the daily newspapers will note with interest the innumerable changes that take place in all walks of life. There are changes in nature, in the body, in technology, in culture and social institutions.

Alex Inkeles has correctly remarked, "No aspect of social life is more challenging than the process of change."

Definitions of Social Change

According to the dictionary of sociology, edited by Fairchild, 'social change means, variations or modifications in any aspect of social process, pattern or form.'

This dictionary has further explained that:

- Change can result in progress or regression,
- Change can be permanent or temporary,
- Change may be in one direction or many directions, and finally
- It can be beneficial or harmful.

The social change has been described in a different way by different sociologists in the following manner:

- According to **Gillin and Gillin**, "Social changes are variations from the accepted modes of life; whether due to alteration in geographical conditions, in cultural equipment, composition of the population or ideologies and whether brought about by diffusion or inventions within the group".
- **MacIver** stated "Social change is a change in social relationships".
- According to **Merill and Eldredge**, "Social change means that a large number of persons are engaged in activities that differ from those which they or their immediate forefathers engaged in sometimes before. When human behavior is in the process of modification that is only another way in indicating that social change is occurring".
- According to **Kingsley Davis** "Social change as, any alteration as occur in social organization that is the structure and the functions of society".
- According to **M. D. Jenson**, "Social change may be defined as modification in ways of doing and thinking of people".
- According to **Koenig S.** "Social change refers to the modifications which occur in the life patterns of a people".
- **Lundberg and others** stated "Social change refers to any modification in established patterns of inter human relationships and standards of conduct".

- According to **Horton and Hunt**, Social change meant change in the social structure or function of social forms.
- According to **H.T. Mazumdar**, Modification in social technology, relationship, pattern and institutions. Social change has been defined as significant alteration over time in behavior pattern and culture, including norms and values (W. Moore, 1967). But what constitutes a “significant” alteration? Certainly the dramatic rise in formal education symbolizes a change that has had profound social consequences. Other social changes that have had long term and important consequences include the emergence of slavery as a system of stratification, the industrial revolution, the increased participation of women in the paid labor forces of the United States and Europe and the worldwide population explosion are some of the examples of social change.

Social change refers to whatever happens in the course of time to the patterned ways in which individual reacts. Thus, we conclude that social change means changes in any aspect of society such as organization, structure and function, customs, traditions, values, and the entire mode of life. Examples of significant social changes having long-term effects include the industrial revolution, the elimination of slavery, and the feminist movement. For example, the toppling of Saddam Hussein's totalitarian rule over Iraq in 2003 was one of the several regime changes that occurred at the beginning of the 21st century. In a global society, such changes affect people throughout the world, not just those in one nation.

Nature of Social Change

In the era of massive social, political, and economic change on a global scale, is it possible to predict change? Different characteristics or nature of social change are exhibited in Figure 2.20:

- Social change is a universal phenomenon:** Social changes occur regardless of geographical area. All areas such as technology, education health agriculture all are changing worldwide. No society remains completely static. A social change occurs in all societies. Society exists in a universe or dynamic influence. The population change, technologies expands material equipment changes and institutional structures and functions undergo reshaping.
- Social changes are a continuous process:** Social changes events are like relay race one change turns to another.
- Social change is community change:** Changes happen in individual life collectively manifest in community changes. Social change occurs in the life of entire community. A social change includes all societies not individual.
- Social changes occur as an essential law:** Change is the universal law. There are two types of changes one with purpose and one without purpose.
- Speed of social change is not uniform:** The rate of social change varies from place to place and time to time. In most societies, it occurs slowly and in some it is fast.
- Social changes are result of multifactor:** Varieties of factors collectively bring changes. Sole single factor can initiate a social change. Generally, it is thought that a particular factor like changes in technology, economic development or climatic conditions cause social changes. It is not necessary that the social change is due to these factors only. As a matter of fact, social change is the result of many factors. A special factor may bring a change but it is always associated with other factor which makes the changes possible.
- Social changes are unpredictable:** Social changes are spontaneous in nature. One cannot predict social change. Changes in physical condition also may create changes in society. It is difficult to make any prediction about the exact forms or nature of social change. There is no inherent law of social change according to which it would assume definite forms.
- Social change can be the result of conscious or unconscious process:** Change is the law of nature. Social change is also natural. It may occur either in the natural course or as a result of planned or unplanned activities.

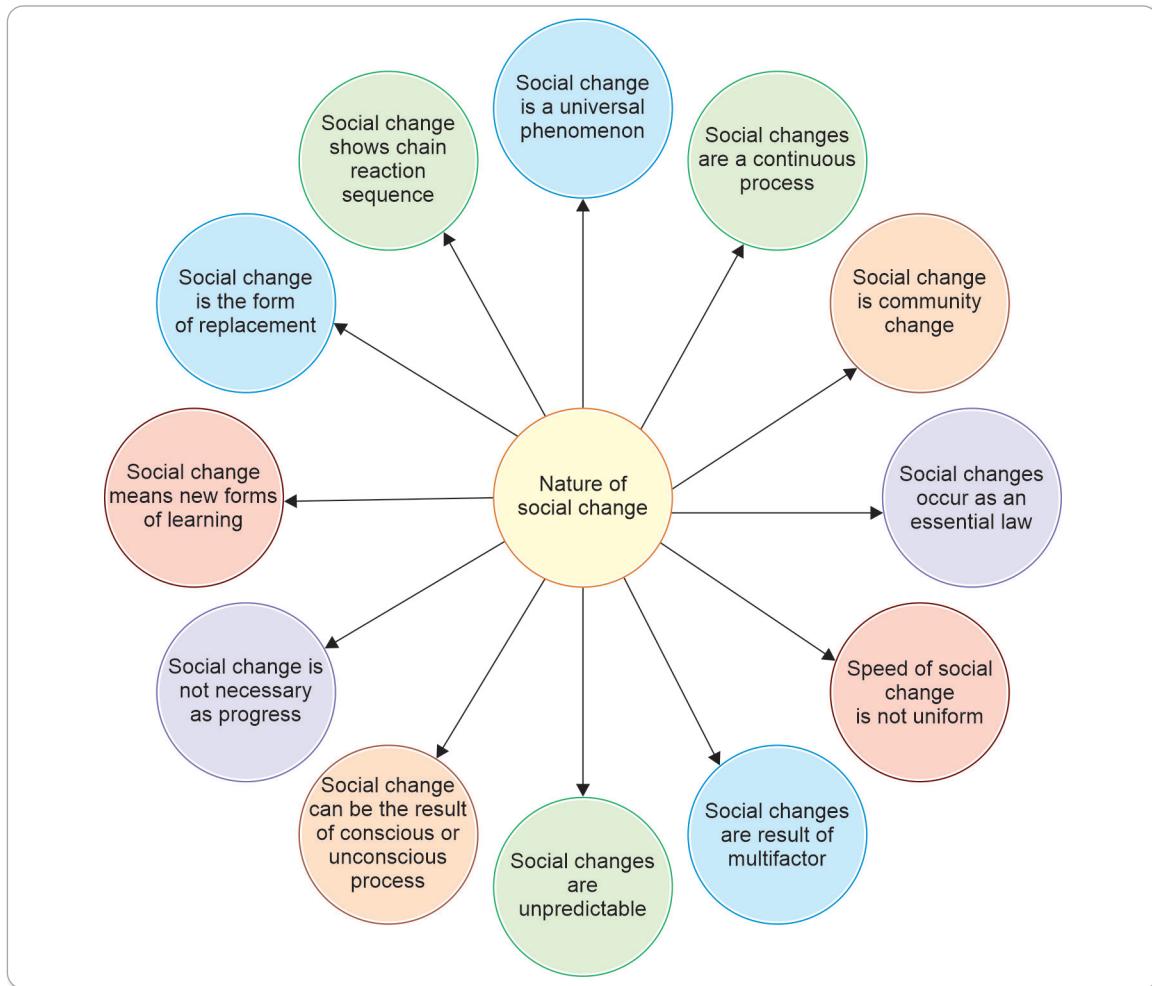


Figure 2.20: Nature of social change

- **Social change is not necessary as progress:** Social change occurs gradually but it is always not related to the progress of the society.
- **Social change means new forms of learning:** Most of the sociologists use the term social change to imply changes in social life, including non-material cultural aspects of man. George Shankar says that social changes are part of the larger picture of cultural change.
- **Social change is the form of replacement:** Bullock carts have been replaced by automobiles. Similarly, old ideas have been replaced or substituted by new ideas. Democracy has replaced aristocracy.
- **Social change shows chain reaction sequence:** A society's pattern of living is a dynamic system of interrelated parts. Therefore, change in one of these parts usually reacts on others and those additional one until they bring a change in the whole mode of life or many people.

Factors Influencing Social Change

Social change is brought about by a number of factors—technological, industrial, economic, ideological and religious. Geographical and biological changes in addition result in socio-cultural changes.

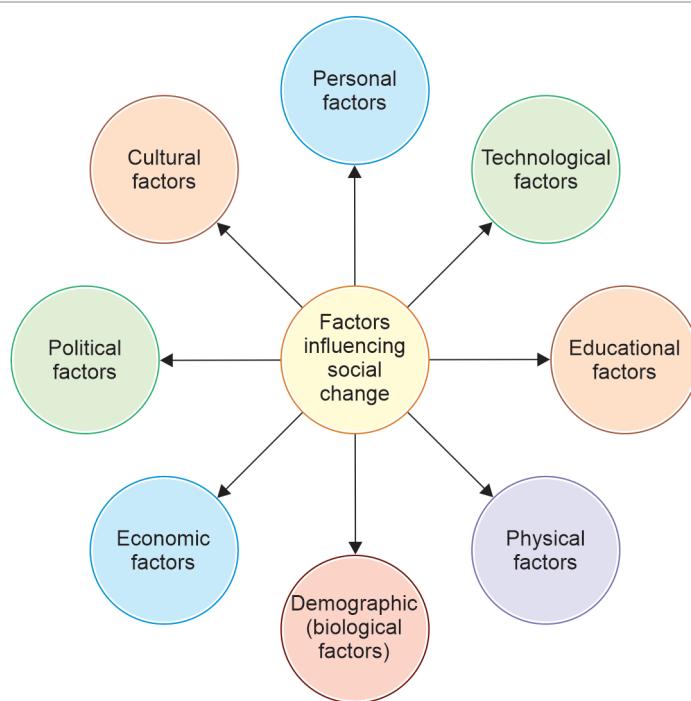


Figure 2.21: Factors influencing social change

The rate of social change varies or differs from place to place and time to time. Social changes meet with opposition too. Several factors have been emphasized by sociologists for social change.

The following factors have significant contribution in social change (Fig. 2.21):

- **Personal factors:** Personal factors such as change in the lifestyle; change in the marriage system, the influence of great men. All these factors directly or indirectly affect process of social change. For example, India was fortunate to have some great men as their leaders. In the 20th century, Gandhi and his compatriot brought about many social changes, including political freedom. Thus, the role of great men in bringing about changes in society is undisputable.
- **Physical factors:** A societal change corresponds to physical or geographical conditions, like climate, earthquake, floods, draughts epidemic diseases, etc. The geographic factor comprises all those inorganic phenomena which exert an influence on human life. Our infrastructure and lifestyle depend upon the physical factors that persist in society. A change in the geographic environment may lead to the development of a different physical type of human being who is physiologically adapted to the new conditions. This new hereditary type will create a different culture. Geographic changes also affect the food supply, leading to new dietary habits.
- **Demographic (biological factors):** Societal changes have correlation with demographic characteristics of population and size of family. Societal changes in the city have different pace than societal changes in villages. Change in death rate, birth rate, average age, marriage, gender, heredity; all these factors affect a process of social change. For example, population increase or decreases determine social institutions and social relations very much. Population explosion creates problems of low standard of life, unemployment, higher density, etc. This is what happening in India, at the same time; inadequate population will hinder the exploitation of natural resources of a country. The relationship between human population, density,

Unit II Social Structure

environment, beliefs and culture is a fundamental one in relation to social change, and we must subject it to further analysis.

- **Economic factors:** Effects of socioeconomic problems, like industrialization, urbanization, migration, change in the medical and health services, corporate sector all has economic impact on society and thus it is changing.
- **Political factors:** Political force is the most vital determining factors in societal changes. Political leader and individuals in power influences the rate and direction of social changes. We have passed a number of social legislations to bring about changes in the life of people, with the help of governmental and non-governmental programs. Decentralization of administration through panchayat raj has effect much changes in the rural communities in India. Direct programs of the government such as community development projects, national extension service blocks and several other activities envisaged in the five-year plans of India are also foundation of changes in the Indian society.
- **Cultural factors:** Our value, belief, thoughts propel changes in society. Like education, fashion, etc. cultural lag also influences social change. Taylor has defined culture as "That complex whole which includes knowledge, belief, art, morals, and law, custom and any other capabilities and habits, acquired by man as a member of society". Culture is the unique possession or control of human society and it is transmitted from generation to generation. These beliefs, customs, values, and traditions exert great influence on human society and also the extent to which a society can accept new patterns. The possibilities of innovations depend on the existing culture to a great extent. Diffusion of culture within a society and also from one society to another is an important factor in cultural and social change. Culture also reacts on technological changes and inventions so as to influence the direction and character of social change. Culture plays an indirect role also in social change. A very good example is how man's economic activities are prejudiced or influenced by his religious principles. Max Weber, a German Sociologist, known as the founder of the Sociology of Religion, has clearly shown that religious principles of Protestantism encouraged individual enterprise which in turn, resulted in the development of capitalism in America. Religious principles of Hinduism, on the other hand, were mainly other worldly and fatalistic in outlook, and hence, did not encourage consistent economic pursuits, according to Weber.
- **Educational factors:** Change in the educational field plays important role in the process of social change.
- **Technological factors:** Technological innovation in agriculture, industry, effect of technology on family life, economic life, religious life, social institutions, means of transportation, means of communication; all influence social change.

Pattern of Social Change

Social change is so complex that it can be approached from a number of directions. One of these is through technology, which has become a pervasive and spectacular cultural prime transporter in modern society.

William Ogburn explains: "Technology changes society by changing our environment to which we, in turn, adapt. This change is usually in the material environment and the adjustment we make to the changes often modifies customs and social institutions."

The role of technology in social change has been the subject of considerable study. There is no single or solitary cause of social change, nor is there a single and all-embracing theory of social change.

Francis Merrill has presented the following pattern of social change based on technology:

- Technological innovations
- Economic institutions
- Social institutions
- Social values

In other words, technological innovations have given rise to economic institutions, economic institutions have given rise to changes in social institutions, and social institutions have changed social values. However social values change very slowly. This situation gives rise to social problems. This may be termed cultural lag too.

Process of Social Change

Change must occur within the changing unit or entity as the manifestation of internal forces and not merely by the action of forces external to it. Over the time, the entire social structure undergo modification to some extent. All changes do not imply progress. The notions of "change", "evolution", "development", and "progress" are sometimes confused or combined in a single concept; in other cases, distinction is made between them but they are treated as logically related terms.

Every society tries its best to tie together its natural resources in its environment. Material and social prosperity of a society depends mainly on how best that society utilizes its natural resources. The lag is constant witnesses between a rapidly advancing technology and old elements of beliefs and rigid social organization. People have changed the methods of welfare but not the forms of political organizations that allow recurrent war. While changes in the field of technology are being made rapidly, the related social system has failed to adapt. Technology affects society in various ways. It influences social institutions and associations. It modifies old order of society.

Technology touches all aspects of individual and social life. Industrial revolution brought not only economic but also overall social changes in the society. The mode of living, thinking and production underwent a tremendous change.

The process of social change takes place in the following manner (Fig. 2.22):

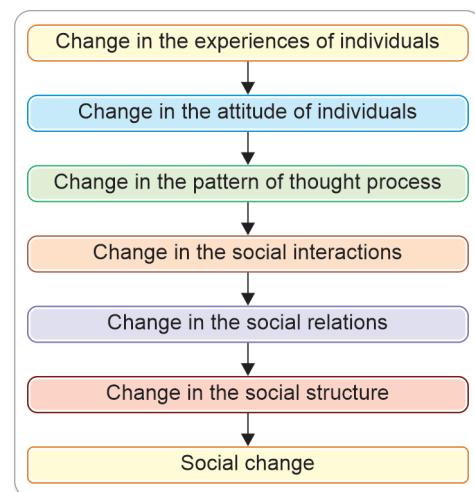


Figure 2.22: Process of social change

People have a tendency to oppose changes in any field, technological and social. However, opposition to social inventions is much more than that of technological. Efforts to promote social change are likely to meet or rally with resistance.

Important reasons for this are:

- The problems of the social invention are more complex than those of technological inventions.
- Social climate is very different for those two forms of innovation.
- Inventors of novel techniques in the manufacture of physical products are rewarded with prestige and money. The reward of the social inventor is often something very different.
- Controlled experiment is difficult for the social inventor. For instance, conclusions about the success or failure of a new religion, family pattern, or form of government, must be drawn from a mass of uncontrolled and uncontrollable factors.
- Material invention can be measured by objective means. Members of a society are, however, usually unable to agree upon the goals, values and standards relating to such social inventions as family planning, abolition of caste, and dowry, and secularism.

Factors of Social Resistance

- **Vested interest:** Social economist Thorstein Veblen (1857–1929) coined the term *vested interest* to refer to those people or groups who will suffer in the event of social change. For example, the American Medical Association (AMA) has taken strong stand against health insurance and professionalization of midwifery. The costs of social change are never evenly or consistently distributed. Most social changes carry a threat or danger to some vested interests. When individual and groups feel that a change endangers their interests, or threaten their rights, they resist changes. For example, landlords opposed land reforms as they lose their lands if these reforms are implemented.
- **Economic factors:** Economic factors play an important role in resistance to social change. For example, it can be expensive for manufacturers to meet high standard for safety of products and workers, and for the protection of environment. Conflict theorists argue that in a capitalist system, many firms are not willing to pay the price of meeting strict safety and environmental standards. They may resist social change by pressurizing the government to ease regulations.
- **Cultural factors:** Like economic factors, cultural factors frequently shape resistance to change. William F. Ogburn (1922) distinguishes between material and non-material aspects of culture. Material culture includes inventions, artifacts, and technology; non-material culture encompasses ideas, norms, communications, and social organization. Ogburn pointed out that one cannot devise methods for controlling and utilizing new technology before the introduction of a technique. Thus, non-material culture typically must respond to changes in material culture. Ogburn introduced the term *cultural lag* to refer to the period of maladjustment when the non-material culture still struggling to adapt to new material conditions. Cultural lag refers to the fact that culture takes time to catch up with technological innovations, resulting in social problems, for example, use of contraceptive or surrogacy. These are technological advancement but in some religion such practices are not allowed. This issue represented a lag between aspects of material culture (technology) and non-material culture (religious beliefs). Conflicts may also emerge between religion and other social institutions, such as government and the educational system. Cultural lag basically elaborates what happens in society when the cultural values which regulate social life do not correspond to other social changes. According to Ogburn, 'cultural lag' is a common societal phenomenon due to the tendency of material culture to evolve and change rapidly and voluminously while non-material culture tend to resist changes and remain fixed for a far longer period of time.
- **Resistance to technology:** Technological innovations are examples of changes in material culture that often provoke resistance. Such as industrial revolution; strong resistance to the industrial revolution emerged in some countries.

We may also give certain reasons for opposition to any sort of change in society:

- The first inventions are generally subject to imperfections. For instance, after the invention of the motorcar, aeroplane, or the train, there have been shortcoming and disappointment.
- Ignorance of the people creates uncertain blocks.
- Habits of the people cannot be changed soon. Habits die hard.
- There is always a love or reverence for the past.
- The vested interests oppose change for their own selfish interests.

Groups or division of people who may be affected by the changes will oppose the change. A very simple example, when the auto-rickshaw and motor-taxis were introduced in Indian cities, the tongawalas and hand-driven rickshaw-walas opposed this move. It may be mentioned that opposition as above will also remain in society.

Theories of Social Change

A new millennium provides the occasion to offer explanation of social change, which we have defined as significant alteration over time in behavior patterns and culture. Such explanations are clearly a challenge in the diverse and complex world we inhibit or hamper today. Nevertheless, theorists from several disciplines have sought out to analyze all about social change. In some instances, they have examined historical events that arrive at a better understanding of contemporary changes.

Evolutionary Theory

- The pioneering and revolutionary work of **Charles Darwin (1809–1882)** in biological evolution contributed to 19th-century theories of social change. Darwin's approach stresses a continuing progression of successive life forms and varieties. For example, human beings came at a later stage of evolution than reptiles and represent a more complex as well as multifarious forms of life. Social theorists seeking an analogy to this biological model originated *evolutionary theory*, in which society is viewed as moving in a definite and specific direction. Early evolutionary theorists generally agreed or decided that society was progressing inevitably to a higher state. As might be expected, they concluded in ethnocentric fashion that their own behavior and culture were more advanced than those of earlier or former civilizations.
- **August Comte (1798–1857)**, the founder of sociology, was an evolutionary theorist of change. He visions human societies as moving forward in their thinking from mythology to the scientific method.
- Similarly, **Emile Durkheim (1893–1933)** maintained that society progressed from simple to more complex forms of social organization. The writings of Comte and Durkheim are examples of uni-linear evolutionary theory. This approach contends that all societies pass through the same successive stages of evolution, development and progression and inevitably reach the same end.
- English sociologist **Herbert Spencer (1820–1903)** used a similar approach: Spencer likened society to a living body whose interrelated parts were moving toward a common destiny. However, contemporary evolutionary theorists, such as Gerhard Lenski, are more likely to see social change as being multi-linear than to rely on the more limited uni-linear perspective. Multi-linear evolutionary theory holds that change can occur in several ways, and does not inevitably lead in the same direction. Multi-linear theorists recognize that human culture has evolved along a number of lines. For example, the theory of demographic transition graphically demonstrates that population change in developing nations has not necessarily followed the model evident in industrialized nations.
- **L.H. Morgan** believed that there were three basic stages in the process; savagery, barbarian and civilization.

Assumptions: Societies gradually change from simple to complex form.

- Sociologist August Comte believed that human societies evolve in a uni-linear way that is one line of development.
- A societal change means something progressing positive, better.

Theories of Saint-Simon, Comte, Morgan, Marx and Engels, and many other anthropologists and sociologists come under the category of uni-linear theories of social evolution because they are based on the assumption or hypothesis that each society does, indeed must, pass through a fixed and limited numbers of stages in a given sequence. Such theories long dominated the sociological outlook.

Functionalist Theory

Since functionalist sociologists' put focus on what maintains a system, not on what changes it, they might seem to offer little to the study of social change. Yet as the work of sociologist Talcott Parsons demonstrates that functionalists have made a distinctive contribution to this area of sociological investigation.



Unit II Social Structure

Parsons (1902–1979), a leading proponent of functionalist theory, viewed society as being in a natural or expected state of equilibrium. By equilibrium, he meant that society tends toward a state of stability or balance.

Parsons would view even prolonged labor strikes or civilian riots as temporary disruptions in the status quo rather than as significant modification in social structure. Therefore, according to his equilibrium model, as changes occur in one part of society, adjustments must be made in other parts. If not, society's equilibrium will be threatened and damage will occur.

Reflecting the evolutionary approach, Parsons (1966) maintained that four processes of social change are inevitable.

The first *differentiation* refers to the increasing complexity or intricacy of social organization. A transition from “medicine man” to physician, nurse, and pharmacist is an illustration of differentiation in the field of health. This process is accompanied with *adaptive upgrading* in which social institutions become more specialized in their purposes and intentions. The division of physicians into psychologists, pediatrician, obstetricians, interns, surgeons, and so forth is an example of adaptive upgrading. The third process, Parsons identified, is the *inclusion* of groups that were previously excluded because of their gender, race, ethnicity, and social class background. Medical schools have practiced inclusion by admitting increasing numbers of women and African Americans. Finally, Parsons contends that societies experience *value generalization*, the development of new values that tolerate and legitimate a greater range of activities.

The acceptance of preventive and alternative medicine is an example of value generalization: society has broadened its view of health care. All four processes identified by Parsons Stress consensus-societal agreement on the nature of social organization and values. Though Parsons approach explicitly incorporates the evolutionary notion of continuing progress, the dominant theme in his model is balance and stability, society may change, but it remains stable through new forms of integration. For example, in place of the kinship ties that provided social cohesion in the past, people develop laws, judicial processes, and new values, conduct and belief systems.

Functionalists assume that social institutions would not persist unless they continued to contribute to society. This assumption leads them to conclude that drastically altering institutions will threaten societal equilibrium. Critics note that the functionalist approach virtually disregards the use of coercion by powerful group to maintain the illusion of a stable, well-integrated society.

Conflict Theory

Conflict theory denotes that society is in a state of constant struggle because of competition for resources, which are limited in number and quantity. Conflict theory affirms that social order is sustained by domination and power, rather than by consensus and conformity. The powerful groups have the ability to maintain the status quo or bring change. It emphasizes the persistence of social life, and sees change as a means of maintaining the equilibrium status quo. Change has crucial significance, since it is needed to correct social injustices, bias and inequalities.

- **Karl Marx** accepted the evolutionary argument that societies develop along a particular path. However, unlike Comte and Spencer, he did not view each successive stage as an inevitable improvement over the previous one. History, according to Marx, proceeds through a sequence of stages, each of which exploits a class of people. Ancient society exploited slaves; the estate system of feudalism exploited serfs, modern capitalist society exploits the working class people. Ultimately, through a socialist revolution led by the proletariat, human society will shift toward the final stage of development: a classless communist society or “community of free individuals,” as Marx described it in *Das Kapital* in 1867. Marx had an imperative and significant influence on the development of sociology. His thinking offered insights into



such institutions as the economy, the family, religion, state and government. The Marxist view of social change is effective because it does not restrict people to a passive role in responding to inevitable cycles or changes in material culture. Rather, Marxist theory offers a way for those who wish to seize control of the historical process and achieve their freedom from injustice. In distinction to functionalists' emphasis on stability, Marx argues that conflict is absolutely normal, ordinary and desirable aspect of social change. In fact, change must be promoted as a way of eliminating the causes of social inequality.

- One of the conflict theorists, **Ralf Dahrendorf (1958)**, has noted that the contrast between the functionalist perspective's emphasis on stability and the conflict perspective's focus on change reflect the contradictory nature of society. Human societies are stable and long-lasting, yet they also experience serious conflict. Dahrendorf noticed that the functionalist approach and the conflict approach were ultimately compatible, despite their disagreement on numerous points.
- According to George Simmel, conflict is a permanent feature of society and not just a temporary event. It is a process that binds people together by interaction and relations. Further, conflict encourages people of similar interests to unite together to achieve their aims and objectives. Continuous conflict in this way keeps society dynamics and ever and constantly changing.

Cyclical Theories

Cyclical theories of social change focus on the rise and fall of civilizations attempting to discover and account for these patterns of growth and decay. Spengler, Toynbee and Sorokin can be regarded as the champions or supporters of this theory.

- **Spengler** pointed out that the fate of civilizations was a matter of destiny. Each civilization is like a biological organism and has a similar life cycle, birth, adolescent, maturity, old-age and death. After making a study of eight major civilizations including the west, he said that the modern western society is in the last stage, i.e., old age. He concluded that the western societies were entering a period of decay as evidenced by wars, conflicts, hostilities, aggressions and social breakdown that heralded their doom.
- **Arnold Toynbee's** "A Study of History", 1946, multivolume work, has drawn on materials from 24 civilization. The chief important and key concepts in Toynbee theory are those of "challenge and response". Every society faces challenges – at first, challenges posed by the environment, later challenges from internal and external enemies. The nature of the responses determines the society's fate. The achievements of civilization consist of successful and winning responses to challenges if it cannot mount an effective responses, it dies.

Marxian Theory of Social Change

Marx's theory of social change is much interlinked with his concept of social classes and class conflicts.

- Men make their own history.
- Men transform nature to make it better and serve their own purposes and in the process of transforming nature men transform themselves.
- Man is active in relation to his surroundings.
- There are two kinds of relationship in men life; natural relationship (procreation), social relationship (cooperation from several individual).

Role of Nurse in Social Change

Nurses are the key person in health care settings and play the role of changing agents in various places such as any health institutions, family or the community. Through health education and role model healthy behavior, nurses have the potential and the opportunity to act as agents for change for their families, patients and communities.

Unit II Social Structure

Henderson defined nursing in functional terms; "The unique function of the nurse is to assist the individual, sick or well, in the performance of those activities contributing to health or its recovery (or to a peaceful death) that he would perform unaided if he had the necessary strength, will or knowledge".

A change agent is a person from inside or outside the organization who helps an organization transform itself by focusing on such matters as organizational effectiveness, improvement, perfection, and development.

- **Change agent in production, distribution, and consumption of goods and social services:** Nurses play an important role in mobilization of resources in society. Food, clothing, water, sanitation, electricity, technology all are everybody's necessity and nurses advocate these fundamental necessities of human being that's why nurses bring changes in society. A nurse helps in clinical practice and clinical teaching and incorporates new discoveries and inventions that will produce further dimensions to improve patient's care.

For instance, a school health nurse when educate school children about balance diet she is acting as a change agent in the community.

- **Change agent in socialization:** Nurses are key role player in transmitting after values, knowledge, culture and social skills when a nurse takes care of patient in hospital or in community she not only treats physical illness but transmits social empowerment.

For example, a nurse is helpful in changing the mentality of an individual about the old customs and rituals through effective teaching and communication skills.

- **Change agent in social control:** Nurses has a positive impact on public health regulation, protection, law and policies. A nurse studies the social problems related to behavior and suggests preventive as well as remedial measures to combat the situation in an efficient manner.

For instance, when a physician performs physical examination of a female patient a female nurse should accompany her to promote advocacy and social control. A Nurse is also responsible for proper analysis of situation and making appropriate documentation for legal safeguards.

- **Change agent in social inter-participation:** By arranging mass media program, awareness, and sensitization program, nurses diffuse changes in human mind.

For instance, if a nurse arranges a mass awareness program on prevention and management of road traffic accidents, she is promoting social inter-participation between medical experts and general public.

- **Change agent in improving of positive health seeking behavior:** With the empathetic feeling and consideration of individuality of patient, nurses focus on cultural aspect of health, health services, health institutions, health problems. By focusing on counselling and family-centered care nurses bring positive changes in health-seeking behavior.

For instance, in reducing maternal and child morbidity and mortality, nurses providing dietary education to antenatal women and importance of iron, folic acid and calcium supplements as well as providing essential newborn care.

- **Change agent in social research:** When a nurse takes care of patient, she is not only taking care of patient but also she is concerned about his family. She acts as a liaison for communication thus she can contribute a lot to social research.

For instance, nurses working at ART center or at DOTS center can contribute to research related to social determinants of diseases.

To play effective role of change agent, nurse has to focus on three main roles as a *visionary*, *facilitator* and an *initiative* person. Being a visionary, nurse communicates, advises, coaches and provides feedback to bring change in any health and educational settings. A nurse formulates the significant rules, which bear effect upon the patient's response or resistance for treatment. Nurses initiate the responsibilities

of educating people about what change is needed in the priority basis, helping them through problem solving approach. Thus, a nurse should be an ideal person to bring social change.

STRUCTURE AND CHARACTERISTICS OF RURAL URBAN AND TRIBAL COMMUNITY

Indian society consists of collaboration of rural, urban, and regional communities as beautiful landscape comprises vibrant greenery, lively flowers, amazing birds and endless sky in the same manner.

Rural Community

Rural means belonging to the country. The word village is derived from the Latin word *villaticus* means belonging to farmhouse. The first collective life was in the village with a sense of we-feeling, assistance and cooperation. Agriculture is said to be the starting point of human civilization as it helped man to have a settled life in a village. Prior to that, man had nomadic life, as people engaged in hunting or food gathering and tending the sheep and cattle. Thus village life is the first significant state in the life of man to have group life. Though in the highly industrialized countries of Europe and America, the percentage of rural population is small, in the most of the underdeveloped countries, vast majority of the population lives still in villages. According to 1991 census the village population in India was about 74.28 of the total population and is slightly decreased to 72% in 2001. The rural population percentage for the census 2011 is about 68.84%. An overwhelming majority of India's population live in more than 6.38 Lakh villages.

Concept of Rural Community

It is well-known fact that India is predominantly or largely a land of villages even today. Not for nothing does Mahatma Gandhi said that villages are the very heart of India. He felt that the fate or outcome of the whole nation hinges on the fate or outcome of the villages. Even from historical point of view, villages are important because human society emerged from them. The census of India defines village as those areas which have a maximum population of 5,000, density of population of at least 400 per square kilometer, at least 70 percent of male working population engaged in agriculture pursuits. A number of factors are responsible for the growth of village community. So far as the topographical factors are concerned, these consist of land, water and climate. It is obvious that these factors influence the development of the village community. The economic factors governing the growth of the village community are the condition of agriculture, rural economy and cottage industries. The presence of natural resources and developed means of transport are also equally important. The social factor refers to peace, security, education, communal harmony and cooperation. The village is the oldest permanent community of man. All early communities were basically rural characters.

Definitions of Rural Community

Village communities in India have been in existence since time immemorial. In Vedas, we find reference to village communities as agriculture communities. A village community has been defined differently by different sociologists.

- According to A.R. Desai, ‘The village is a unit of rural society. It is the theatre wherein the quantum of rural life unfolds.
- According to Kropotkin, “The group of people living permanently in a definite geographical boundary is called a village community”.
- According to Eldredge and Merrill, “The rural community comprises the constellation of institutions and persons grouped about a small center and sharing common primary interest”.



Unit II Social Structure

- A.W. Green stated, "A rural community is a cluster of people living within a narrow territorial radius who share a common way of life".
- In the words of Bogardus, "Human society has been cradled in the rural group".

Village community refers to "a group of people permanently residing in a definite geographical area, who have developed certain community consciousness, and cultural, social and economic relations which distinguish them from other communities".

Features of Rural Community

- **Primary occupation is agriculture:** Primary occupation in the village is agriculture and small scale activities, like animal husbandry, poultry, apiculture, fishing, craftsmanship, etc.
- **Nature-friendly environment:** Village have natural setup. Air, water, soil and sky in the village are pollution free. Animal, birds, rivers, ponds and all other natural things are found in the village. There is a saying that village is made by God or nature. There is huge green plants and pure natural ambience in villages of India. This natural atmosphere enables the rural people to lead a simple and natural lifestyle.
- **Small size:** The village communities are small in size. Geographical area in the village is small as compared to a city. There may be a few household or small numbers of people. Indian villages are small, hundreds and thousands of families reside in a particular village.
- **Low density of population:** A number of the people live in per square kilometer area; as the villages have large areas of land for cultivation.
- **Less and homogenous population:** The population density in the village is very less so people know fellow villagers by their name. People of village have common occupation and common lifestyle. The same customs, traditions, and values are shared by the people of a village. Complete similarity is not possible. In Indian villages, people have different caste and tribes; some variations are there, apart from this, they work together with 'we-feeling' factor.
- **Minimal mobility:** Mobility is related to change; mobility means movement of the people from one place to another or from one social status to another. People of village are happy and satisfied with their present situation and with limited physical and social mobility. **Physical mobility** means transition or change from one territory to another. For example, from one village to another or from one city to another; or even from one place to another of the same village or city. 'Social mobility' means the transition of a person or social object from one social position to another. For example, a clerk becomes an officer, or vice versa (promotion or demotion).
- **Minimal social stratification:** Stratification means division of society according to caste and class. Caste stratification is dominant in village. In India due to caste and untouchability, there is much stratification.
- **Primary group relations:** The village is like a large family. Villagers share common and strong relationship with each other. Everyone is known personally and the members of the rural community have close relation. There is a primary group relation.
- **Unity:** Similarity in occupation, customs, and traditions, common values and permanent habit of the villagers made them to be united. People of village are living with harmony and peace.
- **Large family:** There are many people in a village family. Joint family and extended family trend is common in village. Agriculture needs more hands to work and big family proves helpful in such activities.
- **Low status of women:** There may be dominance of male in the rural communities. Women are not considered to be worthy to take decisions in the family matters. The rate of literacy and education is also relatively less among women.
- **Less education:** Relatively people are less educated in village. Villagers give more importance to their livelihood; education is secondary for them. In India, rural and tribal women are much backward in education. There is high rate of illiteracy.

- **Less political awareness:** Political awareness and participation is less in village. People of village are concerned with their daily routine activities of life; not in politics.
- **Less social problems:** Social problems, like crime, juvenile delinquency, prostitution and murder are less in villages, since villages are blessed with tranquility there exist less social problems in villages. Problems like illiteracy, ignorance, superstition, ill health, poverty, unemployment, conflicts based on caste system are found. Untouchability, based on caste system, is also found in Indian villages.
- **Strong religious values:** The religious and moral attitudes of the rural people are very strong. Their dependence upon nature and concern with natural things also make them more religious. Pattern of moral behavior such as honesty, kindness, forgiveness, sympathy, cooperation, and respect for the elders are found among the villagers.
- **Stable public opinion:** Public opinion is not easily changeable in villages due to rigidity of customs, traditions and values.

Thus, in rural community, people who live in a limited physical area, have common interest and common ways in dealing, satisfying and gratifying with them. A psychological as well as emotional bond plays an important role in the rural community. Physical locality contributes to the integration and stability of the rural community; this will encourage solidarity, cohesion, consistency, harmony and commonality.

Special Features of Indian Villages Communities

Some special features of village community (Fig. 2.23) are as follows:

- **Self-reliant:** People in the village believe in self. The inhabitants of the villages had very little to do with the people outside. They consider themselves more powerful and commanding. People in the village lives in harmony and peace.
- **Conservative:** People in the village are determinant for their custom and tradition. They follow old customs and trends even in modern era. The inhabitants of the villages are strongly attached to old customs and traditions. Their outlook is primarily conservative and they accept changes with extreme reluctance.
- **Poverty and illiteracy:** There is scarcity of financial resources in village so people are poor in village and they consider education as secondary so rate of illiteracy is higher in village.
- **Child marriage:** Lack of education and force of the customs and values make them to observe child marriage.
- **Dowry and bride price:** Some communities practice dowry and some other bride price.
- **Caste system:** Membership of caste, caste restrictions, social distance and even untouchability are still found in Indian village. The social status is given to the person according to his caste or birth, not according to his abilities.
- **Jajmani system:** Interrelationship of various castes is very significant in Indian villages. For examples, the potter makes earthen vessels for the use of the villagers; the Brahmin does the work of priest in the village.

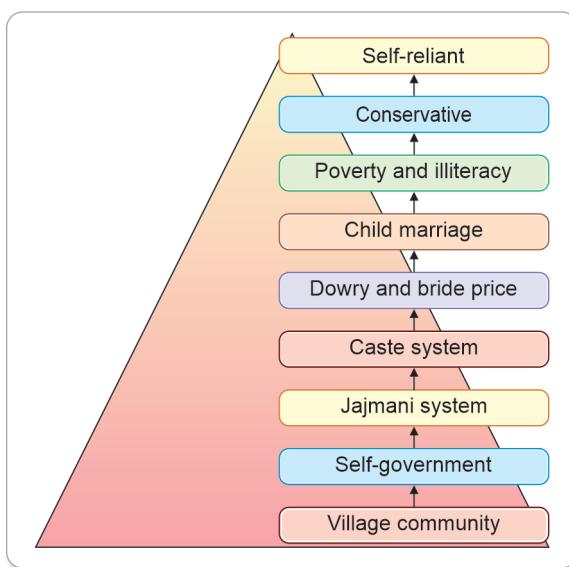


Figure 2.23: Special features of village community

- **Self-government:** Villagers do not approach to police or court for any dispute. Village community leader, seniors act as a decision maker in any dispute and resolve problems. India has been a land of villagers. Panchayat was a part of village. It is used to administer justice and maintain law and order as well as security in rural areas.

Community Development Project and Planning

Community development means all round development of rural people. It can be understood as a “Movement designated to promote better living for the whole community with the active participation both at the levels of government and community.”

It is a participatory effort of community representatives (stakeholder), government and non-government organization to fulfil the needs of community and thus strengthening the nation.

The planning commission, Government of India, has defined community development as “An attempt to bring about a social and economic transformation of village life through the efforts of the people themselves”.

Principles of community development project and planning:

- It is based on situational analysis of community.
- It requires active participation of people.
- It yields feeling of cooperation and leadership in village.
- It works for welfare and development of local people.
- It makes people self-dependent.

The aims of community development project and planning:

- Integrated development of rural community covering social, economic and cultural aspects of rural life.
- Fullest development of available material and human resources.
- Development of a sense of responsibility and awareness among the villagers.
- Development of initiative among the villagers.
- Development of agriculture and allied matters like animal husbandry.
- Development of social life by providing better communication, health sanitation, housing and educational facilities.
- Development of cottage industries.
- Providing more opportunity for employment.
- Development of cooperative effort at rural level.
- Women and child welfare.

The Pattern of the Program

Government, non-government and local community development organization works at different levels like national, state, district level, block level and village level.

- **At the central level:** Under the ministry of agriculture and irrigation.
- **At the state level:** Chief minister as its chairman and ministers of different development department.
- **At the district level:** Members of Parliament (MPs), Members of Legislative Assembly (MLAs). In every district, there is a village level planning committee also with the District Collector as its Chief.
- **At the block level:** Block Development Officer (BDO) and extension officers for agriculture, cooperation, animal husbandry, panchayat, social education, cottage industry, women and child welfare.
- **At the village level:** Panchayat are responsible for looking after village level work. One village level worker (Gram Sevak) is appointed for a group of ten villagers. Extension workers also help in the village level work. In addition to this, women village level workers are also appointed.

Functions and projects of community development projects and planning:

- **Community capacity building:** This type of project is focused on capacity building of village like creating opportunities for employment for villagers, giving vocational training helping in establishment of small scale home based production units. Training centers are established to impart training to villagers in modern techniques of agriculture, leadership training, and also handicraft production.
- **Agriculture, small scale cottage industries:** Community development projects based on modern technology of agriculture, hybrid seeds, etc. Social improvement and conservation, development of irrigation facilities, distribution of better variety of seeds, manure and agriculture equipment. Marginal farmers and small scale farmers are given special assistance in the form of subsidy and other facilities. Cottage industry is an effort to alleviate the problem of unemployment in rural areas. Loans, poultry farming, carpentry, development of handicrafts are some of the positive efforts to provide more employment to villagers. Assistance is also provided to sell their goods at reasonable price.
- **Rural education:** These types of projects promote primary education for poor people give more emphasis on infrastructure of school and promotion of girl education, sports facilities, community libraries, etc. Free education as well as middle school and secondary education are provided. In addition, social and adult education classes are also regularly conducted in most areas. Free textbooks and note books as well as stationary materials are also provided. In tribal areas, even free hostels are provided.
- **Public health:** Establishment and smooth functioning of community health centers ensure the safety of public health. In every block, a primary health center is started with several sub-centers. Mobile clinics are also a regular feature. Immunization programs are regularly conducted to prevent communicable diseases. All these support interventions for primary health.
- **Safe drinking water, housing and sanitation:** Provision of safe drinking water clean housing and promotion of pukka toilet facilities are some of the projects in this category. Villagers are educated to construct cheap and hygienic houses. They are also given loans for the construction of houses.
- **Conservation of natural resources:** This type of projects based on conservation of natural resources, like rain water harvesting, jaivik kheti, etc.
- **Promotion of eco-friendly utilities:** These projects are based on promotion and utilization of eco-friendly utilities like solar plants, biogas, and smokeless woodstoves.
- **Establishment of cooperative societies:** This type of project works to establish cooperative societies in village.
- **Institution of effective transportation, information and communication technology:** Transportation and communication have an important place in community development. Preparation of new roads and repairs of old ones, arranging public transport facilities and establishment of post offices are some of the village level program.
- **Strengthen the nation:** Welfare and development services of village collectively support the growth and prosperity of nation. Establishment of recreation centers, organizing sports and games, arranging cultural program, puppet shows, meals, public television facilities are included in this, Youth clubs and Mahila mandals are also organized.

Some of the Rural Development Programs which are implemented in our nation are:

- Community development program
- Minimum needs program
- National extension services
- National adult educational program
- Integrated rural development program
- Intensive area agriculture program
- Training of rural youth for self-employment

Unit II Social Structure

- Development of women and children rural areas
- Rural landless employment guarantee program
- Rural health education
- Family welfare services
- Fixing minimum wages for the laborers
- Implementation of prohibition act
- Redistribution of land
- Rural electrification
- Implementation of social security schemes
- National rural development program
- Rural manpower program
- Applied nutrition program—this program aims at raising the nutritional level of the rural people. Small children, pregnant and lactating mothers are given additional food or iron, folic acid, vitamin and mineral.

Changes in Indian Rural Life

Change is the order of nature. No society is static; the process of changes has become more rapid and widespread after Independence. Social legislation, education and development program, like community development project, and the block development extension project have brought about much changes in rural India. Factors like caste system, customs, traditions, belief, illiteracy and isolation acts as hindrances in the process of social change.

Factors Responsible for Changes in Rural India

Several factors responsible for changes in the rural life are as follows:

- **Natural calamities:** Natural calamities, like floods, earthquake, famine, and deadly disease such phenomena have really uprooted the rural people from time to time. Apart from destruction of life and property, the affected people used to shift to other rural areas or cities. When people shift from their original habit, a lot of changes do take place, but it is natural.
- **Industrialization and urbanization:** Industrial revolution and the consequent processes of industrialization and urbanization have really changed the socioeconomic or even the total life of man. It is not only affecting changes in the occupation and lifestyle, but the entire pattern of life.
- **Education:** Education is a great vehicle to change. The educated rural people are migrating to the cities for higher education and employment. Thus education is responsible for much change in rural life.
- **Transportation and communication:** Better transportation and communication facilities are being extended to rural areas. Roads are constructed, and railways are being set up.
- **Occupation:** People from village migrate to cities in search of occupation and adopt new ways of life quickly and when they go back to their village, they spread the urban culture consciously or unconsciously.
- **Population explosion:** Population explosion actually takes place in rural India due to illiteracy; ignorance and absence of social illumination birth are not controlled. Because of this population explosion or pressure of population on the land, people start to migrate in urban cities in search of livelihood and better facilities.
- **National movement:** The national freedom movement was the first nationwide movement which took the whole nation by storm. With Mahatma Gandhi's call for Satyagraha, hundreds and thousands of rural people came forward and participated actively. This participation has created a new awareness among the villagers also and many of them continued working for public life.
- **Political parties and leaders:** The effect of political parties and the political leadership can be easily observed in villages. Even the election of the village panchayat is influenced by political parties and their leaders.



- **Planned effort by government:** The central and state government have several programs which bring changes in rural life such as community development projects and the programs of the village. Government introduced several schemes, like Skilled India are also examples of governmental efforts to change rural life.
- **Voluntary organizations:** Several voluntary organizations are also working for the benefit of the villagers, which in turn change their life.
- **Socioeconomic problems:** Socioeconomic problems like poverty and unemployment are pressurizing the villagers to change their traditional mode of life.

Actual Changes Taking Place in Villages

- **Change in the rural marriage and family**
 - The large joint families are changing into smaller one's or nuclear families.
 - Although child marriages are still prevalent but trend of marriage into other caste growing. There are boys and girls who are educated who get married after attaining adulthood. Thus there is change in child marriage to some extent.
 - The status of women has also changed especially in families where the members are educated.
 - The authority of the father as the head of the family is undergoing some changes, especially in families where the members are educated.
 - **Changes in the economic life:** The distribution of electricity in the rural areas has facilitated change in the mode of agriculture. At least some villagers have taken to scientific agriculture.
 - Shifting from agriculture to business and industries.
 - No caste linked occupation; traditional occupations on the basis of caste are also undergoing changes.
 - Village bank.
 - Economically self-dependent; the pattern of housing, the style of dress, the types of food are also changing.
 - **Political changes:** Previously, the villagers have greater political unconsciousness yet they do not take part in elections to panchayat, state assembly and parliament. However most of them are ignorant about the implications of various political parties. This is due to their illiteracy and low state of education. Now, there are political leaders also in villages; some have become Panches or Sarpanches, and others. Rural leadership is more important because through this we can bring about changes in rural communities.
 - Vigilant voters: Previously, party-based election was not known in the villages, but now the villagers are becoming aware of it. Our recent survey has shown that many rural people are aware of political parties like Congress, BJP, etc.
 - Several political leaders from village are known persons.
 - **Environmental changes**
 - Increase in soil pollution
 - Increase of air pollution
 - Water pollution increases
 - **Social life changes**
 - The social differences on the basis of caste are also diminishing to some extent.
 - The rate of literacy is increasing due to the changes in the education; (provision of primary schools in many villages).
 - Tribals are receiving help from the government in order to improve their socioeconomic conditions.
- Thus there are several factors responsible for changes in our villages. There are real changes that are occurring in rural India. More positive changes take place is decline of the casteism and untouchability; increase in literacy and education particularly among women, birth control and development of family welfare.

Unit II Social Structure

TABLE 2.5: Population norms in three-tier system

Center	Population norms	
	Plain area	Hilly/tribal area
Sub-center (SC)	5000	3000
Primary health center (PHC)	30,000	20,000
Community health center (CHC)	1,20,000	80,000

Availability of health facilities in rural and its impact on health & health practices

There are three-tier systems of health care in rural India: (Table 2.5)

1. **Sub-center:** most periphery center managed by one MPwF/ANM and one MPw
They provide the following health services:
 - Family welfare services
 - Nutritional services
 - Immunization services
 - Diarrhea control services
 - Services to control communicable diseases
 2. **Primary health center:** referral unit of six sub center usually 4–6 bedded; with a medical officer and 14 subordinate paramedical staff.
They provide preventive, promotive and curative care along with the following services:
 - Medical care
 - Maternal and child care including family planning
 - Safe water supply and basic sanitation
 - Prevention and control of local and endemic diseases
 - Collection and reporting vital statistics
 - Health education
 - Referral services
 - Participation in national health programs
 - Training to health guide, health workers and health assistants
 3. **Community health center:** 30-bedded hospital/referral units for four primary health centers with specialized services. It is manned by four specialists, i.e., Surgeon, physician, gynecologist and pediatrician supported by 21 paramedical staff.
They provide therapeutic, preventive, promotive and curative care along with the following services:
 - Care of routine and management of any emergency (Hemorrhage, appendicitis)
 - Surgical interventions (caesarean section, laparoscopic surgery)
 - Newborn care
 - Participation with national programs (vaccination)
 - Referral services
 - Other (blood storage facility, laboratory facility)
- Impact of rural health services on health and health practices**
- Primary prevention from communicable and non-communicable diseases.
 - Positive health seeking behavior developed a democratic outlook in village development.
 - Decline in neonatal, infant, under five mortality rates through immunization, maternal and child care.
 - Decline in maternal mortality rate.

- Promotion of adolescent health
- In the field of education too, much work has been done
- Improvement in nutritional status
- Access of family planning services
- Access of safe drinking water and sanitation. The program has done considerable work with regard to the improvement of conditions of health and sanitation.
- Allied activities, like animal husbandry, poultry, and cottage industry have also benefited the villagers much.
- Remarkable work has been done in developing transport and communication.
- Effective referral system.

Thus, much work has been done in villages through the community development programs, in order to raise the standard of life of the rural people in diverse ways. However, there are several shortcomings too in the working of the community programs. According to bureaucratic set up of the government, things were not moving as fast as it was desired. The administrative machinery with a bureaucratic pattern has its own drawbacks. There must be proper coordination and cooperation between various parts of administration is needed.

As the rural sociologists Dwight Sanderson has stated in “The Rural Community”, a rural community consists of people living “on dispersed farmsteads and in a hamlet or village which forms the center of their common activities”. The rural localities are often referred to as “country neighborhood”. Rural life has preceded the urban life. It is said the God made the village and man built the city. In spite of the growth of cities, the population of the world is largely rural. In India alone, more than 50 crores of people live in villages.

Urban Community

The city or urban community came into being after the development of villages. There were cities in ancient times also but most of them were of importance due to religion, politics or trade and commerce. But the modern cities are mostly of industrial importance or significance that is the growth of modern cities is due to industrialization.

Urban community is a place satisfying the following three criteria simultaneously:

1. A minimum population of 5,000;
2. At least 75 percent of male working population engaged in non-agriculture pursuit;
3. A density of population of at least 400 per square km (1,000 per sq. mile).

The Growth of Cities

The massive growth of cities and metropolitan areas has been a characteristic feature of advances or development. Industrial revolution and urbanization created a demand for a large number of workers at centralized location.

According to sociologist, Gideon Sjoberg (1965), there are three prerequisites for the development of a city.

1. First, good environment with fresh water and a favorable climate;
2. Second, advanced technology, which will produce a food surplus to support non-farmers; and
3. Third, strong social organization to ensure social stability and a stable economy.

The growth of cities depends not only on birth rates, death rates and migration but also on political, religious, historical and economic factors.

Definitions of City

It is difficult to give a precise definition of the city or the urban community. Sociologists have said that any concept of the city should have the characteristics of the city. City is something which is not a village. Gist and Halbert, therefore, have stated that “Any definition of city, unless it is purely arbitrary, must include within its scope the characteristics of rural as well as urban communities”.

- According to **Howard Woolston**, “A city is a limited geographical area inhabited by a large and closely settled population having many common interest and institutions under a local government authorized by a state.”
- According to **W.B. Munro**, city is “A large body of people possessing striking characteristics, massed in a small area, charted as a municipal corporation, having its own local government, carrying on various economic enterprises and busily engaged in trying to solve the multifarious problems which its own crowded life put on it”.
- **Robert Park** stated, “City is a state of mind, a body of customs and traditions and the organized attitudes and sentiments that are inherent in these customs”.

Thus we find city or **urban community** has a limited area, a local government and certain striking traits are quite different from the rural community.

Characteristics or Features of Urban Community

- **Limited geographical area:** Compare to the village's cities has limited geographical area, that's why everything is customized in city.
- **High density of population:** The density of population is very high. Numbers of people are more in a limited space so there is overcrowding and congestion everywhere.
- **Small family:** Urban family is small in size because of restricted resources a family in city compromise of one or two kids and parents.
- **Heterogeneity:** There is no similarity or homogeneity in the life of urban people. There is diversity in the fields of occupation, language, religion and even culture.
- **High environmental pollution:** City and the environment are quite artificial. There is high degree of environmental pollution because of factories, modern roads railways, buildings, and many other things created by man.
- **Multi-dimensional:** Urban communities are multi dimensions; there is variety in the costume, occupation, living standards and everyday routine.
- **Dominance of non-agriculture occupation:** The urban people are engaged in a large number of diverse occupations such as industry, trade, commerce, education, government and recreation. There are hundreds and thousands of occupations for the dweller.
- **Social differences and stratification:** Diversity in various aspects of life and the variation in the status of individuals and the groups in the urban community are striking. There exist lots of social differences in urban community. High class, middle class, lower class, rich, poor, etc. the lifestyle of people also varies according to religion, occupations, and the socioeconomic status.
- **Less intimacy:** The city is a place of secondary group relation. By virtue of its size the city cannot be a primary group. People must associate constantly and at close quarters with strangers. Unlike rural communities where everyone knows each other by name, in urban communities it is less likely. People have lots of online friends but not a single real well-wisher in life. Even friends and acquaintances are likely to be known only in particular contexts in a particular segment of life.

- **Unpredictable social issues:** As urban society is dynamic; lots of unpredictable social issues are evolving in day-to-day life. For instance, live-in relationship, single parenting, etc. The other social problems such as crime, juvenile delinquency, slums, moral and spiritual ill health even murder, theft, rape, kidnapping, prostitution, divorce, and family disorganization are widespread in large cities.
- **Individualization:** There is much emphasis on individualism. In urban communities, people give more importance to oneself. My family, my property, my benefit, my harm, etc. All force the individual to make his own decisions and to plan his own decisions and to plan his life as a career.
- **Secondary control:** Primary control can be evaded. Apart from primary control (person itself) there is secondary control which rule in urban societies, like police, court and military and other legal as well as social bodies control the behavior of the urban people.
- **Great extent of social mobility:** The city is a place where social mobility is very easy and quick. People achieved their status by their own efforts. The exercise of talent, the achievement of education, the accumulation and display of wealth. There are avenues to a high position in all the different spheres of life. The freedom and availability of opportunities in the city facilitates social mobility, especially of the people of lower strata.
- **Social adjustment or acceptance:** Irrespective of the extreme diversity of the people in the city, they tolerate, adjust, and live together. The differences arise due to imbalance between necessity and demands.

Problems of Urban Community

Urban problems are endless. Drug addiction, pollution, crime, juvenile delinquency, begging, alcoholism, corruption, and unemployment are major concern.

Other problems of urban community are:

- Housing and slums
- Crowding and depersonalization
- Water supply and drainage
- Transportation and traffic
- Power shortage,
- Sanitation
- Pollution

Housing and Slums

Housing people in the city or abusing “homelessness” is a serious problem, government, industrialists, capitalists, entrepreneurs, developers and landlords have been unable to keep pace with the housing needs of the poor and the middle class people. According to the 1988 UNI report, between one-fourth and half of the urban population in India’s largest cities lives in makeshift shelters and slums. At least 15% of the nation’s families are deprived of houses more than 60% of the houses have inadequate lighting and air facilities and 80% of the rural and 30% of the urban population live in mud-houses. Millions of people are required to pay excessive rent that is one which is beyond their means. In our profit-oriented economy, private developers and colonizers find little profit in building houses in cities for the poor and the lower middle class people, and they consider it gainful to concentrate instead in meeting the housing needs of the rich and the upper middle class. The result has been higher rents and scramble for the few available houses.

Crowding and Depersonalization

Crowded life and people’s indifferent attitude or insensitivity to other person’s problems is another cause for concern in modern life. Some homes are so overcrowded that five to six persons have to live in one

Unit II Social Structure

single room. Some city neighborhoods are extremely overcrowded. Overcrowding has very harmful effects. It causes strange behavior, like short temperedness, spreads diseases, and creates conditions for mental illness, alcoholism, and riots. One negative effect of dense urban living is people's apathy and indifferent attitude. City dwellers are self-centered.

Water Supply and Drainage

People living in big cities face water crisis frequently as overcrowded and highly populated cities' water supply system fails to meet the demand of the people. Therefore water supply is irregular and impure as well. Empty water lines get damaged easily which mostly suck-in pollutants through leaking joints and water gets contaminated.

Transportation and Traffic

The transportation and traffic picture in all Indian cities is unhappy. A majority of people use buses and tempos, while a few use rail as transit system. The increasing number of scooters, motorcycles, mopeds and cars make the traffic problem worse.

Power Shortage

Closely linked with transportation is the question of power shortage. The use of electrical gadgets has increased very much in cities, and on the other hand, the establishment of new industries and the expansion of the old industries have also increased dependence on electricity.

Sanitation

Municipalities and municipal corporations in Indian cities are so riddled with corruption and inefficiency that they have time for all things but the interest in sanitation of the city, particularly in removing garbage, cleaning drains, and unclogging sewers. The sweepers rarely and reluctantly perform their assigned duties and every few months threaten to go on strike on the issue of wages, etc. The garbage work is assigned to private contractors they always complain of non-payment of money and stop working on slight pretexts. There is thus total lack of motivation to tackle the basic sanitation needs of the cities. The spread of unauthorized slums in congested urban areas and lack of civic sense among the settlers in these slums further add to the growing mound of filth and diseases.

Pollution

The smallest town share its garbage in open drainage system. Urban industry pollutes the atmosphere with industrial waste like smoke and toxic gases. Air pollution negatively impact child and old age people health. The high synergistic effect of toxic gases cause these diseases.

In urban areas, stealing robbery, murder, accidents rapes are more common as compared to rural areas. Begging is more common in the urban areas as road side, temple side, railway stations, bus stand are the common places. Prostitution is another problem prevalent in urban community.

Causes of Urban Problems

The causes of urban problems in India are as follows:

- **Migration:** People migrate to towns/cities because of the relatively better employment opportunities and lifestyle available there.

- **Industrial growth:** The industrial growth rate is about 6% per annum. The Eighth Five, Year Plan postulated an industrial growth rate of 8% per annum. This growth was expected to take care of the added job requirements in the cities.
- **Apathy of the government:** The administrative mismanagement prevails in cities. Municipal governments have not kept pace with city growth either spatially or on terms of management infrastructure. Lack of resources and extra utilization of available resources causes imbalance in the system.
- **Defective town planning:** Town planning in growing cities are impaired and irrational. It causes lots of problems for public.
- **Vested interest forces:** The last cause of urban problems is the vested interest forces that work against people but enhance private commercial interests and profits. The city residents are usually powerless and get badly affected by unilateral decisions made by some powerful people. These influential people make more money, they adopt plans and programs no matter how many people suffer in the process.

Urbanization and its impact on health and health practices

Overcrowding: This leads to certain problems, like:

- Communicable diseases
- Poor water supply
- Inefficient waste management
- Compromised living conditions
- Malnutrition
- Mental ailments, like depression, anxiety and stress.

Air pollution is responsible for:

- Acute respiratory diseases, like asthma, emphysema.
- Chronic lung diseases, like COPD, tuberculosis, etc.

Water pollution causes

- Unsafe drinking water.
- Water-borne diseases, like diarrhea.

Non-communicable diseases such as:

- Diabetes
- Hypertension
- Chronic heart diseases

Major urban problems—Urban slums

- Environmental pollution
- Poor housing and shelter facilities
- Health hazards of poor water supply and sanitation
- Higher rates of violence and crime
- Deterioration of mental health
- Substance abuse
- Transportation problem (road traffic accidents)
- Scarcity of energy and fuel

Impact on Health

- **Regional diseases:** Regional diseases exist regardless of borders because of geographical, economical and social process. Hepatitis A E, typhoid fever, malaria, dengue fever chikungunya, and various congenital disorders like sickle cell anemia, hemophilia, and thalassemia. Etc. are regional diseases. *Region* means area, especially part of country or the worlds having definable characteristics but not always fix boundaries. Usually regions are vast with indefinite area.

- **Nutritional disorders:** Micronutrient and macro nutrient deficiency are region-based like goiter.
- **Regional health services:** Even health resources, like doctor nurses paramedical staff are bounded to region. For instance, in hilly and tribal area there is limitation on health services and resources.

The unparalleled growth of cities in India, with the rapid processes of industrialization, and urbanization has merits and demerits. The growth of cities is desirable if the city environment, both physical and social is healthy. If the cities are infested with diverse and serious problems, life becomes unworthy. According to one administrator, city planner and ecologist, “The filth, overcrowding, un-serviced housing development, lack of water, poor transportation haphazard growth, a general deterioration in the standard of civic services are all clearly evident to any visitor to the Indian city”. Indian cities need planning, re-planning and reorganization.

Differences between Rural and Urban Community (Table 2.6)

TABLE 2.6: Differences between rural and urban community

Sl. no.	Feature	Rural community	Urban community
1.	Occupation	Agriculture and allied occupation such as cattle breeding, poultry and handicraft	Non-agriculture occupation such as trade, commerce, teaching, administration, etc.
2.	Environment	Natural environment, open air, birds, animals, farm, river, etc.	Man-made environment, artificial, overcrowding, polluted air and atmosphere.
3.	Size	Small community; less number of people as compared with city.	Large community; millions of people
4.	Density of population	Low density of population	In a small geographical area high density of population
5.	Homogeneity	Homogeneous community; unity of occupation, customs, traditions, values and lifestyle.	More socioeconomic differences
6.	Mobility	Both the physical and social mobility is limited.	Much physical and social mobility; owing to greater facilities of transportation and communication, education, industrialization give much scope for mobility.
7.	Social interaction	Personal, close, direct, and intimate interactions.	Impersonal, indirect, and abstract relationship.
8.	Family	Large family, extended family.	Small family or nuclear family.
9.	Religion	Concrete meaningful religion.	Abstract remote religion.
10.	Political awareness	Less political awareness	Relatively more political awareness
11.	Social change	Less social change	Rapid and large scale changes, unstable public opinion.
12.	Social control	Mostly informal means of social control	Formal means of social control
13.	Recreation	Natural and simple	Commercial and complex
14.	Education	High rate of illiteracy	Urban communities are centers of education with schools, college and universities.

TRIBAL COMMUNITY

Indigenous and tribal peoples are often acknowledged by national terms such as native peoples, aboriginal peoples, first nations, adivasi, janajati, hunter-gatherers, or hill tribes. Given the diversity of peoples, it aims at protecting the convention uses the inclusive terminology of “indigenous and tribal peoples” and ascribes the

same set of rights to both groups. Tribal people or indigenous people of India have a very ancient history of their survival in the scarcity of resources. *Tribal community* is a very significant part to study because we are devoid of their real and actual lifestyle, problems and rituals.

Concept of Tribe

The word “Tribe” is taken from the Latin word “Tribus” which means “one third”. The word originally referred to one of the three territorial groups which got united to make Rome. India is known as a melting pot of tribes and races. After Africa, India has the second largest concentration of tribal population within the world. Approximately there are about 698 Scheduled Tribes that constitute 8.5% of the India's population as per 2001 censes.

Tribal population has some specific characteristics which are different from others tribes. They are simple people with unique customs, traditions and practices. They live a life of isolation or you can say that geographical isolation. In India, aboriginal tribes have lived for 1000 of years in forests and hilly areas without any communication with various centers of civilization. From ancient Rome, the term tribe has its origin, where the word **Tribus** denoted a division within the state. Normally, ‘tribe’ may be a group of individuals during a primitive stage of development acknowledging the authority of a chief and typically regarding them as having a same ancestor.

Definitions of Tribe

There are many unclear, laymen and indistinguishable definitions for describing a tribe but let us take a look at conventional one.

- According to the **Imperial Gazetteer of India**, a tribe is a collection of families bearing a common name, speaking a common dialect, occupying or professing to occupy a common territory and is not usually endogamous, though originally it might have been so.
- According to **Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary**, Tribe is a group of people of the same race, and with the same customs, language, religion, etc., living in a particular area and often led by a chief.
- **Lucy Mair** defines Tribe as “an independent political division of a population with a common culture”.
- **D.N. Majumdar** defines tribe as “a social group with territorial affiliation, endogamous with no specialization of functions ruled by tribal officers hereditary or otherwise, united in language or dialect recognizing social distance with other tribes or castes”.
- **Gillin** and **Gillin** consider “Tribe as any collection of pre-literate local group that occupies a common general territory, speaks a common language and practices a common culture as a tribe”.
- As per **Ralph Linton**: Tribe may be a group of bands occupying a contiguous territory or territories and having a feeling or sense of unity deriving from numerous similarities in a culture, frequent contacts and a certain community of interests.
- **L.M. Lewis** considers that tribal societies are small in scale and restricted within the spatial and temporal range of their social, political and legal relations and possess a morality, a religion and broader view of corresponding dimensions. Tribal languages are unwritten and hence the extent of communication both in time and space is integrally narrow. On the other hand, tribal societies exhibit a remarkable economy of design and have a compactness and self-sufficiency lacking in modern society.

Tribe: In Indian Perspective

At present we usually take tribes in comparison or relationship with civilization but our history was different. So to study tribes in India, anthropologists go back to ancient or medieval times. There are two foremost important approaches—evolutionary and historical. Both are prominent as an evolutionary approach is meant to discuss the process of tribal succession or progression with time, whereas the historical approach

is confined with that exact or precise time. Tribes of India are different as well as diverse on the basis of socioeconomic and political development. At present we often regard tribes as mentioned in the Scheduled Tribes list. Most commonly the people living in solitude with localized groups are called tribals by Indians. In India, the tribal people have known as well as acknowledged here as Adivasi, a modern Sanskrit word that carries the specific meaning of being the original inhabitants or residents of a given region.

There are more than 600 Scheduled Tribes under Article 342.

Under Article 342 of the Indian Constitution

- President of India specify the tribes or tribal communities or parts of or groups within tribes or tribal communities which shall for the functions of this constitution be deemed or considered to be Scheduled Tribes in relation to that State or Union Territory, as the case may be.
- Parliament may by law include or exclude from the list or record of Scheduled Tribes specified in a notification issued under clause (1) any tribe or tribal community or part of or group within any tribe or tribal community, but to save as aforementioned a notification issued under the said clause shall not be varied by any subsequent notification.

Characteristics of Indian Tribes

In Indian Context, T.B. Naik has described the following features of tribes:

- A tribe should have least or small amount of functional interdependence within the community.
- Economically backward or diffident (i.e., primitive and traditional means of exploiting natural resources, tribal economy should be at an underdeveloped stage and have multifarious economic pursuits).
- A comparative geographical isolation or seclusion of its people.
- Having a common dialect or language.
- Politically unorganized and community panchayat should be influential or dominant.
- They have own customary laws, commandment or regulations.

The Tribal Community in India is known as Scheduled Tribes or ST under Article 366 of the Indian. In India, there are 212 tribes in 14 States. The Notification and specification of any tribe or tribal community of any area as a "Scheduled Tribe" has been made by President of India under Article 342(i).

The following are the characteristics of Indian tribes:

- **Definite geographical and social area:** They have a definite and specific geographical and social area. In India, the common in all tribes is their definite area and common particular place. Where they share, distribute and allocate social aspects, like a common language, community, name, rituals, sentiments, territory, etc. This important and peculiar characteristic helps them to unite together and maintain a sense of unity. It helps them to encourage and support the common culture. They live in hilly or forest area.
- **Blood relationship:** An integrated social organization based on blood relationships.
- **Cultural homogeneity:** Cultural homogeneity is the main characteristic of tribal community. A distinct psychological view toward enjoying life.
- **Common religion:** Lack of distinction between forms as well as substance of religion.
- **Endogamy:** According to Indian Culture, the institution of marriage holds a great or immense significance. Tribal people do not get married outside that always respect their commonality and prefer marriages in the same community.
- **Common dialect:** They have a common dialect or language with a shared folk-lore. These special features make them unique.
- **Organized political authority:** People living there always have an organized political authority and system that looks for their interests, welfare safety and security. They fear intrusion or any kind of

interruption from outside that would make their culture impure. The chief or group leader actively participates to promote the best for the masses. Instrument of social bonds or connections among tribes is mainly the Kinship.

- **Sense of equality:** The group is democratic in nature. The sense of equality or egalitarianism among the community should be praised. There is no institution that is based on caste, class or gender bias. However, the position of chief or leader is higher but tribal people have no sense of discrimination or inequality. Hierarchy among men and groups are absent or totally missing.
- **Taboos:** They believe and consider in magic and spirits. Taboos are important part of their life and largely they trust and depend on animism. Worship or devotion of spirits with fear and respect is common among tribes. They have a preference in remote terrains or topography to live in and disregard trespassing in their area. Absence or lack of strong, complex, multipart formal organization.
- **Lack of interest on material goods:** Communitarian basis of land holding. Little value on additional accumulation on the use of capital and on market trading.

Geographical Location of Tribes

There are four tribal regions described by anthropologist L.P. Vidyarthi—Himalayan, Middle India, Western India, and Southern India. States and Union Territories having a maximum number of Scheduled Tribes as per the census of 2011 are Lakshadweep with 94.8%, Mizoram with 94.4% and Nagaland with 86.5%. On the contrary, the minimum is in Uttar Pradesh with 0.6%, Tamil Nadu with 1.1% and Bihar with 1.3%. Moreover, there are some states, like Punjab, Haryana, Chandigarh, Delhi, and Pondicherry which have no population of tribes.

Classification of Tribes

To classify tribes, we can consider about regional or geographical distribution. On regional distribution, tribes can be subcategorized into:

- **Northeastern region:** The tribes here are the Garo, Kuki, Mizo, Khasi, Monda, Nagas, etc. with regions Assam, Arunachal Pradesh, Mizoram, Nagaland, and Tripura.
- **The Sub-Himalayan Region:** The major tribes here are Gurjar, Gadi, Tharu, Jaunsari, etc.
- **The Central and East India:** With West Bengal, Odisha, Madhya Pradesh and Uttar Pradesh, the tribes are Baiga, Bondo, Joang, Kol, Santhal, Munda, Bhils, Ho, Pahadiya, etc.
- **South India:** The states being Tamil Nadu, Kerala, Andhra Pradesh and Karnataka with tribes Kadar, Tod, Gonds, Chenchu, Koya, and others.
- **Western India:** It includes Rajasthan, Maharashtra and Gujarat and the tribes being Bhils, Gonds, Korku, Koli, Thakar, Warli, Munda, Katkari, Pradhans, Khond, and others.

Apart from this ground, there are two other languages and ethnicity, civilization or background. On language, tribes are separated as Austric Language Group, Tibeto-Chinese group, The Dravidian Language group and the Indo-European Language group. Moving further to ethnic roots the division is the Mongoloid Origin, Proto-Australoid, and the Negrito.

Problems Faced by Tribal Communities

Even after 75 years of Independence and multisectoral advancements, these people continuously face the problems.

They are deprived of financially. The basic necessities, like water, food and nutrition, education, infrastructure, health care services, and good governance are not available to them in true sense of the term.

Unit II Social Structure

The most miserable trouble is their financial or economical condition. They have only small landholdings and barely practice any occupation or livelihood. Their lands are transferred to some other sectors therefore they had to suffer for their livelihood the entire life. Even now they are not free to use forest products or goods which are actually their own. The literacy rate is very low; and social and economic development is less. India has a very small number of Scheduled Tribes in educational institutions. There is insufficient implementation of laws and policies. There must be higher rate of unemployment and joblessness. The basic social infrastructures, like hospitals, banks, post office services, schools, etc. are lacking here. Sometimes, the problem also stands on their part because they do not want any kind of non-tribal to take a stand or measure for them. They are always under the fear of being a minority and losing or getting misplaced from their land.

Problems are:

- Land alienation
- Fear of losing forests and facing displacement
- Indebtedness, poverty and unemployment
- Health, nutrition and lack of health care services, infrastructure and medical staff
- Lack of educational and learning services, infrastructure and human resources
- Identity, cultural problems and cultural diffusion
- Concept of private property
- In-migration of other communities
- Language problem because of unwritten form
- Problem of separatism

Acts and Laws Related to Tribal Community

The constitution has committed the nation two ways or courses of action in respect of scheduled tribes:

1. Giving protection to their distinctive way of life.
2. Protecting them from social injustice and all forms of exploitation and discrimination, and bringing them at par with the rest of the nation so that they may be integrated with the national life.

For the protection, socioeconomic and political development of scheduled tribes, the Constitution of India says:

Social Development

- Equality before Law (Article 14).
- The state has to make special provisions for the advancement of any socially and educationally backward classes of citizens or for the Scheduled Tribes and others.
- Equality of opportunity for all citizens in matters relating to employment or appointment to any office under the state (Article 16).
- For reservation in appointment, posts in favor of any backward class citizens which in the opinion of the state is not adequately represented in the services under the state (Article 16[4]), in matter of promotion to the scheduled tribe (Article 16 [4A]).
- A National Commission for Scheduled Castes and scheduled Tribes to investigate, monitor and evaluate all matters relating to the constitutional safeguards provide for the STs (Article 338).
- Appointment of a commission to report on the administration of the Scheduled Areas and the Welfare of the Scheduled Tribes in states (Article 339).
- Appointed by the Govt. of India, the commission has to investigate the conditions of socially and educationally backward classes and to make recommendations to remove their difficulties which they faced during their work (Article 340).

Economic Development

- The state to promote with special care the educational and economic interests of the weaker sections of the people, scheduled tribes in particular and protect them from social injustice and all forms of exploitation (Article 46).
- The claims of the members of the ST in the appointments to services and posts in connection with the affairs of the union or of a state to be taken into consideration consistent with the maintenance of efficiency of administration (Article 335).

Political Development

- Through the Fifth Schedule, the administration and control of Scheduled Areas and the Scheduled Tribes in any state except Assam, Meghalaya, Tripura and Mizoram by ensuring submission of Annual Report by the Governors to the President of India regarding the Administration of the Scheduled Areas and setting up of a Tribal Advisory Council to advice on such matters pertaining to the Welfare and advancement of Scheduled Tribes (Article 244[1]).
- Special provisions through the Sixth Schedule for the administration of Tribal Areas in the states of Assam, Meghalaya, Tripura and Mizoram by designating certain tribal areas as Autonomous Districts and Autonomous Regions by constituting District Councils, Autonomous Councils and Regional Councils (Article 244[2]).
- Reservation of seats for the Scheduled Tribes in the House of the people (Article 330).
- Reservation of seats for the Scheduled Tribes in the Legislative Assemblies of the states (Article 332).
- Reservation of seats for the Scheduled Tribes in every Panchayat (Article 243D).

Act

- **PESA (Panchayat Extension of Scheduled Area) Act, 1996:** The objectives of this Act is to extend the provisions mentioned in Part IX of the Constitution to scheduled areas. It is to provide 'self-rule' to upgrade the tribal populations. It points to protect their customs, traditions and cultural identity. The Gram Sabhas were empowered so that they become the main center for all activities. The Act would definitely support people's participation to achieve better utilization of resources.
- **Forest Act, 2006:** This Act may be called the Scheduled Tribes and Other Traditional Forest Dwellers (Recognition of Forest Rights) Act, 2006. As its name suggests, the Act was enacted to protect the rights to hold and live in the forest land. It should be under the occupation for livelihood. Apart from it, there is also an inclusion of rights for the ownership of land by scheduled tribes. Although it faced challenges like hurdles in implementation, lack of awareness, improper roadmaps, etc.
- **SC/ST (Prevention of Atrocities) Amendment Act of 2018:** The very feature of Indian society has evils, like caste clashes, cow vigilantism, and honor killing and so on. These are atrocities faced by minorities as per the custom. So the SC/ST (POA) Act, 1989 was enacted to punish the crimes belonging to Scheduled Castes and Tribes. Along with it there were provisions, like no anticipatory bail, speedy proceedings and giving compensation to victims. This Act was amended in 1995, 2015 and then in 2018. In 2018, in Subhash Kashinath Mahajan vs State of Maharashtra Case, the drawbacks like misuse of Act got popular and questions were being made on its validity. But after the amendment Act, the original provisions were restored.

Initiatives for Tribal Welfare

- Tribal Research Institutes
- Ekalavya model of residential schools: Poorna Malavath who climbed Everest is also from one of the tribal welfare schools.

Unit II Social Structure

- Van Bandhu Kalyan Yojana has been launched by the Central Government of India for the holistic development and welfare of the tribal population of India.
- TRIFED has setup *Tribes India* a chain of showrooms where several categories of handicrafts are being marketed like tribal textiles, tribal jewelry.

IMPORTANCE OF SOCIAL STRUCTURE IN NURSING PROFESSION

Social structure is an abstract, theoretical, hypothetical and intangible phenomenon. Social structure is essential because it creates order, command and predictability in a society. It refers to external aspects of society. Individuals are the members of associations, groups and institutions. Social structure includes social institutions, groups, statuses, roles and norms. Social structure is the stable pattern of social relationships existing in a particular society or group. It provides framework within which we interact with others.

Social structure is important in nursing profession because:

- Social structure helps the nurses to know about the typical pattern of the group, such as usual relationships between people and group. This will help nurses to assess behavior and attitude of a person in relation with their social surroundings.
- Provision of information about social structure and its consequences, enabling health care personnel to use knowledge of social structure to develop more effective plans for particular action. Evaluate intervention strategies and modify the plan accordingly.
- Knowledge of social structure is important to use sociological principles and data to make people aware of aspects of the social situation of which they had previously been unaware.
- Involvement of the individuals/group members in the planning process, to maximize the likelihood that they will have an investment in the outcomes.
- Knowledge of social structural in member selection. People's participation is extremely important in community development.
- Knowledge of social structure is important to utilize available resources.
- Nursing is dynamic in nature in meeting health care needs of an individual, family and society. Knowledge of social structure helps nurses in:
 - The formation of humanistic system of values.
 - Assistance with the gratification of human needs.
 - Development of helping and trusting relationship with individuals.
 - Systemic use of the scientific problem-solving methods for decision making.
 - Provision for supportive, protective and corrective mental, physical, socio-cultural and spiritual environment.
 - Promotion of interpersonal teaching-learning.
 - Provision of preventive, promotive, and curative health care services.

Congratulations!!

You have completed the CHAPTER thoroughly, now it's time to assess your knowledge and learn more through *My Phygital Book*

Scan the QR Code
to Download the App



Nursing Next Live
The Next Level of Nursing Education
CBS Phygital Books >
Essentials of Applied Sociology >
My Phygital Book



My
Phygital
Book
Listen, Learn & Practice



Reading is not enough, Now **Listen, Learn & Practice** Every Chapter

Golden Points
Get One Liners of Chapter
summary in the PODCAST
form

Solved Exercises
Subjective and objective exercises given in
book with their solutions to evaluate
and assess the complete chapter knowledge

MCQs
Chapter-wise extra MCQs in the
form of Practice test to give
in-depth concept clarity



Nursing skills important for identifying and managing social issues are enlisted in case study 1:

Case Study 1 Nursing Skills Important for Identifying and Managing Social Issues

As the spread of COVID-19 has led to global efforts to social distance, concerns about the negative psychological effects of social isolation and loneliness have grown. In India, researches on the pandemic borne mental health crisis also suggest an increase in mental health morbidity, such as paranoia, anxiety, sleeping difficulties, panic behavior, constant worrying and compulsive symptoms.

Raj is an 18-year-old young Indian male visited with his parents in community health center. Parents has complaints that he is short tempered, not giving much attention to any one and not showing interest in his social surroundings since 5–6 months.

Applied sociology: Social isolation

Nursing skills required: Effective listener, evidenced-based knowledge impartation.

Explanation: Social isolation is the cause of multiple health problems in younger adults staying in the community to overcome the effects of social isolation. It requires a holistic and comprehensive approach, aiming interventions on the physical, psychological, and psychosocial needs of younger adults. Nurses possess a unique expertise in developing holistic interventions and using creativity to combat the negative health sequelae resulting from social isolation. The nursing role in holistic care serves to protect the young adult's ego and integrity, improve quality of life, and maintain health and wellness during this time of mandated social distancing. With the empathetic feeling and consideration of individuality of patient nurses focus on cultural aspect of health, health services, and health problems. Side by side focusing on counseling and family-centered care. A nurse brings positive changes in health seeking behavior.

SUMMARY

Social structure is the combination of various components such as activities, people and places. Because every individual needs to work together, combine and organize for specific purposes, so that no man lives to himself. This unity of effort is important to construct a good society. In present unit, we discussed basic concept of society, community, association and institutions. Social group, its meaning, characteristics and classification, social processes such as cooperation, accommodation, assimilation, competition and conflict, etc. and also the impact of isolation. This unit also examined the role of socialization in human development, nature and process of social change and nurse's role. It discussed rural, urban and tribal communities and their major health problems and finally, importance of social structure in nursing profession.

- According to Talcott Parsons, "Social structure is the term applied to describe a particular arrangement of interrelated institutions, agencies and social patterns as well as the status and role which each person assumes in groups". Elements of social structure; statuses, social roles, groups, social networks, and social institutions.
- Individual and society are inseparable. There are two main theories regarding the relationship of the individual and society: Social contract theory and Organismic theory.
- According to Giddings, "Society is the sum of formal relations in which individuals are associating together or bounded together". Characteristics of society are: It consists of people, system of relationships, likeness and differences, dynamic, system of authority, system of control, system of cooperation, division of work, unique culture, and system of interdependence, personality development, and abstract in nature.
- According to Bogardus, "Community is a social group with some degree of 'we feeling' and 'living in a given area'".

Unit II Social Structure

- Bogardus stated “An association usually is working together of people to achieve some purpose”.
- Morris Ginsberg described, “Institutions as reorganized and established usage governing the relations between individuals and groups”. Institution simplifies action for the individuals, facilitates fulfilment of basic needs, provides a means for social control, and provides role and status for individuals.
- Living in a group is a natural phenomenon. According to MacIver and Page, “Social group is a collection of human beings who are brought into social relationship with one another”. Groups are classified as primary or secondary by Cooley and according to Sumner, in-group and out-group. Groups are important to ensure continuity of society, promote we-feeling, satisfy gregarious nature of man, to provide comfort in adverse situation, and also important for process of socialization.
- According to Horton and Hunt, “The term social process refers to the repetitive forms of behavior which are commonly found in social life.” Types are associative social process; cooperation, accommodation, assimilation; dissociative social process such as competition and conflict.
- The absence of communicative interaction or social contact is isolation. It is situation deprived of social contacts; both the individual and group can be isolated. There are two types of isolation is common; Spatial isolation and organic isolation.
- Socialization proceeds throughout the life course. Socialization affects the overall cultural practices of a society; it also shapes the images that we hold of ourselves. Heredity and environmental factors interact in influencing the socialization process. Parents play a critical role in guiding children into those gender roles deemed appropriate in a society.
- According to the dictionary of sociology, edited by Fairchild, “social change means, Variations or modifications in any aspect of social process, pattern or form.” Factors influencing social change such as personal, physical, demographic, political, cultural, educational, and technological factors. Theories of social change such as evolution theory, functionalist theory, conflict theory and cyclical theory. Nurses work in the process of social change through socialization, working as change agent in improving positive health seeking behavior.
- Structure and characteristics of rural, urban and tribal community: *Rural*; Agriculture, friendly environment, small size, small population, minimal mobility, primary group relations. *Urban*; overcrowding, high mobility, secondary group relations. *Tribal*; common topography, unity, blood relations, common name, unique culture.
- Major health problems in rural, urban and tribal communities: *Rural*; poverty, illiteracy, inadequate safe water supply, shortage of health care facilities. *Urban*; health problems, mental stress, crime, begging, prostitution, pollution. *Tribal*; Land Alienation, Indebtedness, Poverty, Nutrition and lack of Health care services, lack of educational resources.
- Knowledge of social structure helps nurses in; development of helping and trusting relationship with individuals as well as provision of preventive, promotive, and curative health care services.

ASSESS YOURSELF

Short Answer Questions

1. Define society.
2. Explain about characteristics of society.
3. Write about elements of social structure.
4. Define secondary group and its characteristics.
5. What do you understand by associative social processes?
6. Discuss the features of village community.
7. Differentiate between conflict and competition.
8. Enlist agencies of socialization.

9. Write a note on social change theory.

10. What are the types of social control?

Long Answer Questions

1. Define socialization. Explain agencies involved in the process of socialization.
2. Discuss various agencies of socialization.
3. Define social groups. Differentiate between primary group and secondary group.
4. Define social change. Discuss the factors of change.

- 5.** Differentiate between rural and urban community.
6. Describe the problems of tribal community.
7. Define social change. Describe the factors of social change.
8. Discuss the characteristics of primary group.

10. The essential characteristics of rural community is:

 - a. Individualism
 - b. Heterogeneity
 - c. Impersonality
 - d. Formal social relationships

Multiple Choice Questions

- 1. Which of the following is not a unit of social structure?**

 - Groups
 - Social unity
 - Association
 - Institution

2. Man's behavior in society is determined by two forces:

 - Formal and informal
 - Physical and social
 - Natural and unnatural
 - Philosophical and psychological

3. A group of people organized for a particular purpose is known as:

 - Community
 - Society
 - Association
 - Crowd

4. Assimilation is a:

 - Associative process
 - Dissociative process
 - Psychological process
 - Mental process

5. Class is an example of:

 - Preset status
 - Ascribed status
 - Achieved status
 - None of the above

6. Which of the following is not a feature of tribe?

 - Common religion
 - Exogamy
 - Blood relationship
 - Common language

7. Family is a:

 - Economic group
 - Political group
 - Religious group
 - Kinship group

8. Groups are classified into primary groups and secondary groups by:

 - Cooley
 - Sumner
 - Ginsberg
 - Gillin and Gillin

9. A social group is a:

 - Gathering of people
 - Association of people
 - A system of social interactions
 - Organization of people

10. The following is no longer there due to:

 - Education
 - Proximity of urban areas
 - Modern means of communication
 - Economic growth

11. Modern society is governed by:

 - Conventions
 - Rule of Law
 - Devine Law
 - Physical Law

12. The recent trends in the urban population in India are:

 - A state of stagnation
 - Interdependence
 - Cooperation
 - A steady increase

13. Aspects of social control are:

 - Belief oriented and norms oriented
 - Pressure oriented and value oriented
 - Culture oriented and custom oriented
 - Religious oriented and education oriented

14. Social mobility is the feature of:

 - Class
 - Caste
 - Sense of unity
 - Common interest

15. Meaning of social change except:

 - Community organization
 - Change in social relationships
 - Change in social process
 - Change in social structure

16. Socialization is a process except:

 - Regulation of human behavior
 - Continuous throughout life
 - It is based on learning process
 - Social disorganization

17. Agency of primary socialization is:

 - School
 - Peer group
 - Family
 - Workplace

18. Human society has been cradled in rural groups, said by:

 - Bogardus
 - Ginsberg
 - MacIver
 - Kimball Young

19. Which of the following is not an element of rural community?

 - A group of people
 - Indefinite locality
 - We feeling
 - Common modes of life



Unit II Social Structure

Answer Key

- | | | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. b | 2. b | 3. c | 4. a | 5. c | 6. b | 7. d |
| 8. a | 9. c | 10. d | 11. c | 12. a | 13. d | 14. b |
| 15. a | 16. a | 17. d | 18. c | 19. a | 20. b | |

FURTHER READINGS

1. Centre for Disease control and prevention. Loneliness and social isolation linked to serious health conditions. www.cdc.Gov.Publication.
2. Gowda Krishne, Sociology for nurses. 5th edition. Noida: CBS Publishers and distributors Pvt. Ltd; 2009.
3. Hossain, F.M.A. and Ali, Md. K. Relation between Individual and Society. Open Journal of social science, (2014), 2, 130-137. <http://dx.doi.org/10.4236/jss.2014.28019>.
4. Kendra Cherry. An Overview of Social psychology. 5 July 2020; www.verywellmind.com
5. Richard T. Schaefer. Sociology A Brief introduction. 6th edition, Tata McGraw-Hill Publishing Company Limited; New Delhi: 2006.
6. Sociology Guide. A Student Guide to sociology. www.sociologyguide.com
7. Beam, C. R., & Kim, A. J. (2020). Psychological sequelae of social isolation and loneliness might be a larger problem in young adults than older adults. Psychological Trauma: Theory, Research, Practice, and Policy, 12(S1), S58–S60. <https://doi.org/10.1037/tra0000774>
8. Anna Gale. Preventing Social Isolation: A Holistic Approach to Nursing Interventions. June 16, 2020: <https://doi.org/10.3928/02793695-20200616-03>

My Exam Centre
Read & Learn

Solved Papers
Get Question bank covering the complete subject in the form of Subjective exercises and Extra-edge exercises with their solution

Unsolved Papers
Explore the pool of Unsolved Previous Year Exam Papers of top Universities

Scan the QR Code to Download the App

Nursing Next Live
The Next Level of Nursing Education
CBS Phygital Books >
Essentials of Applied Sociology > My Exam Centre

111



Note

Add Ons

Dil Mange More Content



See & Perceive

Watch and learn with the selective Important Topic-wise Videos (UG & NORCET centric) by Subject-expert

Recent Update

Regular updates related to Recent advancements & Book Errata

e-Book

Get PDFs of important chapter/section (Annexures /Appendices) of book (optional and exclusive for Pro-users and Institutions)



Scan the QR Code
to Download the App

Nursing Next Live

The Next Level of Nursing Education

CBS Phygital Books >

Essentials of Applied Sociology > Add Ons

UNIT

III

Culture

In this chapter, we will study the development of culture around the world. We will see just how basic the study of culture is in sociology. We will examine the meaning of culture as well as development of culture from its roots to the technological advances of today. We will define and explore the major aspects of culture including language, norms, sanctions, and values and describe the nature of culture and major theoretical perspectives on culture. Our discussion focuses both on general cultural practices found in all societies and variation that can distinguish one society from another, as well as impact of culture and modernization on health and diseases.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

On completion of this unit, the students will be able to:

- » Define culture.
- » Describe nature and characteristics of culture.
- » Discuss about evolution of culture.
- » Define civilization.
- » Differentiate between culture and civilization.
- » Differentiate between culture and socialization.
- » Discuss about transcultural society.
- » Discuss about modernization and its impact on the health and illness behavior.

UNIT OUTLINE

- » Introduction
- » Development of Culture Around the World
- » Meaning of Culture
- » Definitions
- » Nature of Culture
- » Special Characteristics of Culture
- » Elements of Culture
- » Evolution of Culture
- » Diversity and Uniformity of Culture
- » Major Theoretical Perspectives of Culture
- » Factors Responsible for Cultural Variability
- » Components of Culture
- » Civilization
- » Culture and Socialization
- » Transcultural Society
- » Modernization
- » Cultural Influences on Health and Diseases

KEY TERMS

Belittling: Dismissive of the importance of a person or thing, or to make another person feel as though they are not important.

Civilization: The things, techniques and material instruments which have been devised by man in his effort to control the conditions of his life.

Counter culture: Culture which is deviant against the society. When a subculture evidently and deliberately opposes certain aspects of the larger culture, it is known as a counterculture.

Culture: According to E.B. Taylor, “Culture is a complex whole, which includes knowledge, belief, art, morals, law, customs and any other capabilities and habits acquired by the man as a member of society.”

Culture complex: Larger clusters of traits organized about some nuclear point of references and form cultural complexes. For example, folding hands, singing prayer song, touching feet of old person, taking Prasad from the priest form a religious complex.

Cultural area: The societies or communities having similar cultural traits and complexes constitute a cultural area.

Cultural diversity: Cultural diversity means an understanding that each individual is unique and recognizes his personal differences. These differences may be along the dimensions of race, ethnicity, gender, sexual orientation, socioeconomic status, age, physical abilities, religious beliefs, rituals or other ideologies.

Cultural evolutionism: Cultural evolutionism is defined as the permanent interplay between the evolution of social order, pattern, cultural achievements and cognitive development.

Cultural lag: Cultural lag refers to the period of maladjustment when the nonmaterial culture is still struggling to adapt to new material conditions.

Cultural pattern: A culture pattern is formed when trait and complexes become related to each other in functional roles.

Cultural relativism: Cultural relativism refers to the principle that an aspect of culture can be evaluated or judged only in terms of culture as a whole.

Cultural shock: Anyone who feels disoriented, uncertain, out of place, or even fearful when immersed in an unfamiliar culture may be experiencing cultural shock.

Cultural traits: Cultural traits are the single element or smallest unit of culture. They are the “units of observation” which when put together constitute culture. Traits are the elemental unit of culture. For example, shaking hands, touching feet, etc.

Cultural universals: All societies are gradually developing certain common or some peculiar practices and beliefs in their day to day practices known as cultural universals.

Cultural values: Cultural values are these collective conceptions of what is considered good, desirable, and proper-or bad, undesirable, and improper-in a culture.

Diffusion: Sociologists use the term diffusion to refer to the process by which a cultural item spreads from group to group or society to society.

Discovery: The process of making known or sharing the existence of aspects of reality.

Ethnocentrism: Ethnocentrism means the tendency to evaluate one’s own culture superior. When someone believes that their own culture is superior to other culture.

Folkways: Folkways are norms governing everyday behavior. Folkways play an important role in shaping the daily behavior as members of a culture.

Formal norms: Formal norms have been generally written down specifying strict punishments for violators. Laws are just one example of formal norms.

Globalization: Globalization is the worldwide integration of government policies, cultures, social movements, and financial markets through trade and the exchange of ideas.

Informal norms: Informal norms are generally understood but not precisely recorded. Standards of proper dress are common example of informal norms.

Innovation: The process of introducing a new idea or object to a culture is known as innovation. Innovation interests sociologists because of the social consequences of introducing something new.

Invention: The combination of existing cultural items into a form that did not exist before.

Language: Language is an abstract system of word meanings and symbols for all aspects of culture. It includes speech, written characters, numerals, symbols, and nonverbal gestures and expressions.

Law: Governmental social control.

Material culture: Material culture refers to the physical or technological aspects of our daily lives, including food, houses, factories, and raw materials.

Mores: Mores are norms deemed highly necessary to the welfare of a society, often because they represent the most cherished principles of a people. Each society demands obedience to its mores; violation can lead to severe penalties.

Nonmaterial culture: Nonmaterial culture refers to ways of using material objects and to customs, beliefs, philosophies, governments, and patterns of communication.

Norms: Norms are the established standards of behavior maintained by a society.

Sanctions: Sanctions are penalties and rewards for conducting concerning social norm.

Socialization: Socialization is a process of learning that enables the learner to perform social roles and ability to participate in a social system.

Subculture: A subculture is a segment of society that shares a distinctive pattern of mores, folkways, and values that differ from the pattern of the larger society.

Technology: Technology in its many forms has increased the speed of cultural diffusion and broadened the distribution of cultural elements. Sociologist Gerhard Lenski has defined technology as, "cultural information about how to use the material resources of the environment to satisfy human needs and desires."

Transcultural society: A society which transcends the limits of its own culture is called the transcultural society.

Xenocentrism: An out of the ordinary extension of cultural relativism is referred to as Xenocentrism. Xenocentrism is the belief that the products, style, or ideas of one's society are inferior to those that originate elsewhere.

INTRODUCTION

Culture is a way of life. Culture is a system of learned behavior shared by and transmitted among the members of a group. Culture can be considered as the most essential characteristics of human society. Our highly developed brain, ability to verbal communication, learning and our imaginative thinking have resulted in the development of culture. Our society is the largest form of human group. A shared culture helps to define the group or society to which we belong. Society consists of people who share a common heritage and culture. Members of society learn this culture and transmit it from one generation to the subsequently next. People even preserve their distinctive culture through literature, art, video recordings, and other means of expression. Individuals encompass a common culture and also simplify many day-to-day interactions. Language is the most critical element of culture that sets humans apart from other species. A member of each and every society generally shares a common language, which facilitates day-to-day exchanges with others.

DEVELOPMENT OF CULTURE AROUND THE WORLD

We have moved toward a long way from our prehistoric heritage. A quite large number of people are said to constitute a society when they live in the same territory, are comparatively independent of people outside their area, and participate in a common culture. These people have a distinctive culture with their own characteristic ways of gathering and preparing food, constructing homes, structuring the family, and promoting standards of right and wrong.

- **Cultural universals:** All societies are gradually developing certain common or some peculiar practices and beliefs in their day to day practices, known as *cultural universals*. Many cultural universals are, in actuality, adaptations to meet essential human needs for their survival, most important basic needs such as people's need for food, shelter, and clothing. Anthropologist George Murdock compiled a list of cultural universals or some common needs, including athletic sports, cooking food, funeral ceremonies, health or medicine, marriage ceremonies, and sexual boundaries or restrictions. Hence, some cultural practices Murdock listed may be practising universally, but the manner in which they are expressed or followed, varies from every culture to culture and society to society. For example, one society may encourage its members in choosing their own marriage partners. Other may encourage marriages arranged by their parents. Not only does the expression or appearance of cultural universals vary from one society to another; it also may change dramatically over time within society. Each next succeeding generation, and each year for the matter, most human cultures change or transform as well as expand through the route of innovation and diffusion.
 - **Innovation:** The process or method of introducing a new idea, inspiration or object to a culture is known as *innovation*. Innovation interests sociologists because of the social consequences of introducing something new in the society. There are two forms or categories of innovation; first; discovery and second; invention. *Discovery* entails making known or sharing the existence of an aspect of reality. The finding of the DNA molecule and the identification of a new moon of Saturn are both recognized as acts of discovery. A significant or most important factor in the process of discovery is the sharing of new found knowledge with other members. On the other hand, *inventions* occur when existing cultural items are combined into a form that did not exist before. The bow and arrow, the motor vehicle, automobile, and the television are all examples of inventions, as are Protestantism and democracy.
 - **Globalization:** The meaning of Globalization is worldwide integration of government policies, cultures, social movements, and financial markets through trade and the exchange of ideas. Not just in China, but in Vietnam, South Korea, and the Philippines, the observance of Western holidays is one more sign of the rapidly escalating globalization of culture. While public discussion of globalization is relatively recent, intellectuals have been pondering its social consequences for a long time.
 - **Diffusion:** Sociologists always use the term *diffusion*; it refers to the process by which a cultural item spreads from group to group or society to society. Such as the observance of Western holidays shows, more and more cultural expressions and practices are crossing national borders having an effect on the traditions and customs of the societies exposed to them. Diffusion can occur through a variety or number of reasons, among them are investigation, military invasion or conquest, missionary work, the influence of the mass media, tourism, and the social media or Internet.
 - **Technology:** Technology in its many forms has definitely increased the speed of cultural diffusion and broadened the distribution of cultural elements throughout the world. Sociologist Gerhard Lenski has given the definition of *technology* as, "cultural information about how to use the material resources of the environment to satisfy and fulfil basic human needs and desires."
- Nowadays, technological developments no longer await publication in journals or magazines with limited circulation. Due to more influence of social media, press conferences, often carried simultaneously through the Internet, are such examples of broadcasting or transmitting the new developments.

Sociologist William F. Ogburn (1922) made a useful division between the elements of material and nonmaterial culture. **Material culture** reflects or show the physical or technological aspects of our daily lives, including food, houses, factories, and raw materials. **Nonmaterial culture** reflects or show the ways of using non-material objects and this includes customs, beliefs, philosophies, governments, as well as patterns of communication. Generally, the nonmaterial culture is more rigid or resistant to change than the material culture. Consequently, sociologist Ogburn also introduced about the term **culture lag** to refer to the period of maladjustment in the progression or development when the nonmaterial culture is still struggling to adapt or follow to new material conditions.

- **Cultural lag:** According to W.F. Ogburn, “The imbalance of adjustment between material and non-material culture is defined as cultural lag.”

Change in material culture takes place quickly but the non-material culture may be slow to follow change as contrast with material culture; this will lead to gap or imbalance between material and non-material culture. This gap or imbalance is called cultural lag.

MEANING OF CULTURE

Culture is the characteristics and facts of a particular group of people, encompassing language, religion, cuisine, social habits, music and arts. The word “culture” is obtained from a French term, which in turn derives from the Latin “colere,” which means to tend to the earth and grow, or cultivation and nurture. The Sanskrit term for culture is ‘Sanskriti’. Both ‘Sanskrit’ and ‘Sanskriti’ are derived from Sanskar meaning ritual performance which is a process of refinement. Man is born a social being, he attained society and became a cultured man by going through the Sanskar. The way in which we adapt to our environment is called collectively as culture. Culture is man-made part of environment.

Culture is the totality of learned, socially transmitted customs, knowledge, material objects, and behavior. Human culture is constantly expanding through the process of innovation. The culture is normally related to the moral values, honesty, truth and good behavior.

DEFINITIONS

Culture is the characteristics and knowledge of a particular group of people, encircling language, religion, cuisine, social habits, music and arts. According to The Center for Advance Research on Language Acquisition, culture is defined as shared patterns of behaviors and interactions, cognitive constructs and understanding that are learned by socialization. Thus, culture can be seen as the growth of a group identity fostered by social patterns unique to the group.

Some sociologists define culture as follows:

- “Culture is a symbolic continuous, cumulative and progressive process.” —Legic A.Y. White
- According to **E.B. Taylor**, “Culture is a complex whole, which includes knowledge, belief, art, morals, law, customs and any other capabilities and habits acquired by the man as a member of society.” —E.V. Roberty
- Culture means, “The body of thoughts and knowledge both theoretical and practical which only man can possess.” —C.C. North
- Culture is “The instruments constituted by man to assist him in satisfying his wants.” —A.F. Walter Paul
- “Culture is a totality of ways of thoughts and action duly accepted and followed by a group of people”. —Robert Bierstedt
- **William and Ogburn** has stated, “That culture has material and non-material elements.”
- “Culture is the complex whole that consists of everything we think and do and have as a member of society.”

- “Culture is the handiwork of man and the medium through which he achieves his ends.” —**Malinowski**
- “Culture is sum total of man’s efforts to adjust himself to his environment and to improve his modes of living.” —**Koenig**
- According to **Herskovits**, “Culture is a man-made part of environment.”

Culture is the totality of learned, socially transmitted customs, knowledge, material objects, and behavior. Culture includes the ideas, values, and artifacts of group of people.

NATURE OF CULTURE

Nature of culture is shown in Figure 3.1.

- **Culture is social:** Culture has social quality. Culture is a social product which is shared by most members of the group. Cultural traits are the result of group life. Individual behavior does not become a part of culture unless it is acquired by the group. In other words, no single person can create culture. It is the product of group life. Thus, culture is social but not individual heritage of men.



Figure 3.1: Nature of culture

- **Culture is communicative:** Culture is transmitted by vertically or horizontally and thus it is communicative in nature. Vertical transmission means from one generation to another generation. Horizontal transmission means from one group to another group within same period. Language is the chief vehicle of culture. The expression, body movements, gestures, feelings, attitudes and thinking also exhibit the culture. Language is the medium of communication; people can easily transmit their feelings, thoughts, and emotions accurately with the help of appropriate language.
- **Culture is shared:** Culture is shared by members of the particular group. A collective culture helps to define the group or society to which we belong. It is the product of society and belongs to human groups. Values and norms evolve in groups. It happens over time when people develop expectations from each other, and these become important and acceptable to people. All the elements of culture depend upon people's interactions.
- **Culture is learned behavior:** Cultural behavior is not inherited but it is learned through experience, imitation, communication, and thinking and specialization process. Hobel says that culture is a learned behavior, not inborn or instinctive behavior.
- **Culture is continuous:** Culture is a continuous process. Human culture always keeps expanding through the process of innovation.
- **Culture is cumulative:** Every generation receives culture from its previous generation. It adds something of its own and then transmits to the succeeding generation. It is passed by means of customs and traditions. Thus, culture is cumulative in nature.
- **Culture is adaptive:** Culture is constantly changing according to the human needs and the varying environment. Individuals are always adjusting to changing situations and adapting new trends so culture is adaptive in nature. This is the only way that culture can survive as its purpose to fulfill the need of the people.
- **Culture is gratifying:** Culture provides opportunities and provide means for satisfaction of our needs (social, biological and ethical) and desires.
- **Culture is dynamic:** Changes take place slow but constantly. It is the process of adjustment. Change and growth are the specific characteristics of culture. Culture is responsive to the changing conditions of the world. Human culture is constantly expanding through the process of innovation, which includes both discovery and invention.
- **Culture is integrative:** A culture is made up of cultural traits and complexes and interrelated with each other to make a complex whole. The individual units are so organized and integrated with each other that they cannot be understood in isolation.
- **Culture is idealistic:** Culture symbolizes the ideas and norms of a group. Members of a group accept its culture as their ideal and they transfer their ways of thoughts and behavior according to it. They believe in the superiority of their culture and are ready to defend their culture at any cost. For example, Indian feels that their culture is superior to that of other western countries.
- **Culture is manmade:** Because of man's special qualities; he is able to create culture and transmit culture. The ability to stand erect, free use of hands, ability to speak and communicate; highly developed brain and intelligence are all the special traits of human genus by which he is able to create culture.

SPECIAL CHARACTERISTICS OF CULTURE

Culture has some precise characteristics such as:

- Culture has the characteristics of adaptability and adjustability.
- Culture varies from society to society; every society has its own culture, physical and social environment of every society differ from each other. Cultural elements are not uniform everywhere, such as customs, traditions, morals, values and belief varies from society to society and time to time.

- Culture is essential human necessity.
- Culture is the means of identification of an individual.
- The dominant ideology of a culture is the set of cultural beliefs and practices that help to maintain powerful social, economic, and political interests.
- Culture satisfies human need; it is shared by members of a group.
- Culture is composed of Ethos (formal appearance of culture) and Edos (cognitive process of culture).
- Culture is independent of physical and physiological properties and characteristics. For example, people are proud of their cultural Heritage such as 'flag' represents the nation, thus culture is super organic.

ELEMENTS OF CULTURE

Each culture considers its own distinguishing ways of handling basic societal tasks to be natural. On the other hand in fact, methods of education, marital ceremonies, religious doctrines, and other aspects of culture are learned and transmitted through human interaction within specific societies. Parents in India are accustomed to arranging marriages for their children; parents in the United States leave marital decisions up to their offspring. The most important aspects of culture that shape the way the members of a society live are language, norms, sanctions, and values (Fig. 3.2).

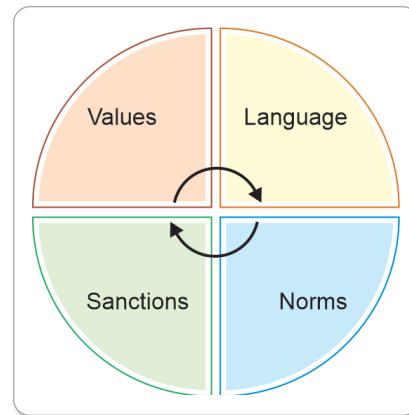


Figure 3.2: Elements of culture

Language is an intangible system of word meanings and symbols for all aspects of culture. Language includes speech, written characters, numerals, symbols, and nonverbal gestures and expressions. Because language is the foundation of every culture, the ability to speak other languages is crucial to intercultural relations. While language is a cultural universal, striking differences in the use of language are evident around the world. Language is, in reality, the foundation of every culture. Language does more than simply describing reality; it also serves to shape the reality of a culture.

Language can shape how we see, taste, smell, feel, and hear. It also influences the way we think about the people, ideas, and objects around us. Language communicates a culture's most significant norms, values, and sanction to people. That's why the introduction of a new language into a society is such a sensitive issue in many parts of the world.

The Sapir-Whorf hypothesis, named for two linguists, describes the role of language in shaping our interpretation of reality. According to Sapir and Whorf, since people can conceptualize the world all the way through language, language precedes thought. Therefore, the words, symbols and grammar of a language organize the world for us. The Sapir-Whorf hypothesis also holds the language. To a certain extent, it is culturally determined and encourage a distinctive interpretation of reality by focusing our attention on certain phenomena. In a literal sense, language may color how we see the world. Language is the chief vehicle of culture.

Norms

In sociology, we are most concerned with ideals or standards that are directly involved in social relationship. Each and every society has ways of encouraging and enforcing what they view as appropriate behavior while discouraging and punishing what they consider to be inappropriate behavior. For example, "Wash your hands before dinner." "Respect your elders". **Norms** are the well-known standards of behavior maintained by

Unit III Culture

a society. For a norm to become significant, it must be widely shared and understood. For example, in movie theaters in India, we typically expect that people will be quiet while the film is shown or running. Exactly, the application of this norm can vary time to time and situation to situation, depending on the particular film and type of audience. People who are viewing a serious artistic film will be more likely to insist on the norm of keeping silence as compared with those who are watching a slapstick comedy or horror movie.

Types of Norms

Sociologists make a distinction between norms in two ways. First, norms are classified as either formal or secondly informal. **Formal norms** generally have been documented or written down and specify strict punishments for their violators. Laws are just one example of formal norms. By contrast, **informal norms** are generally understood but not precisely recorded. Standards of proper dress are common example of informal norms. Norms are also categorized by their relative importance to society. When classified in this way, they are known as mores and folkways. **Mores** are norms deemed highly necessary to the welfare of a society, often because they embody the most cherished principles of people. Each society demands conformity to its mores; violation can lead to severe penalties. **Folkways** are also kind of norms governing every day's human behavior. Folkways play an important role in shaping or molding the routine daily behavior of members of a culture. Society is less likely to formalize folkways as compared with mores, and their violation in any form raise comparatively little concern. For example, walking up a "down" escalator in a department store challenges our standards of appropriate behavior in that particular situation, but it will not result in penalties, punishable act or a jail sentence.

Sanctions

Sanctions are penalties and rewards for conduct related to social norm. But we have to remember; that the concept of reward is included in this definition. Conformity, compliance or agreement to a norm can lead to positive sanctions such as a pay raise, a medal, a word of gratitude, or a pat on the back. On the other hand, negative sanctions include fines, penalty, punishment, threats, imprisonment, and stares of contempt. The entire basic of norms and sanctions in a culture reflects the culture's values and priorities.

Correlation between Norms and Sanctions (Table 3.1)

TABLE 3.1: Showing correlations between norms and sanctions

Norms	Sanctions	
	Positive	Negative
Formal	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Salary bonus• Testimonial dinner• Medal• Diploma	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Demotion• Firing from a job• Jail sentence• Expulsion
Informal	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Smile• Compliment• Cheers	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Frown• Humiliation• Belittling

Values

Cultural values are these collective beginning of what is considered good, desirable, and proper-or bad, undesirable, and improper-in a culture. They indicate what people in a given culture prefer as well as what

they find important and morally right (or wrong). Values may be specific, such as honoring one's parents and owning a home, or they may be more general, such as health, love, and democracy. Obviously, the members of a society do not uniformly share its values. Values influence people's behavior and serve as criteria for evaluating the actions of others. The values, norms, and sanctions of a culture are often directly related.

EVOLUTION OF CULTURE

Culture is one of the most important concepts within sociology because sociologists recognize that it plays a vital role in our social lives. It is important for influential social relationships, maintaining and challenging social order, determining how we make sense of the world and our place in it, and in shaping our everyday actions and experiences in society.

Cultural evolutionism: It is defined as the permanent interplay between the evolution of social order, pattern, cultural achievements and cognitive development.

Evolution of culture means the evolution of beliefs, ideas, values, morals and knowledge in society. Cultural evolution is a continuous process but cultural changes are subtle. Certain distinctive characteristics of human being enable him to develop culture, which are:

- Highly developed brain and nervous system which enable man to think, learn and act.
- Ability to communicate
- Erect posture
- Fine motor activity
- Manual dexterity; because of the erect posture, his arms and hands are free and he can make use of them for various actions. The position of fingers and thumb make him capable of doing things in which any amount of manipulation is required.

Man lives in a world of ideas. He acts and reacts in terms of ideas about object and organism, only man simultaneously inhibits past, present and future. Only man has capacity to vocalize, to respond, to represent, articulate and to learn from the stimulus response relationship. These peculiar elements in the make-up of man provided a background against which culture arouse.

The rudiments of culture developed by one generation; serve as foundation stone to the next generation. "Man is born in the stream of culture and must repeatedly revolve in it if he is to live as a member of society."

Culture is composed or self-possessed of both non-material and material things:

- **The non-material aspect:** Non-material aspect of culture includes the principles, values, ideas, and beliefs, language, communication, and practices that are shared commonly by a group of people. Expanding on these categories, culture is made up of our acquaintance, knowledge, common sense, assumptions, and expectations. It is also the principles, rules, norms, laws, and morals that govern every society; the words we use as well as how we speak and write them and the symbols we use to express meaning, ideas, and concepts in our daily lives (such as traffic signals and emojis). Culture is also what we do and how we behave and perform like theater and dance, etc. It informs and is encapsulated in how we walk, sit, carry our bodies, and interact with others; how we behave depending on the place, time, and "audience" and how we express ourselves in identities of race, class, gender, and sexuality, among others. Culture also includes the collective or group of practices we participate in, such as religious ceremonies, the celebration of secular holidays, and attending some sports events.
- **Material aspect of culture:** Material culture is composed of the things that are made by humans for their necessity or use. This material aspect of culture includes a wide variety of things, from buildings, technological gadgets, and clothing, to film, art, music, and literature, among others. Aspects of material culture are more commonly referred to as cultural products of the society.



Unit III Culture

Just like a coin, Sociologists see the two sides of culture—the material side and non-material side—as very well connected with each other, they are complementary and supplementary with one another. Material culture emerges from and is shaped by the non-material aspects of culture. In other words, what we value, believe, and know (and what we do together in everyday life) influences the things that we make. But it is not a one-way or single relationship between material and non-material culture. Material culture can also influence the non-material aspects of culture and vice versa. For example, a powerful documentary film (an aspect of material culture) might change people's attitudes, beliefs, and way of thinking (i.e., non-material culture). This is why cultural products always tend to follow patterns in an unpredictable way. What has come before in terms of music, film, television, art and craft, for example, influences the values, beliefs, and expectations of those who interact with them, which then, in turn, can influence the creation of additional cultural products in future.

DIVERSITY AND UNIFORMITY OF CULTURE

Culture is an essential ingredient of human society. Society and culture are mutually related concepts. There is no culture without society and without individual. Not all societies have same norms and customs. Culture is not uniform pattern. There are regional differences in culture. Culture varies according to the geographical environment and society to society.

Factors of Cultural Uniformity

Every culture group varies from one another. Culture varies by values, norms, symbol, language and even gestures. Culture is totality of learned, socially transmitted customs, knowledge, material objects, and behavior.

- **Family:** Family is a fundamental social unit which is universal but differs in terms of marriage. Family and marriage are often thought to be almost universal institution. There are variable forms of family in terms of joint or nuclear. The major forms are patriarchal and matriarchal in terms of property, authority and residence.
- **Religion:** Religion is an important cultural pursuit in human society. Religion is a universal observable fact. It cannot be considered as an artificial state of human nature, but it is something permanently embedded in men's psychology. Each religion believes in some supernatural forces—power outside the man and his observable world. Each religion provides for some outward acts like Prayer, Kirtan, etc., and other forms of reverence. Man needs some method by which he can regain harmony with the God through removal of guilt.

Anthropologists George Murdock compiled a list of cultural universals, or general practices found in every culture, including marriage, sports, cooking, medicine, and sexual restriction.

Kimball Young suggests 13 factors as universal pattern of culture, these are:

1. Pattern of communication—gesture and language
2. Methods and objects for providing for men's physical welfare:
 - Food habits
 - Personal care
 - Shelter
 - Utensil, tools, etc.
3. Means or techniques of travel and transportation of goods and services
4. Exchange of goods, services and occupation
5. Forms of property

6. Family pattern
 - Inheritance
 - Marriage and divorce
 - Guardianship
7. Social control and institution of government
 - Public opinion
 - Law
 - Court
 - Political organizations
 - War
8. Artistic expression, architecture, painting, music, dancing, literature, etc.
9. Recreation and leisure time activity
10. Religious practices
11. Mythology and philosophy
12. Science
13. Cultural scrutiny of basic interaction processes

Some cultural traits are necessary to all members of the society

Cultural Diversity

Each human culture in a society has a unique characteristic. Culture adapts to meet some essential or specific sets of circumstances, such as climate, level of technology, population and geography. This specific adaptation to different conditions shows up in differences in all elements of culture, including norms, sanctions, values and language. Thus, despite of presence of cultural universals such as courtship, family and religion, great diversity exists among the world's many cultures. Moreover, even within a small area of single nation, certain segments of the general public develop cultural patterns that differ from the patterns of the dominant society.

Aspects of Cultural Diversity

- **Subculture:** A subculture is a segment of society that shares a distinctive pattern of mores, folkways, and values that differ from the pattern of the larger society. It is part of a dominant culture but has little different values and norms. In a sense, a subculture can be thought of as a culture existing within a larger, dominant culture. A member of a subculture participates in a dominant culture while at the same time engages in unique and distinctive forms of behavior. Conflict theorists also argue that subcultures sometimes emerge when the dominant society unsuccessfully tries to suppress a practice, such as the use of illegal drugs.
- **Counter culture:** Culture which is deviant against the society. When a subculture evidently and deliberately opposes certain definitive aspects of the larger culture, it is known as a counterculture. Countercultures typically thrive among the young, who have the least investment in the existing culture. In most cases, a 20-year-old can adjust to new cultural standards more easily than someone who has spent 60 years following the patterns of the dominant culture (Zellner, 1995).
- **Cultural shock:** Anyone who feels disoriented, uncertain, out of place, or even fearful when immersed in an unfamiliar culture may be experiencing culture shock. The feeling of surprise, uncertainty and disorientation that people experience when they suddenly encounter or come across to some cultural practices that are different from their own. For example, a resident of the United States who visits certain areas in China and wants local meat for dinner may be stunned to learn that the specialty is dog meat. Similarly, someone from a strict Islamic culture may be shocked upon first seeing the comparatively offensive dressing styles and open displays of affection that are common in the United States as well as in various European cultures.

Attitudes Toward Cultural Diversity

- **Ethnocentrism:** Ethnocentrism means the tendency to evaluate that one's own culture is superior. When someone believes that their own culture is superior to other culture. Our many everyday statements reflect our attitude that our own culture is best. We use terms such as underdeveloped, backward, and primitive to refer to other societies. What "we" believe is a religion; what "they" believe is superstition and mythology. It is tempting to measure or evaluate the practices of other cultures on the basis of our own perspective or way of thinking. Sociologists William Graham Sumner (1906) coined or introduced the term ethnocentrism. This word refers to the tendency to assume superiority about that one's own culture and way of life represent the norm that are superior to all others.
- Functionalists, on the other hand, point out that ethnocentrism serves to maintain a sense of solidarity by promoting group pride. People from India may be repelled by the practices of living in the same household with dogs and cats. Many Islamic fundamentalists in the Arab world and Asia view the United States as crooked, decadent, and doomed to destruction. All these people may feel comforted by membership in culture that in their view are superior to others.
- **Cultural relativism:** It is a process of analytic cultural comparison. The viewing of people's behavior from the perspective of their own culture. In this, one compares their own culture with other culture, and tries to understand other cultural values and norms. **Cultural relativism** refers to the principle that an aspect of culture can be evaluated or judged only in terms of culture as a whole. It places a priority on understanding other cultures, rather than dismissing them as "strange" or "exotic". Unlike ethnocentrism, cultural relativism focuses on the kind of value neutrality in scientific study that Max Weber saw as so important in sociological context. Cultural relativism stresses on that different social context that gives rise to different norms and values. Thus, we must examine or study practices such as polygamy, bullfighting, and monarchy within the particular context of the cultures in which they are found. While cultural relativism does not suggest that we must unquestionably accept every cultural variation, it does require a serious and unbiased effort to measure or evaluate norms, values, and customs in light of their distinctive cultural pattern.

An interesting extension or expansion of cultural relativism is referred to as Xenocentrism. **Xenocentrism** is the belief that the products, style, or ideas of one's society are inferior to those that originate elsewhere. In a sense, it is a reverse ethnocentrism. It is just opposite to ethnocentrism. For example, people in the United States often assume that French fashions or Japanese electronic devices are superior to their own.

MAJOR THEORETICAL PERSPECTIVES OF CULTURE

Culture is a form of social support or social comfort. Music, fashion technology, and values—all are artefacts of culture. Functional studies culture in terms of values. Functionalists view the different categories of culture as serving many functions. Conflict theorists believe that a society's system of material production has an effect on the rest of culture (Table 3.2).

TABLE 3.2: Major theoretical perspectives about culture

	Functionalist perspectives	Conflict perspectives	Interactionist perspectives
Norms	Norms always support or reinforce social standards	Norms reinforce only patterns of dominance	Norms are maintained through face-to-face interaction or relationship
Values	Values are collective conceptions of what is considered good	Values may perpetuate only social inequality	Values are always defined and redefined through social interaction and communications

Contd...

	Functionalist perspectives	Conflict perspectives	Interactionist perspectives
Culture and society	Culture reflects a society's strong traditional central values	Culture reflects a society's rigid dominant ideology	A society's core culture is perpetuated through daily social interactions or communication
Cultural variation	Subculture serves the interests of subgroups; such as ethnocentrism reinforces group solidarity	Countercultures question the dominant social order or pattern; ethnocentrism devalues groups	Customs and traditions are transmitted through intergroup contact and through the mass media

FACTORS RESPONSIBLE FOR CULTURAL VARIABILITY

Factors of cultural variability are as follows (Fig. 3.3):

- **Historical accidents:** Some customs must have been originated due to some personal or group unconsciousness behavior. A man might have done unconsciously a particular action or imitated him and through imitation this spreads to larger group of members and turns into a part of culture.
- **Geographical environment:** There are similar cultures within variable geographical areas and there are also different cultures in the same geographical environment.

The **topography** of a country affects the humans such as habitation, diet, dress, etc. The dietary habits are also affected by topography. For example, the rice is the diet of Bengalese while the wheat is the diet of Punjabi. People living in mountainous region wear thick and woolen clothing while those living in plains wear cotton attire. Even particular animals can be reared in particular geographical environments.

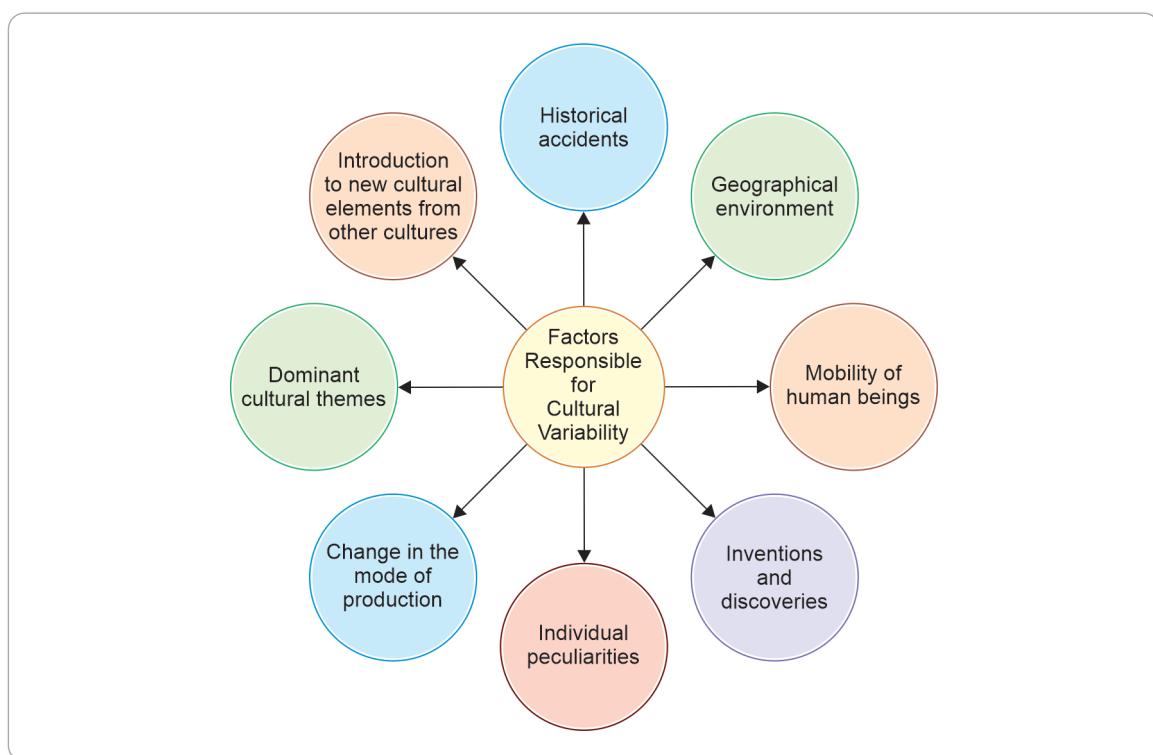


Figure 3.3: Factors responsible for cultural variability

Camels are found in Rajasthan, goats and sheep in the hills, cows and buffalos in the plain areas. The topography also affects the color of the skin, structure, shapes, and color of the hair, etc.

- **Mobility of human beings:** Man is flexible and mobile that is why people can easily move from one place to another leading to cultural variability. The integration of people belonging to different parts of the country led the removal of much of misunderstanding and growth of liberal ideas. For example, Indian people like Chinese food, Italian food, etc., whereas other country people likes Indian food.
- **Inventions and discoveries:** Inventions and discoveries also bring about cultural variability. Technology causes a variation in some institutions; changes in the agriculture technologies have affected the rural community. Material aspects of culture means things like tools and technology, machines and dwelling, etc. The manufacture of goods and transportation affects the society. Traditions vary from historical social experiences. It may change according to the new needs and social inventions.
- **Individual peculiarities:** Sometimes individual peculiarities also influence cultural behavior. For example, people follow the activity of great men like hairstyle of A.P.J. Abdul Kalam.
- **Change in the mode of production:** The culture of the capitalistic countries differs from that of socialistic countries. Any change in the mode of production has an effect on the culture. Non-material aspects of culture such as family, government, religion and education are responsible for cultural variation.
- **Dominant cultural themes:** In the past decade, the superiority of men over women is the main cultural aspect of Indian society. The women fulfil functions within the household, while the man undertakes responsibilities outside. Because of educational awareness, this old concept changed and both cooperate each other and lead a happy family life today. Urbanization is responsible for this cultural variability.
- **Introduction to new cultural elements from other cultures:** Through various modes like diffusion and civilization or many a time external elements are brought into a culture which change its nature drastically.

The important aspect of culture is universal including language, food collection and processing, house building, fine art, family, religious beliefs, transport, recreation and government.

We can conclude though man is same everywhere, differences in culture are observed due to various reasons. Man everywhere has certain common needs. First of all he needs foods and shelter, for this some type of economic activity becomes essential for the satisfaction of basic needs family is essential. This gives rise to the institution of religion. Though human beings are social by nature, they need some form of social organization and control, for this purpose political institution developed. For becoming an effective social being, he needs to communicate with his fellow being and this is done through language.

In order to control and manipulate his environment, he needs some sort of knowledge and skills, and also tools and techniques. These needs are universal, and in every human society some sort of expression of all these needs are found. These patterns constitute the basis for the great universal institution.

COMPONENTS OF CULTURE

The components of culture are as follows:

- **Cognitive rudiments:** Culture of all societies whether preliterate carries a vast amount of knowledge about the physical and social world. The possession of this knowledge is referred to as a cognitive component.
- **Cultural beliefs:** Belief constitutes another component of culture. For example, Christian missionary provides medicines, advises rest as well as also gives belief concerning prayers for speedy recovery.
- **Cultural traits:** Cultural traits are the single element or smallest unit of culture. Cultural traits are the “units of observation” which when put together constitute culture. Traits are the elemental unit of culture. For example, shaking hands, touching feet, etc.

- **Culture complex:** Larger clusters of traits are organized about some nuclear point of references and form cultural complexes. For example, folding hands, singing prayer song, touching feet of old person, and taking Prasad from the priest form a religious complex.
- **Cultural pattern:** A culture pattern is formed when traits and complexes be converted into or related to each other in functional roles.
- **Cultural area:** The societies or communities have similar cultural traits and complexes that constitute a cultural area.
- **Signs:** Signs includes signals and symbols. A signal indicates the existence of thing, event or conditions.

CIVILIZATION

William Ogburn called, “Civilization is the material culture.” But the sociologist like **MacIver** referred civilization to things, techniques and material instruments which have been devised by man in his effort to control the conditions of his life. Thus, all our material achievements like radio, television, mobile phone, and means of transport and thousands of similar things are the part of our civilization. Differences between culture and civilization are enlisted in Table 3.3.

TABLE 3.3: Differences between culture and civilization

Sl. no.	Culture	Civilization
1.	Culture consists of ideas, values and emotional aspects of group.	Civilization consists of useful material objects and the methods of producing and using them.
2.	Culture has internal process and has intrinsic factors.	Civilization is external process.
3.	Culture is related to internal aspects thus it has no such measurement	Civilization has a precise standard of measurement.
4.	In culture such advancement is not possible. Changes occur continuously but slowly or gradually.	Civilization is continuously improved. Civilization is always advancing.
5.	Culture is a part of us. Our souls, our spirit.	Civilization is concerned with outward things.
6.	Cultural traits of one group are not easily acquired by others.	Civilization makes life easier. Traits from civilization are easily occupied by others.
7.	Culture relates to emotional aspects, thoughts, feelings, ideas, etc.	Civilization relates to physical aspects of our life. Our habitation, modes of conveyance, and modes of production.
8.	Culture has no standard of measurement because it is an end in itself.	Civilization has précis standards of measurement. The universal standards of civilization are utility because civilization is a means.
9.	Culture is constant in nature.	Once early, civilization developed, and it is continued to change one time.
10.	Culture is the motivational and driving force of society.	Civilization gives direction to society.

Therefore, it is said, “civilization is what we have, culture is what we are.”

CULTURE AND SOCIALIZATION

Culture grows through socialization process. Cultural behavior is not inherited but it is learned through experience, imitation, communication, thinking and socialization process.

- **Socialization is external and mechanical while culture is internal and organic:** Socialization is done through external things. Though culture has both material and non-material aspects but it is mainly related to internal thoughts, feelings, ideas, values, etc.
- **Culture and socialization are interdependent:** Culture and socialization are not only interdependent but also interactive. Culture is influenced by socialization. A child develops personality according to the cultural expectations of his society. The objects of socialization after some time acquire a cultural aspect.
- **Socialization is always advancing but not culture:** Socialization is continuously improved. For example, railways, ship, airplane which are constantly growing more efficiently and better designed. On the other hand, culture advances slowly. Culture directs and confines the behavior of an individual. Culture sets limitation on our choice to select different careers. Individual may develop, modify or oppose the trends of their culture but they always live within its framework. Only a few can find an outlet in the culture. Culture assigns goals and provides means for achieving them.
- **Socialization borrowed without change or loss but not culture:** Socialization processes more rapidly, more simply, and always spreads outwards because of technological advancement. Culture on the other hand has an intrinsic quality. For example, in India we borrowed most of the western techniques of socialization, but not western culture. Culture not only controls but also liberates human energy and activities.
- **Culture affects socialization:** Culture affects the socialization process. Culture is intrinsic factor and related to ideas, beliefs and norms. These factors affect the socialization process because people believe in superiority of their culture. The way of looking things vary for different people and for different age groups. Every individual is unique of it and thinks differently. We mold the personality of children; as the age advances, a child is able to make differences between organism and environment. Strong belief about the culture of an individual affects the process of socialization.
No individual is completely culturally determined. Every individual is unique in every culture. The uniqueness may be based on individual differences in ability, aptitude, and learning. The impact of culture on the individual is not always the same in every case. Every individual is more rapidly or later exposed to influence which is not completely predetermined by culture.

TRANSCULTURAL SOCIETY

A society which transcends the limits of its own culture is called the *transcultural society*.

Transcultural means involving, encompassing, or extending across two or more cultures. Transcultural society is a group of people, living as a community, where different culture, religion, and language work together with much understanding. It is a society which extends through all human cultures.

In earlier days, people were very conscious of their own culture and values and tried to preserve them at any cost. With the effect of industrialization, new inventions, transportation and communication, people are brought into closer contacts with each other. Migrations, both rural and urban, from city to city are increasing day by day. People are exposed to variety of new individuals; this process has direct effect on culture. In order to adjust himself to the new situation, a person brings about a change in his life and this gradually starts changing his thoughts, values, beliefs and the entire personality.

When this phenomenon occurs extensively, the entire culture starts changing. When few people of a culture come in contact with a new culture, they may adopt more traits of the dominant culture, but the number is large enough, both cultures affect each other and there is cultural borrowing between the two. Usually, individuals try to preserve some aspects specially, the internal aspects like religion, beliefs, and values, etc., and try to adopt those aspects which help them in adjusting to the new situations. Thus language, dress,

eating habits, and gradually, changes occur in so many minor aspects of daily living. In the modern world, transcultural societies are becoming more and more in number. Here, various cultures of the world come together, interact with each other and influence each other.

MODERNIZATION

Modernization is essential in the sense that it requires not only a relatively stable new structure in the society but it also expects that the society must acquire ability of adapting to continuously changing conditions and problems. Success of this process depends on the ability of the society to respond the elements. Naturally, but all societies do not respond to modernization in uniform pattern. Modernization is a selfless change of human civilizations since 18th century. Modernization includes not only the enormous change and transformation from traditional to modern politics, economy, society and culture, but also all human development and the rational protection of the natural environment at present, for the moment, cultural diversity and religion exists across space and time.

Meaning of Modernization

The term 'Modernization' is a broader and multifarious term. Modernization symbolizes the advancement. Advancement simply means betterment and to move forward in positive sense. It does denote any philosophy or movement but it only symbolizes a process of change. It simply follows to move forward and to get better in terms of many aspects of life like living standards, working styles, behavioral pattern, technology, education, and social relationship.

According to S.H. Alatas, "Modernization is a process by which modern scientific knowledge is introduced in the society with the ultimate purpose of achieving a better and more satisfactory life in the broadest sense of the term accepted by the society concerned."

Definitions of Modernization

Modernization is a process which includes civilization's development, civilization's transformation and international competition. Modernization is a worldwide phenomenon with the exceptions of some communities. Modernity, further, implies the constant pursuit of improvement in human lives and of the pursuit of progress social as well as economic.

- According to Prof. **S.C. Dube**, "Modernization refers to a common behavioral pattern."
- Modernization is the application of modern science to human affairs." —**Rutow and Ward**
- "Modernization is a process by which modern scientific knowledge is introduced in the society with the ultimate purpose of achieving a better and more satisfactory life in the broadest sense of the term as accepted by the society concerned." —**Alatas**
- "Modernization is the current term for an old process of social change whereby less developed societies acquire the characteristics common to more developed societies." —**Daniel Lener**
- **C.E. Black** wrote about "Dynamics of Modernization." Black defined modernization as, "Modernization is a process by which historically evolved institutions are adapted to the rapidly changing functions that reflect the unprecedented increase in man's knowledge permitting control over his environment that accompanies the scientific revolution." At this point, Black has given major importance to the institutions and their roles in the process of modernization.
- Prof. **Yogendra Singh** stated that, "Modernization symbolizes a rational attitude toward issues and their evaluation but not from particularistic point of view." Prof. Singh also says that modernization

is deep-rooted in the scientific world view and it has deeper and positive association with levels of diffusion of scientific knowledge, technological skill and resources.

Causes of Modernization

Eisenstadt (1965) in his article “Transformation of Social, Political and Cultural Orders in Modernization” has given his opinion that modernizations have need of three specific structural characteristics of a society (Fig. 3.4).

- **Firstly**, a high level of structural differentiation.
- **Secondly**, a high level of social mobilization and social mobility.
- **Thirdly**, a relatively centralized and autonomous institutional framework.

Myron Weiner is presenter of five main components; which makes modernization possible. They are:

- **Education:** Higher education in the field of science and technology provides the basis of modernization. As education creates skills and attitudes and is essential for technological innovation.
- **Mass communication:** Development of mass communication like newspapers, magazines, television, radio, telephone, movies and social media, etc. are the important means of spreading modern ideas at a faster rate.
- **Ideology based on nationalism:** Nationalism and democracy are very much linked with modernization.
- **Charismatic leadership:** A charismatic leader is in better position having impressive quality upon people to adopt modern beliefs, values, practices, and behavior pattern.
- **Coercive government authority:** A strong and stable government may adapt a coercive measure to compel people to accept modern values and ways of life.

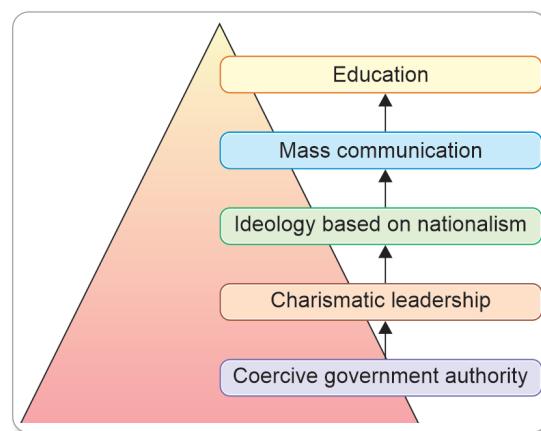


Figure 3.4: Causes of modernization

Characteristics of Modernization

According to Prof. S.C. Dube, modernization means:

- A logical and scientific world view.
- Growth and constantly increasing application of science and technology.
- Adaptation of new institutions emerged in the society to cope with the new situation dominated by science and technology.

Characteristics of modernization are:

- Modernization is a revolutionary and innovative process.
- Modernization is a multidimensional process.
- Modernization is an extensive and universal process.
- Modernization is always a complex process.
- Modernization is a global process that occurs worldwide.
- Modernization is an irreversible or permanent process.
- Modernization is a continuous and lengthy process that happens continuously.
- Modernization is a systematic or orderly process.
- Modernization indicates scientific temper, rationality and secular attitude.
- Modernization is a phased process that occurs in steps or needs time to change.
- Modernized society is considered as open society.

- Modernization is essential for progressive society and for continuous human development.
- Modernization is a critical process because it necessitates not only a relatively stable new structure but is also capable of adopting continuously changing conditions and problems.
- Modernization is a centralized process that occurs essentially over time.

Effects of Modernization

The progress and development made over the years has led to improvement in the quality of life, it has also induced lifestyle changes that are not always favorable to health.

According to Herbert Blumer, there are five ways through which a traditional society can act in response to the process of modernization (Fig. 3.5).

- **Rejective response:** A traditional society may not like the elements of modernization and any kind of change and the society may reject it. Two factors are responsible for rejection; firstly, human factor which includes powerful group in the society like, Jamindars/land lords, middlemen, etc. to protect their vested interest. Secondly, the value system of our society which includes old traditional values, customs, and belief system. Both the factors somehow try to maintain traditional order and to reject the process of modernization.
- **Disjunctive response:** In this type of response, modernization as a process operates as a separated or detached development. The old elements and new elements always co-exist but without any kind of interference or influence. People do not want to face any struggling or type of conflicting situation due to effect of modernization or they do not want to handle stress. They could show the way to their usual traditional life for effective functioning.
- **Assimilative response:** In this case, society accepts the elements of modernization without disturbing its basic things, pattern, own organization and way of life. It assimilates the new elements within its system without any disruption. For example, in Indian rural community, the farmers use fertilizer and other modern techniques or machineries like tractor but without affecting their natural pattern of life.
- **Supportive response:** In supportive response, society accepts modern techniques or elements to support the conditional order. The traditional groups and institutions want to take advantages of use of new modern elements or technological advances. Here, modernization acts as the supportive and encouraging source to the old traditional pattern. For example, introduction or inclusion of science and technology in the Indian educational system.
- **Disruptive response:** This disruptive response takes place, when the traditional order is underestimated or disliked at many points. It happens when the society tries to accommodate modern elements in the old traditional order or pattern. For example, the Oriya language in Odisha.

Taking into consideration about these five responses, two types of situations may occur in the society. In one situation, society may respond to all these in different points or stage and in another situation, society may express all these responses with different combinations.

In India, response to modernization depends on three factors as it constitutes a multi-dimensional process. Firstly, the nature of the choice that our society has made on the basis of the preferences of the people related to acceptance of modern elements. Secondly, interest of the people in utilization of modern elements also counts a great deal, this expresses the nature of our response toward modernization. Thirdly, the role of the cultural practices is based on history, this is why because our value system controls our behavior in using and interpreting that modern elements.

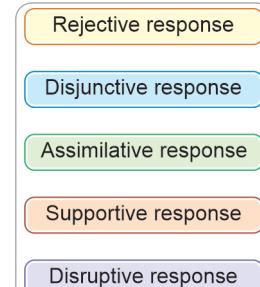


Figure 3.5: Effects of modernization

The effects of modernization in India:

Modernization is responsible for so many changes that we are observing today. Due to modernization, so many changes are found in India:

- Introduction of new institutions such as banking, mass media communication and so on.
- Introduction of new value systems such as equality, justice, individualism, secularism, etc.
- Acceptance of scientific innovation.
- Increase in the standard of living.
- Introduction of large scale industries.
- Restructuring of political system, i.e., introduction of democracy.
- Introduction of structural changes in social institutions like marriage, family, caste, etc.
- Emergence of some degree of social stratification such as emergence of the middle class.
- There are some eliminative changes like disappearance of cultural traits, behavior pattern, values, etc., e.g., abolition of feudal power.
- There is shifting of attitude from sacred to secular.
- Emergence of new forms because of synthesis of old and new elements. For example, nuclear family in structure but functioning as joint.
- Adoption of new cultural traits such as new election system.

Impact of Modernization on Health and Disease

Modernization and development resulted in physical inactivity, harmful use of alcohol—which increases violence and other risky behavior, consumption of unhealthy diets, tobacco use leading to head and neck cancers. Increased availability of modes of transit is blamed for the increasing number of injuries and deaths on roads.

CULTURAL INFLUENCES ON HEALTH AND DISEASES

Man is a product of his social environment. It is a well-known fact that our health is influenced by our culture. Culture is the product of human society and is handed down from one generation to the next. Culture influences the human behavior and health programs of the population. Health belief and practices are part of every culture. Ancient as well as modern people consider disease is due to the worth of supernatural power. Sickness is considered as misfortune. In India, small pox was considered to be due to anger of Goddess Shitla Mata. Diseases such as leprosy, tuberculosis, and venereal diseases are considered as punishment from supernatural power.

Factors of Cultural Influences on Health and Diseases

- **Nutritional factors:**
 - Foods such as meat and egg are considered hot and increase heat production in the body and leads to boil formation.
 - Cold foods such as fruits, curd and cucumber cause cold and sore throat.
 - Pica, eating clay by pregnant women helps in normal development of baby.
 - Garlic increases milk production in lactating women.
 - Fruits like mango, eating in excessive amount causes boil formation.
 - Papaya in pregnancy causes abortion.
 - Brinjal and cauliflower are allergic substances.

- **Mother and child health:**
 - Certain foods such as eggs meat fish are forbidden during pregnancy.
 - In some part of India child do not breast fed during the first three days after birth because they think colostrum is harmful to the baby.
- **Women's health;** cultural practices influence women's health too.
 - Still in many communities in families, male members are fed first and then whatever is left is consumed by the female members of the house. This is applicable to male child also; boys are given choicest of food and girls are forced to eat whatever is given. Due to this, women are more prone to health problems like anemia and calcium deficiency.
- **Personal factors:**
 - Eating pan or tobacco is a common social custom; smoking hukka is another social custom leading to head and neck cancer and lung cancer.
 - Alcoholism; people think alcohol is a symbol of prestige and social status. Excessive consumption of alcohol harms the human body in different ways. Causes cirrhosis of the liver, gastritis and stomach cancer.
 - Cigarette smoking is also a prestigious issue and leads to lung cancer and cancer of the larynx.
- **Environmental factors:**
 - Rural people practice open defecation resulting in water and soil pollution. Some river are considered 'Holy' river, people drink raw water which is responsible for cholera and gastroenteritis.
 - Poor quality of housing in rural areas and urban slums is also a cause of many diseases.

Positive Effects of Cultural Practices on our Health

- Getting up early in the morning and going for walk is helpful to refresh our body and mind and prevents risk of many non-communicable diseases like hypertension and diabetes mellitus.
- Drinking Tulsi water or eating Tulsi leaves is good for health and boosts immunity.
- Chicken pox affected child is bathed with neem leaves, which in turn helps in early recovery.
- Some societies apply honey for burn injury; it has proven to be in quicker healing.
- Periodic fasting is good for health. Important for gastrointestinal system.
- Culture of meditation increases concentration and attention and reduces stress, conflicts and tensions.
- Some cultures place very little stigma on mental illness like schizophrenia or psychosis, thus better enabling patients within seeking assistance and support.

Negative Effects of Cultural Practices on our Health

- People only eating vegetarian diet have risk of vitamin B₁₂ deficiency.
- Excess periodic fasting is responsible for poor immune system and weakness in our body.
- Some societies do not allow women to use contraceptive methods; which is a cause of poor maternal and child health as well as responsible for population explosion.
- In some societies, during pregnancy, the women are advised not to take healthy diet for easy childbirth; this further leads to low birth weight babies.
- In some cultures, it is practiced that girl child eats leftover food in the family which can lead to malnutrition and iron deficiency anemia.

Nursing skills important for identifying and managing social issues are discussed in case study 1:

Case Study 1 Nursing Skills Important for Identifying and Managing Social Issues

Anemia is a serious global public health problem that particularly affects young children and pregnant women. Iron is an essential element with important functions such as oxygen transport, DNA synthesis and muscle metabolism. Iron deficiency is the main cause of anemia, which is the most prevalent nutritional deficiency worldwide, affecting 33% of non-pregnant women, 40% of pregnant women, and 42% of children worldwide. Severe anemia during pregnancy increases your risk of premature birth, having a low birth weight baby and postpartum depression. Some studies also show an increased risk of infant death immediately before or after birth.

Ms. Rashmi is a 23-year-old young Indian female who visited in community health center with her mother-in-law because of severe fatigue and weakness and vomiting. She was two month pregnant suffering from severe anemia evidenced by hemoglobin estimation. Her hemoglobin level is below 7 g/dL. During collection of dietary history, the nurse came to know that she is not taking balanced diet. In their family, there are restrictions of certain food items as well as females take food after male members.

Applied sociology: Cultural belief

Nursing skills required: Effective listener, counselor, evidence-based knowledge impartation.

Explanation: Nurse can plan strategy in detecting iron deficiency early during pregnancy. She also advises for dietary modification with appropriate supplemental therapy with folic acid, vitamin B₁₂ and iron supplementation to correct nutritional deficiencies. Nurse also explains that if anemia is not managed early what serious complications it will lead. Nurse also advised about importance of tetanus immunization during pregnancy and importance of follow up visits throughout the pregnancy.

SUMMARY

Culture is a way of life. Culture is a system of learned behavior shared by and transmitted among the members of a group. Culture can be considered as the most important characteristics of human society. Our highly developed brain, ability to verbal communication, learning and our imaginative thinking has result in the development of culture.

- According to Leglic A.Y. White, "Culture is a symbolic continuous, cumulative and progressive process."
- **Characteristics of culture are:** Culture is social, communicative, shared behavior, learned behavior, continuous, cumulative, adaptive, gratifying, dynamic, integrative, idealistic, and manmade.
- **Elements of culture are:** Language, norms, sanctions, and values. Language is an important element of culture, includes speech, written characters, numerals, and symbols, as well as gestures and other forms of nonverbal communication.
- **Culture is composed of both non-material and material things:** The non-material aspects of culture include the values and beliefs, language, communication, and practices that are shared in common by a group of people. Material culture is composed of the things that humans make and use. This aspect of culture includes a wide variety of things, from buildings, technological gadgets, and clothing, film, music, literature, and art. Aspects of material culture are more commonly referred to as cultural products.
- Anthropologists George Murdock compiled a list of cultural universals, or general practices found in every culture, including marriage, sports, cooking, medicine, and sexual restriction.
- **Components of culture are:** Cultural trait, cultural complex, cultural pattern and cultural area.

- **Factors responsible for cultural variation are:** Historical accidents, geographical environment, and mobility of human beings, inventions and discoveries, individual peculiarities, change in the mode of production, dominant cultural themes, and introduction to new cultural elements.
- William Ogburn called, "Civilization is the material culture." But the sociologist like MacIver refers civilization to as things, techniques and material instruments which have been devised by man in his effort to control the conditions of his life.
- **Culture and socialization:** Culture grows through socialization process. Cultural behavior is not inherited but it is learned through experience, imitation, communication, thinking and socialization process. Socialization is external and mechanical while culture is internal and organic. Culture and socialization are interdependent.
- A society which transcends the limits of its own culture is called the transcultural society. In order to adjust to the new situation, individuals adopt changes in language, dress, eating habits, and many minor aspects of daily living.
- **Modernization:** According to S.H. Alatas, "Modernization is a process by which modern scientific knowledge is introduced in the society with the ultimate purpose of achieving a better and more satisfactory life in the broadest sense of the term accepted by the society concerned."
- **Factors of cultural influences on health and diseases are:** Nutritional factors, personal factors, environmental factors, myth related to women's health, maternal and child factors.

ASSESS YOURSELF

Short Answer Questions

1. Define culture.
2. Define civilization.
3. Define the term cultural lag.
4. Explain about characteristics of culture.
5. Differentiate between material and non-material aspects of culture.
6. Differentiate between culture and socialization.
7. Explain meaning of transcultural society.
8. Define modernization and its causes.

Long Answer Questions

1. Discuss about uniformity and diversity of culture.
2. Describe effects of culture and modernization on health and diseases.
3. Define culture and discuss positive and negative impact of cultural practices on health.

Activity Question

1. You greet different kinds of persons (friends, older relatives, the other gender, and people from other groups) differently?

2. Compare among culture of urban community and culture of rural community.

Multiple Choice Questions

1. **The chief vehicle of culture is:**
 - a. Knowledge
 - b. Beliefs and values
 - c. Language
 - d. Law
2. **Culture has influence on:**
 - a. Social aspects of life
 - b. Mental aspects of life
 - c. Political aspects of life
 - d. Economic aspects of life
3. **The of a culture is the set of cultural beliefs and practices that help to maintain powerful social, economic, and political interests.**
 - a. Countercultures
 - b. Subcultures
 - c. Dominant ideology
 - d. Cultural relativism
4. **Meaning of ethnocentrism is:**
 - a. Feeling of inferiority of their own culture
 - b. Feeling of superiority of their own culture
 - c. Feeling of disorientation of other culture
 - d. Process of introducing new ideas to a culture

Unit III Culture

5. Following is not a classical feature of Indian culture:

- a. Spiritualism
- b. Freedom
- c. Materialistic outlook
- d. Social control

Answer Key

1. c 2. a 3. c 4. b 5. c

FURTHER READINGS

1. Chuanqi HE, Religion, Culture and Cultural Modernization China Center for Modernization Research, Chinese Academy of Sciences. Beijing 100190, P. R. China. 2015-09-23.
2. Gowda Krishne, Sociology for nurses. 5th edition. Noida: CBS Publishers and distributors Pvt. Limited: 2009.
3. Kendra Cherry. An Overview of Social psychology. 5 July 2020; www.verywellmind.com
4. Richard T. Schaefer. Sociology A Brief introduction. 6th edition, Tata McGraw-Hill Publishing Company Limited; New Delhi: 2006.
5. So what is culture, exactly Social science? August 2, 2019. www.thoughtco.com
6. Sociology Guide. A Student Guide to sociology. www.sociologyguide.com
7. Tripathi, D. A. (2019). Transcultural Society in a Post-Colonial World. SMART MOVIES JOURNAL IJELH, 7(12), 6. <https://doi.org/10.24113/ijelh.v7i12.10223>.
8. What is Culture? Definition, Meaning and Examples. July 13, 2017. www.livescience.com



Assess Yourself Every Step Counts



It's time to do self-assessment. Are you ready for the competition!

Mini Test (Topic-wise)

6 Tests based on important topics of the respective subjects

Semester-wise Test (All semester subject)

2 Tests based on all the subjects of particular semester

Mega Grand Test (All subject)

2 Tests based on all the UG subjects (1 Test from Target High book)



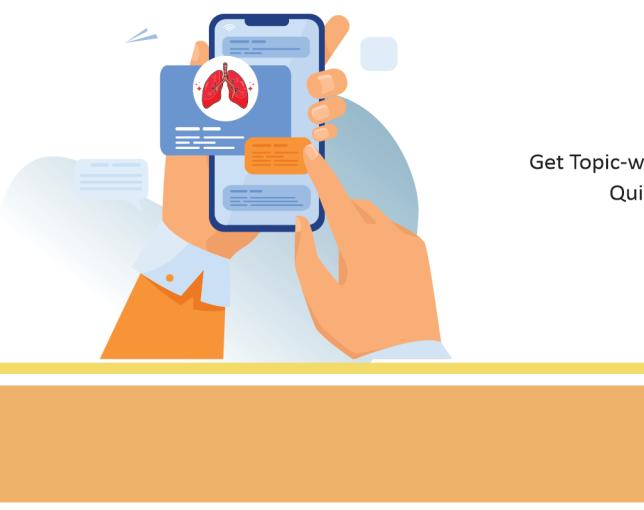
Nursing Next Live

The Next Level of Nursing Education

CBS Phygital Books >
Essentials of Applied Sociology > Assess Yourself



Note



High Yield Topics

Revise on the Go



Get Topic-wise Selective **Images & Tables** with their description for LMR and Quick reference, based on the topics of University examination



Nursing Next Live
The Next Level of Nursing Education

CBS Phygital Books >
Essentials of Applied Sociology > High Yield Topics

UNIT IV

Family and Marriage

A family can be defined as a set of people related by blood, marriage or some other agreed-upon relationship, or adoption who share the primary responsibility for reproduction and caring for members of society. This chapter concentrates on family and intimate relationship in India as well as other parts of the world. How do people select their mates? When does a marriage fail? What is the importance of joint family? In this chapter, we will look at the family and intimate relationships from the functionalist, conflict, and Interactionist point of view. We will study the family as basic needs, characteristics of nuclear and joint family, and family welfare services. We will examine the variations in forms, functions, importance and social customs related to marriage. Finally, we will discuss legislation on Indian marriage and family and influence of marriage and family on health and health practices.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

On completion of this unit, the students will be able to:

- » Define family.
- » Describe characteristics, basic needs and functions of family.
- » Discuss about types of family.
- » Define marriage.
- » Give explanation about social characteristics of marriage.
- » Describe about different forms, functions, and social customs related to marriage.
- » Explain about importance of marriage.
- » Discuss about Legislation on Indian marriage and family.
- » Explain about influence of marriage and family on health and health practices.

UNIT OUTLINE

- » Family
- » Marriages
- » Legislation on Indian Marriage and Family
- » Problems Related to Family and Marriage
- » Influence of Marriage and Family on Health and Health Practices

KEY TERMS

Adoption: In a legal sense, a process that allows for the transfer of the legal rights, responsibilities, civil liberties and privileges of parenthood to a new legal parent or parents.

Anisogamy: In anisogamy, as the marriage alliance is completed between two individuals belonging to different social status families.

Blended family: This family is formed when parents bring unrelated children from prior or foster parenting relationships into a new joint living situation. A type of family that consists of a couple, the children they have had together, and their children from previous relationships.

Civil marriages: Civil marriages are contracted under State laws, which set out the conditions that must be met for a marriage to be official as well as valid.

Cohabitation: Cohabitation means when a couple shares a residence but not a marriage.

Conjugal family: The conjugal family refers to a family system of spouses and their dependent children.

Consanguine family: A consanguine family is made up of members among next to kin or whom a blood relation exists.

Cross-cousin marriage: Cross-cousin marriage takes place when a person is married to its paternal uncle's daughter or son or with the paternal aunt's son or daughter.

Divorce: It is a failure of couple's commitment to marital and family roles. It is dissolution of family, it distresses family as well as society.

Dowry: It is the gifts and assets given to daughter at the time of marriage to begin her family. But unfortunately, some people misuse this concept and force girl's family members to give undue amount of gifts and assets.

Egalitarian family: The egalitarian family and authority pattern of spouses are regarded as equals. That does not mean, however, that all decisions are shared in such families. Wives may hold authority in some spheres or fields whereas, husbands in others.

Endogamy: Type of marriage; in this type of mate choice, mate belongs to same caste, tribe or race.

Exogamy: Type of marriage; in this type of mate choice, mate belongs to outside of caste, tribe or race.

Extended family: Family form that consists of three or more generations who live together. It is a type of family containing relatives (aunts, uncles, grandparents, and cousins) in addition to the nuclear family.

Family: According to Eliot and Merrill, family is the "the biological, social unit, composed of husband, wife and children."

Isogamy: The isogamy means marriage that takes place between the individuals of two equal social status families.

Joint family: According to Dr. Iravati Karve, "a group of people who generally live under one roof, who eat food cooked at one hearth, who hold property in common, who participate in common family worship and who are related to each other."

Levirate marriage: Levirate marriage is a type of marriage in which the woman marries her husband's brother after his death.

Lineage: The lineage means the roles, duties, functions, responsibilities, privileges as well as the manner in which property is distributed among and between members and non-members of the lineage.

Marriage: According to Gillin and Gillin, "marriage is a socially approved way of establishing a family of procreation."

Matriarchy family: In contrast, in a matriarchy family, women have greater authority than men.

Monogamy: Monogamy is a form of marriage in which one man marries one woman. This is most popular form of marriage.

Nuclear family: It is small social unit, which usually consists of husband, wife and their children. Nuclear family is more independent in nature. In Indian scenario, nuclear family is the consequence of societal changes.

Parallel cousin marriage: The Parallel Cousin marriage takes place between the children of either two sisters or two brothers.

Patriarchy society: A society that expects males to dominate in all family decision making is termed patriarchy.

Polygamy: Polygamy is a form of marriage where one man marries more than one woman at a given time. In India, various religious and tribal community follow this form of marriage.

Polygyny: Polygyny is a form of marriage in which men have more than one wife.

Single-parent family: A type of family in which only one parent is present to care for their children.

Sororate: In Sororate type of marriage, the man marries his wife's sister after her death or some cases even if she is alive.

FAMILY

Family is the most distinct primary group in the society. The word '**family**' has been taken over from the Latin word '**famulus**' meaning a servant. Family is known as a primary group, social institution, and basic unit of the society and a key association of the human society. There is no society in the world where family is not found. The family fulfills basic needs of the society. It also satisfies the basic biological, psychological and social needs of human beings. Each family member has mutual connections with each other. Family is the most important institute of socialization where child learns his culture.

Among Tibetans, a woman may be simultaneously married to more than one man, usually brothers. This system allows son to share the limited amount of good land. Among the Betsileo of Madagascar, man has multiple wives, each one lives in a different village and cultivates rice. Where there is the best rice field, that wife is considered his first, initial or senior wife. As these examples point up, there are many variations in the family from culture to culture. Moreover, certain general principles concerning about its composition, kinship patterns, and authority patterns are worldwide or universal. It is the smallest and most basic social unit, considered as most important primary group within the society. Some of the most important functions of the family in modern and contemporary society are to protect each other from harm, provide shelter, physical support, safety, security, emotional support and love and belongingness.

A family is our basis of strength. Family teaches us about the meaning of actual relationships and how it exists among its members. Family members help us create meaningful relationships in the outside world. We pass on the love, care and protection that we inherit from our families, to our independent relationships.

Concept of Family

Family evokes a visual image of adults and children living together in a satisfying, harmonious manner. Families are, however, as diverse as the individual that composes them, and members have deeply ingrained values about their families that deserve respect. Thus, each individual defines the family. In other words, think of the family as a set of relationships that the person identifies as family or as a network of individuals who

influence each other's lives whether there are actual biological or legal ties. Family is the simplest and most basic or elementary group found in a society.

Meaning of Family

Family is a cradle of the socialization of the child. Family patterns differ from one culture to another, and even within same culture. Despite the differences, however, the family is universal – found in every culture. The family is an intimate or cherished domestic group made up of people related to one another by bonds of blood, sexual mating or legal ties. A family can be defined as a set of people related by blood, marriage or some other agreed-upon relationship, or adoption, who share the primary or initial responsibility for reproduction and caring for members of society. Adoption in a legal sense; it is a process that allows for the transfer of the legal rights, responsibilities, civil liberties and privileges of parenthood to a new legal parent or parents.

Definitions of Family

Sociologists tend to define family in terms of the connection of bloodlines or biological significance. Definitions of family according to different sociologists are:

- According to **Ogburn and Nimkoff**, “Family is a durable association of husband and wife with or without children or a man or woman alone with children.”
- **MacIver** says, “Family is a group defined by a sex relationship sufficiently precise and enduring to provide for the procreation and upbringing of children.”
- According to **Anderson and Parker**, “Family is a socially recognized unit of people related to each other by kinship, marital and legal ties.”
- According to **Clare**, “Family is a system of relationships existing between parents and children.”
- Family is the, “the biological, social unit, composed of husband, wife and children.” —**Eliot and Merrill**
- According to **Burgess and Locke**, “Family is a group of people united by the ties of marriage, blood or adoption consisting of a single household interacting and intercommunicating with each other in their respective social roles of husband and wife, mother and father, son and daughter, brother and sister creating a common culture.”
- According to **Park**, “Family is a group of biologically related individuals living together and eating from a common kitchen.”
- **Kingsley Davis** says, “Family is a group of people whose relations to one another are based upon consanguinity and who are, therefore, kin to another.”
- According to **Anthony Giddens**, “A family is a group of people directly linked by kin connections, the adult members of which assume responsibility for caring for children. Kinship ties are connections between individuals, establish either through marriage or through lines of descent that connect blood relatives (mother, father, siblings, offspring, etc.).”

Thus, we can say the family is an intimate domestic group made up of people related to one another by bonds of blood, sexual mating, or legal ties. It is a major social institution and core to a person's social activity.

Characteristics of Family

A century ago, Friedrich Engels (1959), a colleague of Karl Marx, described the family as the ultimate source of social discrimination or social inequality because of its role in the transfer of authority, power, property and privilege. More recently, conflict theorists have discussed that the family contributes to societal injustice, denies women opportunities that are extended to men, and limits freedom in sexual expression as well as in mate selection. In contrast, the functionalist perspective focuses on the ways in which the family fulfills or

gratifies the needs of its members and contributes to social stability. The Interactionist view considers the close, intimate, face-to-face relationships that occur in the family.

Features of Family

MacIver and Page described two types of features of family (Fig. 4.1):

The general features of the family:

- **A mating relationship:** Sexual needs are very important for human beings which need to be fulfilled. Human beings thus enter into a mating relationship which is socially approved by the institution of marriage. Every family follows some rules and procedures through which it establishes the marital relationship, by which family is formed. The procedure of mate selection may be performed by parents or may be done by individuals concerned. The rules may be endogamous or exogamous.
- **A form of marriage:** Marriage is the social institution which forms the base of family. Marriage may be in any form; monogamy, polygamy, or polyandry. Marriage gives social sanction and establishes a mating relationship and thereby family is formed.
- **A system of nomenclature:** Nomenclature means the body or system of names used in a particular specialist field. Family provides an individual with an identity. Every family provides an individual with a particular name, and hence, it is a source of nomenclature.
- **Economic provision:** Families have always been center for economic activities such as earning or producing, expenditure, exchange and division. A large and established body of research evidence has shown the significance of the family as a major institution for carrying out essential production, consumption, reproduction, and accumulation functions that are associated with the social and economic empowerment of individuals and societies.
- **A common habitation:** Family provides an individual with a home, and establishes enduring social relationships. Family members have the characteristics to live in a common home. This habitation or home may be a single roof or an entire place, rented or the ancestral home of the family but they live in a particular place together. The nomadic families also have the common habitation under an exhibition area or tent.
- **A system of descent or lineage:** Family is also an important agent of cultural transmission. Culture is transmitted from one generation to another through family. All the features, aspects or characteristics of culture are learnt within the family structure. A lineage refers to the line through which a person's descent

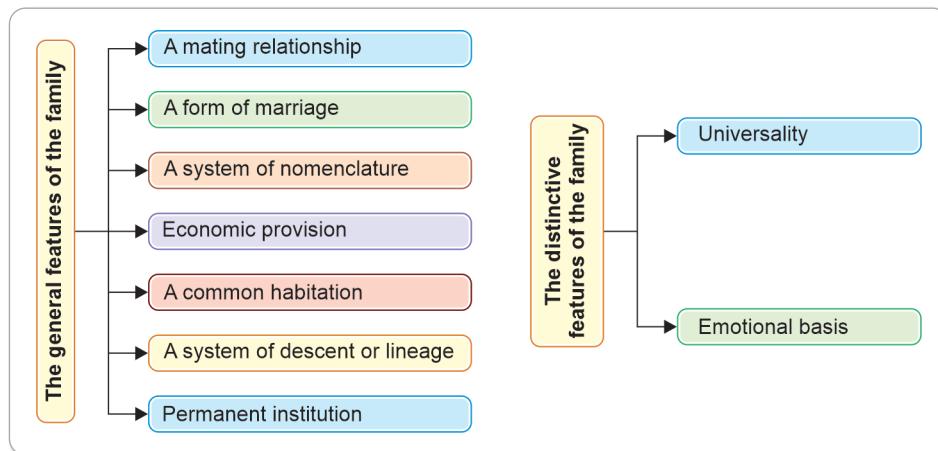


Figure 4.1: Features of family



ancestry is traced. A lineage system refers to the operation of the lineage and how it relates to its members and vice versa. In functional terms, the *lineage* means the roles, duties, functions, responsibilities, privileges as well as the manner in which property is distributed among and between members and non-members of the lineage.

- **Permanent institution:** It is the main distinguishing feature of family that it is a permanent institution. The family may be permanent and temporary in nature. When a couple after marriage settles in an independent residence, the family continues to exist with other members. Hence, family is permanent as an institution. Family on the other hand is temporary as well as transitional in nature because structure of the family changes over the time in terms of size, dimension, composition and status of persons.

The distinctive features of family:

- **Universality:** Family is a universal group. Family is found in some form or the other, in all types of societies whether primitive or modern. The family is universal because it performs essential function necessary for survival and continuous existence. This then proves or provides evidences that the family works efficiently together and uses its resources effectively in society. The family's intention or purpose for society is inseparable as compared to intention or purpose of individual members.
- **Emotional basis:** Family is based on emotions and sentiments. Mating, procreation, maternal and fraternal attachment, devotion, love and affection are the basis of family ties. The most crucial or critical function of families in today's society is the emotional support of family members. Parents provide and teach care, love, guidance, comfort, reassurance, forgiveness as well as control and regulation. Family is a great source of strength, emotional and psychological, for its members. All the members are aware that they can depend upon their family in the times of need or requirements.

For example, family values influence the decisions people make both within the family structure and outside of it. Making a decision about important topics can be difficult, and people may feel helpless if they don't know which way to proceed. Therefore, having actual or authentic family values helps people to make the right decisions in their life.

In all societies, the family is the premier institution for socialization of children, adult intimate relationships, lifelong economic support and cooperation and continuity of relationships along the life courses. Family is the setting for growing up, marriage, child rearing and the individual's most intense attachments and conflicts.

Family as a Basic Need

A family is our source of strength. Family teaches us what exactly relationships mean. Family members help us in creating meaningful relationships in the outside world. The love, worship, devotion and care we inherit from our families, we pass on this to our independent relationships.

The family is the first institution to provide life-giving support, to bind and connect the individual to a social group, and help to socialize the person for participation outside the primary group. Family is the setting for growing up, marriage, child rearing and the individual's most intense attachments as well as even conflicts. The family stands always at the center of the social life of each and every individual; it conveys basic norms and values.

Family is unique social institution and basic need of every individual. Family is a basic need because:

- Family is our first introduction or beginning into this physical world.
- Family gives us our genetic heritage and ancestral ties.
- Family is our first school: it is where children learn who they are, where they fit in, and what they can contribute to the world.
- Family offers moral and spiritual support.

- Family helps in building community spirit.
- Families are important because they provide us unlimited comfort, care, love, affection, laughter and a feeling of belonging.

Though each family has its own internal household structure, it still exists within a network of relationships with other social subsystems and with society as a whole. Families are interdependent on their neighbourhood, social environment as well as physical environment. The changes and developments of a family are predisposed and influenced by the changes in the community it resides in and its surrounded environment.

In all human societies, the family is a primary social unit or preliminary social institution, and as an institution the family is older than that of religion or state. Children are born and nurtured in the family until the time they grow into adults and find their own families and settle in their life. But the role of family is everlasting; it always supports the family members during happy moments as well as in the difficult times. Thus, finally we can say family is a basic need of each and every individual. The roles and responsibilities of families toward its members never end.

Functions of Family

The most important function of the family is to ensure the continuation of society, both biologically through procreation, and socially through socialization. From the prospects of the parents, the family's primary purpose is procreation: The family functions to produce and socialize their children.

MacIver describes the functions of family as follows (Table 4.1):

Primary functions of family: Primary functions are basic in nature and these functions cannot be performed by any other institute. They are as follows:

- **Stable satisfaction of sex needs:** Sex instinct is the fundamental need of the human. To fulfil the sexual need, society has acceptable provision of family via marriage husband and wife can fulfil their sexual desire in acceptable norms.
- **Procreation and rearing:** For the continuity of family, procreation is important and through family procreation follows and runs in generations. Family also plays an important role in rearing of children.
- **Provision of home:** Family creates when love, affection, security, protection, and comfort needs are fulfilled. To fulfil all needs the prerequisite of sweet home is essential.
- **Socialization functions:** Family is one of the primary agencies of socialization. Family members inculcate in the child the norms, value, morals, beliefs, and ideals of society.
- **Function of love and affection:** Each family member shares strong emotional affection to each other. Everyone has a desire to feel worthy.

TABLE 4.1: Primary and secondary functions of family

Primary functions	Secondary functions
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Stable satisfaction of sex needs • Procreation and rearing of children • Provision of a home • Socialization functions • Functions of love and affection 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Economic functions • Educational functions • Religious functions • Recreational functions • Health functions

Secondary functions of family: These are secondary in nature and these functions can be performed by other institute or outside of the family. The functions are:

- **Economic functions:** Members of the family depend upon parents or elders for fulfilment of the economic needs. Parents provide better education to their child and helps them economically until they settle in their life. In this way, family fulfils the economic function.
- **Educational functions:** The family provides avenues of child education. Family provides formal and informal education to child. Family is traditionally or usually responsible for the education of the children, because family is the first school of child.

- **Religious functions:** Families are the eternal source of religious behavior of a person. Spiritual and religious character formulate within the family.
- **Recreational functions:** Family functions, festival celebrations, family rituals are some of the occasions by which family members fulfil recreational needs. Family's role is important to all round development of their child and for this, parents participate in recreational activities such as play, sports, indoor games, etc.
- **Health function:** A family performs health function for its individual; evidences shows family positively affects health of a person. Social relationships, such as those realized in close families, have been demonstrated in decreasing the likelihood of the onset of certain diseases and disabilities, mental illness, chronic diseases, and even death.

According to sociologist **William F. Ogburn**, the family performs six permanent functions (Fig. 4.2).

- **Reproduction:** For maintenance of society, family cycle must be maintained. Family must replace or substitute dying members. In this sense, the family contributes to human survival through its important function of reproduction.
- **Protection:** Unlike the young of animal species, human infants need constant care as well as economic security. In all cultures, the family assumes the ultimate responsibility for the protection, safety, security and upbringing of children.
- **Socialization:** Parents and other kin monitor a child's behavior and transmit the norms, values, ethics and language of their culture to their child. Child learns to socialize through family. Family plays important role in process of socialization.
- **Regulation of sexual behavior:** Sexual norms are subject to change both over time; for example, in the customs for dating and across cultures (Compare strict and harsh Saudi Arabia to the more permissive Denmark). However or whatever the time period or cultural values of a society; standards of sexual behavior are most clearly defined only within the family circle.
- **Affection and companionship:** Ideally, the family provides members with warm and intimate relationships, helping them to feel satisfied, contented and secure as well as in a comfort zone.
- **Provision of social status:** We all inherit a social position because of the family background and reputation of our parents and siblings. The family presents the newborn child with an ascribed social status based on race and ethnicity that helps to determine his or her place within society's stratification system. Moreover, family resources affect children's ability to pursue certain prospects and opportunities, such as higher education and special lessons.

Traditionally, the family fulfils number of other functions, such as providing religious training, education and recreational outlets. But Ogburn argued that other social institutions have gradually assumed many of those functions. Family provides basic education to children. Education once took place at the family fireplace; now it is the responsibility of professionals working in schools and colleges.

Nowadays, even the family's traditional recreational functions have been transferred to outside groups such as Little Leagues, Athletic clubs, and Internet chat rooms.

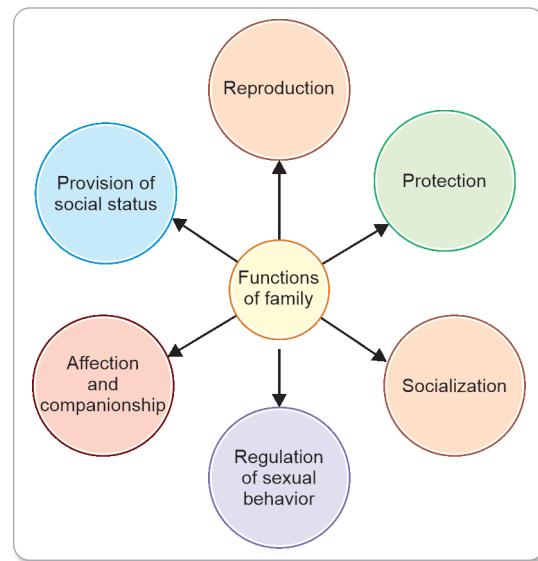


Figure 4.2: Functions of family according to William F. Ogburn

Unit IV Family and Marriage

Kingsley Davis speaks about four types of functions of family (Fig. 4.3):

1. **Reproduction:** This is the main function to reproduce children or offspring for existence or continuation of family as well as society.
2. **Maintenance:** Family performs important functions to preserve and maintain existence and ancestry.
3. **Placement:** Family serves the function of unique position or placement within the society. Each family has unique and distinctive identity in a social structure.
4. **Socialization:** Family is the first school for socialization of their child. Family is one of the most influential, dominant and leading forces in socialization, the process through which people learn the values, norms, beliefs, and expectations of their culture.

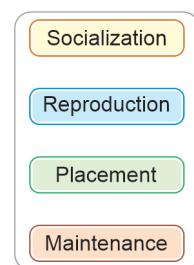


Figure 4.3: Functions of family according to Kingsley Davis

Sociological Perspectives on the Family

Do we really need the family? More recently, conflict theorists have argued that the family contributes to societal injustice, denies women's opportunities that are extended to men, and limits freedom in sexual expression and mate selection.

Sociologists obtain different theoretical approaches in understanding the family as a societal institution. Sociological views on today's families generally fall into the functional, conflict, and social interactionist approaches. As such, the family performs several important and central functions.

- First, the family is the basic or primary unit as well as institution for socializing children.
- Second, the family is ideally a major source of practical and emotional support for its members. It provides them food, clothing, shelter, safety, security and other essentials, and it also provides them love, comfort, helps in times of emotional distress, and other types of intangible support that we all need.
- Third, the family helps in regulating sexual behavior and sexual reproduction.
- Fourth, the family provides its members with a social identity or nomenclature. Children are born into their parents' social class, status, race and ethnicity, religion, and so forth.

In contrast, the functionalist perspective focuses on the ways in which the family gratifies or satisfies the needs of its members and contributes to social stability. The Interactionist view considers the intimate, face-to-face relationships that occur in the family. Interactionists are particularly interested in the ways in which mothers and fathers relate to each other and to their children. Because women's work is traditionally focused on family life, feminist sociologists have taken a strong interest in the family as a social institution. Sociologists have looked particularly closely at how women's work outside of the home impact their child care activities as well as house work activities (Table 4.2).

TABLE 4.2: Sociological perspectives on family

Theoretical perspective	Emphasis
Functionalist	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The family as a contributor to social stability • Roles of family members
Conflict	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The family as a perpetuator of inequality • Transmission of poverty or wealth across generation
Interactionist	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Relationships among family members • Family is a unit that shares understandings of their various situations
Feminist	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The family as a perpetuator of gender roles • Female-headed households

A family has information and ideas about what it wants or what is needed for the members' good life. As a social institution, family influences an individual but also communities as well as societies at large. Family is the most important basic agent or instrument of socialization, the first institution through which people learn social behavior, expectations, and social roles.

Types of Family or Family Forms

Family forms are the patterns of people who are considered to be family members. Although all families have things in common, each family forms unique troubles and strengths (Table 4.3).

Families are smaller today. People are marrying later, women are delaying childbirth, higher rates of divorce are occurring, and couples are choosing to have fewer children or none at all.

A review of the national census data and the National Family Health Survey (NFHS) data suggests that, nowadays gradually, nuclear families are becoming the predominant form of Indian family institution, at least in urban areas. Generally, the extended family is the most common type of family throughout the world. Extended families include at least three generations like grandparents, married offspring, and grandchildren.

Based on Birth

- **Family of orientation:** The family in which an individual is born is his family of orientation (or point of reference).
- **Family of procreation:** The family where an individual sets up after his or her marriage is considered his or her family of procreation.

The family of orientation and family of procreation may exist or live together under the same roof, but can still be different or can be distinguished.

Based on Marriage

- **Monogamous family:** This type of family consists of one husband and wife, including children and this is based on monogamous marriages.
- **Polygynous family:** A family consists of one husband, and more than one wife, and all the children born to all the wives or adopted by each of them. This type of family is based on the polygynous form of marriage.
- **Polyandrous family:** This type of family is made up of one wife and more than one husband, and the children, either born or adopted with each one of them. The basis of this family is polyandrous form of marriage.

Based on Residence

- **Family of matrilocal residence:** When a couple stays or continues to live in the wife's house, this type of family is known as family of matrilocal residence.

TABLE 4.3: Forms of family

According to basis	Forms of family
Based on birth	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Family of orientation • Family of procreation
Based on marriage	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Monogamous family • Polygynous family • Polyandrous family
Based on residence	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Family of matrilocal residence • Family of patrilocal residence • Family of changing residence
Based on ancestry or descent	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Matrilineal family • Patrilineal family
Authority patterns of family	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Patriarchy family • Matriarchy family • Egalitarian family
Based on the nature of relations	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Conjugal family • Consanguine family
Based on state or structure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Nuclear family • Joint family • Extended family

Unit IV Family and Marriage

- **Family of patrilocal residence:** When a family stays in the house of husband, the family is known as family of patrilocal residence. This is the most preferable type.
- **Family of changing residence:** When a family stays in the husband's house for some period of time, and moves to wife's house. Stays there for a period of time according to their suitability, and then moves back to husband's parents, or than begin to start living in another place for some time. Because they have no consistency in residence that is why this type of family is called a family of changing residence.

Based on Ancestry or Descent

- **Matrilineal family:** When ancestry or descent is going in accordance with female line, or through the mother's side, the family is called matrilineal family.
- **Patrilineal family:** A family in which the authority is carried down through male line, and descent is going through the male line or from the father's side, is called a patrilineal family.

Authority Patterns of Family

Societies vary in the way that power is distributed within the family.

- **Patriarchy family:** A society that expects males to dominate in all family decision making is termed a patriarchy. In **patriarchy** family, such as Iran, the eldest male often exerts the greatest power, although wives are expected to be treated with respect and kindness. A women's status in Iran is typically defined by her relationship to a male relative, usually as wife or daughter. In many patriarchal societies, it is more difficult for the women to obtain a divorce than a man does.
- **Matriarchy family:** In contrast, in a matriarchy, women have greater authority than men. A woman holds power to make decisions. Matriarchies, which are very uncommon, emerged among Native American tribal societies and nations in which men were absent for long periods because of welfare or food-gathering expeditions.
- **Egalitarian family:** In a third type of authority pattern, called the egalitarian family, the authority patterns of spouses are regarded as equals. That does not mean, however, that all decisions are shared in such families. Wives may hold authority in some spheres and husbands in others spheres.

Based on the Nature of Relations

- **Conjugal family:** The conjugal family means a family system of spouses and their dependent children.
- **Consanguine family:** A consanguine family consists of members among whom a blood relation exists.

Based on State or Structure

Nuclear Family

A **nuclear family** is a small group consisting of a husband, a wife and their children, naturally born or adopted. It is more or less an autonomous as well as self-sufficient unit that is not under the control of adults or elders of the family. Nuclear family consists of only two generations. Nuclear family is the most widespread type of family in all modern societies. In fact, nuclear family has both the consequence as well as the cause of the disintegration of joint family.

The term nuclear family serves as the nucleus, or core, on which larger family groups are built. Nuclear family is a small social unit, which usually consists of husband, wife and their children. Nuclear family is more independent and self-governing in nature. In Indian scenario, nuclear family is the consequence of societal changes. Most people nowadays see the nuclear family as the preferred family arrangement.

Characteristics of Nuclear Family

- Small size of family
- Limited responsibilities
- Limited functions
- Individualization
- Instability
- Importance of secondary relationships
- Personal income and property

Joint Family

According to Dr. Iravati Karve, “a group of people who generally live under one roof, who eat food cooked at one hearth, who hold property in common, who participate in common family worship and who are related to each other.”

Characteristics of joint family

- **Depth of generation:** Larger family with people of three generations and other relatives.
- One roof
- One kitchen
- Same religious practice
- Share property
- Exercise of authority
- Arranged marriage
- Procreation

Merits of joint family

- More social control.
- Generally joint property and family business in which all males are involved.
- Greater support system as grandparents or other members are always there.
- Greater bond of unity and affection and sharing and adjustment among members.

Extended Family

Family form that consists of three or more generations who live together. It is a type of family consisting relatives (aunts, uncles, grandparents, and cousins) in addition to the nuclear family. The extended family is the most common type of family throughout the world. Extended families include at least three generations such as grandparents, married offspring, and grandchildren.

The structure of the extended family offers certain advantages over that of the nuclear family. Crisis situations such as death, divorce, and illness put less strain on family members, since more people can provide assistance, help and emotional support. In other word we can say, the extended family constitutes a larger economic unit than the nuclear family. If the family engaged in a common enterprise—a farm or a small business—the additional family members may represent the difference between prosperity and failure.

Other Forms of Family

- **Blended family:** This family is formed when parents bring unrelated children from prior or foster parenting relationships into a new joint living situation. This is a family consisting of a couple, the children they have had together, and also their children from previous relationships.
- **Single-parent family:** A family in which only one parent is present to care for the children. Single parent families are comprised of a parent or caregiver and one or more dependent children without the presence, support and assistance of a spouse or adult partner who shares the responsibility of parenting.

- **Cohabitation:** Cohabitation means when a couple shares a residence but not a marriage, becoming more acceptable in recent years, or people may be less motivated to get married. Cohabitation is used primarily to denote the arrangement, bargain or understanding between two individuals who live together, either as spouses or unmarried partners. Cohabitation agreement is a type of contract explaining the assets, property and financial arrangement between people who live together.
- **The modern family:** The family is a major social institution. Family has a great role in socialization of individual as society is changing very rapidly so we can expect some gradual changes in the family. The biggest factor for this change has been urbanization. Migration to urban areas has led to the breakdown of the traditional joint family system.

The modern family is more independent, individualized, self-governing and democratic where women enjoy a high prestige and position and children enjoy more independence as well.

The modern family has undergone tremendous changes, some of them are as follows:

- Popularity of nuclear family
- Occupational changes
- Decline of joint family
- Adult avoid tying knots marriage
- Families without need of child
- Single parent family
- 'Live-in relationship' family

Factors Responsible for Changes in Nuclear and Joint Family

- Individual interest and dominant 'I feeling'.
- No one wants to compromise with freedom, kids, parents, or grandparents.
- Awareness among women through education
- Social legislations
- Urbanization
- Industrialization
- Development of high tech transport and communication means
- Impact of mass media
- Over population
- Poverty, illiteracy
- Low morale and values
- Economic insecurity

Family Welfare Services

The focus of India's health services right from the early 1950s has been health care for women as well as children and provision or prerequisite of contraceptive services. Successive Five-Year Plans have been providing the policy framework and funding for the planned development of nationwide health care infrastructure and manpower. The centrally sponsored and 100 per cent centrally funded Family Welfare Program provides the states the additional infrastructure, manpower, communication and consumables needed for improving the health status of women and children and to meet all the felt needs for fertility regulation.

Family welfare services are voluntary; they provide comprehensive maternal and child health services. Their main objective is to create awareness, information, education and communication, for the welfare of family.

The Ministry of Health and Family Welfare has implemented various programs to provide comprehensive care to family like national family welfare program 1951, national population policy 2000, national rural health

mission 2005–2012, reproductive child health program 1997, and urban family welfare scheme 1983. Under the RCH program, several initiatives were taken to improve collaboration and alliance between the public and private sectors in providing family welfare services to the poorer sections, especially in the under-served areas. Efforts were made to increase the involvement as well as participation of private medical practitioners in RCH care by providing them orientation training and ensuring that they have ready access to contraceptives, drugs and vaccines free of cost.

The basic or fundamental objective of the Family Welfare Program is to stabilize the population and to provide qualitative health services including immunization to both pregnant mother and children. The basic fundamental objective of family welfare program is population control.

Family Welfare Programs mainly include:

- Family planning information, counseling, methods and services to women for healthy reproduction.
- Education about safe delivery and post-delivery care of mother as well care of baby and the treatment of women before pregnancy.
- Health care of infants, immunization against preventable diseases and under five services.
- Prevention, treatment and management of sexually and reproductive tract infection.

The department has drawn up the National Population Policy 2000 (NPP 2000), which aims at achieving replacement level of fertility by 2010. A National Commission on Population was constituted in May 2000, in accordance with the recommendations of the NPP 2000. The medium and long term goals will be to continue this process to accelerate the pace of demographic transition and attain population stabilization by 2045. Early population stabilization will enable the country to achieve or accomplish its developmental goal of improving the economic status and quality of life of the all citizens.

There are several nongovernment organizations (NGO), who are also working and supporting government in services of family welfare program.

Role of NGOs and Voluntary Organizations in the Family Welfare Program

The National Population Policy 2000 envisages increasing role of NGOs or voluntary organizations in building up awareness about and advocacy for RCH interventions and also in improving community participation. Until in recent times, only a small number of NGOs were getting proper funding from the Department of Family Welfare, because a majority of them did not have adequate technical knowledge and the skills as they required. In an attempt to increase NGOs participation in health care services, there must be increased public awareness and financial security to them in addition to there must be better training options is essential. Department involved in health care services are several well-established NGOs such as the Family Planning Association of India and Voluntary Health Association of India.

NGOs carry out the following functions:

- Advocacy for maternal child health interventions.
- Promotion of small healthy family norm.
- Improving community participation.
- Counseling and motivating adolescents to delay the age of marriage, young couples to delay first pregnancy and couples with two children to limit or plan their families by the use of appropriate contraceptive methods.
- Act as a linkage or connection between the community and health care providers.
- Increasing awareness regarding gender sensitivity issues and advocacy regarding provision of adequate care for the girl child.
- Promotion of exclusive breastfeeding at least up to six months; advocacy for the introduction of semi-solids at the right time.

Unit IV Family and Marriage

- Social marketing of contraceptives, ensuring easy availability of ORS (Oral Rehydration Solution) as well as social promotion of ORS.
- Increased awareness of the community people regarding the adverse consequences of sex determination and sex selective abortions.

A huge infrastructure for the delivery of health care and family welfare services has been created over the last three decades based on uniform norms throughout the country. Now, health care should be within the reach of every citizen easily. For providing basic health facilities to all citizens, government has introduced as well as implemented various health schemes, methods and programs.

All the states have initiated health sector reforms aimed at improving the functional status of the health care delivery system. Family welfare services are now an integral and essential part of services provided by primary, secondary and tertiary care institutions.

MARRIAGES

Marriage is one of the personal, deepest as well as most complex human relationships. Marriage is a social, legal, religious union between spouses. Marriage is an institution that binds men and women to create family. It is a mode of societal norms to regulate the sexual instinct.

Marriage is one of the universal social institutions. It is established by the human society to control, legalize and regulate the sex life of man. It is closely connected with the institution of family. Its purpose, functions, and forms differ from society to society, but it is present everywhere as an institution.

Marriage is perceived by sociologists as a system of roles and responsibilities of a man and a woman whose union has been given social sanction as husband and wife. Indian sociologists look upon Hindu marriage as a sanskara, having three objects, dharma means fulfilment of religious duties, rati means sexual gratification, and praja means procreation.

Concept of Marriage

Marriage is a legal union or combination of a couple as spouses. The basic elements of a marriage are; the parties' legal ability to marry each other, mutual consent of the parties, and a marriage contract as required by law. Marriage is perceived by sociologists as a system of roles and responsibilities of a man and a woman whose union has been given social sanction or authorized as husband and wife. Marriage is considered by sociologists to be a cultural universal; means it exists in some form in all societies. Marriage serves important social functions, and social norms often determine the role of each partner as they assume in a marriage.

Definitions of Marriage

Most commonly, marriage dictates the roles that spouses play in each other's lives, in the family, and even in society at large. Marriage is an institution to satisfy physical, psychological, social, cultural and economic needs of men and women. Marriage has been defined as an institution for admitting men and women into family life, legitimating offspring and establishing other rights and obligations of husband, wife and children.

A commonly accepted and encompassing definition of marriage is, "marriage is a formal union and social and legal contract between two individuals that unites their lives legally, economically, and emotionally. Being married also gives authority, legitimacy to sexual relations within the social boundaries."

Definitions of marriage by different sociologists as discussed below:

- According to **Gillin and Gillin**, "Marriage is a socially approved way of establishing a family of procreation."

- According to **Robert H. Lowie**, “Marriage is a relatively permanent bond between permissible mates.”
- According to **Horton and Hunt**, “Marriage is a contract for the production and maintenance of children.”
- According to **Malinowski**, “Marriage is a contract for the production and maintenance of childhood.”

“Marriage is the approved social pattern whereby two or more persons establish a relationship called a family.”

Marriage serves several functions. In most societies, it serves to socially identify children by defining kinship ties to a mother, father, and extended relatives. It also serves to regulate sexual behavior, to transfer, preserve, or consolidate property, prestige, and power, and most importantly, it is the basis for the institution of the family.

Social Characteristics of Marriage (Fig. 4.4)

- Permanent social and legal contract of relationship:**

In most societies, a marriage is considered a permanent social as well as legal contract and bond of relationship between two persons that is based on mutual rights and obligations among the partners.

- Intimate relationship between two people:**

A successful marriage is often based on an idealistic or romantic relationship. But regardless, it typically signals an intimate relationship between two people.

- Marriage an important social institution:**

A marriage, however, does not simply exist between the married partners, but rather, signifies as a social institution in legal, economic, social, and spiritual or religious ways. Because a marriage is recognized by law or rule and by religious institutions, and involves economic ties between the spouses or partners.

- Familial descent:** Main distinguishing feature of marriage is to determine family names and lines of familial descent. Marriage is often greeted socially with immediate expectations that the couple will produce children or their offspring for continual existence.

Typically, the institution of marriage begins with a period of courtship that ends in an invitation to marry. This is followed by the marriage ritual, during which mutual rights and responsibilities may be specifically stated and agreed by both families. In many places, the state or a religious authority must sanction a marriage in order for it to be considered valid, official as well as legal. Dissolution of marriage such as annulment or divorce must, in turn, involve dissolution of the marriage relationship in all of these dominions.

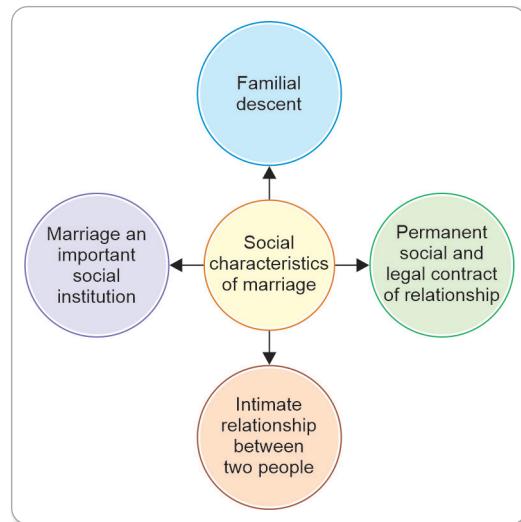


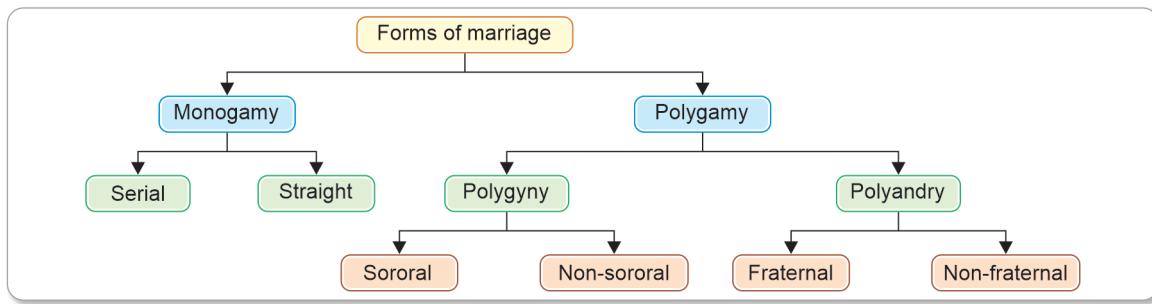
Figure 4.4: Social characteristics of marriage

Forms of Marriage

In general, there are two forms of marriage; first civil marriage or legislative marriage and second religious marriage or traditional marriage. Typically marriages take up a combination of both; religious marriages must often be licensed and recognized by the state, and conversely civil marriages, while not sanctioned under religious law, are nevertheless respected.

Various forms of marriages are based on number of wives or husband a person is having (Fig. 4.5).

- Monogamy:** Monogamy is a form of marriage in which one man marries one woman. This is the most popular form of marriage. It is the most common form of marriage throughout the world.

**Figure 4.5:** Forms of marriage

Monogamy is additionally classified in two other types—Serial monogamy and Straight monogamy.

- **Serial monogamy:** In this type, a man can marry again only after the death of his first wife or after a divorce but he is not permitted to marry more than one wife and is left monogamous throughout his entire life.
- **Straight monogamy:** In this case, remarriage is not allowed for either of the couple even one of them is death or has divorced.

Monogamy is considered as an ideal or rational form of marriage because of its following advantages:

- It ensures commitment to each other at all levels of life.
- It provides physical and mental satisfaction to each other.
- There is better understanding between the couple that minimizes quarrels in the family.
- Gender equality is followed in this marriage and equal status is provided to the family members.
- The couple has stable sex life where they procreate children and up bring together.
- Committed life to each other facilitates their children to easily inherit property from their parents.

The only disadvantage in monogamy is that it leads to boredom or monotony after several years which may result into divorce or either of the couple has an extra marital affair.

- **Polygamy:** Polygamy is a form of marriage where one man marries more than one woman at a given time. In India, various religious and tribal communities follow this form of marriage. It is further divided into two types: Polygyny and Polyandry.
 - **Polygyny:** Polygyny is a form of marriage in which men have more than one wife.
 - **Sororal polygyny:** Sororal Polygyny is a type of marriage where wives are sisters.
 - **Non-sororal polygyny:** Non-sororal polygyny means is a type of marriage where wives are not related to each other.
 - **Polyandry:** It is a form of marriage in which women have more than one husband.
 - Fraternal polyandry is type of marriage when several brothers share the same wife.
 - Non-fraternal polyandry is type of marriage where wife lives with each husband for some time and at last decides to live with one of them but other husbands have no right to claim over her.

Marriages Based on Status

The partner selection here is carried out based on the status of each other which is described below:

- **Isogamy:** In isogamy, marriage takes place between the individuals of two equal social status families.
- **Anisogamy:** This type of marriage is just opposite to isogamy. In anisogamy, as the marriage alliance or agreement is done between two individuals belonging to different social status families.

It is further described in two forms—Hypergamy and Hypogamy.



1. **Hypergamy (Anuloma):** Hypergamy means a woman marries with a man of higher Varna or superior caste or family. Traditionally in Indian society, hypergamy is known as Anuloma. This type of marriage is most popular among peer groups from the past.
2. **Hypogamy (Pratiloma):** This type of marriage is just opposite to Hypergamy or Anuloma. In hypogamy type, woman marries to a man from a lower Varna, caste or family status. This type of marriage is sometimes not allowed in Indian society.

Marriages Based on Rule of Preferences or Priority

When the life partners are selected among the kins, it is called preferential, privileged or priority marriage. Preferential marriage is carried out through four ways.

1. **Cross-cousin marriage:** Cross-cousin marriage takes place when a person is married to its paternal uncle's daughter or son or with the paternal aunt's son or daughter. Such marriages are held to avoid high dowry payment as well as to strengthen cross-cousin relationships. It is mainly practiced in some states of India like Rajasthan, Maharashtra and Odisha.
2. **Parallel-cousin marriage:** The Parallel-cousin marriage takes place between the children of either two sisters or two brothers. This is mainly practiced in the Muslim religion which aims to strengthen the bond or connection between two sisters and two brothers.
3. **Levirate marriage:** Levirate marriage is a type of marriage in which the woman marries her husband's brother after his death. Such marriages are practiced by the tribes like Munda, Gond, Santhal, Toda and the Organ. It is practiced in particular locally called 'Devar Vivaha'.
4. **Sororate:** Sororate type of marriage is in which the man marries his wife's sister after her death or in some cases even if she is alive. Such marriages are practiced in some particular tribes like the Kharia and the Gond. It is in the vicinity or surrounded area called 'Sali Vivah'.

Civil Marriages

Civil marriages are contracted under State laws, which set out the conditions that must be met for a marriage to be official as well as valid. Civil marriages also called statutory marriages, constitutional marriages or legislative marriages. These conditions may include the minimum legal age at which prospective parties can marry; different modalities for formalizing the marriage; marital property regimes; maintenance, upbringing of children and parental obligations; divorce; and property distribution and child custody arrangements upon divorce. Such marriages vary from one jurisdiction to another depending on the cultural, traditional, religious and historical experiences of a country, and can imply State recognition of a diversity of marriages—including monogamy, polygamy and same sex marriages.

An essential feature of statutory or civil marriage is the guarantee of official supporting documentary evidence of its fact or existence. Statutory or civil marriages tend to be more common among educated, urban, modernized and elite women and men, due to the costs associated with arrangements and documentation.

Functions of Marriage

Marriage has numerous social functions that are important within the societies. Most commonly, marriage dictates the roles and responsibilities that spouses play in each other's lives, in the family, and in the society at large. Typically these roles involve a division of work between the partners, such that each is responsible for different tasks that are necessary within the family. Marriage is considered by sociologists to be a cultural universal; that is, it exists in some form in all societies (Fig. 4.6).

Marriage is understood as a union supported by society as well as culture. Sociologists define marriage as a bond between two or more individuals in an arrangement meant to be stable and ever long-lasting.



Unit IV Family and Marriage

usually based on a sexual relationship. Marriage is found in all societies. Depending on cultural differences, marriage can require religious, traditional, ceremonial, as well as civil approval.

Functions of marriage are discussed below:

- **Marriage provides provision of sexual life in boundary of societal norms:** Sex is a basic human need and it should be manifested in a socially acceptable manner. Throughout the world, marriage is a channel to regulate sexual practices of human. It is the medium under which man and woman have contact in socially approved manner.
- **Procreation:** After marriage, everybody wants to have children. If there is not a provision of marriage, there will not be any aspiration of children. The offspring of human being is continued due to marriage as it is a legitimate way to produce children.
- **Building of family and home:** Marriage encourages couples to establish family and home. Marriage brings man and woman together to nurture, protect and ensure that their offspring survives as well as well adjusts in a society.
- **Protection and upbringing:** Marriage provides family as a social institution to its children where they get physical, psychological and social training to prepare them to live in and for the society. This provides knowledge of children about their gender specific roles and other social as well as cultural norms.
- **Marriages construct financial capacity:** Husband, wife and other family members by virtue depend upon each other for financial capacity. Marriage creates a discipline and provides structure or framework to humans under which they give the basic needs of their partners. For example, food, shelter, clothing and safety. In Indian society, marriage provides economic security to women as men are the bread earner and women depends on the earnings of the husband. But nowadays, this trend is gradually changing; man and women both work together to fulfil the needs of their family. Marriage makes man realise to whom they are economically and socially responsible.
- **Companionship:** Marriage promotes companionship between husband and wife and children. Marriage is not only individual contribution it promotes companionship. Marriage is the only social institution which provides a constant companionship and support to human in the form of a life-partner as husband and wife. Marriage generates permanent companionship between the man and woman to which they share their joy, sorrow and emotions.
- **Marriage inculcates sense of responsibility:** It is said that a married person takes care of himself as well as other family member. Marriage provides physical and mental satisfaction to each other.
- **Inheritance and right to property:** Marriage legitimizes the birth rights of children and provides easy succession of inherited property. Lineage system: A lineage refers to the line through which a person's descent ancestry is marked or traced. A lineage system refers to the operation of the lineage and how it relates to its members and vice versa. In functional terms, the lineage defines the roles, duties, responsibilities, privileges as well as the method or manner in which property is distributed among and between members and non-members of the lineage.

Marriage is the union of two people in love, and it is a legal commitment that has familial, physical, mental, social, spiritual as well as economic implications.

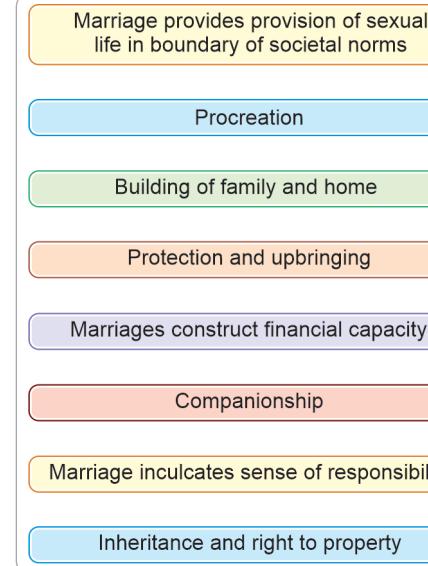


Figure 4.6: Functions of marriage

Importance of Marriage

Marriage means beginning of the family as well as is a life-long commitment among partners. It also provides an opportunity to grow in selflessness as person serving their wife and children. Marriage is more than a physical union; it is also considered a spiritual and emotional union.

- **Start of a new beginning:** Marriage manifests life-time commitment. It marks the beginning of a special bond between spouses such as physically, socially, emotionally and spiritually.
- **Team:** In marriage, partners work as a team and celebrate milestones and successes and even rise or combat the challenges together.
- **Settlement of both the partners:** Marriage facilitates social bonding and improves economic standing and social capital. Economic and social outcome typically benefit not only partners, but other family members, and of course the community.
- **Makes partners more contented:** Researchers suggest that marriage improves health and financial satisfaction and make partners more contended.
- **Marriage improves life expectancy:** Proponents of marriage believe that married people live longer and healthier lives. Statisticians Bernard Cohen and I-Sing Lee concluded that being unmarried is one of the most significant health risks.
- **Improves health:** According to a research study, unmarried people were at a 42% higher risk of developing cardiovascular disease and a 16% higher risk of developing coronary artery disease as compared with married people.
- **All round development of children:** Children living with their biological, married parents have better physical, academic, as well as emotional well-being.
- **Economic stability:** Marriage helps in economic stability. A person improves sense of responsibilities and work harder.
- **Decreased feeling of isolation:** Researches show that single people experience less confidence, and lack of social support, which leads to higher depression rates, loneliness, and even social isolation.
- **Provides emotional safety:** Marriage provides emotional support and sense of security in relationships.
- **Helps in social organizations:** Marriage helps in making community better reducing the causes of individual, family as well as community disorganization.

Marriage awards several benefits. It helps to improve diverse or different aspects of an individual's life, including physical, emotional, social, economic, mental and spiritual health. When couples commit to marriage, they often turn out to be equally stronger and more secure, safe and protected.

Social Customs Related to Marriage

In most societies, marriage serves to socially identify children by defining kinship ties to a mother, father, and extended relatives. It also serves to control or regulate sexual behavior, to transfer, preserve, or consolidate property, prestige, and power, and most importantly, it is the basis for the institution of the family.

Marriage is a legally as well as socially sanctioned union, usually as a rule between a man and a woman, that is regulated by laws, rules, customs, beliefs, and attitudes that prescribe the rights and duties of the partners and accord status to their children.

Marriage ceremonies include symbolic rites, often sanctified by a religious order, which are thought to confer good fortune on the couple.

The most universal ritual is one that symbolizes a sacred or blessed union. This may be expressed by the joining of hands, and exchange of rings or chains. However, all the elements in marriage rituals differ greatly in different societies, and components such as time, place, and the social importance of the event are fixed by tradition and habit.

In the Hindu tradition, for example, weddings are highly elaborate affairs, involving several prearranged or approved rituals. Marriages are generally arranged by the parents (from both sides) of the couple, and the date of the ceremony is determined by careful/vigilant astrological calculations. Among most Buddhists, marriage remains primarily a secular affair, even though the Buddha offered guidelines or the responsibilities in place of householders.

In Judaism, marriage is understood or believed to have been instituted by God and is described as making the individual complete. Jain marriage is announced through a tilak. The bride's family visits the groom's family. Offerings, gifts and sweets are exchanged along with a tilak ceremony of the groom.

Christians consider marriage as a permanent union based upon mutual or shared consent. Christian weddings take place before a priest or minister, and the ceremony involves the exchange of vows, readings from Scripture, a blessing, and, sometimes, the Eucharistic rite.

In Islam, marriage is not strictly a sacrament but is always implied or understood as a gift from God or a kind of service to God. Marriages are traditionally contracted by the father or guardian of the bride and her intended husband, who must offer his bride the mehar, a payment offered as a gift to guarantee her financial independence.

Rules of Mate Choice

Endogamy and Exogamy are the two main rules or conventions that condition the marital choice. They are considered as prohibitive or exorbitant rules because they restrict man and woman to select their mates. They allow the mate selection only in the given framework.

Endogamy: In this type of mate choice, mate belongs to same caste tribe or race. It is a rule of marriage in which the life-partners are to be selected within the group which may be in same caste, race, tribe, class, village or religion.

There are further types of endogamy such as caste-endogamy, sub-caste endogamy, race endogamy and tribal endogamy.

- **Caste-endogamy:** Marriage happens within a same particular caste.
- **Sub-caste endogamy:** Marriage allows among members of subdivisions of caste.
- **Race endogamy:** Marriage happens within a same particular race.
- **Tribal endogamy:** Marriage allows among same tribal people. The rules are strictly followed by tribal people; not allowing any person from outside of their community.

Exogamy: In this type of mate choice, mate belongs to outside of caste, tribe or race. Exogamy is just opposite of Endogamy where an individual marries outside his own group such as gotra, pravara, pinda or village.

- **Gotra exogamy:** In this type of practice, the Hindu person marries outside one's own gotra.
- **Pravara exogamy:** Those who belong to the same pravara are not able to marry among themselves.
- **Village exogamy:** Many Indian tribes like Naga, Garo, and Munda, etc. have the practice of marrying outside from their village.
- **Pinda exogamy:** Those who belong to the same pinda or sapinda (common parentage) are not able to marry among themselves.

This type of marriage prohibits a person from marrying within the blood relation so that a healthy and intelligent progeny or descendants are continued further for next generation.

LEGISLATION ON INDIAN MARRIAGE AND FAMILY

All marriages in India must be registered under the respective personal law Hindu Marriage Act, 1955, Muslim Marriage Act, 1954, or under the Special Marriage Act, 1954. It is the duty or function of the judiciary

to ensure that the rights of both the husband and wife are being protected. The Special Marriage Act, 1954 is an Act of the Parliament of India with provision for civil marriage for Indian people and all Indian nationals in foreign countries, irrespective of religion or faith followed by either party.

The person's plans to getting married are obliged to be unmarried and must not have a living spouse from their previous marriage. The officially permitted or legal age for a woman is 18 years and for a man is 21 years. The good sense of mind is necessary for both the parties and they must be capable to give their consent for the marriage freely.

The Hindu Marriage Act, 1955

This Act came into force from May 18, 1955 and applies to whole nation or throughout India, except Jammu and Kashmir. The word Hindu in the Act includes Jains, Sikhs, Buddhists and the Scheduled Castes. Whereas, the Special Marriage Act, 1954 lay down the procedure for both solemnization as well as registration of marriage, where either of the husband or wife or both are not Hindus, Buddhists, Jains or Sikhs.

The conditions for marriage between any two Hindus as provided in the Act are: (i) neither party has a spouse living; (ii) neither party is an idiot or lunatic; (iii) the groom must have completed eighteen years of legal age and the bride fifteen years age. The amendment in the Act made in 1978 has raised this age to twenty-one years for boys and eighteen years for the girls (iv) the parties should not be within the degrees of prohibited relationships, unless the custom permits the marriage between the two; (v) the parties should not be sapindas of each other unless the custom permits the marriage between the two; (vi) where the bride is under eighteen years of age and the groom is under twenty-one years of age the consent of her or his guardian in marriage must have been obtained.

The Christian Marriage Act

The Christian marriages are solemnized under the Christian Marriage Act 15 of 1872. A Christian is one who professes the religion of Holy Jesus Christ and Indian Christians include native converts to Christianity and their Christian descendants.

Muslim Marriage Act

The Muslim marriage is governed by Muslim law, Marriage or 'Nikah'. According to Muslim Law, it is a contract or agreement underlying a permanent relationship based on mutual consent or agreement.

Essential Features

- A Muslim marriage requires proposal (Ijab) from one party and acceptance (Qubool) from the other as is required for a contract or agreement. Moreover, there can be no marriage without free consent and such consent should not be obtained by means of cruelty, coercion, fraud or undue influence.
- Just as in case of agreement, entered by a guardian, on attaining majority, so can a marriage contract in Muslim Law, be set aside by a minor on attaining the age of puberty.
- The parties to a Muslim marriage may enter into any ante-nuptial or postnuptial contract which is enforceable by law provided it is reasonable and not opposed to the policy of Islam.
- The terms of a marriage contract or agreement may also be transformed within legal limits to suit individual cases.
- Although discouraged both by the holy Quran and Hadith, yet like any other contract or agreement, there is also provision for the breach of marriage contract.

Special Marriage Act

The Special Marriage Act was passed to provide a special form of marriage by any person in India and all Indian nationals in foreign countries irrespective of the religion either party to the marriage may profess. For the benefit of Indian citizens in abroad, this Special Marriage Act provides for the appointment of Diplomatic and Consular Officers as marriage officers for solemnizing and registering marriages between citizens of India in a foreign country.

A marriage under the Special Marriage Act, 1954 allows or permits people from two different religious backgrounds to come together or forward in the bond of marriage. The Special Marriage Act, 1954 lays down the procedure for both solemnization and registration of marriage, where either of the husband or wife or both are not Hindus, Buddhists, Jains, or Sikhs.

According to this Act, the couples have to serve or provide a notice with the relevant documents to the Marriage Officer 30 days before the intended date of the marriage. However, nowadays, while this process has been enabled online on <https://www.onlinemarriageregistration.com/>, the couple will have to visit the marriage officer for the solemnization of their marriage.

Registration Process Special Marriage Act

- Both parties are required to be positively present there; after the submission of documents for issuance of public notice inviting objections.
- One copy of the notice is posted on the notice board of the office and one copy of the notice is sent through registered post to both parties as per the given address.
- Registration is done 30 days after the date of notice after deciding any objection that may have been received during that period by the SDM.
- Both parties along with three witnesses are required to be present on the actual date of registration.

PROBLEMS RELATED TO FAMILY AND MARRIAGE

Sociologists are interested in the relationship between the institution of marriage and the institution of family because, historically, marriages are what that creates a family, and families are the most basic social unit upon which whole society is built or constructed. Both marriage and family create status roles that are sanctioned or approved by society.

Sometimes family members give importance to money than relations, this way of thinking or outlook gives rise to certain problems as discussed below:

- **Breakdown of the joint family:** There may be breakdown in the joint family or extended family in a rural area because of changing family forms as well as effect of modernization. The traditional joint family system in India has undergone tremendously both structural as well as functional changes. The joint family system in India has been disrupted due to numerous factors. People moved from rural areas to urban areas for search of jobs and a better standard of living. This may be reason of breaking their relationships with the joint family. Thus, modern industries shattered the exceptional foundation of joint family system in India. It is true that the joint family system is disintegrating today. This integration is more evident in big cities' and industrial centers as compared with rural areas.
- **Elder abuse:** Elder abuse is an intentional act or failure to act that causes or creates a risk of harm to an older person. An older adult is someone aged 60 or above 60 years of age. Neglect is the failure to meet an older adult's basic and essential needs. These needs include food, water, shelter, clothing, hygiene, and essential medical care or even love and belongingness. According to the National Council on Aging (NCOA), elders are more likely to self-report financial exploitation than emotional, physical, and sexual abuse or neglect. According to the NCEA (National Center on Elder Abuse), neglect is the most widespread common type of elder abuse.

- **Dowry:** It is the gifts and assets given to daughter at the time of marriage to entreat her family, but unfortunately some people misuse this concept and force girl's family members to give undue amount of gifts and assets.
- **Domestic violence:** Domestic violence is another problem which is faced by many women. This problem cuts across all classes and castes. Most women bear in silence to save the family honor, which perpetuates it further. The Domestic Violence Act 2005 was passed to protect women from violence within their homes. In order to truly end domestic violence, we need to modify or change the attitudes and behaviors that perpetuate abuse, build connection within our communities, and improve quality of life for all the people.
- **Divorce:** It is a failure of couple's commitment to marital and family roles. It is dissolution of family, it distresses family as well as society. Nowadays, marriage and dissolution (ending a marriage through annulment or divorce), are both common social contracts or agreements. The values, norms, life philosophy, beliefs, and expectations attached to marriage and divorce strongly influence people's behavior. Changes in these values, norms, life philosophy, beliefs, and expectations all impact and reflect society as a whole.

The growing acceptance of divorce is a worldwide phenomenon.

Causes of Divorce

- Changes in laws
- Changes in society
- There may be changes in the roles as well as responsibilities of women
- High expectation from marriage
- Changes in social attitude
- Couples seek more autonomy
- Less tolerance

According to Judith A. Wallerstein's qualitative research on divorce, she is convinced that adult children of divorce have had greater difficulty than other adults in forming and maintaining intimate relationships because they have never witnessed the daily give-and-take of a successful marital relationship or partnership.

INFLUENCE OF MARRIAGE AND FAMILY ON HEALTH AND HEALTH PRACTICES

Family and Health

Family health influences family functioning. When the family satisfactorily meets its goals through adequate functioning, its members tend to feel positivity about themselves and toward their family. Conversely, when they do not meet goals, families view themselves as insufficient or ineffective. Constant stress resulting from inadequate functioning can adversely affect an individual family member's health (Voydanoff and Donnelly, 1999). Constant stress may disrupt cardiovascular function, blood pressure, and circulating neuroendocrine substances and these disruptions may cause poor health.

Further, family dynamics significantly influence health in both positive and negative ways. Having a close-knit and supportive family provides physical, social and emotional support, economic well-being, and increased overall health. However, the opposite is also true; when family life is characterized by stress and conflict, the health of family members tend to have negative effect.

Healthy family and healthy marriages have significant influence on health. Both social and genetic factors can be attributed to aggregation of disease in families. They are as follows:

- **Physical influence:** All the physical needs are fulfilled by family. Food, shelter, clothes are primary need for which an individual is dependent upon family. Good nutrition is important throughout all stages of life and is the single most important factor for good health and preventing many diseases. The family cultivates the habit of eating nutritive foods.
 - Food choices are largely determined by the cultural milieu of which one is a part. Lack of certain foods in some cultures is responsible for vitamin deficiencies in population. Providing good nutrition is a key to good physical and mental growth.
 - Behavior traits are acquired from families which promote good health. The family is responsible for inculcating habits related to hygiene, exercise, and healthy lifestyle. These depend on the effective socialization process in the family. Habits are developed as early as the first year of life. The routine related to eating, sleeping and exercising developed in the early years and inculcated discipline in a person and healthy habits stay on in adult life. Family members can exercise some measures of social control by discouraging behavior such as smoking, alcoholism, etc.
 - Childhood is the most crucial as it lays the foundation for future health status. Good nutrition, proper immunization and loving relationships in childhood go a long way in developing a healthy personality. Child rearing, which means taking care of the dependent young to survive and build up his or her maximum potentials. Neglected children are prone to development of recurrent illness.
 - Marital and family relationships have powerful impact on health outcomes. A family's social support positively impacts health and decreases the likelihood of the onset of chronic diseases, disabilities, mental illness and death. Marriage is associated with physical health, psychological well-being, and low mortality. Studies have shown that marriage protects well-being by providing companionship and emotional support. Mortality rates are twice as high among the unmarried as compared with married couple.
 - Gender inequality in the families is another factor that affects health in another way. In families where women do not have access to health care or have to seek permissions of husband, father or mother-in-law to visit a health care institution has a negative impact on health. Thus family power dynamics and gender roles may have a negative impact on a women's health. In India, many women are unable to take decisions related to their bodies, or reproduction. Such example of gender inequality can be seen in patriarchal societies.
- **Biological influence:** Another important factor in the gene pool is inheritance from family. Many congenital deformities, mental retardation and certain diseases stem from genetic defects. People are prone to hereditary diseases. Hereditary conditions are related to certain diseases like hemophilia, sickle cell disease, respiratory, cardiac, some oncologic disorders, etc.
- **Mental and psychological influence:** A family is necessity for mental prosperity. Good familial relations and support serve as protective factors against mortality risks and improved overall health, the opposite is true for poor quality relationships. Lack of support, emotional or physical abuse or neglect can cause great harm to physical and mental health. Families characterized by conflict, anger, and aggression have particularly negative effects on children. Physical abuse and neglect of children affect their physiological and psychological health. Children who grow in the families where adults indulge in risky behaviors are especially likely to involve in smoking, alcoholism and drug abuse. This also affects the health of an individual in many ways.
Family is responsible not just for child rearing but also takes care of members in all stages of life. The care of pregnant women, sick, injured, disabled and the elderly is performed by the family. The family provides not only physical care but also psychological support.
- **Religious and Spiritual influence:** Family nourishes spirituality of family members. A child learns religious rituals from family. Family is the primary source of health beliefs and behaviors. The sociological



impact of family affects belief systems and the values and beliefs of the family determine whether or what kind of treatment will be decided in which people respond to illness and utilize the health care system at different times during the life cycle and cultural for if a member falls ill. Children learn from family how to perceive and handle stress. The attitude, positive or negative is also learnt from family. Many researches show that positive attitudes not only prevent illness but also lessens recovery time during illness.

- **Socio-economical influence:** Majority of economical needs are fulfilled by family. To begin with, the socio-economic status of a family is a very big determining factor in the health. Belonging to a higher class puts one at an advantage and ensures fulfilment of basic necessities of life while belonging to a poor class puts one at all the disadvantages related to health, namely; poor nutrition, poor hygiene, poor housing, a poor environment and lack of access to quality of health care when illness occurs. Health and income have an intimate connection. The biggest cause of ill health is poverty. The poor people suffer from greater mortality and morbidity; they fall sick more often, spend more years in poor health and die at younger age in case study 1.

Maladaptive behaviors within the family have a negative impact on the health of members and the overall ability of the family to nurture and meet its goals. Poor communication inhibits the family ability to identify problems, make decisions, and solve problems. Good health may not be highly valued by the client and by the family, and in fact detrimental practices may be accepted. In some cases, a family member may provide mixed message about health. For example, a parent may continue to smoke while telling children that smoking is bad for them. Family environment is crucial because health behavior reinforced in early life has a strong influence on later health practices. Although a family can be a source of stress, it can also be a protective resource and during stressful events protect family members from negative stress-related outcomes.

Case Study 1 Nursing Skills Important for Identifying and Managing Social Issues

The act of domestic violence toward women is a human rights violation as well as an illegal act under Indian law. According to the Crime in India Report 2018, published by the National Crime Research Bureau (NCRB), a crime is recorded against women in India every 1.7 minutes and a woman is subjected to domestic violence every 4.4 minutes.

Janki is a 32-year-old Indian female living in a slum area came to community health center looking very much anxious and fearful; reported community health nurse about domestic violence. While obtaining history, nurse came to know that this is not first time. Janki is used to this kind of behavior from her partner, but it is increasing that is why she decided to report the incident. On examination nurse observes signs of abuse.

Applied sociology: Domestic violence.

Nursing skills required: Effective listener, evidence-based knowledge impartation.

Explanation: The community health nurse has a unique opportunity to identify and provide support to women who are abused by their partners. Nurses work through all levels of prevention. Primary prevention seeks to reduce the overall likelihood that anyone will become a victim or perpetrator of domestic violence by creating conditions that make violence less likely to occur. Secondary prevention activities can include shelter, counseling, safety planning, and protective orders.

Creating unbreakable patient care policies and procedures. Fostering frequent visits and screening from volunteers and social workers. Reporting to physician, performing proper assessment, planning interventions and arranging referral services. Important role to complete accurate documentation. Side by side assists in installing quality monitoring systems as well as regularly training of the employee regarding prevention and management strategies and upgrading knowledge regarding laws and legislation. Helping the client toward vocational activities, this will essential her to adjust within society.

SUMMARY

Family: Family is the most distinct primary group in the society. The family, in its varying forms, is present in all human cultures. A family varies from culture to culture and even within the same culture. This chapter discussed the family and marriage and face-to-face relationship among the members of a family.

- **William Ogburn outlined six basic functions of the family:** reproduction, protection, socialization, regulation of sexual behavior, companionship, and the provision of social status.
- MacIver describes the functions of family as *Primary functions*; stable satisfaction of sex needs, procreation and rearing of children, provision of a home, socialization functions, functions of love and affection. *Secondary functions*; economic functions, educational functions, religious functions, recreational function, health functions.
- **Family as basic needs:** Family is a unique social institution and a basic need of every individual. Family is a basic need because: Family is our first introduction into this physical world. Family gives us our genetic heritage and ancestral ties. Family is our first school: it is where we learn who we are, where we fit in, and what we can contribute to the world. It offers moral and spiritual support. Family helps in building community spirit. Families are important because they give us unlimited love, laughter and a feeling of belonging.
- **Sociological perspective on family:** Functionalist: The family as a contributor to social stability, Conflict: The family as a perpetuator of inequality, Interactionist: Relationships among family members, Feminist: The family as a perpetuators of gender roles.
- **Forms of family:** Based on Birth (Family of Orientation and Family of Procreation), Based on Marriage (Monogamous Family, Polygynous Family and Polyandrous Family), Based on Residence (Family of Matrilocal Residence, Family of Patrilocal Residence and Family of Changing Residence), Based on Ancestry or Descent (Matrilineal Family and Patrilineal Family), Based on Authority Patterns (Patriarchy family and Matriarchy family and Egalitarian family), Based on the Nature of Relations (Conjugal Family and Consanguine Family), Based on state or structure (Nuclear Family, Joint Family and Extended family).
- **Family welfare services include:** Family planning information, counseling and services to women for healthy reproduction; Education about safe delivery and post-delivery of mother, and baby as well as the treatment of women before pregnancy; Health care of infants, immunization against preventable diseases; Prevention and treatment of sexually and reproductive tract infection.
- **NGOs carry out main functions such as:** Advocacy for maternal child health interventions; promotion of small healthy family; improving community participation and so on.
- **Marriage:** Marriage is an institution that binds man and woman to create family. It is a mode of societal norms to regulate the sexual instinct.
- According to Gillin and Gillin, "Marriage is a socially approved way of establishing a family of procreation."
- **Social characteristics of marriage:** Permanent social and legal contract of relationship; Intimate relationship between two people; Marriage an important social Institution; Familial descent.
- **Forms of marriage:** Monogamy: Monogamy is a form of marriage in which one man marries one woman. This is the most popular form of marriage. It is the most common form of marriage throughout the world. Polygamy: Polygamy is a form of marriage where one man marries more than one woman at a given time. In India, various religious and tribal communities follow this form of marriage.
- **Functions of marriage:** Marriage provides provision of sexual life in boundary of societal norms; Procreation; Building of family and home; Protection and upbringing; Marriages construct financial capacity; Companionship; Marriage inculcates sense of responsibility; Inheritance and Right to property.
- **Rules of mate choice:** Endogamy and Exogamy are the two main rules that condition the marital choice. They are considered as prohibitive rules because it restricts man and woman to select

their mates. It allows the mate selection only in the given framework.

- **Legislation on Indian marriage and family:** All marriages in India can be registered under the respective personal law Hindu Marriage Act, 1955, Muslim Marriage Act, 1954, or under the Special Marriage Act, 1954. It is the duty of the judiciary to ensure that the rights of both the husband and wife are protected. The Special Marriage Act, 1954 is an Act of the Parliament of India with provision for civil marriage for people of India and all Indian nationals in foreign countries, irrespective of religion or faith followed by either party.

■ **Influence of marriage and family on health and health practices:** Family health influences family functioning. When the family satisfactorily meets its goals through adequate functioning, its members tend to feel positive about themselves and their family. Conversely, when they do not meet goals, families view themselves as ineffective. Constant stress resulting from inadequate functioning can adversely affect an individual family member's health. Constant stress may disrupt cardiovascular function, blood pressure, and circulating neuroendocrine substances and these disruptions may cause poor health.

ASSESS YOURSELF

Short Answer Questions

1. Define family. Write about functions of family.
2. Briefly write about types of family.
3. Explain about the characteristics of family.
4. Explain family as a basic need of individual.
5. Explain about primary and secondary functions of family.
6. Define marriage. Write about functions of marriage.
7. Explain about importance of marriage.
8. Describe in brief family is universal institution.
9. Differentiate between nuclear and joint family.
10. Write about merits and demerits of nuclear and joint family.

Long Answer Questions

1. Define marriage. Explain marriage is a permanent institution.
2. Discuss family as a universal institution.
3. Write in brief about importance of law related to family and marriage.
4. Describe the role of family in health of an individual.
5. Write down in detail about functions of marriage.
6. Define family. Discuss the importance of joint family.
7. Classify of forms of marriage.
8. Discuss as influence of family and marriage on health and health practices in detail.

Multiple Choice Questions

1. **Family functioning involves:**
 - a. The process used by family to achieve its goals
 - b. The pattern of people who are considered to be the family members
 - c. The ongoing membership of the family and the pattern of relationships
 - d. The intra-familial system of support and structure extending beyond the walls of the household
2. **Family structure is:**
 - a. The process used by family to achieve its goals
 - b. The pattern of people who are considered to be the family members
 - c. The ongoing membership of the family and the pattern of relationships
 - d. The intra-familial system of support and structure extending beyond the walls of the household
3. **"Family is a more or less durable association of husband and wife with or without children or a man or women alone with children." This definition has been given by:**

a. MacIver	b. Nimkoff
c. Clare	d. Park
4. **Endogamy means:**
 - a. A person marries within the same caste
 - b. A person marries in different religion
 - c. A person marries outside the caste
 - d. None of the above

Unit IV Family and Marriage

5. When two sisters marry the same man known as:
 - a. Sororate marriage
 - b. Levirate marriage
 - c. Sororal marriage
 - d. Group marriage
6. Sociologists tend to define family in terms of:
 - a. How a given society sanctions the relationships of people who are connected through blood, marriage, or adoption
 - b. The connection of bloodlines or biological significance
 - c. The status roles that exist in a family structure
 - d. How closely members adhere to social norms
7. A woman being married to two men would be an example of:
 - a. Monogamy
 - b. Polygyny
 - c. Polyandry
 - d. Cohabitation

Answer Key

- | | | | | | | |
|------|------|-------|------|------|------|------|
| 1. a | 2. c | 3. b | 4. a | 5. c | 6. b | 7. c |
| 8. b | 9. d | 10. a | | | | |

FURTHER READINGS

1. Gowda Krishne, Sociology for nurses. 5th edition. Noida: CBS Publishers and distributors Pvt. Limited: 2009.
2. Kendra Cherry. An Overview of Social psychology. 5 July 2020; www.verywellmind.com
3. Richard T. Schaefer. Sociology a Brief introduction. 6th edition, Tata McGraw-Hill Publishing Company Limited; New Delhi: 2006.
4. Sociology Guide. A Student Guide to sociology. www.sociologyguide.com
5. What is Special Marriage Act, all you need to know; March 6, 2021.<https://www.indiatoday.in>

Congratulations!!

You have completed the CHAPTER thoroughly, now it's time to assess your knowledge and learn more through *My Phygital Book*

Scan the QR Code
to Download the App

Nursing Next Live
The Next Level of Nursing Education
CBS Phygital Books >
Essentials of Applied Sociology >
My Phygital Book



My Phygital Book
Listen, Learn & Practice



Reading is not enough, Now **Listen, Learn & Practice** Every Chapter

Golden Points	Solved Exercises	MCQs
Get One Liners of Chapter summary in the PODCAST form	Subjective and objective exercises given in book with their solutions to evaluate and assess the complete chapter knowledge	Chapter-wise extra MCQs in the form of Practice test to give in-depth concept clarity



Note

▷▷



Search on the Go

Search & Read Digitally



Mapping of the most important topics from the Book at one place with one click search

Get 50+ Important topics for Seamless Learning and Quick Understanding



Nursing Next Live
The Next Level of Nursing Education

CBS Phygital Books >

Essentials of Applied Sociology Search on the go



UNIT V

Social Stratification

The members of society have different amounts of wealth, prestige, or power. Some degree of social inequality is a characteristic feature of every society. When a system of social inequality is based on a hierarchy of groups, sociologists refer to this inequality as stratification: a structured ranking of entire group of people that perpetuates unequal economic rewards, supremacy and power in a society. This chapter explores about how social inequality is an inevitable or unavoidable part of our society. We will see how sociologists define social class and examine the consequences of stratification in terms of wealth, income, health and educational opportunities. Next we will take an outlook on origin of caste according to Indian context. Finally, we will deal with the question of social mobility, both upward and downward as well as study the influence of caste, class and race system on health and well-being.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

On completion of this unit, the students will be able to:

- Define social stratification.
- Explain meaning and origin of social stratification.
- Discuss characteristics and forms of stratification.
- Describe functions of social stratification.
- Talk about major perspectives on social stratification.
- Give explanation about Indian caste system, its origin and characteristics.
- Describe about impact of caste in society and features of caste in India today.
- Examine positive and negative impact of caste in society.
- Express view on Indian class system and its features.
- Define status and notify about determinants of ascribed and achieved status.
- Differentiate between caste and class.
- Discuss social mobility, its meaning and type of social mobility.
- Define race and clarify concept and criteria of racial classification.
- Examine influence of caste, class and race system on health.

UNIT OUTLINE

- » Introduction
- » Concept of Social Stratification
- » Meaning of Social Stratification
- » Origin of Stratification
- » Systems of Stratification
- » Definitions of Social Stratification
- » Major Theoretical Perspectives on Social Stratification
- » Characteristics of Social Stratification
- » Types or Forms of Social Stratification
- » Functions of Social Stratification
- » Factors of Social Stratification
- » The Indian Caste System
- » Features of Caste in India Today
- » The Indian Class System
- » Social Mobility
- » Race
- » Influence of Caste, Class and Race on Health and Health Practices

KEY TERMS

Achieved status: Class system not based on birth, as person matures, the status has to be achieved by own merits.

Ascribed social status: Ascribed social status is position that is naturally given and is acquired by birth without an effort or hard work.

Capitalism: Capitalism is an economic system in which the means of production are held largely in private sectors and the main incentive for economic activity is the accumulation of profits.

Caste: Caste is a hereditary endogamous social group in which a person's rank and its accompanying rights and obligations are ascribed on the basis of his birth into a particular social group.

Class: Max Weber used the term class to refer to a group of people who have a similar level of wealth and income.

Class system: A class system is a social ranking based primarily on economic position in which achieved characteristics can influence social mobility.

Estate system: The estate system, or feudalism, required peasants to work on land leased to them by nobles in exchange for military protection and other services.

Esteem: The word esteem refers to the reputation that a specific person has earned within an occupation or in a society.

Ethnicity: Ethnicity is defined as a sense of common ancestry based on cultural attachments, past linguistic heritage, religious affiliations, claimed kinship, or some physical traits. Racial identities means typically thought of as encompassing multiple ethnic peculiar identities.

Meritocracy: Meritocracy is an ideal and another system of stratification based on the belief that social stratification is the result of personal effort or merit that determines social standing.

Open system: Open system is a social system in which the position of each individual is influenced by his or her achieved status.

Power: Power is the authority or ability to exercise one's will over others.

Prestige: The term prestige refers to the respect and admiration that an occupation holds in a society.

Race: According to Biesanz, "a race is a large group distinguished by inherited physical characteristics."



Unit V Social Stratification

Racial group: Racial group means group of people or individuals who possess a common hereditary trait which separates them from the other groups.

Racism: The term ‘Racism’ means, “weakens rather than enhances arguments concerning race.”

Slavery: Slavery is a system of enforced servitude in which some people are owned by other people.

Social inequality: The term social inequality describes a condition in which members of a society have different amount of wealth, prestige, or power. Some degree of social inequality is a characteristic feature every society.

Social stratification: According to Raymond W. Murray, “Social Stratification is a horizontal division of society into higher and lower social units.”

Status group: According to Weber, the term status group refers to people who have the same prestige or lifestyle. An individual gains status through membership in a desirable group, such as engineering, medical profession.

Stratification: Stratification means the act of sorting data, people, and objects into distinct groups or layers.

Wealth: Wealth is an inclusive term encompassing a person’s material assets, including land, stocks, and other types of property.

INTRODUCTION

Universe is classified as living and non-living things in stratum like plants, birds and animals, and human beings. **Stratification** means the act of sorting data, people, and objects into distinct groups or layers. Ever since people first began to speculate about the nature of human society, their attention has been drawn to the differences between individuals and groups within a society. The term **social inequality** describes a condition in which members of a society have different amount of wealth, prestige, or power. Some degree of social inequality is a characteristic feature of every society. When human beings got civilized and formulated society, they created stratum like caste, race, and tribe, a level or class to which people are arranged according to their social status education or income. In all societies, people differ from each other on the basis of their age, gender, personal characteristics as well as according to social status. Human society is not homogeneous but it is heterogeneous in nature. Apart from the natural differences, human beings are also differentiated according to socially approved measures or criterion such as on the basis of status.

It is a social process in which the society is divided into various groups and subgroups, which will have their own characteristics, status and roles. Social stratification refers to a system by which a society ranks categories of people in a hierarchy manner. The relationship to one another is determined on the basis of stratification. It continuously undergoes changes. It is the division of society where they are linked with each other by the relationship of superiority as well as inferiority. Stratification is a crucial subject of sociological investigation because of its pervasive influence on human interactions and even institutions. It inevitably results in social inequality, because certain groups of people stand higher in social rankings, control scarce resources, exercise power, and receive special treatments. Worldwide stratification can be seen in the gap between rich and poor nations and the inequality that exists within countries.

CONCEPT OF SOCIAL STRATIFICATION

The term social stratification is not new, this term is as old as ancient society. **Social stratification** is a particular form of social inequality or discrimination. All societies arrange their members in terms of superiority, inferiority as well as equality. Social stratification is the allocation of individuals and groups



according to various social hierarchies of differing social class, power, status, or prestige. Weber introduced three independent factors that form his theory of stratification hierarchy, which are class, status, and power. The Indian Caste system provides an example of stratification system. The society in which divisions of social classes exist is known as a stratified society.

MEANING OF SOCIAL STRATIFICATION

Social stratification is a particular form of social inequality and discrimination. Stratification is a process of interaction or differentiation whereby some people come to rank higher than other members. When a system of social inequality is based on a hierarchy of groups, sociologists refer to it as stratification; a structured ranking of entire group of people that perpetuates unequal economic rewards, authority and power in a society. These unequal rewards are evident not only in the distribution of wealth and income, but even in the distressing mortality rates of impoverished or poor communities. Stratification involves the ways in which one generation passes on social inequalities to the next generation, producing groups of people arranged in rank order from lower to higher social groups.

In other words, when individuals and groups are ranked, according to some commonly accepted basis of evaluation in a hierarchy of status levels based upon the inequality of social positions, then social stratification occurs. Social stratification means division or separation of society into different strata or layers. It involves a hierarchy of social group and groups. Members of a particular layer have a common or unique identity. They have even similar lifestyle.

ORIGIN OF STRATIFICATION

Some degree of social inequality characterizes all cultures. Stratification is universal in all that societies maintain some form of social inequality among members of society. Depending on its values, a society may assign people to distinctive ranks based on their religious knowledge, skill in hunting, art, beauty, trading expertise, communication, technology or ability to provide health care. But why such inequality developed in human societies? And how much differentiation must be present among people, if any, is actually essential?

Functionalists and conflict sociologists offer contrasting explanations for the existence and necessity of social stratification. Regarding the origin of stratification many views have been given by different sociologists as discussed below:

- According to Davis, social stratification has come into continuation being due to the functional necessity of the social system. Davis and Moore disagree about the fact that stratification is universal and that social inequality is necessary so that people will be motivated to fill functionally important positions.
- Professor Sorokin attributed social stratification mainly to inherited difference due to environmental conditions.
- According to Karl Marx, social factors are responsible for the emergence of different social strata, i.e., social stratification. In terms of stratification, he argued under capitalism. Marx did not believe that stratification was inevitable, but he did see inequality, discrimination and domination as inherent in capitalism.
- Gumplowicz and other contended that the origin or beginning of social stratification is to be found in the conquest of one group by another group.
- According to Spengler, social stratification is founded upon scarcity which is created whenever society differentiates positive in terms of functions and powers.
- According to Lenski's point of view, there are some form of differentiation found in every culture among all societies, from the most primitive to the most advanced industrial societies of our time.

Sociologist Gerhard Lenski, in his socio-cultural evolution approach has described very well, that how economic systems change as their level of technology becomes more intricate and complex day by day, beginning with hunting and gathering as well as culminating eventually with industrial society. In primitive subsistence-based hunting-and-gathering societies, mainly people focus on survival in the societies but on the other hand, some degree of inequality and differentiation are evident, a stratification system is totally based on social class, which does not emerge because there is no wealth or possessions to be claimed. As the society gradually advances technologically, it becomes more and more capable of producing a considerable surplus of goods, commodities and supplies. The emergence or materialization of surplus resources greatly expands the possibilities for inequality in position, status, authority, esteem, prestige and power and allows a well-defined, rigid, unbending social class system to develop. As Lenski argued, the allocation of surplus goods and services are controlled by those with wealth, status, and power and reinforces the social inequality that accompanies stratification system.

SYSTEMS OF STRATIFICATION

Sociologists make a distinction between two forms of systems of stratification (Fig. 5.1).

1. **Closed systems:** Closed systems accommodate few degree or little change in social position. This system does not allow people to shift levels and do not permit social relationships between levels. For example, closed systems include estate, slavery, and caste systems.
2. **Open systems:** Open systems are based on achievement or accomplishment and allow for movement and interaction between layers and classes. How different systems operate, reflect, emphasize, and foster specific cultural values, shaping individual beliefs.

Meritocracy: Meritocracy is an ideal and another system of stratification based on the belief that social stratification is the result of personal effort or merit that determines social standing. A high level of effort gives the outcome of high social position, and vice versa. The concept of meritocracy is an ideal and may be perfect—because a society has never existed where social rank or order was based purely on merit or values. Because of the very complex or multifarious structure of the societies, some of the important social processes like socialization, and the realities of economic systems as well as social standing are influenced by numerous or multiple factors—not simply on merit alone. Legacy and inheritance as well as pressure to conform to the norms, rules regulations might disrupt the idea of a pure meritocracy. Some Sociologists have visualization and mental picture about aspects of meritocracies in modern societies when they studied and considered the role of intellectual academics and job performance or presentation as well as the systems in place for evaluating, assessing and rewarding the achievement in these areas.

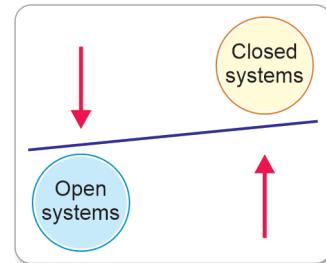


Figure 5.1: Systems of stratification

DEFINITIONS OF SOCIAL STRATIFICATION

Some important social scientists have found that inequality exists in almost all societies—even the simplest. Different definitions given by different sociologists are:

- According to **Lundberg**, a stratified society is one marked by inequality, by differences among people that are evaluated by them as being 'lower' and 'higher'.
- According to **Talcott Parsons**, "Stratification, in its valuational aspect, is the ranking of unit in social system in accordance with the standard of the common value system."



- **Gisbert** said, "It is a division of society into permanent and temporary groups and categories. The groups are interlinked with each other by the relationship of superiority and subordination."
- **Melvin M. Tumin** said, "Social stratification refers to arrangement of any social group or society into hierarchy of positions that are unequal with regard to power, property, social evaluation and psychic gratification."
- **Ogburn and Nimkoff**, "The process by which individuals and groups are ranked in more or less enduring hierarchy of status is known as stratification."
- **Raymond W. Murray**, "Social Stratification is a horizontal division of society into higher and lower social units."
- **Williams**, "Social Stratification refers to the ranking of individuals on a scale of superiority-inferiority-equality, according to some commonly accepted basis of valuation."

Thus, stratification is everywhere; all societies maintain some form or figure of social inequality. Social stratification refers to a society's categorization of its people into groups based on socioeconomic factors such as wealth, income, race, education, ethnicity, gender, occupation, social status or derived power may be social as well as political. This stratification is the relative social position of human being within a particular social group, class, category, geographic region as well as social unit.

MAJOR THEORETICAL PERSPECTIVES ON SOCIAL STRATIFICATION

The process through which individuals and groups are ranked in a more or less/higher or lower enduring hierarchy of status is known as stratification. For example, in geology, soil and rocks are divided into several levels. In the same way, in society there are different levels of status and positions (Table 5.1).

Sociologists have passionately debated stratification and social inequality and have reached varying conclusions. Karl Marx more strongly stressed the significance of class for society and for social change. Marx viewed class differentiation as the crucial dominant of social, economic, and political inequality. In contrast, Max Weber questioned Marx's emphasis on the overriding importance of the economic sector, and argued that stratification should be viewed as having many dimensions.

- **Karl Marx's view on class differentiation:** Marx was concerned with stratification in all types of human societies, beginning with primitive agriculture tribes and continuing into feudalism. Marx examined social relations with **capitalism** – an economic system in which the means of production are held largely in private hands and the main incentive for economic activity is the accumulation of profits. In Marx view, members of each class share a distinctive culture. Marx was most interested in the culture of the proletariat (working class), but he also examined the ideology of the bourgeoisie (Karl Marx's term for the

TABLE 5.1: Major theoretical perspectives on social stratification

	Functionalists	Conflict	Interactionist
Purpose of social stratification	Facilitates filling the social positions	Facilitates exploitation, major source of societal tension and conflict	Influences people's lifestyle
Attitudes toward social inequality	Necessary to some extent	Excessive and growing	
Analysis of wealthy	Talented and skilled, creating opportunities for others	Use the dominant ideology to further their own interests	Exhibit conspicuous consumption and conspicuous leisure

capitalist class, comprising the owners of the production), through which that class justifies its dominance over workers. Class struggle is most intense feature of capitalistic societies.

- **Max Weber's views of stratification:** Weber used the term **class** to refer to a group of people who have a similar level of wealth and income. According to Weber's definition, these wage earners constitute a class because they share the same economic position, providence and fate. Although Weber agreed with Marks on the importance of the economic dimension of stratification, he argued that the actions of individuals and groups could not be understood solely in economic terms. Weber used the term status group. Status group means group of people who have the same prestige or lifestyle. An individual gains status through membership in a desirable group, such as medical profession, engineer, etc. But status is not the same always as economic class standing. In our culture, a successful pickpocket may be in the same income class as a college professor. However, the thief is widely regarded as a member of a low-status group, whereas the professor holds high status in our society. For Weber, the third major component of stratification has a political dimension. **Power** is the authority or ability to exercise one's will over others. Some of the examples of influential groups such as corporate boards of directors, top level managers, government bodies, and interest groups. For instance, many of the Heads of Departments (HODs) or heads of major corporations also hold powerful positions in the government organizations or military services.
- **Interactionist view:** Interactionists, as well as economists, have long been interested or involved in the importance of social class in molding or shaping a person's lifestyle or lifestyle changes. The theorist Thorstein Veblen (1857–1929) noted that those at the top of the social hierarchy typically convert part of their income or wealth into conspicuous consumption, utilization and purchasing more expensive automobiles than they can reasonably use as well as building more luxurious houses with more rooms that they can possibly dwell in or occupy. Or they may also engage themselves in conspicuous leisure time activities, jetting to a remote destination and staying just long enough to have banquet, dinner or view a sunset over some famous historic locality or surroundings.

CHARACTERISTICS OF SOCIAL STRATIFICATION

Social stratification is diverse in its form. In some societies, there is a closed stratification, based on caste. India is an example of closed stratification and in some societies, there is open stratification based on class.

Four important ideologies lie beneath social stratification:

1. First, social stratification is socially defined as a property of a society rather than individuals in that particular society.
2. Second, social stratification repeats from generation to generation.
3. Third, social stratification is universal found in every society but variable in nature differs according to time and place.
4. Fourth, social stratification involves not just quantitative inequality but qualitative inequalities in terms of beliefs, ideas, values and attitudes about social status.

On the basis of the analysis of the different definitions given by eminent scholars, social stratification may have following some specific characteristics (Fig. 5.2):

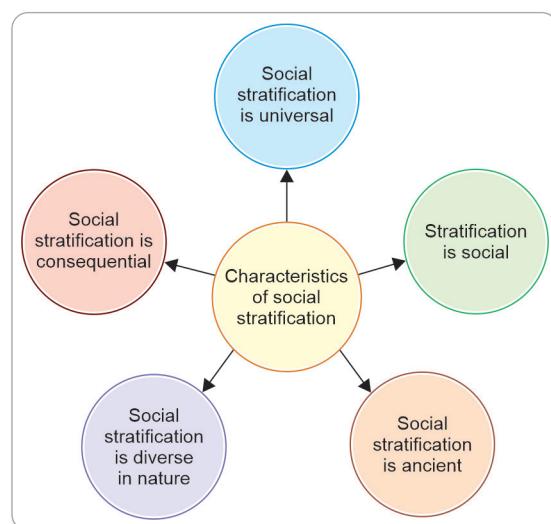


Figure 5.2: Characteristics of social stratification

- **Social stratification is universal:** There is no society in this world which is free from system of stratification. Modern or present stratification differs from stratification of primitive ancient societies. Stratification means worldwide phenomenon. According to Sorokin, “all permanently organized groups are stratified.”
- **Stratification is social:** It is definitely true that biological qualities do not determine one's superiority and inferiority. Factors like age, gender, intelligence, birth in a particular family as well as strength often contribute as the basis or foundation on which statuses are distinguished. But on the other hand, one's education, property, power, experience, character, personality, etc. are found to be more essentially important than their biological qualities. Hence, we can finally conclude that stratification is social by nature.
- **Social stratification is ancient:** The system of social stratification is very old. It was present even in the very small or tiny wandering bands. In almost all the ancient or primitive civilizations, there were some degrees of differences between the rich and poor, strong and weak, humble and powerful readily existed. During the period of Plato and Kautilya, even more emphasis was given to political, social as well as even economic inequalities.
- **Social stratification is diverse in nature:** The forms or outward structure of stratification are not uniform, standardized or consistent among all the societies. In today's modern world we can observe class, caste and estate which are the general forms of social stratification. In India, we can observe a special type of social stratification in the form of caste system. The ancient Aryas were divided into four varnas: first; the Brahmins, seconds; Kshatriyas, third; Vaishyas and fourth; Sudras. The ancient Greeks were divided or separated into two categories freemen and slaves and the ancient Romans were also divided or separated into two categories; the patricians and the plebeians. So every society in this world, past or present, big or small has a distinct structure or feature of stratification. Social stratification is characterized by different or diverse forms.
- **Social stratification is consequential:** Social stratification has two important or a significant consequence one is 'life chances' and the other one is 'lifestyle'. A class system not only affects the 'life-chances' of the individuals but this also affects their 'lifestyle'.

Thus, we can say social stratification fulfils the needs of society and is helpful in social development. While stratification is not limited to complex societies, all complex societies exhibit a quantity of features of stratification.

TYPES OR FORMS OF SOCIAL STRATIFICATION

Social stratification is based upon a variety of principles, ideologies, beliefs, thoughts and philosophy about social structure. It divides society into numerous sections.

Major Types of Stratification

Sociologists have distinguished four main types of system of social stratification namely, slavery, estates, caste and social class. Apart from four types, there may be importance of social status that also plays a role in system of stratification. Systems of stratification are different in their degree of vertical social mobility. Some societies are more open or flexible in this regards of stratification, while some societies are more closed or inflexible regarding stratification.

Requisites of Stratification

- Stratification is present and viewed throughout the community as well as society. It does not represent or symbolize any single individual of a society. On the other hand, we can say, stratification is a mass phenomenon rather than an individual insight.

Unit V Social Stratification

- Stratification is not a new phenomenon of society. It has been present from evolution of human being proceeded, even from that primitive time its existence has been observed.
- Although stratification is a global or worldwide phenomenon, it is the level of effects and happenings that differ place to place.
- Stratification is a combination of beliefs and norms which has occupied people's mind from generations. The inequality is not anybody's agenda but having beliefs different from others makes occurrences of stratification.

The major or chief systems of stratification are slavery, estate systems, caste systems, and class systems (Fig. 5.3).

- Slavery:** The most extreme or intense form of legalized social inequality for individuals or groups is **slavery**. Slavery is a system of enforced servitude in which some people are owned by other people. What distinguishes this oppressive system of stratification is that enslaved individuals are owned by the other people, who treat these human beings as property, just as if they were household pets or appliances. Slavery has varied in the way it has been practiced. Slavery had economic basis. In slavery, every slave had his master to whom he was subjected. The master's power over the slave was unlimited. Today, the Universal Declaration of Human Rights, which is binding to all members, prohibits slavery in all its forms. Up till now around the world, millions of people still live as slaves. In many developing countries, bonded laborers are imprisoned in virtual lifetime employment; in some countries, human beings are owned outright.
- Caste:** Castes are hereditary ranks that are usually religiously dictated, and tend to be fixed and immobile. **Caste** is a hereditary traditional endogamous social group in which a person's rank and its accompanying rights and obligations are ascribed on the basis of his birth into a particular group. The caste system is generally associated or linked with Hinduism in India. In India, there are four major caste called **varnas**. For example, Brahmins, Kshatriyas, Vaishyas and Shudras Caste. Caste membership is an ascribed status (at birth, children automatically assumes the same position as their parents). Each caste is quite sharply defined by its unique nature, and members are expected to marry within that caste. In recent decade, industrialization and urbanization have weakened India's rigid caste system.
- Estate:** A third type of stratification system, called estates, was associated with feudal societies during the Middle Ages. The **estate system**, or feudalism, required peasants to work land leased to them by nobles in exchange for military protection and other services. The basis for the system was the nobles' ownership of land, which was critical to their superior as well as privileged status only. As in system based on slavery and caste, inheritance of one's position largely defined the estate system. Estate system of medieval Europe provides another system of stratification which gave much emphasis to birth as well as to wealth, properties, goods, assets, and possessions. The noble inherited their titles and property, whereas the peasants were born into a subservient position within an agrarian society. As the estate system developed, stratification became more differentiated. Noble began to achieve varying degrees of authority. By the 12th century, priesthood had emerged in most of Europe, along with classes of merchants and artisans. For the first time in the history, there were groups of people whose wealth did not depend on land ownership or agriculture. This economic change gradually had profound social consequences, here as the estate system ended and a class of stratification came into existence.

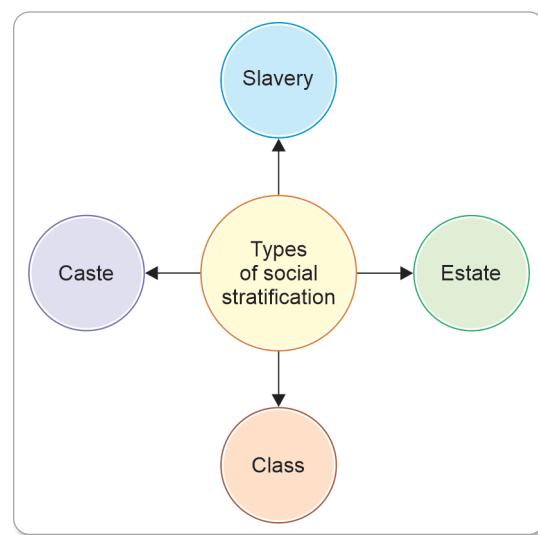


Figure 5.3: Types of social stratification



- **Class:** Class means a group of people who have similar level of wealth and income. A **class system** is a social ranking based primarily on economic position or wealth of a person; in which achieved characteristics can influence social mobility. It is the stratification on the basis of class or social ranking of the person in a society; is dominant in modern society. In this, a person's position depends to a very great extent upon achievement, establishments as well as his ability to take advantage of the inborn characteristics and wealth that he may possess. Class standing, though it is achieved, is heavily dependent on family and ascribed factors, such as race and ethnicity. Earning profits or income inequality is a basic characteristic of a class system. Social class is the independent or explanatory variable most frequently used by social scientists to shed light on social issues.

Sociologist Daniel Rossides (1997) used a five-class model to describe the class system of the United States, the upper class, the upper middle-class, the lower-middle class, the working class, and the lower class. Although the lines separating social classes in his model are not as sharp as the division between castes, members of the five classes differ significantly in ways other than just income level.

Karl Marx saw that differences in access to the means of production created social, economic, and political inequality and two distinct classes, owners and laborers. An economic stratum has existed in almost every society. Economic class according to Marx, is the actual representative of social stratification. Besides, economic political conception or the ruling class determines the structure of society and the level of civilization.

The German sociologist **Max Weber** identified three analytically distinct components of stratification: **class, status group and power.**

Class is a combination or mixture of objective as well as subjective factors. Objectively, a class shares a common relationship to the means of production or construction. Subjectively, the members will necessarily have some perception or sensitivity of their similarity and common interests, called class consciousness. **Class consciousness** is not simply an awareness or sensitivity of one's own class interest but is also a set of shared views regarding how society should be organized legally, culturally, socially and politically.

Weber defines a **status group** as a group of people within a society who can be differentiated by non-economic qualities such as honor, prestige, ethnicity, race, and religion.

In general, we understand by '**power**' the chance of a man or of a number of men to realize their own will in a communal action even against the resistance of others who are participating in the same action or achievements.

FUNCTIONS OF SOCIAL STRATIFICATION

Social stratification performs certain important functions:

- Stratification is helpful in fulfilling the needs of an individual and groups.
- Stratification encourages cooperation among people. It is also helpful to determine the social relations.
- Stratification provides security and comfort for effective functioning. Everyone knows his or her duties according to his status and ability.
- Stratification is helpful to determine the status and role of an individual in society.
- Stratification provides for the placement and motivation of individuals to affect the performance of their necessary social duties. It is helpful to maintain division of labor.
- Stratification is helpful to avoid conflict situations because of overburden or duplication of work. It is helpful to divide work on the basis of social positions and hierarchy.
- Stratification is helpful in the development of society due to awareness of individual roles and responsibilities.



Unit V Social Stratification

- Stratification is helpful to maintain social control, and also develop the sense of responsibility and accountability toward society.
- Stratification provides a system of rewards and encouragement to members for carrying out various positions. Social stratification motivates the individuals to obey the norms and laws of society.
- Functionalists argue that stratification is necessary to motivate people to fill up society's important or essential positions; conflict theorists vision stratification as a major source of societal tension as well as conflict. Interactionists stress upon the importance of social class in determining a person's standard of living or lifestyle.

Thus, the organization of societies into hierarchies of status levels and individual performance of functions accordingly; needed to operate a society properly. Stratification is located in the various sections of the society in a hierarchy level that regulate the relationship between the people within the society.

For example, in an organization there is management, chairperson, supervisors, subordinates, peon, attendants, etc. all work together for effective function of the firm. The status of every employee is different and there is a hierarchy of their status.

FACTORS OF SOCIAL STRATIFICATION

Individuals will differ from each other based on biological factors as well as socio-cultural factors and so on.

- Biological factors:**
 - Age:** The society is divided into infant, toddler, children, adolescents, youth, middle age, and old age group.
 - Gender:** In patriarchal society, men hold control, domination, superiority, authority and power. Whereas in matriarchal societies, the women are considered superior and better and able to make decisions in the family.
- Birth:** If a particular person is from a particular caste, he is considered as superior or inferior, e.g., in Indian caste system, Brahmins are considered as superior, Shudras are considered as inferior group. Thus, lower caste has low status in society and considered inferior while the upper caste has higher status and is considered superior.
- Based on race:** People belong to a particular race and possess racial characteristics, they are considered superior to others, e.g. in America, whites are considered superior than black people.
- Socio-cultural basis:**
 - Economy:** According to economy and property, person is differentiated as higher class, middle class, lower class
 - Religion:** In Indian society, stratification is found on the basis of religion also. Hindu, Muslim, Christian, Sikh, Buddhist, etc.
 - Caste:** On the basis of caste, forward, backward, schedule caste and schedule tribes, etc. Forward caste is considered more superior as compared with schedule caste or schedule tribes.
 - Occupation:** The judgment or rulings is done on the basis of occupation also. Professional, administrator, and class four groups.
 - Different functions:** Stratification is based on the basis of social functions. For example, teachers, doctors, and engineers, etc. The status of doctors or engineers is higher as compared with teachers.
- Equilibrium:** Every society should have proper organization, and they should possess social equilibrium. If the society is divided into various groups based on functions, this means individuals mutually are dependent to achieve common goal and maintain balance within the society.

THE INDIAN CASTE SYSTEM

The caste system in India is an old and ancient system of social stratification. It has historically separated communities into thousands of endogamous hereditary groups, i.e., caste.

Origin

The Indian caste system is ancient in nature as evidenced by Bhagavad Gita. It then turned into classical Indian style class system, however, the Rajput, Muslim, British rulers had impressionable impact on Indian caste system. India used to have a rigid caste system. The people in the lowest caste suffer extreme poverty and are as well as ignored by society.

Caste systems are closed stratification systems where people can do little or nothing to change the social standing of their birth. The caste system determines all aspects of an individual's life: occupations, marriage partners, and housing. Individual talents, interests, or potential do not provide opportunities to improve a person's social position. In the Hindu caste tradition, people expect to work in an occupation and to enter into a marriage based on their caste.

Definition of Caste

According to D.N. Mazumdar & T.N. Madan, "Caste is a closed group."

Means there was no social mobility, an individual born in a caste and social status was determined by his caste. An individual's interest and talent has no meaning.

Social Stratification and Caste

Under the caste system, status is hereditary. It is based on birth; it is purely an ascribed status. Once such positions are assigned, they cannot advance and improve their social status in any way. Hence, caste as a major type of social stratification does not facilitate vertical social mobility.

Features of Indian Caste System

There are some important features of Indian caste system as discussed below:

- **Hereditary:** Caste of any person is inherited; caste into which one is born. Even wealth, money, status cannot change caste.
- **Endogamy:** Caste members were forbidden to marry outside their caste group. One was not allowed to marry in the same "Gotra" or same "Pinda", as failure to do so bring on social ostracization. Caste system in India advocates endogenous approach. Whereas inter-caste marriages are less accepted.
- **Hierarchy or segmental division of society:** The caste system divided the society into hierarchical groups with Brahmins at the top and Shudras at the bottom. Brahmin is placed on the top in hierarchy then Kshatriya, then Vaishya and Shudra.
- **Fixed occupations:** Occupation of an individual depends upon the caste of a person he belongs to like son of goldsmith has to work as a goldsmith. There is restricted choice of occupation; each caste had an association with a traditional occupation.
- **Fixed food habits:** Food preference are associated with caste like Brahmin consumes satvik food, kshatriya consumes royal food and shudra consumes tamasi food. There is restrictions on food; each caste had strict norms regarding what one could eat and drink with whom.
- **Religion and customs:** Each caste tries to keep itself distinct from others in their way of life. The customs and rituals were preserved. There was restriction on social relations of members. There must be unique culture; every caste has specific custom, tradition, rituals which mark them as special.

- **Caste panchayat:** In Indian caste system, social matters related to particular caste are resolved by elders (panch) of particular caste like violating marriage law, antisocial act.
- **A specific surname:** Family name or surname is identification of caste like Verma, Sharma, Gupta, Khan, Robert.
- **Civil and religious disabilities:** As per ancient Hindu caste system, some lower caste people are restricted to religious places. There is separate provision of food, shelter even occupation for them. Each caste had a council or panchayat composed of respected members of the caste who settle disputes within the caste members and also ensures adherence to caste rules and regulations.
- **Group isolation:** Members of a particular caste form a group and these groups are isolated from different caste groups.

Merits and Demerits of Indian Caste System

Indian caste system has both merits as well as demerits as described below:

Merits of Indian Caste System

- **Fixed social environment:** Indian caste system provides a fixed social environment; and individuals belonging to a particular caste feel safe in the society. Same caste individual cooperate each other so there is we-feeling which brings harmony in society. For instance, people have more faith in availing services offered by their own caste people like school, business, hotel accommodation, etc.
- **Definite economic pursuit:** Caste system is the determinant factor for occupation. Children follow the traditional family occupation; they get training from their parents and become skilled workers, like craftsmanship, goldsmith, shopkeepers, politics, acting, etc.
- **Racial purity:** Indian caste system preserves the racial purity by non-acceptance of inter-caste marriage.
- **United integrity:** Caste system promotes united integrity. Always people believe in unity among caste members.
- **Society welfare:** Various castes provide provision for society welfare services like establishing educational institute, hospital in the name of some specific caste.
- **Cultural diffusion:** The process of cultural diffusion is very slow. Cultural practice of a caste transfers from one generation to other generation.
- **Separation of social from political life:** Caste system separates social life from political life. Each caste has own system of control over their members.

Demerits of Indian Caste System

- **Denies mobility of labor:** Caste system does not promote mobility of labor. A goldsmith has to work as a goldsmith for generation to generation. Personal likes and dislikes have less scope here.
- **Untouchability:** Most prominent feature of Hindu religion. Superior caste people will not touch the lower caste people.
- **Discourage national unity:** Caste system is an obstruction for a nation's progress. It acts as a hindrance in national unity sometimes.
- **Discourage social progress:** Indian caste system is based on karma so a particular caste person feels because of karma he is performing a specific job and feel less motivated to work and as a result society could not progress.
- **Autocratic:** Indian caste system is autocratic because it does not allow equal rights to everyone.
- **Religious conversion:** Indian caste system has superior caste-lower caste provision and sometimes lower caste people are humiliated by higher caste people so most of the lower class people get converted to other non-Hindu religion.

Positive and Negative Impact of Caste in Society

Positive Impact of Caste in Society

- **Determination of social status:** Caste accords the individual a fixed or ascribed status in a society. For example, Brahmin occupies a high social status in a society because of birth in this family.
- **Cooperation:** Members of each caste develop a sense of unity among their own caste members and there may be cooperative spirit among them.
- **Guiding customs and traditions:** Each caste follows certain informal means of social control over their members. In this way, each caste controls the behavior of its members.
- **Cultural transformation:** In each case, the members of the particular caste follow certain rules and regulations, and find the ways for cultural transformation to their next succeeding generation. The members make every effort to strengthen the caste and enhance unity among their members.
- **Every caste has its own panchayat:** During the early days in village panchayat system was very strong; the panch (five chosen elder members; who enjoy much social privilege and respect) performing number of functions. Panchayat is used to make the members, comply with caste rules and regulations and settling caste disputes and giving the final judgment or decision on the issue referred to it.

Negative Impact of Caste in Society

- **Education:** Due to some rigidity in the particular caste; the members of the caste miss opportunities of higher education. In India, there is system of reservation, sometimes this also acts as a hindrance in social progress. For example, in some caste girls are not allowed to go outside from their village for higher education. Unfortunately, the education of the particular girl is clogged.
- **Endogamy in nature:** Caste is a closed system of stratification and does not allow its members to marry outside the caste. Sometimes, the rigid rule of the caste acts as an obstacle in life of young generation.
- **Occupation:** Every caste regards some fixed occupation. Because of ascribed status or birth in that particular caste, people are fixed to some particular occupation. They lack in outside opportunities and skills.
- **Oppose democracy:** Democracy depends on the principle of equality, liberty and autonomy. Sometimes, the caste system leads to conflicts and tension due to inequality, differences and disproportion.
- **Caste-based violence:** In India, sometimes caste based violence may occur due to inequality, differences and disproportion. This creates tension in society as well as affects the peace and economy of the entire country.

FEATURES OF CASTE IN INDIA TODAY

Indian caste system has been going through tremendous changes. Some of the examples of changes in caste system in India are as follows:

- Diffusion of hierarchy of caste; equal chances for progress has offered to everyone so higher caste and lower caste demarcation has dissolved, now position in society is decided by capabilities instead of caste.
- Social interactions and social relationships have been establishing in the society without seeking the caste background.
- Caste is not very much associated with the hierarchy of occupation.
- Restrictions on food habit have been relaxed.
- Exogamy (inter-caste or inter-religious marriage) caste panchayat system not very much effective.
- Touchable and untouchables not felt among literate people.
- The influence of caste system is decreasing.

Diffusion of hierarchy of social trends; inter-caste marriage, inter-caste social life, on caste based occupation, diverse social life, social relationship, powerless gram panchayat are some of the signals or indication of diffusion of social trends. Self-empowerment of caste; by virtue of education and awareness, all caste people are becoming powerful.

THE INDIAN CLASS SYSTEM

A class system is based on social factors as well as individual success or achievement. A class consists of a set or group of such people who share similarity on status based on factors like wealth, income, education, family background, as well as esteemed occupation. Class systems are open in nature. People may move to a different level in a vertical movement through the educational qualification or employment status than their parents. Though family and other societal models help, guide and play a role, toward a career, personal choices and opportunity of a person.

In class system sometimes, people can also socialize with and feel free to marry members of other classes. People have the option to form an exogamous marriage, a union of spouses from different social categories.

Class means group of people who have a similar level of wealth and income. **Wealth** is an inclusive term encompassing a person's material assets, including land, stocks, and other types of property. In Indian class system, social ranking is also based on economic position. The "Prestige" ranking of occupations and "Esteem" within the occupation have proved to be a useful indicator of a person's class position. The term **prestige** refers to the respect and admiration that an occupation holds in a society. Prestige is independent of the particular individual who occupies a job, a characteristics that distinguishes it from esteem. **Esteem** refers to the reputation that a specific person has earned within an occupation.

Definitions of Class

The definitions of class according to various scholars:

- According to **Ogburn and Nimkoff**, "A social class is one or two or more broad groups of individuals who are ranked by the members of the community in socially superior and inferior positions."
- According to **Marx**, "A social class based on people's relationship to the means of production (tools, factories, land, capital used to produce wealth)."
- According to **Lapiere**, "A social class is a culturally defined group that is accorded particular position or status within the population as a whole."
- According to **Ginsberg**, "A class is a group of individuals who have common descent, similarity of occupation, wealth and education has come to a similar mode of life, a similar stock of those ideas, feelings and attitudes and form of behavior and who on any or all of these grounds, meet one another on equal terms as belonging to one group."

Social Stratification and Class

Class is an "open system". **Open system** is a social system in which the position of each individual is influenced by his or her achieved status in the society. Class system is flexible, position of the individual is not on the basis of ascribed status. Under this system vertical mobility is absolutely free. Movement from one status to another has absolutely no barrier. Status is based on achievement of the individual. It is determined by the talents, skills, wealth, money, intelligence, power, education, income, etc. of a person. There is no inheritance or heritage of parental status.



Features of Class System

A class system has several features or characteristics as described below:

- **Open system:** Membership in class is not inherited. A person can be born in a lower class but can move to a higher class by own efforts and hard works. Class system is open for everyone, a poor man can become rich and vice versa.
- **Social mobility:** Since an individual's class is achieved, social mobility is much more common in the class system. Vertical social mobility is the characteristic feature of class.
- **Economic differentiation:** Class depends on economic differences between groupings of individuals. Income or wealth is a measurement tool; on the basis of that economic differentiation can be made.
- **Impersonal interrelations:** Class system operates mainly through connections of an impersonal nature. Connections or relations are only for achievement of goals. The relationships lack in emotions and attachments.
- **Achieved status:** Class system is not based on birth, as person matures, the status has to be achieved by own merits. It is acquired status; social class can be achieved as it is not according to birth right. A poor man can become rich and prosperous. Class system thus provides opportunity to improve one's status. There are three broad classes, the upper class, the middle class and lower class. The classification for socioeconomic class is based on three variables, namely education, occupation and income.
- **Secular:** Class system does not operate on religion bound theory; it depends only on materialistic life. All caste people can be rich or poor.
- **Universal:** Class system is universal in nature. Class system exists worldwide. It is found in all modern complex societies. For example, in India, upper class, middle class, lower class; in America, upper class, upper middle class, middle class, working class, working poor, and underclass.
- **Flexible:** Class system is flexible; it is not rigid and fix, depends only in person's achievements or establishments. Person easily moves toward low social status to high social status and depends on the personal efforts and hard work.

Division of Class System

- **The lower class;** the lower class people are less educated, and they are mostly daily wages worker. They are minimally paid for example, maid, waitress.
- **The middle class;** they are people who are in between of higher and lower class. These people are less educated with lower incomes. They perform skilled work.
- **The upper class;** very rich people who have endless wealth. They create jobs for others. For example. CEO, business entrepreneur, etc.

Differences between Caste and Class (Table 5.2)

TABLE 5.2: Differences between caste and class

Characteristics	Caste	Class
Nature	Unique caste system; is unique in nature it depends upon religions and society. For example, Hindu, Muslim, Sikhs caste are uniqueness of India.	Universal class system; is universal in nature upper, middle and lower class division exists all over the world.
Source of status	Inheriting caste is a birth right.	Acquired: It is acquired by individual by hard work, money, wealth and intelligence.

Contd...

Characteristics	Caste	Class
System	Caste is a closed system. It confines social mobility.	Open system: Class is not confined; it is a bit flexible, anybody can move from higher class to lower class and vice versa.
Marriage pattern	Endogamy: Caste system promotes endogamy. Marriage within the caste is well accepted.	Exogamy: Class system is exogamous; upper class people can marry to lower class people and vice versa.
Social relations	Deep and strong	Shallow and objective oriented.

SOCIAL MOBILITY

In society if any group that improves its standard will also improve its social status. But the rate of social mobility is not uniform or standardized in society itself or in all the countries. It differs from society to society or even from time to time or place to place. In India, the rate of mobility is naturally low because of agriculture being the predominant occupation and the continuity of caste system is still be present as compared to the other countries of the world.

Social mobility means transition of a person or social object from one social position to another. For example, a clerk becomes an officer.

Meaning of Social Mobility

The word social mobility refers to the movement or progress within the society or social structure, from one social position to another. It means a change or modification in social status. All societies provide some opportunity or have prospects for social mobility. But the societies differ from each other to extent in which individuals can move from one class or status level to another class or status level.

We can say that the greater the amounts of social mobility, the more open the class structure. The concept or thought of social mobility has fundamental importance in ascertaining the relative “openness” about the social structure. The nature, forms, character, type, direction movement, and magnitude of social mobility depend on the nature and types of social stratification. Sociologists study as well as examine social mobility in order to find out the relative ‘openness’ of a social structure.

Types of Social Mobility

In social stratification, the movement occurs in mainly three directions:

1. From lower to higher
2. From higher to lower
3. Between two positions at the same level.

Social mobility is of two types:

1. Vertical mobility
2. Horizontal mobility

Vertical Mobility

Vertical mobility refers to the movement of people from one stratum to another or from one standing to another. It brings changes in class, occupation as well as in authority and power. Vertical mobility involves movement from lower position to higher or higher position to lower. There are two types or division of vertical mobility. One is upward mobility and other is downward mobility.

1. **Upward social mobility:** The movement of an individual or group from lower class to upper class. When an individual moves from lower social status to higher social status, it is called upward social mobility. For example, when a sportsman win an Olympic medal, his social status changes overnight.
2. **Downward social mobility:** The movement of an individual or group from higher class to lower class, for instance, a famous airline businessman in India met huge business loss and fall from being rich and powerful business tycoon to an ordinary person. So downward social mobility takes place when people move down from one social position to another social position and change the status.
 - For example, if the son of a peon joins a bank as an officer, it is said to be upward social mobility but if he loses the job due to any other reason or inefficiency, he is downwardly mobile from his previous job.

One way to examine vertical mobility is to contrast intergenerational mobility and intragenerational mobility.

 - **Intergenerational mobility** involves changes in the social position of children relative to their parents. Thus, a plumber whose father was a physician provides an example of intergenerational mobility. A film star whose parents were both factory workers illustrate or point out upward intergenerational mobility. When expected changes in status occur from one generation to another generation, it is called intergenerational mobility. For example, if the son changes his status either by taking upon occupation of higher or lower rank with that of his father, the intergenerational mobility takes place.
 - **Intragenerational mobility** involves expected changes in social position within a person's adult life after so long. A woman who enters the paid labor force as a teacher's aide and eventually becomes superintendent of school district experiences upward intragenerational mobility. A man who becomes a taxicab driver after his accounting firm suddenly goes bankrupt represents as downward Intragenerational mobility. When changes in status occur within one same generation, it is called intragenerational mobility. For example, the rise and fall or ups and down in the occupational structure or economy of a family which leads to change in its social status within one generation is called intragenerational mobility.

Horizontal Mobility

Horizontal mobility refers to the movement of people from one social group to another social group to be found on the same level. It means that the ranks or positions of these two groups are not different. Horizontal mobility indicates change in position without the change in social status. For example, if a teacher leaves one school and joins another school with same post or a bank officer leaves one branch to work in another branch or change of residence all these are the examples of horizontal mobility.

RACE

In the context of sociology; race and ethnicity, the concept of racism has come to encompass a wide range of social phenomena, such as systemic inequality, institutional discrimination, internalized stereotypes, and racial attitudes.

Some researchers have argued that the wide and also inconsistent, conflicting, and contradictory use of “**racism**” has meant that the term now “weakens rather than enhances arguments concerning race” (Wilson 1987:12), especially when its purpose is not descriptive but rather to “signal the speaker’s unambiguous condemnation of the belief or practice in question.”

The term racial group refers to those minorities (and the corresponding dominant groups) set apart from others by obvious peculiar physical differences. **Racial group** means group of people or individual who possess a common hereditary trait which separates them from the other groups.

Concept of Race

Race is, "a human group defined by itself or others as distinct by virtue of perceived common physical characteristics that are held to be inherent." Determining which characteristics constitute the race; are choice of human beings.

Ethnicity is defined as a sense of common ancestry based on cultural attachments, past linguistic heritage, religious affiliations, claimed kinship, or some physical traits. Racial identities are typically thought of as encompassing multiple ethnic identities.

Contemporary race and ethnic relations are found around the globe. Race is socially defined category, based on real or perceived biological differences between groups of people. Ethnicity is a socially defined category based on common language, religion, nationality, history, as well as another cultural factor.

Biological Significance of Race

Viewed from a biological perspective, the term race would refer to a genetically isolated group with distinctive gene frequencies. But it is impossible to scientifically define or identify such a group. Contrary to popular belief, there is no 'pure races'. Nor are there physical traits – whether skin color or baldness – that can be used to describe one group to the exclusion of all others.

Definitions

The meaning and importance of race not only differ from place to place but also change over time.

- Race is defined as, "A category of humankind that shares certain distinctive physical traits."
- According to **Biesanz**, "a race is a large group distinguished by inherited physical characteristics." They are inherited along with such physical characteristics as eyes, colors of the skin, hair color, etc.

Thus, we can say race is a socially constructed category of people who share biologically transmitted traits that members of a society consider important. We think of race in biological terms but it is socially constructed concept.

Criteria of Racial Classification

The theory of race has historically signified the division of humanity into a small number of groups based upon five criteria (Fig. 5.4):

Genealogical investigation identifying each race's geographic beginning or origin, typically in Africa, Europe, Asia, or North and South America. This inherited racial biological foundation is evident itself primarily in physical phenotypes, such as color of the skin, shape of the eyes, hair texture, and structure of bones, and perhaps also some behavioral phenotypes, such as mental power, intelligence or delinquency

Examples of Racial Classification

- **Negroes:** Black skin, projecting jaw, curly hair
- **Mongoloid:** Called yellow race with lighter skin, straight black hair
- **Caucasians:** Overlap with other races

Sociologists make a distinction between race and ethnicity. Race is defined by social significance that groups attach to external physical characteristics. Ethnicity rooted in cultural and national traditions define population. Sociologists give emphasis to the significance of culture and its consequences for both.

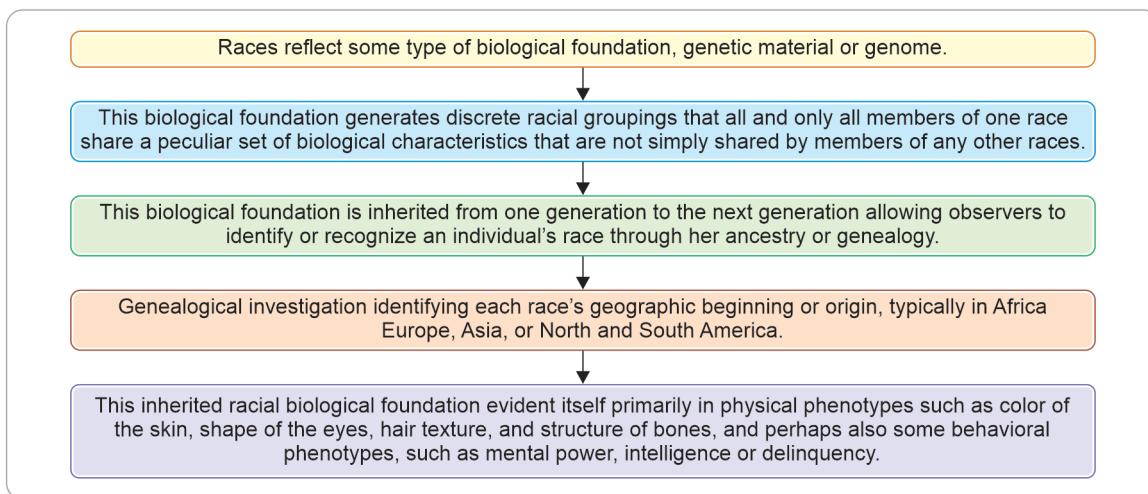


Figure 5.4: Criteria of racial classification

Race and ethnicity influence all aspects of our lives including health, education, work, family and interaction with the criminal justice system.

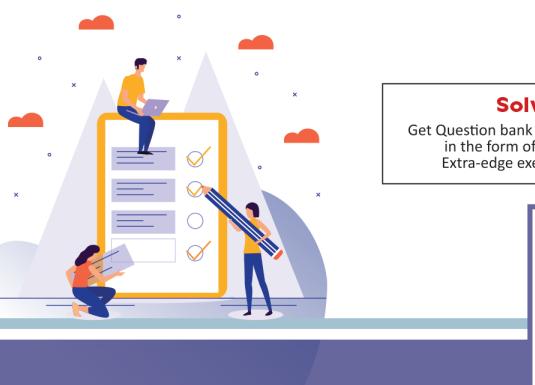
INFLUENCE OF CASTE, CLASS AND RACE ON HEALTH AND HEALTH PRACTICES

There may be some evidence that support the fact about influence of class, caste and race on health and health practices. Class, caste and race are integral part of human being as well as social structure. Health has a strong link with class, caste and races because class, caste and race are influenced by genetics and environment. People with different caste, class or even race adopt themselves according to their surroundings to live in a particular environment. Certain food habits, cultural practices and religious beliefs sometimes lead to certain endemic diseases which affect their health. Following are some of the influences of caste, class and race on health as discussed below.

- **Influence of caste on health and health practices:** Growth stunting, retardation, muscle wasting, underweight and iron deficiency anemia in children and anemia in teenage girls, adults are higher among the lower castes. Similarly, neonatal, postnatal, infant, child and under-five statistics clearly show a higher mortality among the backward caste people. Problems in accessing health care services were higher among the lower caste people.
 - **Food habits:** In some caste, there may be restriction on certain foods leading to particular nutritional deficiencies among members. Some people eat only same type of food in their daily living that also leads to nutritional deficiencies. For example, Pellagra is called maize eater disease.
 - **Inferiority:** Due to social stratification, till now some lower caste people may feel inferior to others. Sometimes this will lead to mental tension among members and a cause of certain mental illness or disorders.
 - **Superstitious beliefs:** According to a research, a woman should take sunlight at least 20 minutes daily to prevent bone disorders like osteoporosis. In some caste women are not allowed to work outside home, there is strict parda system. This will affect the health of women; sometimes women will get calcium and vitamin D₃ deficiencies.

Unit V Social Stratification

- **Consanguineous marriage:** In some caste, there may be tradition of consanguineous marriage; this may sometimes lead to birth defects in their children.
- **Religious practices:** In some caste, due to religious practices people make cuts in their body or injure themselves. This type of practices lead to serious consequences sometimes; the wound get infected and sometimes person will also get tetanus infection.
- **Influence of Class on health and health practices:** A person's social class has a significant impact on their physical health, their ability to receive adequate medical care as well as food and nutrition, and even their life expectancy.
 - **Education:** Poor class, lower caste and some race specific people's educational status differ from high class and high status people. In India, some specific caste and tribes are considered as less educated so they are usually motivated for higher education by different governmental and nongovernmental schemes. Highly educated people are sensitive for good health.
 - **Occupation:** Poor class, lower caste and some race specific people perform or adopt some specific occupation. In ancient times, higher caste and higher class people hold managerial position whereas lower caste and poor people work at non managerial post. Poor workers who work in life threatening environment may suffer with various occupations related health hazards.
 - **Nutrition:** Malnourishment is common in poor people whereas mental disorders are common in high class people.
 - **Residence:** There are differences in living standards of lower class group people and high class group people. Low income group people live in overcrowded and compromised areas that leads to lung diseases like tuberculosis.
 - **Economic status and way of living:** There are differences in economic status and living standards of poor people and high class people. This difference leads to particular diseases among individuals; malnourishment, iron, deficiency, anemia and other deficiency diseases which are common in lower income group people. Whereas stress and mental disorders, hypertension and diabetes mellitus are common in high income group people.
- **Influence of race on health and health practices:** Epidemiological data indicate that racial groups are unequally affected by health issues and diseases, in terms of morbidity and mortality. Some individuals, in certain racial groups, receive less health care, have less access to health related services or resources, and live shorter lives in general.
 - **Genetics:** Some endemic diseases are common in some racial groups. They are hereditary or genetic in origin.
 - **Skin:** Some peculiar skin characteristics lead to certain types of skin cancers. For example, white African Americans have highest rates of skin cancers.
 - **Physical conditions or geographical conditions:** People are distinguished by inherited physical characteristics or geographical conditions. For example, particular people living in a hilly area continuously suffer from chronic hypoxia further leading to certain health disorders.



My Exam Centre
Read & Learn

Solved Papers Get Question bank covering the complete subject in the form of Subjective exercises and Extra-edge exercises with their solution	Unsolved Papers Explore the pool of Unsolved Previous Year Exam Papers of top Universities
--	--

Scan the QR Code to Download the App



Nursing NextLive
The Next Level of Nursing Education
CBS Phygital Books >
Essentials of Applied Sociology > My Exam Centre

189



Nursing skills important for identifying and managing social issues are enlisted in case study 1:

Case Study 1 Nursing Skills Important for Identifying and Managing Social Issues

Education is not equally or evenly attained by Indian women as compared with men. Although literacy rates are increasing, the female literacy rate lags behind the male literacy rate. Literacy rate census of India 2001 and 2011 Comparison, Literacy for female, stands at 65.46%, compared to 82.14% for males.

Savitri is a 26-year-old Indian female having four girl children, she is pregnant for fifth time in wish for a male child; came to community health center with her mother-in-law for regular checkup, two girls accompanying with them; both looking malnourished. When obtaining history, nurse came to know that they are not interested in educating her daughters because in their community girls only doing household work and there is also a tradition of early marriage.

Applied sociology: Gender inequality.

Nursing skills required: Effective listener, evidence-based knowledge impartation.

Explanation: Empowering girls requires focused investment and collaboration. Nurses always function within the managed care delivery system and have been challenged to provide cost-effective treatment within the least restrictive environment. At this moment, nurse is responsible for providing excellent antenatal care, arranging educational campaign or role play regarding gender equality and encouraging and motivating women about family planning services. And side by side providing girls with the services and safety, education and skills they need in daily life. This can reduce the risks they face and enable them to fully develop and contribute to India's growth. Providing education about consequences of early girl marriage like increased risk of anemia, premature labor, congenital anomalies and low birth weight babies.

SUMMARY

Social stratification is a particular form of social inequality. All societies arrange their members in terms of superiority, inferiority and equality. Stratification is a process of interaction or differentiation whereby some people come to rank higher than others. When a system of social inequality is based on a hierarchy of groups, sociologists refer to it as stratification; a structured ranking of entire group of people that perpetuate unequal economic rewards and power in a society.

- **Origin of stratification:** According to Davis, social stratification has come into being due to the functional necessity of the social system. Davis and Moore argue that stratification is universal and that social inequality is necessary so that people will be motivated to fill functionally important positions.
- According to **Raymond W. Murray**, "Social Stratification is a horizontal division of society into higher and lower social units."
- **Major perspectives on social stratification:** Karl Marx's view on class differentiation: Marx was concerned with stratification in all types of human societies, beginning with primitive agriculture tribes and continuing into feudalism. Marx examines social relations with capitalism.
- **Characteristics of social stratification:** Social stratification is universal; stratification is social; Social stratification is Ancient; Social stratification is diverse in Nature; and Social stratification is Consequential.
- **Social stratification performs certain important functions:** Stratification provides for the placement and motivation of individuals to affect the performance of their necessary social duties. It provides a system of rewards and encouragement to members for carrying out various positions.

Unit V Social Stratification

- **Factors of social stratification:** Biological factors like age, stratification by birth (on the basis of Indian caste system), stratification based on race, stratification on socio-cultural basis like economy, religion, caste, occupation and different functions like teachers, doctors, engineers, etc. as well as social equilibrium.
- **The major types or system of social stratification include:** Slavery; Caste; Estate and Class.
- **The Indian caste system:** The caste system in India is a system of social stratification which historically separated communities into thousands of endogamous hereditary groups, i.e., caste. According to D.N. Mazumdar & T.N. Madan, "Caste is a closed group."
- **Features of Indian caste system:** Hereditary; endogamy; hierarchy or segmental division of society; fixed occupations; fixed food habits; religion and customs; caste panchayat; a specific surname; civil and religious disabilities; group isolation, etc.
- **Indian class system:** Class means group of people who have a similar level of wealth and income. According to Ogburn and Nimkoff, "a social class is one or two or more broad groups of individuals who are ranked by the members of the community in socially superior and inferior positions."
- **Features of class system:** Open system; social mobility; economic differentiation; impersonal relations; achieved status; secular; universal and flexible.
- **Meaning of social mobility:** Social mobility refers to the movement within the social structure, from one social position to another. It means a change in social status.
- **Types of social mobility:** In social stratification, the movement occurs in three directions, from lower to higher; from higher to lower; between two positions at the same level. Other types are vertical mobility and horizontal mobility.
- **Race:** According to Biesanz, "a race is a large group distinguished by inherited physical characteristics."
- **Influence of caste, class and race on health:** Health has a strong link with class, caste and races because class, caste and race are influenced by genetics and environment. People with different caste, class or even race adopt themselves according to their surroundings to live in a particular environment. Certain food habits, cultural practices and religious beliefs sometimes lead to certain endemic diseases which affect their health.

ASSESS YOURSELF

Short Answer Questions

1. Define social stratification.
2. Explain characteristics of stratification.
3. Differentiate between caste and class.
4. Explain about Indian class system and its features.
5. Explain functions of social stratification.

Long Answer Questions

1. Write about concept of social stratification and explain types of social stratification.
2. Define status and write down determinants of ascribed as well as achieved status.
3. Define social mobility and explain about its types.
4. Describe class system. Explain about it.
5. Discuss positive and negative impact of caste in society.

6. Discuss criteria of racial classification.
7. Describe influence of caste, class and race system on our health.

Multiple Choice Questions

1. **The social stratification means:**
 - a. Social equality
 - b. Social control
 - c. Social inequality
 - d. Social change
2. **Social mobility is the feature of:**
 - a. Caste system
 - b. Class system
 - c. Both caste and class system
 - d. None of the above
3. **Max Weber identified three analytically distinct components of stratification that are:**
 - a. Status group
 - b. Power
 - c. Class
 - d. Caste

4. Class struggle is more intense in a:
 - a. Capitalistic society
 - b. Historic society
 - c. Primitive society
 - d. Religious society
5. According to D.N. Mazumdar & T.N. Madan, caste is agroup.
 - a. Historic group
 - b. Open group
 - c. Closed group
 - d. Social group
6. If the son of a peon joins a bank as an officer, it is said to be:
 - a. Upward social mobility
 - b. Downward social mobility
 - c. Horizontal mobility
 - d. Group mobility

Answer Key

1. c 2. b 3. d 4. a 5. c 6. a

FURTHER READINGS

1. Gowda Krishne, Sociology for nurses. 5th edition. Noida: CBS Publishers and distributors Pvt. Limited: 2009.
2. Kendra Cherry. An Overview of Social psychology. 5 July 2020; www.verywellmind.com
3. Richard T. Schaefer. Sociology A Brief introduction. 6th edition, Tata McGraw-Hill Publishing Company Limited; New Delhi: 2006.
4. Sociology Guide. A Student Guide to sociology. www.sociologyguide.com
5. Shiao J. and Woody A. The meaning of Racism. Sociological Perspectives 2021, Vol. 64(4) 495–517. DOI: 10.1177/0731121420964239 journals.sagepub.com/home/spx



Assess Yourself Every Step Counts

It's time to do self-assessment. Are you ready for the competition!

Mini Test (Topic-wise)	Semester-wise Test (All semester subject)	Mega Grand Test (All subject)
6 Tests based on important topics of the respective subjects	2 Tests based on all the subjects of particular semester	2 Tests based on all the UG subjects (1 Test from Target High book)



Nursing Next Live

The Next Level of Nursing Education

CBS Phygital Books >
Essentials of Applied Sociology > Assess Yourself

UNIT VI

Social Organization and Disorganization

This unit considers the impact of social organizations and disorganization on social interactions. We behave differently in a large group as compared to small one. How do we make the organizations manageable? We will examine how and why formal organizations came into existence. We will see the importance of some voluntary organizations in maintaining social system. What factors are responsible for social disorganizations? We will observe the importance of social control in maintaining social peace and harmony. Finally, we will have a major outlook on the social problems, its origin and strategies how to get rid of all those problems; next to social welfare programs in India.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

On completion of this unit, the students will be able to:

- Define social organization, its elements and types.
- Give explanation about voluntary associations.
- Define social system.
- Describe types of social system as well as role and status as structural elements of social system.
- Discuss interrelationship of institutions.
- Define social control.
- Explain about meaning, aims and process of social control.
- Examine social norms, moral and values.
- Describe social disorganization, its definition, causes, control and planning.
- Develop an outlook on major social problems.
- Clarify about fundamental rights of individual women and children.
- Identify vulnerable group in meeting their health needs.
- Understand the role of nurse in reducing social problems as well as enhancing cooperation among individuals.
- Make themselves aware of social welfare programs throughout in India.

UNIT OUTLINE

- » Social Organization
- » Voluntary Associations
- » Social System
- » Status
- » Role
- » Role and Status as Structural Elements of Social System
- » Interrelationship of Institutions
- » Family as a Social Institutions
- » Education as Social Institutions
 - Recreational Institutions
 - Religious Institution
 - Economic Institutions
 - Political Institution
- » Social Control
- » Social Norms
- » Mores
- » Values
- » Social Disorganization
- » Major Social Problems
 - Poverty
 - Housing
 - Food Supplies
- Illiteracy
- Prostitution
- Dowry
- Child Labor
- Child Abuse
- Juvenile Delinquency
- Crime
- Substance Abuse
- Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome
- COVID-19
- Vulnerable Group
- Elderly
- Handicapped
- Minority and Other Marginal Group
- » Fundamental Rights of Individual
- » Role of Nurse in Reducing Social Problems and Enhance Coping
- » Social Welfare Programs in India
- » Welfare Schemes for Women in India
- » Welfare Schemes for Scheduled Castes/Tribes
- » Schemes for Aged

KEY TERMS

Abject poverty: Abject poverty is a condition in which a person has nothing to eat, and no place to live.

Acculturation: Acculturation refers to the assimilation by one group of the culture to another which modifies the existing culture and so changes group identity.

Achieved status: When a person gets a status due to his own efforts or capabilities, it is termed achieved status.

Art: It is the method sublimation and redirection of the instinct of an individual. Art is a combination of religion, morality, goodness, ideal and so many things.

Ascribed status: When status is received by virtue of birth, without any individual effort, it is termed ascribed status.

Association: An association is a group of social beings related to one another by the fact that they possess or have instituted in common an organization with a view to securing a specific end or specific goals.

Belief system: Deeply influenced man's behavior. It motivated man's belief in goodness.

Child laborer: According to the Constitution of India, child laborer may be defined as a person who is below the age of 14 years and is working for an earning.

Community disorganization: Community disorganization implies a state of inadequacy and disunity that gives free play to the forces of deterioration in community life.

Crime: Crime means any antisocial behavior committed by the members of the society, especially those against the law of the state.

Customs: Customs is “a rule or norm of action.” Transfer or carry on from one generation to the next.

Delinquency: “Delinquency consisted of socially unaccepted acts”.

Dowry: “Dowry is the property which a woman brings with her or is given to her at the marriage.”

Economic institutions: The economic institution is the complex of techniques, ideas and customs relating to the exploitation of the environment for the satisfaction of subsistence needs.

Education: Education is the conscious training of the young for the later adoption of adult roles.

Ethics: Ethics is a moral principle that governs a person’s behavior or conducting of an activity. Ethics is concerned with actions of the human beings, and the choice of those actions.

Etiquette: Etiquette is a code of precise procedures, and good manner that governs the social interaction of people. It contains the notion of propriety.

Facility: A facility has been defined as a means, resources used to attain ends or specific goals within the system.

Family: Family is a durable as well as long lasting association of husband and wife with or without children or a man or woman alone with children.

Family disorganization: Family disorganization may be thought to include any sort of non-harmonious functioning within the family.

Fashion: Fashion may be defined as permitted range of variation and differences around a norm. People want or desire to be like their associates and friends and also want to be different from them.

Folkway: It's a uniform and common way of living and helping in social control. A folkway describes or draws a line between right and wrong.

Formal organization: The formal organization has its own norms or rules of social behavior. Certain conducts are appropriate in certain organization. Formal organization lays down procedure to be followed by the members.

Formal social control: Formal social control is exercised by known and deliberate agencies of social control such as law, state, police, army, punishment, constitution, etc. exercised by only secondary groups.

Government: Government is the organ or agency of the State for coercive control. According to Johnson, “A government exercises imperative control within a definite territory and within that territory, it successfully claims its monopoly of the use of force.”

House: A house is a place of abode or shelter, a structure designed as a habitation, especially, a building intended as a home or place of work for human beings.

Ideology: Ideology means philosophy, principles, beliefs and thoughts. Social thinking has always been influenced by ideology.

Individual disorganization: Individual disorganization is a condition or process in which the person has not stabilized his behavior around major roles.

Informal organization: Informal organization refers to a small group, the members of which are tied or connected to one another as persons through primary relationships, such as family members. The group is characterized by informal and face to face relations, mutual aid, cooperation and companionship among individuals.

Informal social control: The agencies of informal social control have grown according to the needs of the society. (Generally primary institution like family; exercises this type of social control).

Judiciary: The judiciary is that branch of the government that interprets the law, settles disputes and administers justice to all citizens. The judiciary is considered the supervisory body of democracy, and also the guardian of the Constitution.

Law: Law is the most specialized and highly furnished engine or mechanism of social control employed by society.

Legislative process: Legislative process means the steps required for a proposed bill to become a law. The basic function of Parliament is to make or construct laws, amend them or repeal them. The process of law making or the legislative process, work in relation to Parliament.

Literacy: Literacy is defined as the skill or capability of the person to read and write.

Marginalized groups: Marginalized groups as, 'To be marginalized is to be placed in the margins and thus excluded from the privilege and power found at the center'.

Mores: Mores like folkways are based on values judgment and are deeply rooted in the community life. Mores distinguish the difference or variation between right and wrong.

Norms: Norms are the standards of absolute demarcation what is right, what is wrong, appropriate and inappropriate in society. Every social system possesses certain norms, which the individuals are obliged to observe or follow. For example, violence is wrong and peace is right in most of the society in the world.

Organization: Organization is a state of being, a condition in which the various institutions in a society are functioning effectively in accordance with their recognized or implied purposes.

Political system: A political system is that system of interaction in any society through which binding or authoritative allocations are made and implemented.

Power: According to status everyone has certain power in society to exercise.

Prostitution: Prostitution involves illicit sex union on a promiscuous and necessary basis with accompanying emotional indifference.

Ranks: It includes the importance and the individual has for the system in which a rank accorded to him. An individual is given a rank on the basis of two factors. One is the evaluation made of him and the other is his act in accordance with the norms of the system.

Recreational institution: Recreational institution can be defined as an organized system of social relationships for satisfying human desire of entertainment, amusement, play, etc.

Relative poverty: Relative poverty means that compared with others in a particular society, a person is lacking certain things.

Religion: A religion is a more or less coherent system of beliefs and practices concerning a supernatural order of beings, forces, places or entities.

Role: In a social system the individuals are expected to perform their roles in accordance with their statuses.

Role conflict: Role Conflict is a social-psychological concept used to investigate and explain individual's experiences of competing or conflicting demands.

Role strain: Role strain describes the stress that result from the differing demands, burdens and expectations associated with a social role.

Sanction: The society will reward or punish the individual per the duties performed.

Social administration: It is the study of social arrangements and policies aimed at meeting social needs—especially state welfare systems.

Social control: Karl Mannheim defines social control as the sum of those methods by which a society tries to influence human behavior to maintain a given order.

Social disorganization: Social disorganization means decay in the social structure so that old habits and form of social control no longer function effectively.

Social problems: Social problems are situations or conditions which are regarded by society as threats to its established ways or to its wellbeing and therefore, needing to be eliminated or alleviated.

Social suggestions: Social suggestions means proposal or plan for social welfare. Social suggestions and ideas are an important method of social control.

Social system: A social system is an orderly and systematic arrangement of social interaction among individuals within a social structure. Social system made up of a plurality of individuals. They interact with others according to shared norms and meaning within a social system.

State: State is a most powerful organization which regulates the social relationship of man and is the overall control institution of society.

Status: In a social system each individual has a status. Status means the position which one has in the organization. The status may be ascribed or achieved in society everybody has a different status.

System: System means orderly arrangement of constituent units. A system is made up of different parts, fractions or components. There must be a systematic relationship between the parts. Arrangement of these parts or components should create a systemic pattern. There is a functional relationship among the parts of system. All the parts create a new entity or individual body when they are functionally related as a whole.

Tradition: Tradition as a general term refers to the customs, rituals, belief, folklore, habits in a given ethnic group.

Values: It consists of culturally defined goals and an informal means of social control.

Voluntary associations: Voluntary associations are the organizations established on the basis of common interest, where members, volunteers pay to participate, such as clubs or study groups. A voluntary association sometimes serves as substitutes for primary groups though such associations have certain goals.

Vulnerable group: A vulnerable group can be defined as a population within a country that has specific characteristics that make it at a higher risk of needing humanitarian assistance than others or being excluded or debarred from financial and social services.

SOCIAL ORGANIZATION

Society is a vast system. The organization of this system is the interrelationship of its constituents. The constituents or we can say the elements of society are institutions, associations and groups. A society can be described as organized only when all these various organs work smoothly and without any conflict or friction, and adequately perform their functions. Organization refers to the way people relate themselves to one another. In other words, social organization means a normative integration of more than one regulatory unit which binds these units together on the basis of causative relationships and provides mobility to them so as to fulfil the actual objectives of an organization.

Meaning of Social Organization

The word 'organization' is used to refer to the associational groups. The term *organization* means an arrangement of persons, parts or components in a sequential order or in an organized manner. It includes corporations, armies, schools, banks and prisons, churches, colleges, political parties, etc. Organization means a set of differentiated activities serving a common purpose. They are correlated to increase the effectiveness of the organization. The society consists of many such associational groups or organizations.

A state is frequently called a political organization. A school may represent an educational institution or organization and so on. They all are forms of institutions or social organizations. According to Ogburn and

Nimkoff, 'entire society represents a wider and huge organization; a social organization. But society is also quite generally an organized group of interacting individuals.'

For example, the family as an organization can run smoothly only when its members have mutual understanding, cooperation and consensus among themselves. An organization is understood as a mechanism that brings different people together into a network of interaction to perform different functions or social roles.

Definitions of Social Organization

The term social organization is used to refer the interdependence of parts in groups. All functions differently to achieve some purpose.

Different sociologists expressed the term social organization in their own ways.

- **Ogburn and Nimkoff** have defined, "Organization is an articulation of different parts which perform various functions; it is an active group device for getting something done."
- **Elliott and Merrill** stated, "Organization is a state of being, a condition in which the various institutions in a society are functioning in accordance with their recognized or implied purposes."
- According to **Leonard Broom** and **Philip Selznick**, "Social organization as the patterned relations of individual and groups". Means social organization is one of the sources of order in social life.
- According to **Louise Weston** and **others**, "Social organization can be thought of as the pattern and processes of relations among individuals and among groups."
- According to **H.M. Johnson**, "Organization refers to an aspect of interaction systems".
- **Earnest Jones** says, "Social organization is the system by which the parts of society are related to each other and to the whole society in a meaningful way."
- According to **Duncan Mitchell**, "Social organization means the interdependence of parts, which is an essential characteristic of all enduring collective entities; groups, communities and societies."

Entire society represents a wider organization; a social organization. In this individual, groups, and institutions participate. Thus in organizations, there are people who interact with each other and work together to achieve the goals.

The Role of Individual in Organization

The individuals play an important role in the effective functioning of the organization (Fig 6.1). The members of an organization must be trained, induced, coerced or forced to participate in it to meet the social demands. People participate in the organizations when they are going to gain something new or innovative out of them.

- **Definite purpose:** An organization has its own definite purpose. Without any "own" purpose or goal individuals come together and establish among themselves a definite pattern or system of interaction. The smooth running of an organization depends much on the mutual understanding, cooperation, dedication, harmony and consensus among its members.

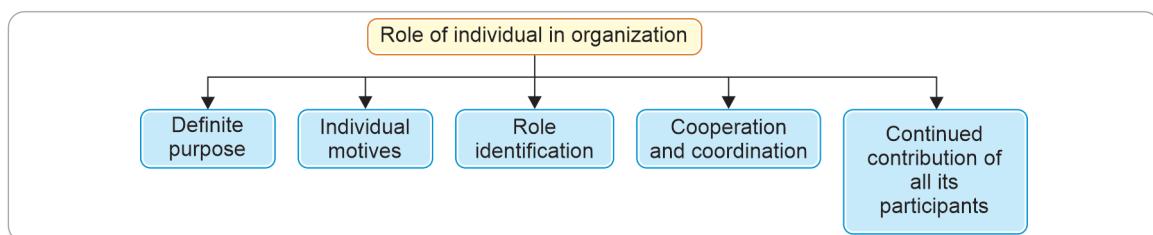


Figure 6.1: Role of individual in organization

Unit VI Social Organization and Disorganization

- **Individual motives:** The individual motives play an important role in the fulfilment of organization goals. People cannot work in organization without any personal motives, purposes, aims and objectives or thinking. They do not work in an automatically or mechanically or in impulsive manner; there may be necessity or requirement of individual motive to work efficiently.
- **Role identification:** The organization assigns statuses and roles to the individuals and makes them assume statuses and enact roles. The organization can function without any problem if the harmony between the acceptance of the statuses by the members and their enactment of the related roles is present. People tend to identify themselves with the organization in which they participate toward goals. There is a close affinity or resemblance between people's motives on the one hand and their identification with the organization on the other. The extent or degree of their identification with the organization depends on the nature and intensity of the motives for participating in them.
- **Cooperation and coordination:** The success of an organization depends on the proper coordination and cooperation of its members and also cooperation from others. The other members must also be made to contribute directly or indirectly to the smooth functioning of the organization. The success of a library depends on its readers. An organization maintains its control over the behavior of its members and regulates their activities in order to fulfil the function. Organization makes use of various formal as well as informal means of social control for this purpose.
- **Continued contribution of all its participants:** An organization is said to have attained equilibrium when it is able to maintain the continued contribution of all its participants or members and others by providing them various kinds of encouragements, stimulus as well as incentives to work for its success. Equilibrium may be achieved at various levels during working assignment. It may change over time. The scope of the organization's activities may remain constant or may grow sometimes or diminish and moderate at another level. Continuity must be maintained to avoid conflicting situations as well as to obtain desired outcome.

To work in an organization is a collaborative effort of all individual. It is essential for all the individual may work hard and effectively with cooperative spirit within given time frame.

Elements of Organization

In an organization members interact on the basis of status and role. The elements in an organization are discussed in Figure 6.2:

- **Social structure:** The nature character of any organization depends on its structure, configuration or construction. A well-defined social structure is essential for existence or continuation of any social organization.
- **Status:** It is the position which one holds in the organization. The success of any organization depends on how the person performs his function in an organization according to given positions.
- **Role:** It is an expected behavior which is associated with the status. Within organization the members are assigned their role to perform and occupy the position and status in the organization. For example, in

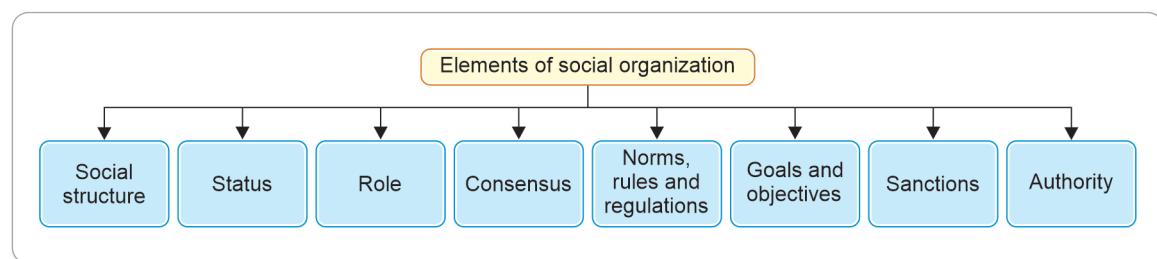


Figure 6.2: Elements of social organization

social organization, school principal and the other working personnel are assigned for particular work. All these personnel work in coordination with one another. In a nursing college, principal is the main authority; a principal's role is to look after administrative work. The principal enjoys the status in the role of an administrator.

- **Consensus:** Consensus or mutual understanding is an important element of social organization which provides its strength, and is necessary for effective functioning.
- **Norms, rules and regulations:** Every organization can run smoothly only if there are rules and people abide by them. These norms control the individual's behavior through discipline, regularity and punctuality.
- **Goals and objectives:** All formal organizations have to fulfil the goals for which it was formed. Members of the organizations are interrelated and perform the activities in order to achieve the common goal.
- **Sanctions:** These are necessary to ensure conformity to norms. There are both positive sanctions (rewards) and negative sanctions (punishments) in an organization.
- **Authority:** No organization can function if there is no authority. For example, a school has a Principal as top authority. There must be hierarchy or chain of command in an organization for effective functioning. The quality of social organization would depend on how the social units are organized and how they perform their role for organization.

Types of Social Organizations

There are many kinds of organizations. For example, a state is called a political organization because it is concerned with political matters and issues. A factory is called an economic organization because it is concerned with production and distribution of goods. A church is a religious organization. All these organizations exist in the society. Different organizations work in a different way and follow some principle and procedures for effective function of a society.

There are mainly two types of organizations. These are shown in Figure 6.3:

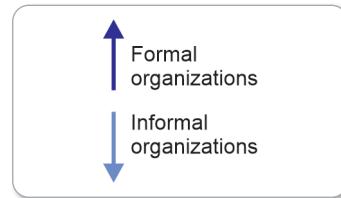


Figure 6.3: Types of organizations

Formal Organizations

Formal organization lays down certain principles, protocols, and procedure to be followed by every member within the organization. The *formal organization* has its own norms or rules of social conduct and behavior. For smooth functioning certain behaviors or conducts are appropriate in certain organization.

The formal organization creates power and authority. Where there is no organization there is no power or authority where there is no power or authority there is no organization. Power or authority is one of the most significant criteria of any organization.

Informal Organizations

An informal organization is a small group in which the members are tied or connected to one another as persons. The group is characterized by informal means and face to face relations, mutual aid, cooperation, support, teamwork and companionship.

The members of informal organizations work together not in their official capacities but as persons or individual. They share their hopes, worries, fears, their happiness, joys and sorrows. The informal organizations consist of only conducts or rules and not statuses. Here there is no authority but only leadership exists.

Informal organizations have their own unwritten rules or norms of behavior. They have their own ways of correcting and punishing the violators of the rules or norms. Though informal organizations are smaller in size they give strength to the formal organizations to function effectively. These informal organizations resemble Cooley's Primary Groups and Sumner's in-groups.

For example, family is a primary group that exercises informal means of practices or measures to control the behavior of its members.

Differences between formal and informal organizations are as follows:

According to Charles Bernard the informal organizations are necessary to the operation of formal organizations as a means of communication of cohesion and of protecting the integrity of the individual.

There are key differences between formal and informal organizations. Formal organization is created or formed deliberately by top level of management. Conversely, informal organization is created or formed spontaneously by its members. Formal organization is aimed at fulfilling organization's aims and objectives. On the contrary, an informal organization is created to satisfy social and psychological needs of human beings (Table 6.1).

TABLE 6.1: Differences between formal organizations and informal organizations

Sl. no.	Formal organizations	Informal organizations
1.	The formal organization relatively is a large group.	Informal organization refers to a small group.
2.	The formal organization consists of the formally recognized and established statuses of the members in society.	The informal organization consists of role rather than statuses in society.
3.	The relationship between the members is more a status or secondary than a personal relationship.	The relationship between the members is more a personal or according to role than a status relationship.
4.	There is authority in formal organizations hence there is superordination and subordination.	There is leadership in informal organization; hence we find control and submission.
5.	Individuals are valuable because of their status and prestige.	Individuals are valuable because of their roles, respect and admiration.
6.	The norms of formal organization differ. They are found in the form of written rules, regulations, laws contracts or constitutions. The norms are more subtle.	The norms of informal organizations are also informal. They may be found in the form of customs, morals, folkways, belief and they are not written.
7.	Formal organizations may have long history of their own. The state or clubs are relatively permanent and stable.	Informal organizations are not permanent. Informal organizations may develop into formal organization.
8.	Formal organizations are comparatively more inflexible. It is not easy to bring change in them. For example, it is not easy to bring change or amendment in the constitution.	Informal organizations are more flexible. There is no rigidity here. Changes can be brought forth easily. It requires only the change in attitudes and prospects of individuals.
9.	Communication takes place in scalar chain.	Communication takes place in any direction.
10.	Formal organizations are rigid in nature.	Informal organizations are flexible in nature.

VOLUNTARY ASSOCIATIONS

Voluntary associations are organizations established on the basis of common interest, where members volunteer or even pay to participate, such as clubs or study groups. A *voluntary association* sometimes serves as a substitute for primary groups though such associations have certain goals.

Men have diverse miscellaneous needs, desires and interests which demand satisfaction. There are three different ways of fulfilling these needs. Firstly, they may act independently each in their own way without caring for others. This is unsocial with limitations. Secondly men may seek their ends through conflicts and quarrels with one another. Finally, men may try to fulfil their ends through cooperation and mutual assistance. This cooperation has a reference as well as orientation to association.

When a group or collection of individuals organizes themselves specifically for the purpose of pursuing certain of its interests together on a cooperative pursuit from here an association is begin. According to Morris Ginsberg an *association* is a group of social beings related to one another by the fact that they possess or have instituted in common an organization with a view to securing a specific end or specific ends. The associations may be found in different fields or configuration. No single association can satisfy all the interests of the individual or individuals. Since man has many interests, he organizes various associations for the purpose of fulfilling varied interests. He may belong to more than one organization at a time.

Meaning of Voluntary Associations

The term voluntary is derived from the Latin word “voluntas” means “will” or “freedom”. The term voluntary, as the name implies, emphasizes the fact that citizens freely form these organizations, and thus they are autonomous, independent of both government and the market as well. The term is often taken to refer to the presence of volunteers within non-profit organizations, although many voluntary organizations are more dominated by professional staff than volunteers. Finally, these organizations are often identified as being independent of both the state and the market, belonging to a third segment or to civil society. An unincorporated group associated for some specific purpose – used chiefly of commercial, profit or financial associations.

Voluntary associations or organizations play a crucial role in bringing out socio-economic development in both urban and rural areas in India. It has become a significant worldwide force in current time. These organizations not only have a definite place in modern era but they also perform a number of functions for the welfare of its members, e.g. the growth of a country, integration and solidarity of the society and nation. Voluntary organizations provide services to the poor, needy, neglected, the old-aged and the sick people. They provide free services to the urban people as well as rural folk and make different efforts and initiate different program at local, national and at international level to make the common men aware.

Definitions of Voluntary Association

A voluntary association or union is a group of individuals who voluntarily enter into an agreement or conformity to form a body (or organization) to work together for a specific purpose. In most of the cases no formalities or official procedures are necessary to start or begin an association.

Definitions of association as discussed here:

- According to **Harold Laski**, Voluntary associations are “freedom of association as a recognized legal right on the part of all persons to combine for promotion of purpose in which they are interested”.
- According to **Michal Benton**, “Association is a group organized for pursuit of one interest or several interests in common”.



Unit VI Social Organization and Disorganization

- According to **Lord Veberidge**, “A voluntary organization where its workers are paid or unpaid, is initiated and governed by the own members without external control”.
- According to **Davis**, “Voluntary organization is a group of person organized on the basis of voluntary membership without state control for furtherance of some common interest of its members”.
- Norman Johnson** has given four characteristics of voluntary associations. These are:
 - Method of formation
 - Method of government
 - Method of financing
 - Motive

From all above definitions, it is clear that voluntary association is grouping of two or more people on the voluntary basis. A voluntary association or union is a group of individuals who enter into an agreement on volunteer basis to form a body to accomplish specific purpose or goals.

Common examples include trade associations, trade unions, learned societies and professional associations, environmental groups, recreational groups, old age group and various other types of groups.

Membership is not necessarily voluntary, as it may be effectively required in order to work, which has led to a preference for the term common-interest association; this common interest and feeling to serve society describe group's extraordinary form out of a common interest.

Characteristics of Voluntary Associations

A voluntary group is one which is joined by an individual according to his own wish and desires. He withdraws his membership at any time according to his own will. Political parties, Youth associate are examples of voluntary groups or voluntary associations. An involuntary group is based on kinship, affinity or understandings just like a family.

Any voluntary associations must encompass some of the important features, which are as follows:

- A group of people
- Organization
- Common aims and objectives
- Some rules and regulations
- Cooperative spirit
- Voluntary membership
- Degree of permanency
- Legal status

The freedom of association depends according to the Universal Declaration of Human Rights (Article 20), according to this:

- Everyone has the right to freedom of peaceful or non-violence assembly and association.
- No one may be compelled or forced to belong to an association.

A chief benefit of participation in voluntary associations is their capacity to foster norms of reciprocity, citizenship, as well as social trust and also provide networks of social relations that can be mobilized to follow shared goals for the common good or well-being.

Voluntary organizations serve many purposes for society as well as democracy of the country.

The characteristics of voluntary associations are:

- Authorized status:** Voluntary associations are registered under an appropriate act to give cooperate status to a group of individuals.

- **Completely voluntary:** Methods of formation of voluntary associations, which is completely voluntary on the part of a group of people.
- **Management and executive committee:** A voluntary association has an administrative structure and a duly-constituted management and executive committee.
- **Defined aims and objectives:** A voluntary association has defined aims and objectives and programs for their fulfilment and achievement.
- **Self-governing organization:** Voluntary associations are with self-governing organization to decide on its constitution, its serving, its policy and clients. They are developed by individuals or group of individuals for undertaking the welfare and development activities for the disadvantaged or vulnerable groups of society.
- **Voluntary funding:** In voluntary associations method of finance, with at least some of its revenues drawn from voluntary sources.
- **Based on democratic principles:** Voluntary organizations initiated and governed by only its members on democratic principles without external control.
- **Social welfare motive:** Voluntary associations are neither formed nor run for profit making. Motives with the pursuit of profit extended in terms of social welfare and happiness.
- **Working ideology:** Voluntary associations raises funds for its activities partly from the exchequer in the form of grants-in-aid and partly in the form of the contributions are subscriptions from the members of the local community and the beneficiaries of the programs.

Motivational Factors of Voluntary Associations

- The association gives the individual or feeling of community with his fellow men.
- Membership has class bias were socioeconomic interest has motivated the joining of association.
- Membership of a given group has been found to be largely homogenous in terms of class, ethnicity and religion.
- Membership is directly related to socioeconomic status as measured by level of income, house, ownership, level of living and education.

Functions of Voluntary Associations

Voluntary organizations have become an important or significant global force today. Voluntary associations occupy an important place in community and perform a variety of functions (Fig. 6.4).

- **Identifying the needs of individuals, groups, communities:** The main functions of the voluntary organization is to identify the needs of individuals, groups, communities, and initiate programs and projects to meet them on their own or with the grant-in-aid involvement with the government. These associations prevent the government from developing monopoly in various fields, thus serve as safeguards between individual and state. They also contributes to strengthen the national solidarity.



Figure 6.4: Functions of voluntary associations

- **Performing duties in emergency situations:** They perform their duties in emergency situations, like droughts and floods at large scale.
- **Providing public wide-ranging services:** They not only provide their services to the poor or disadvantaged section but they have brought in to focus on issues like health, education, rural and urban development projects, environment protection, women and child welfare, women empowerments, pandemic crisis (like COVID-19) and they have become an active part of the contemporary development scene in India.
- **Collaboration with other health care organizations:** These associations work with governmental and non-governmental organizations. These organizations provide accountable, effective and equitable services in many areas through public or private agencies in India.
- **Social control:** Voluntary associations enable the individual to learn the fundamental rights, promote recreational, cultural, social services and professional interest, etc. Besides, they educate the members about policies, and welfare programs of government as a means of social control.
- **Enhance the social life:** Voluntary associations enrich the social life by raising the additional sources (making use of skilled services provided by expertise). Supplement the work of government agencies in the area of education and health resources.

Examples of Voluntary Associations

Examples of organizations in the voluntary sector include: World Vision, Red Cross Society, Social Welfare Organizations such as Human Rights Watch, Environmental Protection Agency (EPA).

- **Red Cross Society:** The Red Cross Society is a non-political international humanitarian organization devoted to the service of humanity in times of war and peace. In the beginning, Red Cross was looking after victims of war but later took up many programs for human welfare. This includes disaster service, first aid and nursing, health education, maternal and child welfare services, service during war, and treatment of drug addicts. The Indian Red Cross is primarily concerned with providing various amenities to military hospitals, for disabled people, and disaster services. Its activities may be classified as follows:
 - **Relief work:** When any area is stricken with any type of sudden calamity, Red Cross mobilizes all its resources and performs relief work.
 - **Milk and medical supplies:** Milk-powder, medicines, vitamins and other supplies are given to various hospitals, dispensaries, maternal and child welfare centers, schools and orphanages.
 - **Armed forces:** Care of the sick and wounded members of the armed force is a very important duty of Red Cross. It runs a well-equipped center-red cross home in Bangalore.
 - Maternal and child welfare services.
 - Family planning services.
 - **Blood Bank and First Aid:** St John's Ambulance Association of India is a body of Red Cross giving training to men and women in First Aid and Nursing.
- **Indian Council of Child Welfare (ICCW):** It was established in 1952. It is associated with the international union of child welfare. It strives hard to provide opportunities and facilities by law and other means to every child to develop physically, mentally, morally, spiritually and socially under favorable healthy and normal conditions.
- **Central Social Welfare Board:** This is a semi-governmental organization. Its functions are to survey the needs of voluntary welfare organizations, to promote and initiate voluntary organizations and render financial aid to deserving organizations and services. In 1968, the Central Social Welfare Board (CSWB) started family and child welfare services in rural areas for the welfare of women and children. These services include literacy classes, social education, teaching crafts, maternity aid to women, and distribution of milk to children, Balwadis and play centers for children. It has also started industrial cooperatives, especially to assist the urban poor women to generate additional income.

- **Family Planning Association of India:** The FPAI was established in 1949 and has done pioneering work in the area of family planning. Its headquarters are in Mumbai and it has branches in several cities. These branches run family planning clinics. The association also trains doctors and health workers in family planning techniques. The association also answers family planning queries. It publishes a journal too.
- **The Hind Kusht Nivaran Sangh:** It was established in 1950 with Delhi as its headquarters. The Sangh gives financial assistance to leprosy homes and clinics, health education, training of medical workers and physiotherapists, conducting research and field surveys and also publishing 'Leprosy in India' a quarterly journal. The Sangh has branches all over India and works in cooperation with other governmental and voluntary agencies.
- **Tuberculosis Association of India:** This was established in the year 1939. Its functions are training doctors and para-medicals in anti-TB work, health education, promotion of consultancy services, and also fund raising to fight TB. In addition, it runs some specialized institutions for TB treatment and research.
- **Kasturba Memorial Trust:** The Kasturba memorial fund was established in the memory of Kasturba Gandhi in 1944. The main objective of the trust is to improve the condition of Indian rural women. It has several institutions and does valuable services in educating rural girls and also social education and progress of villages. The headquarters of the Kasturba trust is in Indore, Kasturbagram - where there is also a rural institute for women.
- **All India Women's Conference:** It is a women's voluntary welfare organization established in 1926. It has branches all over the country. They run maternal and child welfare clinics, medical centers, adult education centers, family planning clinics, milk centers and cooperatives.
- **Bharat Sevak Samaj:** It is a non-political voluntary organization established in 1952. Its main objective is to help people to achieve health by self-efforts. It has done remarkable work in village sanitation and progress.
- **All India Blind Relief Society:** This was established in 1946, with an objective of coordinating different institutions working for the blind. It organizes eye camps and lots of other relief work for the welfare of the blind.
- **Christian Churches, Organizations and Institutions:** The Christian church (catholic and protestant), its various organizations and institutions are doing much work for preventing and solving social problems. National Christian Council of India with its headquarters in Nagpur; and the world council of churches with its headquarters in Geneva, Switzerland, are doing much work in the forms of relief in disasters like floods, earthquakes and famines. The Christian churches in India are running a large number of schools, colleges, hostels, orphanages, training centers, hospitals and welfare centers. There are more than 250 major colleges run by the church in India. Reputed medical colleges like the Christian Medical College, Vellore, (Chennai), Christian Medical College, Ludhiana (Punjab) & St. John's Medical College, Bangalore are run by the church. YMCAs & YWCAs have thousands of branches all over India and the whole world, doing a great deal of excellent work to young men and women for their residence, recreation, and welfare. Keeping in mind a large number of hostels for boys, girls, destitute and widows, much relief work is being done by the church for the needy. Mother Teresa's organization (Sisters of Charity/Missionaries of Charity) is doing a praiseworthy work for the help of orphans, destitute, the sick and the dying. In providing literacy, education, vocational training, and training for nurses, health visitors, midwives and other paramedical staff, and social awakening, the role of the church in India has been unique.
- **Other organizations and agencies:** The Ramakrishna Mission, Arya Samaj, Rotary International, Lions International, Overseas Development Authority, Rockefeller Foundation, Ford Foundation, CARE (Cooperation for American Relief Everywhere), and many other national and international organizations



Unit VI Social Organization and Disorganization

have played a significant role in solving a large number of socioeconomic problems of India. They are still contributing a lot in this area.

In sum, voluntary organizations main functions comprise giving concrete expression to the fundamental right of freedom of association, identifying the needs of individuals, groups and communities and initiating projects and programs to meet them on their own or with the grant-in-aid involvement with the government. These organizations provide accountable, effective and equitable services in many areas through public or private agencies. Voluntary organizations are independent, flexible, democratic, secular, non-profitable organizations which work for the social welfare as well as development of the society throughout India.

Thus voluntary associations are important for the following:

- Strengthening the national solidarity
- Enabling individual to learn rights
- Promotion of various activities of culture and recreation and enrich life through services
- Unveil social evil
- Education of the people
- Preventing monopoly of government
- Stabilizing force
- Exploring various ways and means of doing new things.

SOCIAL SYSTEM

It is necessary to understand the meaning of the word “system” before analyzing the meaning of the term “social system”. **System** means orderly arrangement of constituent units. The main features of systems are as follows:

- A system is made up of different parts.
- There must be a systematic relationship between the parts.
- Arrangement of these parts should create a pattern.
- There is a functional relationship among the parts of system.
- All the parts create a new entity when they are functionally related.
- All parts together work for desired or expected outcome.

A social system is an orderly and systematic arrangement as well as understandings of social interaction. Social system made up of a plurality of individuals. They interact with others according to shared norms and meaning within a given social system. When two or more individuals interact with each other under certain predefined social boundaries; then they are a unit of social system.

There are various subsystems of social system such as political system, religious system, economic system, etc. They interact with each other according to shared norms and meaning within the social system.

Concept of Social System

The study of society as a social system has a long history in the social sciences. In this field the important work carried out by sociologist and philosopher Herbert Spencer and French social scientist Émile Durkheim. In the 19th century, Spencer, influenced by Charles Darwin's Theory of Evolution, argued for a unitary form of the social system. This is continuous approach or process, the system of society was constantly evolving into an even-more-complex state of perfection. In those perspectives or standpoints, society is not evolving toward some perfect state; rather, it is reaching toward a state of increasing complexity day by day.

Systems theory is also involved in analyzing how society adapts to its environment through adjustments in its structure, with important implications for the understanding or indulgent of social order.



Systems theory reveals the complexity of social evolution and on this basis, stresses the limited possibility of routing society. In other words, society can be viewed as a total organism that is sustained by the various processes that support its function and survival.

Meaning of Social System

Society is a system. It has many structural parts that function together for the welfare of the whole society. The **social system** means an orderly arrangement of social interactions. All social organizations are, therefore, 'social system', since they consist of individuals. In the social system, each of the interacting individual has function or role to perform in terms of status he occupies in the system. For example, in the family, parents, son and daughters are required to perform certain socially recognized functions or roles. Social norms govern the behavior of all members and also set boundaries. If a member gets affected, the whole family system is affected and adjustments have to be made. So we see that in a social system, there are parts or components, relationships and boundaries governed by norms. Members share some values and goals which they work together to achieve. Members are conscious of how the interaction affects them and other members. In sociology, social system means patterned or systematic arrangement of relationships constitute entirely in logical expression that existing among individuals, groups, and institutions of the society.

Definitions of Social System

According to Oxford Dictionary, the term 'system' represents "a group of things or parts working together in a regular relation". Groups, organizations and societies are all social systems. Each social system has a structure. A social system is defined in terms of two or more social actors engaged in more or less stable interaction within a bounded environment. Definitions of social system are:

- According to **Parson T.** "A social system is a mode of organizations of action elements relative to the persistence or ordered process of change of the interactive patterns of a plurality of individual actor".
- **Robert** stated "Any collection of real objects that interact in some way with one another can be considered a system; a galaxy, a football team, a legislature, a political party".
- According to **David Popenoë**, "a social system is a set of persons or groups who interact with one another; the set is conceived of as a social unit distinct from the particular persons who compose it".

Thus, a social system is a set of interrelated social units. Social units include individuals, groups, organizations and societies. The part of social system is always interdependent with each other.

Characteristics of Social System

The patterned series of interrelationships exist between individuals, groups, and institutions and formed in terms of logical one to fulfil or get some specific or desired ends.

In Sociology, the groups and institutions that work together to make a complete whole are known as social systems. According to concept and idea of academic theory, social systems are used to identify relationships that connect people and organizations together, which ultimately contribute to a larger institution.

For example, family is just like a social system. The members have very close social interaction with one another in the family. They are interdependent to communicate with each other. The family will function as a unit. The members of the family can neither survive nor function alone.

The social system has the following features or characteristics (Fig. 6.5):

- **Social system is based on the interaction of plurality of individuals:** When numbers of individuals interact with each other, this process results in a social system. In fact, a number of individuals must be present in a social system.

- **The interaction must carry a meaning:** The interactions must be meaningful, without social relationships, interaction cannot be possible. Hence, social interaction has some purpose, base, and meanings. Social system is an orderly arrangement of the various ways of social relationships.
 - **Social system is a unity:** Any arrangement of social parts, like institutions, traditions, customs, laws and procedures alone, does not constitute a social system. Social system includes an orderly arrangement of these parts and their orderly function. Here, various parts like institutions, customs, transitions, procedures and laws are arranged in an integrated manner.
 - **Existence of functional relationship between parts of the social system:** Social integrity or the units of the social system have unity and harmony which is based on functional relation. In a social system, each part functions according to their assigned roles and the different parts come together on the basis of their well designated position; and there may be interdependency among them.
 - **Social system is related with cultural system:** Every social system is having own cultural system. Culture determines the nature of interrelation and interactions of individuals in the society and also maintains peace, harmony and order.
 - **Social system has a relationship with an environment:** A social system exists in a geographical and natural environment. That is why all the societies are not uniform but are having great variety in terms of time, place and institutions. Environment has a great impact over whole activities of the day-to-day life.
 - **Organization and balance among social units:** The units of social system are organized. They are arranged in one orderly pattern. Every society has its aims and objectives expressed in terms of culture and institutions based on the commonly accepted beliefs, values, and norms. These cultural values are essential to maintain social relationships stable and putting necessary steps toward attainment of objectives and thus maintaining balance within the society.
 - **Adjustment toward change:** Changes take place in social system due to human needs, environment, historical conditions and occurrence. But social system has the quality to adjust with changing situations and maintain balance within society.
- Social system is a conception may represent the entire society or a number of sub-systems such as political system, educational system, economic system, judicial system and so on. Those are found within the society.

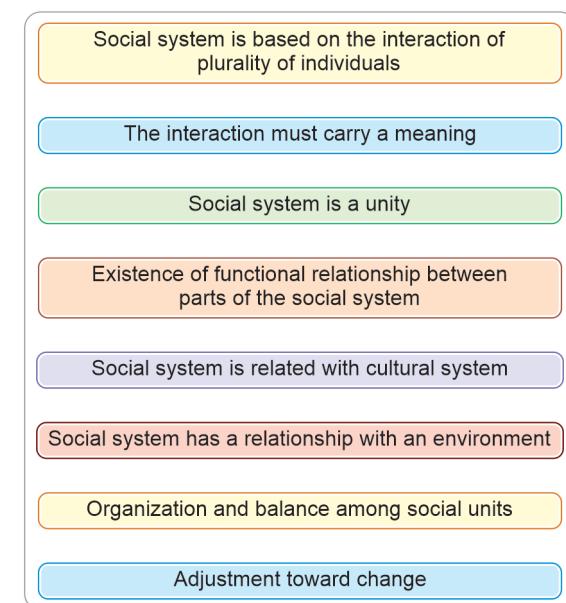


Figure 6.5: Characteristics of social system

Types of Social System

Different sociologists have classified social system in their own way:

Durkheim classification: Durkheim has described two types of social system:

1. **Mechanical social system:** Mechanical social system is the social integration of members of a society who have common values and beliefs. These common values and beliefs constitute a “collective conscience” that works internally in individual members to cause them to cooperate. Because, in Durkheim’s view, the forces causing members of society to cooperate with each other just like the internal energies causing the molecules to cohere in a solid.

2. **Organic social system:** “Organic” refers to the interdependence of the component parts. Although individuals perform different tasks and often have different values and interest, the order and especially shared aims of society depend on their reliance on each other to perform their specified tasks. Organic social system is social cohesion (working together) based upon the dependence or confidence of individuals have on each other in more advanced societies. It comes from the interdependence that arises from specialization of work and the balance and harmony between people.

Talcott Parsons has described 4 principal types of social system (Fig. 6.6). His classification is based on four types of social values—universalistic social values, particularistic social values, achieved social values and ascribed social values. Universalistic social values are those which are universal in nature and found almost in every society and are applicable to everybody. Particularistic social values are the features of particular societies and these differ from society to society. Those societies which give importance to heredity have ascribed social values while those which attach importance to achievement have achieved social values.

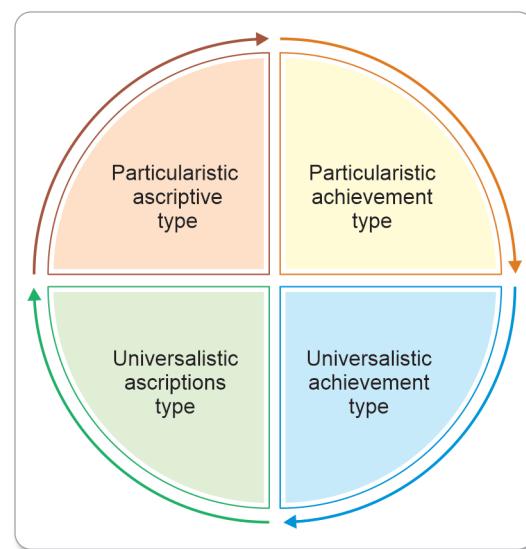


Figure 6.6: Types of social system

1. **The particularistic ascriptive type:** This type of social system is organized around kinship and sociality. (Sociality is the degree to which individuals in an animal population tend to associate in social groups and form cooperative societies.) The norms of such a system are traditional and ascription is the value which is dominant. This type of system is mostly represented or be a symbol of preliterate societies in which needs are limited to only biological survival.
2. **The particularistic-achievement type:** This type combines achievement values with particularism. (Particularism means exclusive attachment to one's own group, party, or nation.) Thus collectivism is maintained but emphasis is on achievement. The emphasis on achievement leads to the conception of a proper pattern of adaption which is a product of human achievement and which is maintained by continuous efforts. This type is also traditional.
3. **The universalistic achievement type:** In this social system individuals must choose goals which are in accordance with universal values. The value patterns are opposed to the values of a social system which is built mostly around kinship, community and race. Such a system is dynamic with an encouragement for initiative.
4. **The universalistic ascriptions type:** In this type of social system, ascription is the dominating value. Therefore, in such a social structure strong emphasis is laid on the status of the individual rather than on his specific achievements. The individual derives his status in society from his group. In this type of social structure all resources are mobilized or gather together in the interest of the collective ideal.

Classification by Morgan and other evolutionists: Morgan and other evolutionists have classified social system on the basis of evolution. According to them society or social system has passed through three phases. That are:

1. Savagery social system (extreme backwardness or totally uncivilized)
2. Barbarian social system (nomads or comparatively less civilized)
3. Civilized social system (well developed social system)

Elements of Social System

According to **Loomis and Beagle**, there are seven elements of social system:

1. Roles
2. Status
3. Authority
4. Rights
5. Ends and objectives
6. Norms
7. Territoriality (the defense of an area)

The following are some of the important elements in a social system which need to function effectively;

- **Belief and knowledge:** Any proposition about any aspect of the universe that is accepted by all members as true may be describing a belief. Belief is the basis of social action. Everyone who lives in society has common beliefs and knowledge and on this common believes and knowledge social system operates.
- **Sentiments:** There are so many stimuli in society which induce sentiments in people, for example, a candle or lamp has different sentiments for different people.
- **Goal and objective:** Objectives create social system. Members along with relevant social structures of social system expect to accomplish a particular end or objective through appropriate interaction. The human needs, goal and ends determine the nature or character of social system. Primarily, human beings are united to accomplish the basic needs of life, e.g. food, clothing and shelter. In social system everybody interacts in society with some goal and objective. For example, we convey best wishes on festival and occasions for the maintenance of better relationship.
- **Norms:** Norms are the standards of absolute demarcation what is right, what is wrong, appropriate and inappropriate in society. Every social system possesses norms, which the individuals are obliged to observe. For example, violence is wrong and peace is right in most of the society in the world.
- **Status:** In a social system each individual has a status. The status may be ascribed or achieved in society everybody has a different status.
- **Role:** In a social system, the individuals are expected to perform their roles in accordance with their statuses.
- **Ranks:** Rank here is equivalent to “standing”. It includes the importance and the individual has for the system in which a rank accorded to him. An individual is given a rank on the basis of two factors. One factor is the evaluation made of him and the other factor is his action or act in accordance with the norms of the system. For instance, a business corporate executive enjoys higher rank than a teacher in modern society, whereas in ancient times, the teacher often enjoyed higher rank than even a king.
- **Power:** According to status everyone has certain power as well as authority in society to exercise.
- **Sanction:** The society will reward or punish the individual as per the duties performed.
- **Facility:** A facility has been defined as a means or resources used to attain ends within the system. It is necessary that the individuals in a social system should be provided with adequate facilities to enable them to perform their roles effectively and efficiently. Facilities should not only exist but also must be realized. The goals or objectives of a social system are realized only through the utilization of facilities. Thus, to solve the problems of proper provision and distribution of work assignment in the social structure or social system, elements such as roles, status, power, sanctions, and norms play major responsibility.

STATUS

Status and role are important elements or rudiments of any society. In fact, Talcott Parsons, a prominent sociologist has held that society itself is a collection of status and roles of people. Social organizations as well

as social disorganization are based on status and role of the individual in a society. Social change also is on the basis of change of status and role. He may occupy high or low status. Every status holder we can say is a role performer. Status and Role, is always inter-connected. In social structure, in a social group, every member has a social status and role position.

A social group cannot function if this arrangement is not in due and related order. This coordination is important in societies to harmonize the social relations. The status role is the basis or foundation of social order.

Meaning of Status

Recognitions or acknowledgement of the position of an individual in the social system and the authority he holds are the basis of status system. Status is position or place that one holds in a given system. Status means the location of the individual within the group—his place in the social network of reciprocal obligations and privileges, civil liberties, duties and rights.

Thus, positions, such as father, mother, teacher, and employer, all define a different status. It is by status differentiation that social positions are defined and well-known from one another by assigning to each a set of rights and responsibilities.

Definitions of Status

Every individual in the society occupies a particular status. Different sociologists explained status in different ways:

- According to **Elliott and Merrill**, “Status is the position which the individual occupies in the group by virtue of his sex, age, family, class, occupation, marriage and achievement”.
- According to **Ogburn and Nimkoff**, “Status represents the position of the individual in the group”.
- According to **Lundberg**, it is the, “comparative amount of prestige, deference or respect accorded to persons who has been assigned different roles in a group or community.”
- According to **Davis**, “status is a position in the general institutional system, recognized and supported by the entire society spontaneously evolved rather than deliberately created, rooted in the folkways and mores.”
- According to **H.T. Mazumdar**, “Status means the location of the individual within the group—his place in the social network of reciprocal obligation and privileges, rights and duties.”

Status and roles are complementary to each other. The role of a person performed is determined by his or her social status.

Characteristic Features of Status

The term status has physical as well as a psychological situation or state of affairs. The characteristic features are described here:

- The status is determined by the cultural circumstances or condition of the particular society.
- The status is determined only in relevance or significance of the other members of the society.
- Every individual has to play certain role in accordance with the status in a society.
- Status is only a part of the society as a whole or complete.
- As a result of status the society is divided into various group, stratum or sub-divisions.
- Every status carries with it some degree of prestige.
- According to status, people may be divided into various categories or subdivisions. But some of the statuses are earned or achieved while others are ascribed.

Types of Status

Status may be of two types (Fig.6.7):

- Ascribed status, and
- Achieved status

When status is received by virtue of birth, without any individual effort, it is termed ascribed status.

When a person gets a status due to his own efforts or capabilities, it is termed achieved status.

Ascribed status

Achieved status

Figure 6.7: Types of status

Determinants of Ascribed Status

- **Gender difference:** In most societies, gender is an important factor in determining status. In Indian society, males were always accorded a very high status in the family and the community.
- **Age:** Age is another important factor in determining status, especially in traditional societies. The elders are respected and the younger generation is under the control of the older generation.
- **Family and kinship:** Family is an important factor determining status and almost all societies. In a society there are highly reputed families, ordinary families and families of poor reputation. Members are ascribed status according to the family to which they are born. In Kerala, each family has a name. The status of a person is judged according to the name of his family. This becomes very relevant, especially at the time of marriage of a person.
- **Physical attributes:** Everyone has some peculiar inborn or innate qualities. Physical attribute play a role to some extent in defining the status of an individual. For example, a charismatic person having ascribed qualities to became a good leader.
- **Race and caste:** Race and caste system reflects multiple magnitude of social inequality. Even in modern era people with some specific race or caste prefer that their community members follow ancestry occupation only. There may be no social mobility observed. For example, in some society's women not having any authority or power to make decisions independently.

Determinants of Achieved Status

Horton and **Hunt** affirmed that “A social position which is secured through individual choice and competition is known as achieved status”.

The following factors are important in achieving status in the society:

- **Wealth:** Wealth is a very important factor in determining the social status. Wealth gives power to an individual. He can exert much control on other individuals by the might of wealth. In the modern world, the importance of wealth is increasing day by day in determining social status of the individual.
- **Occupation:** Occupation is also a significant determinant of social status. Certain occupations like national or provincial services, doctors and engineers, businessmen are more reputed in the society as compared with several others.
- **Education:** The level of education also is important in the determination of social status. A highly educated or technically qualified and trained person has greater respect and honour in the society.
- **Political authority:** In the modern world, persons well-placed in political life, especially those who hold positions in the government, have very high status. Government Ministers, Members of Parliament, Members of Legislative Assemblies and other political dignitaries have high status in the society.
- **Marriage:** Marriage automatically gives the status of a husband, or wife, and further that of a daughter-in-law, son-in-law, brother-in-law, sister-in-law and several other related statuses. Besides this, a family or group to which one marries also raises or lowers the person's social status.

- **Individual achievements:** In contemporary society, individual achievements are very significant in determining social status. This may be in the field of education, occupation, sports, literature, art, science or any other field.

Though all the above-mentioned factors are important in determining social status, it is the sociocultural system which determines the relative importance of each factor.

For example, in a patriarchal society, a son may have higher status, whereas in a matriarchal society the daughter might occupy equal or even higher status than son. In a traditional society, the occupation of a priest may be highly respected, whereas in the materialistic modern world, status is determined on the basis of one's occupation.

ROLE

In every society, there are positions in any given aspect of social life. According to Linten, these positions are status. Roles are closely related to the concept of status is the concept of role. In fact, these two are closely inter-linked. The role of a person is determined by his or her social status. Whenever an individual performs any action, it is performed because of position and these actions are according to status. He acts according to the status. He acts according to expectations of that status and these acts are known as roles.

Meaning of the Role

The position or the situation that a person occupies in society or within social structure is called status of that person. As a result of that status and position within society he is expected to carry out certain hard work or functions of daily needs. These functions or hard work are known as roles of a person. In our day-to-day life, we have a great variety of roles – father, mother, businessman, shopkeeper, consumer, bus-driver, teacher, voter, and politician and so on. All these roles are an integral or crucial part of behavior in a group life.

“According to Linton, he better described the term “Role”. The term role is used to allocate the sum total of our specific cultural pattern associated with a particular status. It includes person’s attitude, values and behavior ascribed by the society to any and all person occupying this status. It is sometimes representing overt behavior or performance and a role has the dynamic aspect of the status; what is the individual has to do or act in order to certify and validate the occupation of the status”.

Definitions of Social Role

A social role is the expected behavior associated with a social position. The concept or thought of role was first introduced by George Herbert Mead in his book “Mind self and Society”.

- According to **Ogburn and Nimkoff**, “A role is a set of socially expected and approved behavior pattern, consisting of both duties and privileges, associated with a particular position in a group”.
- According to **Elliott and Merrill**, “Role is the part a person plays as a result of each status”.
- **Kingsley Davis** stated “The manner in which a person actually carries out the requirements of his position”.

Role is sociologically important because it demonstrates how individual activity is socially determined and thus follows a regular pattern. The same person may have different roles in a group. For example, a man is a son to his parents, brother to his brothers or sisters, an uncle, a husband, a son-in-law, a teacher, professor, or a committee member, a father to his own children, and so on. His behavior with the people differs according to the role he is expected to play.

Nature of Role

Every individual is a member of society and has to play certain roles. The nature or characteristics of role are:

- Role playing is obligatory for all members. The number of roles that one plays depends on the statuses the person assumes.
- Some social roles are shared by many people, such as there are many citizens, voters, and teachers and so on.
- Some social roles are enacted only by one or by comparatively a few individuals at a particular time in particular place. For example, in India there are only a few governors at a time.
- Some social role may be assumed voluntarily. The individual may choose to enact certain roles. For example, one may choose to enact a member of a club or play as wicket keeper in a cricket team.
- The assumption or hypothesis of certain roles is largely involuntary. The enactment of many such roles has to make place continuously. Role of a female, role of a male and so on.

Roles may change continuously along with statuses. For example, a person has the status of a son and brother in the beginning of his life, but as he grows older, he gets or achieves many other statuses and consequent roles too.

For example, the role of a man as husband and head of the family was certain and undisputed till recently, but with modern democratic ideologies and women's employment outside the home, this concept is fast changing. Similarly, the role of a woman as a wife and mother is also changing. When status and roles are not clearly defined, individuals are confused and face difficulties in fulfilling their roles, and this leads to social disorganization. Similarly, multiplicity of roles of the same individual might create serious role conflicts and problems of adjustment.

For example, a woman's role as a wage earner and full time worker outside the home can seriously affect her role as mother or daughter-in-law. This can lead to a number of conflicts and problems. Family conflicts, juvenile delinquency, and family disorganization may be caused by inadequate and improper role play of the mother, father or other members of the family. But in any complex society as of today, roles are continuously changing and multiplying and a person may not be able to fulfil all the roles equally well, and in a satisfactory manner.

Role Conflict

Role conflict is a social-psychological idea, concept or thought used to investigate and explain individual's experiences of competing or conflicting demands.

Inter-role conflict: This type of conflict appears when an individual is engaged with or involved in several roles (two or more roles) at a time, whose expectations are inconsistent. For example, a corporation president having dual role; he is expected, in that role, to take part in social engagements, meetings to enhance or promote the image of the corporation. This may be in conflict with his or her role as a parent in the family, in which he or she is expected to spend more time with his or her children and family members to be an ideal parent.

Intra-role conflict: This type of role conflict comes into existence when the role requirements are different for one person; according to the focal person's attitudes, values, and professional behavior. For example, intra-role conflict occurs when an organizational member of a profession is required to enter into price-fixing schemes or procedures, which are not matching with his or her professional behavior or ethical standards.

Role Strain

Role strain describes the stress or pressure the person feels that result from the differing demands and expectations associated with a social role.

According to **Goode**, "Role strain refers to the stress when, for any number of reasons, an individual cannot meet the demands of his social roles.

Role strain happens when someone has multiple or numerous overlapping, incompatible roles, and thus taking on one role interferes with their performance in another.

For example, someone taking on the roles of parent, manager, caretaker, and writer may experience role strain because these roles in combination may take up more time, stress, tension, and resources to complete the task as the person has to be present at multiple places simultaneously.

As we have already indicated, the entire society may be understood as a system of statuses and roles. In modern society, statuses and roles are rapidly changing.

ROLE AND STATUS AS STRUCTURAL ELEMENTS OF SOCIAL SYSTEM

We can examine expected and predictable social relationships in terms of five elements: statuses, social roles, groups, social networks, and social institutions. These elements make up social structure just as a foundation, walls, and ceilings make up buildings structure. The elements of social structure are developed throughout the lifelong process of socialization.

- **Statuses:** Sociologists use the term status to refer to any of the full range of socially defined positions within a large group or society, from the lowest to the highest. Within our society, a person can hold a number of statuses at the same time. Sociologists observed some statuses as ascribed and others as achieved. An ascribed status is assigned to a person by society without regards or consideration of the person's unique talents or characteristics. Generally, this assignment takes place at birth; thus, a person's racial background, gender, and age are all considered the same as ascribed statuses. Unlike ascribed statuses, an achieved status comes to us largely through our own efforts and hard work. We must do something to acquire or get an achieved status—go to school, learn a skill, establish a friendship, invent a new product. Our society gives such importance or attention to race and gender that they often dominate our lives.
- **Social roles:** Throughout our lives, we acquire or obtain what sociologists call social roles. A social role is a set of expectations for people who occupy or get engaged in a given social position or status. Roles are significant components of social structure. According to perspectives from functionalist roles contribute to a society's stability by enabling members to anticipate the behavior of others and to pattern their own actions accordingly. However social roles can also be dysfunctional if they restrict people's interactions and relationships. For example, if we view a person only as a 'police officer' or 'supervisor' it will be difficult to relate to him or her as a friend or neighbor.

Within the context of sociology, social structures help to provide a framework in which people interact on an interpersonal level based on their various traits, interests, and other aspects of their individuality. These various groups help to create harmonious relationships within society by providing people opportunities to bond, grow, feel safe, and express themselves as individuals and as a collective outlook. Social networks are the different types of social groups people join themselves to and how those groups interact and are viewed in society. Social groups and organizations provide the opportunity for much broader social structure as well as foundations of connections to be made.

Status is an indicator or marking of subjective ranking throughout society or within a social group. Roles have to do or function with what an individual does and the acts he is expected to perform in daily lives. Every individual has to play certain roles in accordance with their status. If a person does not play the roles expected of him, he cannot get the expected status too. One cannot get a status without playing a role expected of that status. When the statuses and roles function in a proper manner, there is social organization. Status and roles are important in society because it is the fundamental unit of analyses of social structure.

INTERRELATIONSHIP OF INSTITUTIONS

Within the social system, there are number of social institutions which are interrelated to each other. Interrelation is defined as the flow of information, money, material and structure (physical geographical, organizational) with the procedure, feedback control process and mechanisms which exist to ensure that the system is moving toward its desired objectives. An educational institute is interrelated to financial institutions (for money deposition, withdrawal, loan, etc.) and other institutions for purchasing books, stationary, and arranging man power. One institute is interrelated to other institutions in one or other ways.

Importance of Interrelationship of Institutions

The social system has the characteristics such as interrelations which are meaningful, and there must be functional relationship as well as unity.

The social system has elements such as belief and knowledge, sentiments, goals and status rank, role power sanctions and norms.

- A number of organizations such as political, economical, religious, and educational organizations exist within social system.
- Each institution has framed certain rules, regulations, policies, procedures and protocols and means of social control over its members.
- These institutions are interrelated to achieve the goal.
- Institutions are interdependent. Social system consists of many institutions, but act is not independent of the other. For example, marriage depends on religion, government institutions, property, etc. further there is a balance among the various institutions.
- Every society transmits the culture through the institution of education. Recreation needs, religious belief, law and order in society are met by the appropriate institutions. Thus man is subjected to influence over certain institutions.

Major institutions of any society are family, education, recreation, religion, economic life and politics (Fig. 6.8).

FAMILY AS A SOCIAL INSTITUTIONS

Family is a cradle of the socialization of the child. Family patterns differ from one culture to another, and even within same culture. Despite the differences, however, the family is universal—found in every culture.

Definitions of family according to different sociologist are as follows:

- According to **Ogburn** and **Nimkoff** “family is a durable association of husband and wife with or without children or a man or woman along with children”.
- **MacIver** says that “Family is a group defined by a sex relationship sufficiently precise and enduring to provide for the procreation and upbringing of children”.

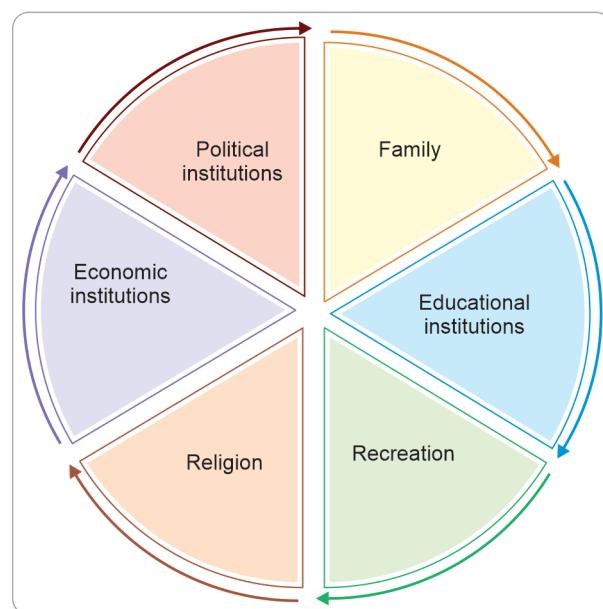


Figure 6.8: Interrelationship of major institutions

According to sociologists William F. Ogburn, the family performs six permanent functions:

- 1. Reproduction:** For a society to maintain cycle, it must replace or substitute dying members through process of reproduction. In this manner, the family always contributes to human survival within society through its function of reproduction.
- 2. Protection:** Unlike the young of other animal species, human infants need constant observation by their parents, high quality care, support and economic security. In all cultures throughout the world, the only family assumes the ultimate responsibility for the care, love and affection, protection, support and upbringing of their children.
- 3. Socialization:** Parents and other kin monitor constantly a child's behavior and transmit their family norms, values, customs, tradition, and language of their culture to the child. On other hand we can say family is the first place where socialization begins.
- 4. Regulation of sexual behavior:** Sexual norms are subject to changing over time to time (for instance, in the customs for dating) and across cultures (Compare strict Saudi Arabia to the more permissive in Denmark). However, whatever the time a period or cultural value of a society already exists, standards of sexual behavior are most clearly defined within the family circle only.
- 5. Affection and companionship:** Ideally, the family fulfils the function of love, affection and self-belongingness. The family only provides members with warm and intimate relationships, helping them to feel safe, secure, satisfied and contented.
- 6. Provision of social status:** We inherit ascribed status or social position because of the family background and reputation of our parents and siblings. The family presents the new-born child with an ascribed status based on race and ethnicity that helps to determine his or her place within society's social stratification system. Moreover, family resources affect children's ability and skills to pursue certain opportunities, such as higher education as well as special lessons.

EDUCATION AS SOCIAL INSTITUTIONS

Education is an important aspect of human life, because, man feels the necessity to train his young according to his values and cultural traditions. Every society has some system by which it can transfer its culture to the coming generations. In the primitive societies and in underdeveloped communities, this is achieved through informal training by family and community members. Modern society has highly developed complex system of formal education and also specific training for a large variety of occupations.

Definitions of Education

- According to Peter Worsley, "Education is deliberate instruction."
- According to A.W. Green, "Education is the conscious training of the young for the later adoption of adult roles."
- According to Emory S. Bogardus, "Education consists in acquiring the meaning of the cultural heritage and life."

By modern convention, education has come to mean formal training by specialists, within the formal organization of the school. In preliterate societies, learning was mainly through imitation. Training is imparted by family members, oral suggestions, moral stories, mythological stories, folk songs; all these were media of instruction. Modern education is quite different from the traditional ones. Modern schools, colleges and universities educate young people to secure modern jobs as teachers, doctors, engineers, technicians, nurses, officers, soldiers, and a variety of other occupations. So, education is taken as the solution for socioeconomic development. Therefore, the Constitution of India has made at least primary education compulsory for all children in India. We need to have a mixture of traditional and modern system in our education in India.

Functions of Education in Modern Times

- To complete the process of socialization.
- To help in all round development of individual.
- To transmit the cultural heritage.
- To help in intellectual development.
- To help in development of moral and ethical values.
- To help in the process of adaptation to the society.
- To function as an innovator of change.
- To assist the person in finding suitable vocation.
- To improve social status.

Problems of Modern Education

- Large increase in enrollment.
- Total change in the environment. A child is taken out of the home environment.
- Problem of curriculum.
- Education is increasing the gap between the poor and the rich.
- Modern education is not bringing about the expected change and improvement in the person.
- Education is coming under the influence of politics and political parties
- Personal relationship is absent between teachers and students. This creates problems and tension.
- Education is becoming a means to earn more money. The personality development and refinement is neglected.
- Lack of dedication among teachers. Very few of them have a sense of vocation and commitment.
- Examination system is often inappropriate.
- No stress on spiritual and moral development. Therefore, character formation is not given due place.
- Western-oriented education.

Suggestions for Improvement in Educational System

- Education should be child-centric
- Have limited number of children in each class, avoiding overcrowding
- Better wages for teachers
- Keep education away from political influence
- Value education and moral training be part of the curriculum
- Have an integrated approach in education-student-teacher-parent approach with good communication among them
- Interesting curriculum and less burdensome for the child
- Indian culture be given due importance
- Stop commercialisation, and mechanization in education

RECREATIONAL INSTITUTIONS

Recreation consists of activities or experiences carried on within leisure, usually chosen voluntarily by the participant or members for their comfort. Recreational activities are carried out either because of satisfaction, pleasure or creative enrichment derived, or because participants perceive certain personal or social values to be gained from them. It may, also be perceived as the process of interest or contribution, or as the emotional state derived from involvement. Recreation refers to all those activities that people choose to do to refresh or revive their bodies as well as minds and make their leisure time more interesting and enjoyable. Examples of

recreation activities are walking, fine art, swimming, meditation, reading, playing games indoor or outdoor and dancing.

Meaning of Recreational Institutions

Recreation is an essential part of human life. It is found in many different forms which are not only shaped naturally by individual comfort and interests but also by the surrounding social construction. For the fulfilment of this need there may be requirements of recreational institutions.

Recreational institution means an area of land containing sleeping accommodations and facilities used for both passive and active forms of recreation, not be limited to children's camp, religious camp, institutional camp, or other like or similar holiday camp or establishment.

Definitions of Recreational Institutions

Recreational institution can be defined as an organized system of social relationships for satisfying human desire of entertainment, amusement and play, etc.

Functions of Recreational Institutions

A recreation activity has many health benefits. Therapeutic recreation has been developed to take advantage of this positive effect. Recreational activities can be collective, mutual or solitary, active or passive, outdoors or indoors, healthy or harmful, and useful for society or sometimes detrimental.

Some recreational activities are performed based on personal interest—such as gambling, recreational drug use, or delinquent activities—may lead to violation in societal norms and laws.

The main functions of recreational institutions are (Fig. 6.9):

- **Physical health:** Recreational activities, especially outdoor ones improve one's health like maintaining lower body fat, lowering blood and cholesterol levels, increasing muscular strength, energy level, flexibility, muscular endurance, body composition and cardiovascular endurance.
- **Mental health:** Mental health is essential for overall physical health of an individual. Recreational activities help manage stress and worries. It provides a chance to nurture oneself and provides a sense of balance and self-esteem, which can directly reduce anxiety and depression. Such recreational activities help students to become more independent, self-reliant, emphatic and self-disciplined.
- **Improved quality of life:** People, who make recreation a priority, are more likely to feel satisfied regarding their lives overall. According to an American Recreation Coalition Study, 2000, Recreation also helps people to deal with common day to day problems more effectively as it makes people more optimists and with a positive outlook toward their life.

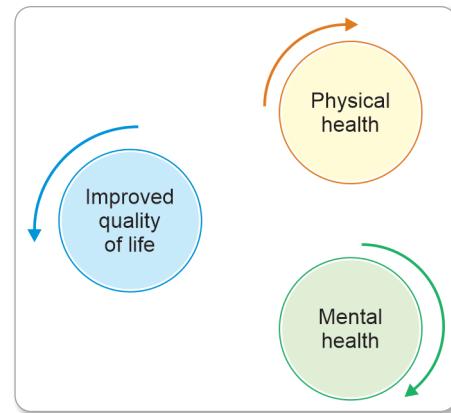


Figure 6.9: Functions of recreational institutions

RELIGIOUS INSTITUTION

Man was always puzzled about the ideas of soul, life after death, supernatural power, secrets of nature, and several other matters. In the times of distress and problems, man wants to rely on some force above and

Unit VI Social Organization and Disorganization

beyond him. That force is termed GOD or supernatural power. The quest of human minds always had been to understand this power and manipulate it for the sake of their benefit. This effort gave rise to the origin and development of religious institutions.

Definitions of Religion as Institutions

Religion means a system of belief and a complex structure. Different sociologists define religion in their own way as described here:

- According to **Johnson**, “A religion is a more or less coherent system of beliefs and practices concerning a supernatural order of beings, forces, places or entities”
- According to **James Frazer**, “By religion, I understand a propitiation or conciliation of powers superior to man which are believed to direct and control the course of nature and of human life”.
- According to **Malinowski**, “Religion is a mode of action as well as a system of beliefs, a sociological phenomenon as well as personal experience.”

Religion is a universal institution. The pattern of worship may differ from society to society according to their religious background.

Characteristics of Religion

- It is a system of beliefs and practices concerning the supernatural power.
- It is expressed in various actions as puja, bhajan, worship, fasting, sacrifice, offering, etc.
- Ideas of purity are attached to religion.
- There are also some ideas of fear and awe attached to religion.
- Religion is the supreme value of human society.
- It is an internal experience as well as a system of external behavior.
- There are symbols and mythologies attached to every religion. For example, cross is a symbol of Christian religion.
- There are also certain taboos attached to religion.
- Religion also can give rise hierarchy in the society. For instance, high priest, religious leader, etc. They occupy higher status than the ordinary people.

Sociological Significance of Religion

- Religion is helpful in releasing mental tensions and worries.
- It is a powerful agency of social control.
- It protects and promotes morals, values and ideas of the society.
- It is at the root of every civilization.
- Religion is helpful in maintaining peace and harmony in society.
- Religion protects values of freedom, equality and social justice.
- Religion strengthens relationship between human beings.
- It brings certainty in life.
- It acts as a source of healthy recreation.
- It is an agency of social welfare.
- It encourages discipline.
- Religion gives hope and security.

Even the modern man is afraid of the natural forces and with all the advancement of science and technologies, frightening natural phenomena have no rational explanation.

ECONOMIC INSTITUTIONS

The economic institutions mostly center round food, clothing and housing. They are the basic necessities of man anywhere. The economic institutions deal with the various aspects of production, consumption, change and distribution. The word, ‘Economics’ has come from the Greek word ‘Oikonomos’, meaning matters relating to the household. Economics is concerned with various aspects of the household.

Definitions of Economic Institutions

- According to **Jones**, “The economic institution is the complex of techniques, ideas and customs relating to the exploitation of the environment for the satisfaction of subsistence needs”.
- According to **Berhard** and **others**, “Economic institutions consist of all customs, mores, traditions, laws and other norms that regulate the production and exchange of goods and services in the market”.

Without the satisfaction of the basic economic needs, such as food, cloth, housing, and other facilities, social life will be miserable. Poverty, unemployment, low standard of life, and frustration cannot build a healthy society. In fact, poverty is one of the serious problems of the world today. There are advanced countries, developing countries and underdeveloped countries. We have slowly developed from the food-gathering, hunting, pastoral, and agricultural stages to industrial stage. Most of the scientific inventions are directed toward the improvement of the socioeconomic condition of man.

Characteristics of modern economy are as follows:

- Private property
- Money and credit
- Large scale production—industrialization
- Financial corporation
- Wage system, instead of barter system
- Contract
- Monopoly in production, exchange and distribution
- Complex distribution system and market
- Division of labor and specialization
- Secondary cooperation
- Competition
- Economic class system

POLITICAL INSTITUTION

Political institutions are one of the six major institutions of any society, the other ones being family, education, recreation, religion and economic life.

Sociologists have held that the political institutions hold the highest control over the individuals and groups in a society. Ogburn and Nimkoff have said in their book “Handbook of Sociology” that from cradle to graveyard, the political institutions exercises great control on all. State and government are the political organizations. Political system maintains order and balance in the society. They performed legislative, executive and judiciary functions.

Definitions of Political System as an Institution

- According to **Easton**, “A political system is that system of interaction in any society through which binding or authoritative allocations are made and implemented”.

Unit VI Social Organization and Disorganization

- According to **Max Weber**, “political system is a human community that successfully claims the monopoly of the legitimate use of physical force within a given territory”.

State

State is a politically organized and geographically limited body of people, those possess the right to use force. It has an instrument, government through which operates. Government includes only those personnel who are appointed or elected, not all the citizens of the state.

- According to **Vidya Bhushan**, “State is a most powerful organization which regulates the social relationship of man and is the overall control institution of society”.
- According to **Harold Laski**, state is “A territorial society divided into government and subjects, claiming within its allotted physical area, a supremacy over all other institutions.”

Government

Government is the organ or agency of the state for coercive control According to Johnson, “A government exercises imperative control within a definite territory and within that territory, it successfully claims its monopoly of the use of force”.

Force or physical coercion is an essential element of political system to achieve social control.

Functions of Political Organizations

State is a powerful political organization. Certain functions of state are:

- It maintains order in society performing a number of functions such as regulating and coordinating the work of associations, defining rights and obligations, controlling means of communication and transportations, etc.
- State regulates the exploitation of natural resources in the interest of present and future generations and entire community.
- State regulates the behavior of members.

The state functions for the welfare of society. Besides, the other functions of the state are:

- Providing facilities for education
- Arranging for health and sanitation
- Taking care of helpless citizens, like old people, destitute, specially abled and others
- Providing facilities for transportation and communication
- Ensuring maximum utilization of natural resources
- Ensuring development of industry and trade
- Provision of weights, measures, etc.
- Development of agriculture
- Providing employment to people
- Eradication of social evils
- Maintaining international relations
- Providing social security to people

The main differences between State and Government are:

- State is a community, whereas government is an institution by which the state functions.
- State is an extensive unit, whereas government has lots of limitations.
- State is permanent, while government is changeable.
- The state is an end in itself, whereas government is only a means to achieve the ends of the state.



- Basic elements of the state are same everywhere but the form, aims and functions of government vary widely.
- State has sovereignty; the government possesses the power which the state gives.

SOCIAL CONTROL

Social control is the study of the mechanisms or methods, in the form of patterns of pressure, force through which society maintains social order as well as cohesion. These control mechanisms establish and enforce a standard of behavior for members of a society. These control mechanisms include a variety of components, such as shame, coercion, force, restraint, and persuasion. The mechanism of social control is exercised through individuals and institutions, ranging from the family, to peers, and to organizations such as the state, police, religious organizations, schools, as well as the workplace itself. Regardless of its source, the main goal of social control is to maintain conformity to established norms, order, rules and regulations within society for its better functioning. Social control is typically employed by group members in response to anyone, sometimes it considers deviant, problematic, threatening, or undesirable, with the ultimate goal of ensuring compliance or conformity within society.

A person living in a society has to adopt certain rules and regulations. These are the social norms on which the whole society is running. For smooth functioning and running of these norms, social controls are necessary. Any society must have harmony of order, where there is no harmony or order the society actually does not exist because society is a harmonious organization of human relationships.

Concept of Social Control

The discussions about social control started or can be traced back through the writings of eminent social philosophers as John Locke, Thomas Hobbes, and Jean-Jacques Rousseau, as well as classic social theorists such as Karl Marx, Emile Durkheim, and Max Weber, among others. Man is born free and everywhere he is in chain. The fact it is true that man cannot be absolutely free in society. Man has given to society the power of exercising its control over his behavior. The control which the society exercises is the behavior of its members through various mechanisms can be referred to as social control. E.A. Ross was the first American sociologists to deal with this concept of social control in his famous book "Social Control" published in 1901. The concept of social control is related to the idea of social order. The concept simply referred to society's ability to regulate itself.

Meaning of Social Control

Social control means to bring people of society within the limits and compel them to adopt conformity (standard rules or law) to social norms. The term social control and socialization are both closely related and connected to each other. Social control is a part of socialization, through socialization the social control becomes effective.

Horton & Hunt says that social control is a complete process where a society provides security to its members and conformity to their prospects.

Social control is the process of a group regulating itself according to its beliefs, principles, conducts, and values. A major purpose of social control is to stop or prevent negative deviance or antisocial activities, which is a break from established laws and values that may be damaging to others as well as entire social structure.

Definitions of Social Control

Society in order to exist and progress has to exercise a certain control over its members since any marked deviation from the established way is considered a threat to its welfare, such control has been termed social control. Different sociologists define social control in their own ways as described here:

- The pattern of pressure that society exerts to maintain order, and establish rules is social control
—**Ogburn & Nimkoff**
- **Mannheim** defines social control as the sum of those methods by which a society tries to influence human behavior to maintain a given order.
- According to **Lapierre**, “Social control is a corrective for inadequate socialization”.
- According to **Joseph Rousek**, “Social control is a collective term for those processes planned or unplanned by which individuals are taught, persuaded or compelled to conform to the usages and life values of groups”.
- According to **E.A. Rose**, “Social control refers to the ‘system of devices’ whereby society brings its members into conformity with the accepted standards of behavior”.

Thus, the concept of social control is related to the impression of social command, which is identified as existing in the following areas of society such as the education system, police and the law, social work, the welfare state and the working environment.

Nature or Characteristics of Social Control (Fig. 6.10)

- **Social control is a lifelong process:** Social control is as old as human society. The process of social control starts from informal agencies, like values, beliefs, etc. and goes to formal agencies. It continues throughout life processes.

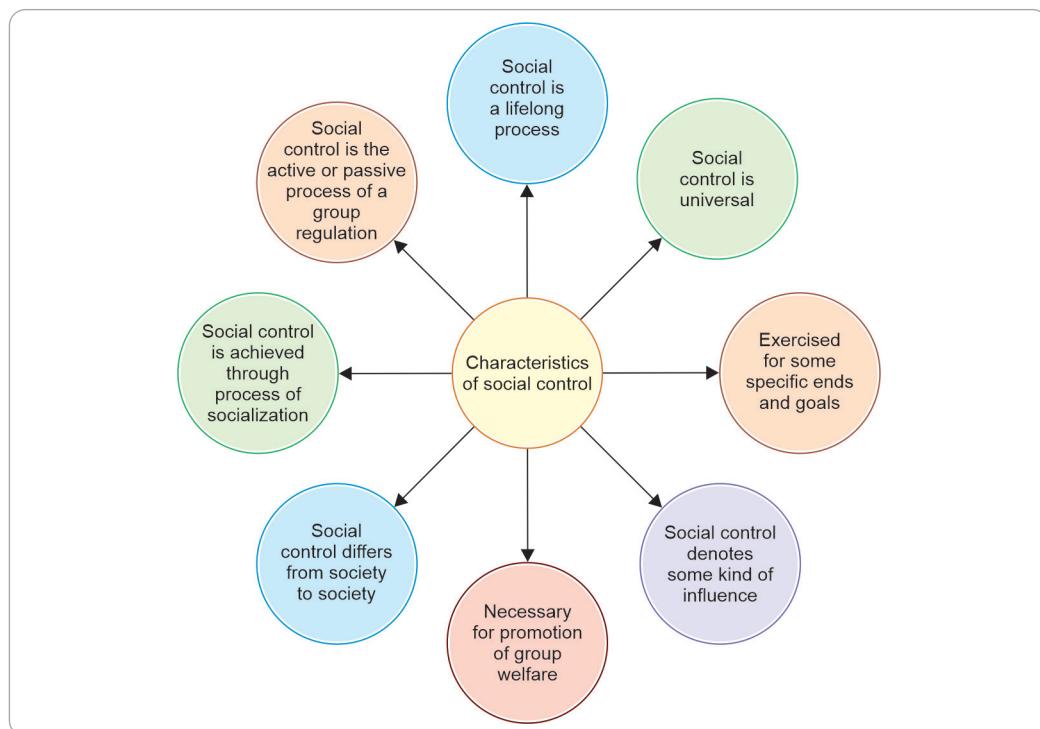


Figure 6.10: Characteristics of social control

- **Social control is universal:** Where there is society there is social control. Social control is also exercised even in the uncivilized primitive societies.
- **Exercised for some specific ends and goals:** Social control is exercised for some specific ends and goals to achieve by the individual or a collective group.
- **Social control denotes some kind of influence:** Social control is an influence exerted through social suggestions, public opinion, religion and appeal. For example, it may denote the influence of a dominant group over several smaller groups. In social control, influence is exercised by society bitterly than a single person or individual, such groups may be in the form of family, union, club, etc.
- **Necessary for promotion of group welfare:** Social control is exercised by a specific society for the promotion of group welfare.
- **Social control differs from society to society:** The process of social control differs from society to society and or even differs in the family, religion, etc. for example, informal means of social control differs in accordance with different customs, traditions, values and beliefs.
- **Social control is achieved through process of socialization:** Socialization process begins early in the life same at this stage informal means of social control begins.
- **Social control is the active or passive process of a group regulation:** Social control is the active or passive process of a group regulating itself according to its beliefs, principles, and values. A major purpose of social control is to stop or prevent negative deviance or antisocial act, which is a break from established laws and values that may be damaging to others as well as entire society.

Thus, social control is necessary to establish unity and solidarity in social order. It is the way to control and regulate the behavior of an individual in a society.

Aims of Social Control

Social control is necessary for an orderly and organized social life. Social control is important for:

- **Re-establishing the odd social system:** For social progress, the main need of social control is to keep the existing order intact.
- **Regulation of individual social behavior:** Social control is necessary in order to regulate the individual behavior in accordance with the social objectives and social values. It also helps to maintain the social order.
- **Obedience to social decisions:** Society takes certain decisions, these decisions are taken in order to maintain, regulate and uphold the values of the society.
- **To establish social unity:** Unity is not possible without social control. Social control regulates the behavior of individuals in accordance with established norms and rules which brings uniformity in behavior. If social life and progress have to ensure, group life should be given priority over individual freedom. Agencies of social control assure that the group interest is maintained over individual interest.
- **To bring solidarity:** Social control is to create or develop the feeling of solidarity in the minds of every people. (In the competitive world, the weaker group may be exploited by the stronger group or equally powerful groups, this affects harmony and order). When deviant elements are controlled, order is established in the group, and this brings about social solidarity.
- **To bring conformity in society:** Every group is prescribed certain standards of behavior, which all members of group are expected to follow. Various means of social control exert pressure on members to follow this set pattern. Social control is helpful to maintain uniformity and conformity in the society.
- **To provide social sanctions:** Sanctions (punishment or approval) are used by the group to control the behavior of the individuals. Human beings are characterized by extreme individualization traits. But if everybody is allowed to follow his own pattern of behavior, there will be absolute confusion or

Unit VI Social Organization and Disorganization

misunderstanding. Social control is essential to control the behavior of individuals so that individuality does not stand in the way of social life.

- **To check cultural maladjustment:** Society is continuously undergoing some changes very gradually or in a fast way. The individual has to adjust his behavior according to new changes taking place in the society from time to time. But all the individuals cannot adjust themselves to new situations, some may get deviated, thus social control is necessary to check maladjustment of individuals.
- **To maintain social organization and order:** Different parts of the social system are organized and interconnected with each other, and there may be specific function assigned to each part. Agencies of social control pressurizing each part to complete the assigned function in a given time.
- **To help in socialization:** Through socialization, the younger generation is taught to obey the rules, values and norms which are established by the older generation. Control is essential in this process.

Process of Social Control

Social control is a part of socialization. As a matter of fact, societies depend heavily upon effective socialization to internalize social norms, rules and values as the individual's guides and motives toward action. Through socialization societies aim to control the behavior of its members subconsciously or by informal means. Social control is the active or passive process of a group regulating itself according to its beliefs, principles, and values, ideals and ethics. A major purpose of social control is to stop or prevent negative deviance as well as antisocial activities which are a break from established laws and values that may be damaging to others. The ultimate thing is that what is considered normal, moral, valuable, ethical, or deviant varies from social group to social group and society to society.

Types or Forms of Social Control

There are two types of social control: Generally social control is classified under the following two forms (Fig. 6.11).

Formal Social Control

Formal social control is exercised by known and deliberate agencies of social control such as law, army, punishment, constitution, etc. (Exercised by secondary groups)

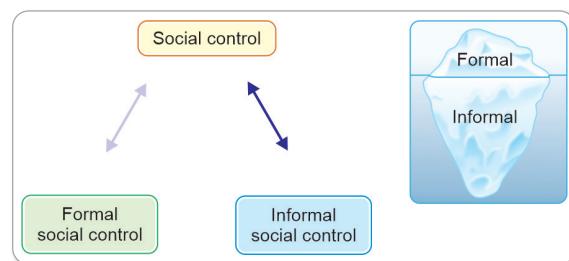


Figure 6.11: Forms of social control

Informal Social Control

The agencies of informal social control have grown according to the needs of the society. (Generally primary institution exercise this type of social control)

- Folkways
- Mores
- Customs
- Social Norms, etc.

Folkways

American sociologist, William G. Sumner (1840–1910) acknowledged or identified by two types of norms in his book. Folkways (1906), which he labelled as 'folkways' and 'mores'. They represent modes of procedure or course of action in a society or in a group.



Any routine activity in itself is a habit but when it becomes general among the communicating folk, it is known as folkway, then it is a habit of a group. When habits develop the uniformities in particular habits of a large group to which sociologists term as folkways. Not all group habits become general. They differ from individual to individual and place to place.

They are learned in the process of socialization. They become the second nature of the any individual. When habits are socially approved and followed by a large number of persons in a society, they become folkways, for example, shaking hands, habits of exchanging greetings and courtesies. The wearing of a cap, hat or turban and many other matters of dressing sense are habits of individuals but they are folkways from the point of view of the group.

Definitions of Folkways: Folkways represent modes of procedure or course of action in a society or in a group. Different sociologists define folkways in their own ways:

- According to **Reuter and Hart**, “The folkways are simple habits of action common to the members of the group; they are the ways of the folks that are somewhat standardised and have some degree of traditional sanction for their persistence”.
- **MacIver and Page** defined Folkways as “The folkways are the recognized or accepted ways of behaving in the society.”
- According to **Merill**, “Folkways are literally the ways of the folk, that is, social habits or group expectations that have arisen in the daily life of the group”.
- **Gillin and Gillin** define as “Folkways are behavior patterns of everyday life which generally arise unconsciously in a group”.
- According to **Lundberg**, “Folkways are the typical or habitual belief, attitudes and style of conduct observed within a group or community”.

The folkways are unconscious, spontaneous, uncoordinated adjustment of man to his environment. This consists of the frequent repetition of little acts, often by great numerous acting in concern or at least acting in the same way when primary relations or face to face relations carryout with the same need.

The major characteristics of folkways are described here:

- **Unconscious behavior:** Folkways arise spontaneously out of the fundamental fact that man must act in order to live or survive within society. They generally arise unconsciously in a group such as shaking hands, tipping the hat, calling on strangers; these acts done without planned or rational thought.
- **Normal behavior:** Folkways are not looked on by most people as moral matters or considered normal behavior. They are judged as the ‘right’ way and ‘normal’. People accept most of them unquestionably.
- **Passed down from generation to generation:** Folkways develop out of group experience. They are passed down from generation to generation through interaction, relations and communication.
- **Change according to changing situation:** Folkways change as culture changes or when we enter in different situations. They differ or vary from group to group as well as from society to society.
- **Informal means of social control:** Folkways are the weakest norms, which are most often violated but least likely to carry any severe penalty as well as punishment. Violations of folkways bring only mild censure in the form of some smiles, glances, or occasional little comments from others.
- **Diverse in nature:** Every society has so many folkways. Even the most primitive or prehistoric society will have a few hundred folkways. In modern industrial societies, folkways become even more numerous and involved. Folkways may and sometimes do become burdensome. They sometimes exert more energy than they conserve.

Importance of Folkways: Folkways are the basis of our cultural heritage. Folkways are important for individuals because:

- Folkways give us better understanding and perception about a particular culture.
- A folkway is a strong or powerful way of informal means of social control.

Unit VI Social Organization and Disorganization

- Folkways are regulative and exert pressure upon the individual and the group to conform to the norms, rules or regulations.
- They are most effective and control the individuals' behavior in society even more than the state action.
- Folkways are as indispensable or obligatory to social life as language, and they serve almost the same purpose.

In simple terms, folkways are the customary, normal and habitual ways of the group to meet certain needs or solving conflicting situations or day-to-day problems. The time of meals, the number of meals per day, the manner of taking meals—lunch or dinner, the kind of food used, the methods of its preparations, the manner of speech and way of wearing dress, forms of etiquette and the numerous other facts of daily life are some of the examples of customary practices to which individuals conform to their personal habits and daily lives.

Mores

Mores are the customs. They are also unwritten or unrecorded customary ways of our life. They have very serious binding on groups. Their violation is a serious threat as well as danger to social order. Mores refer to any act or belief in accordance with customary group expectations. An act is considered moral if it is customary, and considered immoral if it is not customary.

Definitions of Mores: Mores are more serious norms; but also informal or unwritten like folkways. The following are the definition of mores:

- According to **R.M. MacIver** and **C.H. Page**, "When the folkways have added to them; conceptions of group welfare, standards of right and wrong, they are converted into mores."
- **Gillin** and **Gillin** stated that "Those customs and group routines which are thought by the members of the society to be necessary to the group's continued existence."
- According to **Edward Sapir**, "The term 'mores' is best reserved for those customs which connote fairly strong feelings of the tightness or wrongness of mode of behavior."

In simple words, we can say when the folkways clearly represent the group standards, principles, the group sense of what is fitting, right and conducive to well-being, then they become mores.

Characteristics of Mores: Characteristic feature of mores as described here:

- **Unconscious behavior:** Mores are also learned either consciously or unconsciously. They emerge or come forward gradually out of the customary practices of the people, largely without conscious choice or intention. Thus we can say mores are the unconscious actions practiced for right things.
- **Group concern:** Mores represent the living character of the group or community. They are always considered right by the people who share them among group.
- **Compulsive in nature:** Mores are compulsive or irrational in nature since they are considered morally right and their violation or disobedience is considered morally wrong.
- **Informal means of social control:** Mores regulate and control social life and human behavior. Wherever the mores are firmly established, obedience is usual or automatic. Violations of mores inspire intense reactions, and some types of punishments inevitably follow.
- **Dynamic in nature:** Mores vary from group to group and society to society or even from social era.

Importance of Mores:

- Mores are the morals or ethics of a group as well as ethics of the society itself. They are not necessarily based on written law and they can change according to changing needs. Mores act as a powerful instrument of social control.
- Mores guides human behavior according to different situations.
- Mores are more serious cultural standard of behaviors that distinguish between what is wrong or immoral and right or moral.

Difference between folkways and mores: The terms “mores” and “folkways” are of great importance in sociological context coined by the American sociologist William Graham Sumner.

Mores distinguish the divergence between right and wrong, while folkways draw a line between right and rude. Folkways are distinguished from mores not by their content but by the degree to which group members are compelled to conform to them, by the degree of importance, by the severity of punishment. Folkways differ from mores because folkways are less severely sanctioned and are not abstract principles.

In the expression of social usages, folkways regulating our behavior are called mores. The folkways and mores have the same source of their emergence and it is group interaction. Both are the customary ways of life and are standards of right and wrong. The people seek direction of their actions by learning these norms in group life. The difference lies in the degree of social control upon groups. Mores are more compulsory to conform or follow than the folkways. Wearing clothes is considered mores and the wearing clothes of different styles and wearing fashionable clothes are considered folkways. Purdah system observing for ladies used to be mores in our society but it has now become folkways.

Folkways + judgment of right and wrong + the element of group welfare = mores.

Thus, folkways become mores when the ideas of right and wrong along with the principle of group welfare are added to them.

Customs

A custom is a pattern of behavior that is followed by members of a particular cultural group. For example, we used to shake hands to welcome people when meeting someone is a common cultural practice. Customs foster or promote social harmony and unity among members of the group. In case if a law goes against an established social custom, the law may be difficult to support or uphold. Customs often involve binding reciprocal obligations and according to boundaries of the law.

Definitions of customs: A custom is defined as a cultural idea or thought that describes a regular, patterned behavior that is considered characteristic of life in a social system and social structure. Shaking hands, bowing, and kissing—all customs—are methods of greeting and welcoming people. The method most commonly used in a given society helps make a clear distinction between one cultural patterns from another.

- According to MacIver and Page, “The socially accredited ways of acting are the customs of society.”
- Duncan Mitchell in his ‘Dictionary of Sociology’ writes, “The term **Custom** refers to established modes of thought and action.”
- According to the **Law Dictionary**, customs can be defined as “A usage or practice of the people, which by common adoption and acquiescence and by long and unvarying habit, has become compulsory, and has acquired the force of a law with respect to the place or subject matter to which it relates.”

Thus, a social custom is an action or behavior that is considered to be acceptable within a specific group or cultural setting. In general, customs regulate or control the entire social life of man. Law alone itself cannot cover the whole range of social behavior. It is the customary practices that maintain balance and bring harmony in a society. The influence of custom, at times, extends beyond the level of one's own community.

Some of the customs do not play any significant role in social control. They just exist because of their ancient nature just as all people bathing in an unhygienic tank or a lake just because of an established religious custom from year back. For example, Lathmar Holi of Uttar Pradesh and Gotmar Mela of Madhya Pradesh (Pandhurna) sometimes leads to minor or major injuries to people who involved in this but people are practicing these customs today also. However, in most of the traditional societies, some customary practices are no longer relevant.

Characteristic features or Importance of custom in our life are shown in Figure 6.12.

- **Custom regulates social life:** Custom is an important means of controlling social behavior. The importance of customs in society cannot be minimized or reduced. They are so powerful that no one

can escape or breakout their range. Customs regulate social life, especially among illiterate people to a great extent and are very essential to the life of a society as well as for social structure.

- **Social heritage:** Customs preserve our culture and transmit it to the next succeeding generations, bring people together and develop social relationships among them. Enemies are turned into associates or friends by custom. In any religion, people follow certain ceremony or a formal procedure due to social heritage; this system is alive today because of customs.
- **Customs mold personality:** Customs play an important part in personality development. From birth till death, man is under the influence of certain customs. He is born out of marriage, a custom; he is brought up according to the customs and when he dies, he is given last rites as laid down by customs. Customs mold person's attitudes and ideas about social life.
- **Customs is universal:** There is no country or community wherein customs are not found. In some communities, they are regarded so sacred that their violation cannot be even thought of; violation of these can lead to serious consequences. The society wishes us to follow them in our social life. In primitive society, adherence to custom was the general rule, even today it is still observed among the native tribes.
- **Democratic and totalitarian in nature:** Custom is both democratic and totalitarian at the same time. It is democratic because it is made by the group; everybody contributes to its growth. It is totalitarian because it affects every sphere of self-expression, private and public; it influences our thoughts, beliefs and manners.

Acculturation is used to describe both the process of contacts between different cultures and also the customs of such contacts. Acculturation may involve either direct social interaction or exposure to other cultures through the mass media or communication. In other words, *acculturation* refers to the assimilation by one group of the culture to another which modifies the existing culture and so changes group identity. There may be a pressure or tension between old and new cultures which show the way to the adapting of the new as well as the old.

Many acts which may not be proved on logical principles may be sufficiently justified on psychological or social grounds. For example, the acts like man saluting the flag of the country, the son touching the feet of his parents every morning, the people entertaining their relatives and friends on a festival, in some customs women take their meals after the male members. If one gets psychological satisfaction or social appraisement by following a custom, these are sufficient rational grounds for following it on a normal basis. In India, a number of such practices may be seen among different communities.

According to Mannheim, "Money economy disintegrates customs because they are too slow in their workings. The modern society requires legal rules that can be promptly and uniformly enforced."

In brief, although custom is regarded as one of the less formal types of agency of social control, like public opinion, its influence on individual's social life is very significant as it alone contributes to the textual part of social behavior.

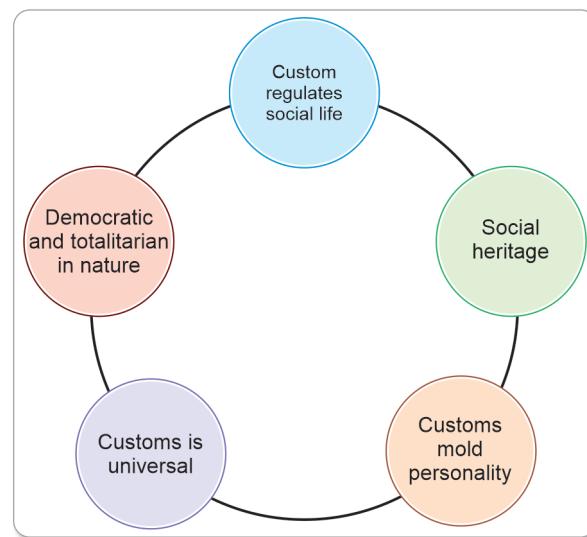


Figure 6.12: Characteristic features or importance of custom

Formal Means of Social Control

- **Education:** It is the great vehicle of social control. Education inculcates moral, intellectual and social values in individual.
- **Law:** Law is for all practical purposes; as well as it is uniform and is meant for all.
- **Coercion:** Used by all society. Force as a means of social control to control the behavior of person.
- **State:** A state is an organized political community acting under a government.
- **Social administration:** Social administration is the study of social arrangements and policies aimed at meeting social needs—especially state welfare systems. Academic social administration has typically adopted a practical, problem-solving and reforming approach.
- **Legislative process:** Legislative process means the steps required for a proposed bill to become a law. The basic function of Parliament is to make laws, amend them or repeal them. The procedure of construction of law or the legislative process, in relation to Parliament.
- **Judiciary:** The judiciary is that branch of the government that interprets the law, settles disputes and administers justice to all citizens. The judiciary is considered the supervisory body of democracy, and also the guardian of the Constitution.

Informal Means of Social Control

- **Norms:** Norms or standards of behavior are rooted in the institution.
- **Values:** It consists of culturally defined goals and an informal means of social control.
- **Folkways:** They are uniform and common way of living and helping in social control. Folkways draw a line between right and rude.
- **Mores:** Mores like folkways are based on values judgment and are deeply rooted in the community life. Mores distinguish the difference between right and wrong.
- **Customs:** Customs is “a rule or norm of action.”
- **Belief system:** It influence man’s behavior deeply. It strengthens man’s belief in goodness.
- **Ideology:** Social thinking has always been influenced by ideology.
- **Social suggestion:** Social suggestions as well as social implications are an important method of social control.
- **Art:** It is the method of sublimation and redirection of the instinct of an individual. It is a combination of religion, morality ideal and so many things.
- **Religion:** Religion is considered as powerful agency of social control.

Agencies of Social Control

- **Family:** Very important institution or agency of informal means of social control.
- **State:** Chief agency of social control. It exercises control over its members through legislations, the police, the arm forces and the prisons.
- **Educational institutions:** Schools are powerful agencies of social control.
- **Neighborhood:** The neighborhood reinforce or support the individual family as an agency of social control.
- **Religion:** Very important old informal means of social control.
- **Public opinion:** In a democratic country public opinion is important method of social control.
- **Propaganda and press:** Propaganda is the deliberate effort to control the behavior and relationship of social group.
- **Economic organizations:** Economic organizations are also considered the agency of social control in modern societies.

Unit VI Social Organization and Disorganization

- **Industrial and technological system:** It also plays a role in social control by making person financially sound and self-dependent.
- Miscellaneous norms of social control such as fashion, rite, rituals ceremonies and etiquette, etc.

Family

Family is an important agency of social control. It is the first place where an individual is started the process of socialization. Here child learns various methods of daily living, behavior patterns, convention, etc. from the family. Child is taught to behave and respect social laws and obey social commands; this will control the behavior of individual. He learns customs, folkways, traditions and modes of life from the family members. Family influence the individual behavior directly through suggestion, persuasion, praise, blame, ridicule, and criticism. Through all these, mechanism or methods family forces the individual to conform to the custom, folkways and modes of the group.

State

State is a chief or principal agency of social control. It exercises control over its members through legislations the police, the arm forces and the prisons. According to Harold Laski, state is "A territorial society divided into government and subjects, claiming within its allotted physical area, a supremacy over all other institutions."

Essential elements of a state are: Population, Territory, Government, Sovereignty

- **Law** is a powerful method of social control in every society. The state runs its administration through the state government orders. State enforces law within its territory with the help of the police force, the armed force, and the prison and through the court and justice. It enacts laws to regulate or control the lives of the common public or people. The deviants or the violators of social rules are punished according to law; the state carries out certain function by means of law. E.A. Ross stated that 'Law is the most specialized and highly furnished engine of social control employed by society'. It is law only the measure, which prevents the people from indulging into antisocial or criminal activities. The lawbreakers get strict punishment by the law of the particular state. A law also helps in governing our social conduct as well as behaviors to maintain social harmony and balance. Laws are essential in strengthening social control; violation of law in any form considered a punishable offence. In short, law is an important formal means of social control to regulate the individual behavior within the particular society. The state can enforce the laws through fear of punishment or penalty. This only makes it strong or powerful means of social control.
- **Administration** is very strong, powerful and the most effective instrument of social control. It forces the individual to obey or comply with norms of social control. The administrations punish the violators or law breaker with the help of the police, the army, etc.
- **Force:** Physical force or coercion is an important formal means of social control. Force is used from ancient times as society itself. It is considered as essential for social development and progress toward modern society as well. Even now a day's some societies resort to it against the deviants or those who disobey social norms or rules and regulations. Every state has its own type of social control like armed forces or police force. It is an effective weapon to prevent people from indulging in antisocial or criminal activities. It also makes people or force people to obey social order. The state carries out its functions in the form of law, which is ultimately backed by physical force. Force as an important or influential agency of social; controls the state, exercises its force over its people through various means such as the government law, administration, the armed forces, the police and the like.
- **Political sources:** Political sources plays a vital role in social control. Sociologists have believed that the political institutions hold the highest control over the individuals and groups in a society. Ogburn and Nimkoff have said in their book "Handbook of Sociology" that from cradle to graveyard, the political institutions exercises great control on all.

Educational Institutions

The school is considered as very powerful agency of social control. It exercises social control through education as modification of behavior. After family, the children gain knowledge of many things from the school, which he cannot learn from other sources. The child is taught to obey the discipline and standards of behavior, which a student learns at school lasts with him throughout his life. In the college, also the students are required to obey social norms and control their behavior. The school and college as well as other technical educational institutions are next to family as agencies of social control. In school in the class room; the peer group and the leaders who exercise influence on the child, this is important for his future role in society. Education in modern times is a very powerful formal means of social control. It is education, which makes all efforts to discipline the mind of the student so that he can realize the importance of standard behavior or as well as importance of social control. Education is an important aspect of human life, because man feels the necessity to train his young according to his values and cultural traditions and development of moral and ethical values. Education is needed to complete the process of socialization. Thus, an economic institution plays an important role in process of social control.

Neighborhood

Neighborhood is a simple as well as important and specific part of our community. It has a feeling or sentiment about local unit nearby our household. There may be more than one neighborhood that exist in a community. The neighborhood is the first community with which the individual comes into contact with each other by means of we-feelings. It puts a deep influence on its members as an agency or group of social control. The local neighborhood reinforces or strengthens the individual family; provides support during the difficult time. Neighborhood comes only after the family in social importance. The elder members of the neighborhood or locality, who are very intimate to one another, keep group modes alive and enforce them in the particular locality. The local neighborhood such as the close family members or close nearby relatives exercises direct control over the behavior of the individuals through direct suggestions, persuasion, praise, blame, ridicule, criticism, etc.

Religion

Religion serves as an important as well as ancient agency of social control. Religion is only the institution, which supports the folkways and mode of a society by means of playing super natural sanctions behind them. It approves negative as well as positive means to regulate the behavior of the individuals within society. Religion encourages discipline among people. Religion is helpful in maintaining peace and harmony in society. It gives hope as well as sense of security to people. Thus, we can say that religion is a powerful agency of informal means of social control.

Church is regarded as an institutionalized expression of religion in our society. It serves as an organization or institution of social control. From the past church was considered a powerful agency of social control. The church and the priests were held in high esteem in our society. The authority of the church was recognized and accepted by the people of that particular religion; as a result, nobody could disobey its order. The church had power to remove kings who did not accept its authority during this period.

Public Opinion

Public opinion is very powerful in today's democratic society. It not only controls the behavior of people but also controls the government through power of election. People these days due to effect of education are more concerned with the opinion held by the public. Fear of public opinion in general helps to control people's conduct and behavior that are in higher position. The state controls the behavior of the people through public

Unit VI Social Organization and Disorganization

opinion and mold or transforms behavior in favor of its policies. There are forms of public opinion through various media like the newspaper, social networking, communication media, cinema, radio, television, etc.

Propaganda and Press

Propaganda is a systematic attempt by an individual or individuals to control the attitudes and behavior of people through suggestions and consequently, course of their actions. Now a day with the development of means of mass communication and social networking propaganda has become an effective means of social control in our society. The state controls the people's behavior through this powerful means of social control specifically it is propaganda.

According to Akolkar, "Propaganda is an organized or systematic attempt made by a person or a group to influence public opinion and attitudes in any sphere." Propaganda refers to the methods or techniques of influencing human action through the manipulation of representations. It is a means of influencing or modifying behavior of others, often towards a desirable end. Propaganda can affect people's faith, belief, self-reliance, ideology, attitude, conduct as well as their behavior within. It can also be helpful to replace old beliefs, ideology, and practices with the new ones according to time to time. Propaganda may helpful to bring about positive changes in people's perception but sometimes negative results can be expected.

Governmental departments such as medical department, health planning services department, making health care policies department, cooperative department, customs department, income tax department; create propaganda to help people to restore their ways of life and also to develop right habits, practices and approaches among general public.

The health care department may make use of various methods, devices and techniques of propaganda to impress upon people to take precautions to control contagious diseases or to combat the situation like COVID-19 pandemic.

Economic Organizations

Economic organizations are also considered as agency of social control in modern societies. The economic institutions mostly focus on food, clothing and housing. They are the basic necessities of man anywhere.

According to Jones, "The economic institution the complex of techniques, ideas and customs relating to the exploitation of the environment for the satisfaction of subsistence needs."

The economic institutions deal with the various aspects of production, consumption, exchange and distribution. Without the satisfaction of the basic needs like food, cloth, housing, and other facilities; social life will be miserable. Poverty unemployment, low standard of life, and frustration cannot build a healthy society. Thus economic institutions play an important role in social control.

Industrial and Technological System

Industrial and technological systems also play a role in social control by making person financially sound as well as self-dependent. In an industrial and technological system, the main goal is to eliminate violations by control of the physical and social environment.

Miscellaneous Norms of Social Control

Fashion

Fashion may be defined as permitted or legally recognized range of variation around a social norm or standards. People want to look like their associates and friends and also want to be different from them or want to be modifying themselves. Fashion is a device beautifully suited to reconcile or bring together these

opposing tendencies. Fashion permits and regulates variety and thereby avoids a monotonous, boring and deadening uniformity. Thus we can say in easy words fashion helps us to express our individuality without going against norms.

Rites, Rituals and Ceremonies

Rites, rituals and ceremonies add dignity, decorum, distinction and a kind of special significance to various events of our social life. They mark some occasions with solemnity and introduce enjoyment or sense of gratification to others. More than that they serve to identify the individual with his social groups, his community, and his nation; this will help as a means of informal social control.

Ceremonies are observed everywhere throughout the world in a small or large scale; people find satisfaction and fulfilment of celebrating this. The birth of a baby, confirmation, graduation, marriages or marriage anniversaries, the death of an old man, the inauguration of a new factory, a promotion even retirement from job, the publication of a book, a new record in athletics, etc., are all these events that draw special attention.

Etiquette

Etiquette is a code of precise procedures or measures that governs the social interaction of people. It contains the notion of propriety, politeness as well as good manner.

So, etiquette serves four functions:

1. Etiquette prescribes standard procedures to be followed on specific occasions,
2. Etiquette indicates membership in a certain social class, and
3. Etiquette serves to maintain social distance where intimacy or familiarity is not required.
4. Etiquette keeps away or prevent unwanted approaches at specific occasions.

SOCIAL NORMS

Since culture includes the ways in which things should be done, we say that culture is normative, which is another way of saying that it defines standards of conduct. For shaking hands, we extend the right hand, this is proper in our culture. The term "norm" has two possible meanings. A statistical norm is a measure of what actually exists; a cultural norm is a concept of what actually exists; sometimes the statistical norm is referred to as the "real" culture and the cultural norm is considered the ideal culture. Normally people do not make a distinction between the two norms. The effort infuriated many people who confused statistical with cultural norms. In simple words, the statistical norm is a measure of actual conduct with no suggestion of approval or disapproval. The cultural norm is a set of behavior expectations, a cultural image of how people are supposed to act further. A culture is an elaborate as well as complex system of such norms of standardized, expected ways of feeling and acting; which the members of a society generally acknowledge and generally follow. These norms are of several kinds as well as several degrees of compulsion. Most of these concepts were developed by the early sociologist William Graham Stunner in his *Folkways*.

Norms are more important. Such norms are accepted and followed by the society. For example, rules involving behavior that is essential for group well-being. For example, stealing is considered a bad behavior; younger one must always respect elders; smoking is bad, one should not go wrong side, etc. are typically of greater value than rules of personal hygiene. Social norms are rules of behavior. They differ from society to society and group to group. Sikhs wear turbans and keep beards. Hindus decorate their forehead with *tilak* and wear *janeu* (sacred thread). Muslims wear skull cap and have beards. All these are folkways and norms.

Norms are similar to rules or regulations in being prescriptive or sometimes rigid in nature, although they lack the formal status of rules. Actual behavior may differ from what is considered normative and if

judged by existing norms, concept is intimately linked to issues of social regulation and social control. The meaning of normative in sociological context is designating or considering some actions and their outcomes as good, desirable, or permissible, and opposite of that as bad, undesirable, or impermissible. A norm in this normative sense means a benchmark or a standard for evaluating or making judgments regarding this social behavior or outcomes. Society is a systematic network of social relationships. In this system none can act in his own arbitrary fashion.

Definitions of Norms

In a country every society has socially sanctioned ways of behavior and everyone has to act accordingly. Sometimes conformity of these rules lead to sacrifice of one's own interests. These norms are the successful ways of behavior. These are the social expectations attached to all social status in the society. When man acts according to these norms, he is certain to achieve his goal.

These norms are not based on mere imagination but they are tried, experienced and successful ways of behavior. Social norms are the unwritten or unrecorded rules of beliefs, attitudes, and behaviors that are considered understood or acceptable in a particular social group or culture.

Social norms are the accepted standards of behavior of social groups. Different sociologists define norms in a different way:

- According to **Smelser**, "Norms are the expectations and standards that are related to interactions among people."
- **Donald Light Jr. and Suzanne Keller** opine: "Norms refer to the rules that guide behavior in everyday situations and are deprived of the value."
- **Johnson** stated, "A norm is an abstract pattern held in the mind, which sets certain limits for behavior."
- **Young and Mack**: "Norms refer to the group shared expectations."
- **Schafer**: "Norms are established standards of behavior maintained by a society."
- **Bierstedt**: "A norm then is a rule or a standard that governs our conduct in the social situations in which we participate. It is a societal expectation. It is a standard to which we are expected to conform whether we actually do so or not. It is a cultural specification that guides our conduct in society. It is a way of doing things, the way that is set for us our society."
- **Secord and Burckman** stated, "Norm is a standard of behavioral expectation shared by group members against whom the validity of perceptions is judged and the appropriateness of feelings and behavior is evaluated."
- **Kingsley Davis**: "Norms are controls. It is through them that human society regulates the behavior of its members in such a way that they perform activities fulfilling social needs even sometimes at the expense of organic needs."
- **G.R. Leslie, R.F. Larson and B.L. Gorman**, "Social norms are developed by a group of people that specify how people must, should, may, should not and must not behave in various situations."

In sociology, a norm is a shared expectation of behavior that connotes what is considered culturally desirable and appropriate.

Classification of Norms

According to K. Merton, "norms may be classified as laws, folkways, mores, rituals and rules, etc." Sorokin has classified these norms as customs, etiquettes and fashions.

Different sociologists presented different views about the classification of norms. Classification of norms are:

- Folkways
- Mores

- Customs
- Traditions as a general term refers to the customs, rituals, belief, folklore, habits in a given ethnic group
- Law

Characteristics of Norms

- **Norms are rules of behavior:** They are the foundation of social order. The term “norm” means an abstract pattern held in the mind, which sets certain limits for behavior. Without norms no society can enjoy peace and prosperity. Norms are found in the most modern societies and barbaric societies. They help individual to the self-control.
 - **Norms are not uniform for the whole nation:** These vary from region to region within the same country. Similarly, these vary from place to place and from situation to situation. It is a way of doing a thing in particular situation.
 - **Social norms are the utilitarian nature:** Social norms are practically accepted by people. Consistency, compliance and conformity to them involve social welfare. Social norms are generally utilitarian in nature made for usefulness in society.
 - **Concerned different aspects of life:** Many different types of norms concerned with different aspects of life constitute a normative pattern which is essential for social organization.
 - **Norms are concerned with existing social conditions:** Norms are always concerned with existing social conditions. Because of these, norms vary from society to society. It is sometimes flexible in nature; people modify them according to their effective use in society.
 - **Norms are universal:** Every society has some definite social norms to guide its members about particular behavior in a society. No society can function smoothly in the absence of social norms. It is accepted universally and operates as an informal means of social control. It regulates human behavior in a small group as well as in a large group or in a society.
 - **Social norms normally internalized by the people:** People do not question most of the norms and accept them completely or follow on a regular day-to-day life. It is because norms become the part of personality of the individual.
- Norms are the fundamental or elementary basis of life. They bring uniformity in social life which is essential to maintain synchronization as well as harmony in society.

Importance of Social Norms (Fig. 6.13)

- **Social life:** Norms maintain a network of social relationships which is called society. Norms are the basis of social solidarity which bind all interacting persons into the whole to run society.
- **Social progress:** Norms are transmitted from generation to generation. Through normative transmission, culture is enriched and accumulated. The people of younger generation get the benefit of the experience of their forefathers and make social progress. Because of this transmission of culture the people of every generation receive the experiences from their ancestors to function properly in an efficient manner.
- **Ideal behavior:** To perform every action, there are always many alternatives before act, but norms are those ways or behaviors which lead to success. Norms are helpful for the people to act in a society in a balanced manner, through repeated experiences people lead to success. Thus, norms insist people to perform ideally in society.
- **Personality development:** Norms are an important agency of the process of socialization. Process of socialization continues through life and it is essential for personality development of an individual.

Man's varied interests, attitudes and actions are regulated by social norms. Norms define a man's duties and rights so that he may not be mistaken. Thus social norms remain no longer an external force but they become a part of man's personality.

- **Social welfare:** Man conforms to norms not only to achieve his own ends but for social welfare too. Without conformity to these norms, social ends cannot be achieved. Some norms are of such nature that conformity to them may directly serve an individual purpose but indirectly they promote social welfare.

Norms are the fundamental basis of life. They bring uniformity in social life which is essential to maintain harmony in society. No doubt, in society conformity to norms is essential but it does not mean that there is no violation of social norms. Sometimes norms themselves are of so antagonistic nature that conformity to one leads violation to the others.

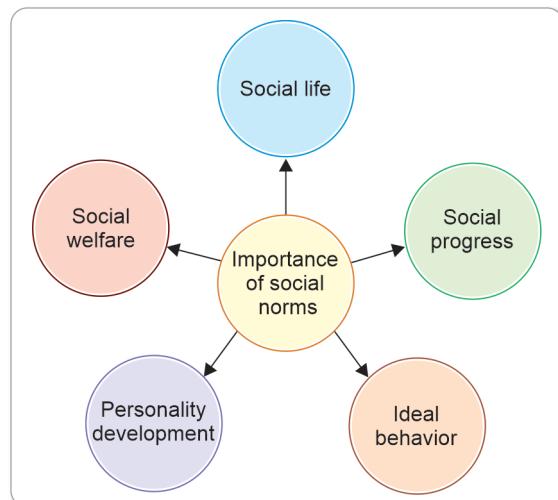


Figure 6.13: Importance of social norms

Figure 6.13: Importance of social norms

MORES

Mores means a set of principles or standards that enable people to live cooperatively in groups as well as society. It is a way; what societies determine to be “right” and “acceptable.”

Mores aren't fixed or permanent in nature. What is considered acceptable in one culture might not be acceptable in another culture. Geographical area, regional area, religion, family, and life experiences all the measures can influence mores.

Definitions of Mores

The mores represent another category of norms. The definition of mores given by different sociologists as follows:

- According to **MacIver and Page**, “When the folkways have added to the conceptions of group welfare, standards of right and wrong, they are converted into mores.”
- According to **Gillin and Gillin**, “Mores are those customs and group routines which are thought by the members of the society to be necessary to the group's continued existence.”
- According to **Edward Sapir**, “The term ‘mores’ is best reserved for those customs which connote fairly strong feelings of the rightness or wrongness of mode of behavior.”

In simple words, we can say when the folkways clearly represent the group standards, the group sense of what is fitting, precise, right and conductive to well-being, than they become mores.

Mores and morals have similar significance or meanings—mores are the morals of a group or society itself. They are not necessarily based on written law and they can change as on time according to changing needs of society. Morality is objectivity of our conduct or behavior. For example, stealing is considered bad, causing unnecessary harm to others considered bad, all these reflects our morality or moral values.



Sociologists argued on exactly how morals are developed. However, there are several theories that have gained attention more than from the years.

- **Freud's morality and the superego:** Sigmund Freud suggested that moral development occurs gradually when a person's ability to set aside his selfish needs is replaced by the values of important socializing agents such as a person's parents.
- **Piaget's theory of moral development:** Jean Piaget focused on the social-cognitive and social-emotional perspective of development. Piaget theorized that moral development unfolds over time; it takes place in certain stages. As children learn to adopt certain moral behaviors for their own sake; to a certain extent than just abide by moral codes because they don't want to get into trouble.
- **B.F. Skinner's behavioral theory:** B.F. Skinner discussed the power of external forces that shaped or modify an individual's development. For example, a child who receives praise for being kind may treat someone with kindness; again out of a desire to receive more positive attention in the future as part of normal development.
- **Kohlberg's moral reasoning:** Lawrence Kohlberg proposed six stages of moral development that went beyond Piaget's theory. Through a series of questions, Kohlberg projected and identified another stage that an adult must possess; and this is the stage of reasoning.

Some morals seem to transcend or surpass across the globe and across the time. However, researchers have discovered that these seven morals seem somewhat universally accepted:

1. Be brave
2. Be fair
3. Defer to authority
4. Help your group
5. Love your family
6. Return favors
7. Respect others' property

For example, in some regional areas, cultures, and religions, using contraception is considered immoral. In other parts of the world, some people consider contraception as the moral thing to do, as it reduces unplanned pregnancy, manages the population, and reduces the risk of STDs (Sexually Transmitted Diseases). Most morals are not fixed or predetermined. They usually shift and change as time passes. When we compare it, we found that while the bulk of the population once viewed these behaviors as "wrong," the vast majority of the population now finds these activities to be in "acceptable" manner.

VALUES

Social values form an integral aspect of the culture of the society with each culture having a different value system. Values provide stability or constancy to social order and bring legitimacy to rules that govern specific activities of individuals within the society. Values are cultural products, like standards; which men living in society win or prevail as prizes as having high importance. Thus it is a goal or objective toward some specific achievements. To attain that objective, the corresponding institutionalized procedure is approved or adopted. Laws cannot change the significance of social values.

Some examples in accordance with their institutions are as follows:

- There are values of:
 - Power is attained through political institutions.
 - Wealth is attained through economic institutions.
 - Affection is attained through family institution.

Unit VI Social Organization and Disorganization

- Rectitude is attained through religious institutions.
- Skill and enlightenment are attained through the help of educational institutions.

Definitions of Values

Values play the role of an anchor in our life. They help us in maintaining our loyalty and save us from any temptations. They show us right path in time of confusion as well as provide us comfort. Different sociologists define social values in different ways as described here:

- According to **H.M. Johnson**, “Values are general standards and may be regarded as higher order norms.”
- According to **Peter Worsley**, “General conception of “the good”, ideas about the kind of ends that people should pursue throughout their lives and throughout many different activities in which they are engaged.”
- **M. Haralambos** opines, “A value is a belief that something is good and worthwhile. It defines what is worth having and worth striving for.”

These can be achieved through its respective institution. Every culture provides a process and techniques or methods of getting values. For example, if an individual adopts another course besides the conventional or traditional one, he violates the norms and is ultimately punished by society.

The term *belief* is a product of the social experience that is usually shaped up by sharing knowledge and idea through the use of common sense to interpret the basic social facts in certain ethnic group.

According to our culture, a few of our national values are faith in religion; safety of life, honor and property of the nation; honor to national flag and anthem; preservation of national freedom and solidarity; chastity and modesty of women; respect for parents, teachers and religious leaders; generosity; mercy upon the aggrieved; cleanliness; truth; wearing national dress; and respect for the Holy Quran, Bible and Ramayana.

Functions of Values

Values are developed through various agencies, like family, educational institutions, peer group, religion, and culture as well as through media.

- A value provides goals or ends for the members to aim for.
- Values are universal as they are shared by all individuals regardless of their nationality, religion, gender, culture or history.
- Values provide for stabilities and uniformities in group interaction; hence, create sense of belongingness among people who share commonly.
- Values bring legitimacy to the rules that govern specific activities.
- Values may be personal or professional; both guide the human behavior in a society.
- Values help to bring about some kind of adjustment between different sets of rules.
- Values make difference between right and wrong and what is desirable and undesirable.

Types of Social Values

- **Positive and negative values:** The desirable or accepted behavior is understood as positive aspects of values. The behavior that is not desirable or acceptable within the members of society is considered negative aspects of values.
- **Dominant values and variants values:** Dominant values are values that have bounded society sanctions and cannot be violated by an individual at any cost, such as non-violence in modern society. Variant values are values that an individual has choice to follow while being part of culture and society, such as choice of being vegetarian and non-vegetarian, food selection and preferences.

- **Innate and acquired values:** Innate values are due to our genes and conscience; they are innate or inborn characteristics. Acquired values are imparted by social institutions as well as through social influences.
- **Intrinsic and extrinsic values:** An *intrinsic value* is a value that one has already of itself, independently of other things, including its context that a person is already having. An *extrinsic value* is a property that depends on a thing's relationship with other things. Extrinsic value depends on how much it generates intrinsic values of a people.
- **Moral values, rational values and individual values:** Moral values are standard of conduct followed by an individual to control over his or her behavior impulses or desires. Some of the moral values are honesty, tolerance, truthfulness, sincerity, self-control, punctual, well disciplined, hardworking, and sacrifice. Rational values include equality, liberty, justice, integrity, respect for others, secularism, democracy, social harmony. Individual values consist of good manners and good conduct in relation to teachers, elders, juniors, towards family, neighbors, friends, guests, patience, etiquette, extending help to others, self-disciplined.

Values are indispensable to us as ethical principles. *Ethics* is a moral principle that governs a person's behavior or conducting of an activity. Ethics is concerned with human performance or actions, and the choice of those performance or actions. Ethics evaluate those actions, and the values that underlie them.

Value specifies a clear-cut relationship between a person and their goal. The beliefs and values are imparted by family during process of socialization, in a society, through an educational institution, which ultimately leads to the change of attitude and behavior of an individual.

SOCIAL DISORGANIZATION

Society is a web of organized social relationships. In an organized society, these relationships remain organized. The process whereby social relationships become confused or disorganized is known as "*social disorganization*". Social disorganization is inclusive of habits, institutions and of association, etc. In every society, each individual has a definite status to which some specific roles are attached; that the individual must perform. When each individual satisfactorily performs the roles as applicable for them, the society remains organized.

Meaning of Social Disorganization

A society becomes disorganized when these roles become disorderly. In this way, in a state of social disorganization people forget their duties, the control of social laws diminished, the balance between the various parts of society is disturbed, social ideals become degenerate and the entire social structure progress toward a disorganized state.

Social disorganization is defined as an inability of community members to achieve shared values or to solve jointly experienced problems (Bursik, 1988).

Social disorganization means the social equilibrium is disturbed and society gets out of normal mechanism. For example, in India the Government is making efforts to raise the status of the lower classes which has led to disorganization through the still existence of caste system.

Concept of Social Disorganization

Social disorganization is a theoretical, hypothetical or abstract perspective that explains ecological differences in levels of crime based on structural and cultural factors shaping the nature of the social order across the communities. According to the social disorganization framework or outline, such phenomena are triggered

Unit VI Social Organization and Disorganization

by the weakened social integration of neighborhoods because of the absence or deficiency of self-regulatory mechanisms. These self-regulatory mechanisms; which in turn are due to the impact of structural factors on social interactions or the presence of delinquent subcultures.

In a well-organized society, the various institutions are in a harmonious or pleasant adjustment or, in other words, there exists functional balance between the various elements of the social structure. When there is a lack of adjustment as well as imbalance in society and institutions, they do not function in a manner that satisfies all needs of the individuals, this is called social disorganization. Social disorganization, therefore, is to be considered in terms of functional disequilibrium, it is disequilibrium within customs, traditions, and beliefs of individual, institutions, groups, communities as well as within societies. For example, equilibrium of forces or means of social control is used to control society; it gets disturbed and leads to social disorganization.

Definitions of Social Disorganization

In social disorganization, all the processes like habits, institutions, organizations, and associations will be disorganized. Social disorganization implies some collapse, disintegration or breakdown in the social organization.

The definitions of social disorganization are:

- According to **Elliott and Merrill**, “Social disorganization means decay in the social structure so that old habits and form of social control no longer function effectively.”
- According to **Emile Durkheim**, “Social disorganization is a state of disequilibrium and a lack of social solidarity or consensus among the members of society.”
- **Ogburn and Nimkoff** described, “When the harmonious relationship between the various parts of culture is disturbed, social disorganization ensues.”
- **Robert Elofairs** stated, “Social disorganization is a disturbance in the pattern and mechanism of human relations.”
- **Faris** describes, “Social disorganization is the disruption of the natural relation of persons to a degree that interferes with the performance of the accepted tasks of the group.”

Thus, social disorganization is the break in the pattern of any organization. Social disorganization is the inconsistency between expectations and achievements.

Social disorganization implies a collapse or breakdown in the bonds of relationships, coordination, teamwork and morale among groups of interrelated persons and this will definitely impair the functions of the entire social system or society.

Causes of Social Disorganization

The factors responsible for social disorganization have been elaborated differently by different scholars. Social disorganization has been constant and is always present in every society. As indicated above, man since the dawn of civilization has been confronted with social problems of diverse or miscellaneous nature.

- **Division of labor:** According to Emile Durkheim, extreme division of labor are one of the important causes of social disorganization. Division of labor is generally productive of social solidarity; but when it becomes excessive and complex then solidarity diminishes or disappears and leads to burden and finally social equilibrium is disturbed. Extreme division of labor increases the economic crises of all kinds, class struggles, and industrial strife, and leads to the demoralization of individuals, the family, and the community and finally affecting the society.
- **Violation of social rules:** According to W.I. Thomas and Znaniecki, when the rules and regulations of society fail to keep individuals under control, social disorganization arises. In society, there are always some individuals who violate social rules to great extent. This has a massive disorganizing effect upon

social institutions, and unless the violations are checked; they may eventually lead to the death, loss or failure or loss of functions of any institutions. According to Elliott and Merrill, "Without social values neither social organization nor social disorganization would exist."

- **Industrialization:** Industrialization creates such circumstances or conditions leading to social disorganization. Industrialization as seen in system had led to capitalism, exploitation, and extreme utilization and also class conflicts. Industrialization has also contributed to unemployment, crime, and immorality, mistreatment with others, family disorganization, antisocial activities and many other harmful effects within society.
 - **Cultural lag:** Ogburn discussed in social change; that disorganization is caused primarily due to the unequal rates of change in the different parts of culture, resulting in a conflict between them. The disproportionate rates of change in various elements of the functionally interdependent component of a changing social structure produce a condition of disequilibrium as well as great extent of imbalance within society. This uneven change is due to the fact that inventions, innovations, development and discoveries are made more frequently in certain parts of culture, usually the material parts, than compared with non-material cultures.
 - **Natural catastrophes:** Ecological disturbances; like disturbances in the relationship of man to his environment, including such natural phenomena as disease, earthquakes, floods, famine, volcanic eruptions and various other catastrophic phenomena of nature, may also have enormous or huge disorganizing effect upon society.
 - **War:** War is also the consequence or result of social disorganization. War disturbs the economy of a whole country and introduces confusion, uncertainty, insecurity and many disorders within the society. War leads to scarcity, shortage and insufficiency. There is also economic crisis going on during the war period; it is a major or crucial cause of social disorganization. War increases the prices as well as the people resort to hoarding and black-marketing.
- Recent example of major social disorganization is the Russia-Ukraine war is having an huge or massive impact globally on the supply chain, obstructed the flow of goods, fuel, striking cost increases and shortages of products, as well as creating catastrophic food or rations shortages.
- **Maladaptation of inherited nature to culture:** According to Ogburn, another cause of social disorganization is the lack of adaptation or maladaptation of man's inherited nature to the environment of group, culture and surroundings. Man's nature is modified or adopted very slowly through changes in the origin or beginning, whereas culture is transformed with comparative rapidity.

G.R. Madan has scheduled a few factors responsible for social disorganization.

- **Psychological factors:** A number of causes of social disorganization is to be found within the human psychology itself. Psychological factors contribute to disorganization in following ways;
 - There is failure to maintain proper communication among fellow beings.
 - There is failure to modify or change one's attitudes in tune with demands of changing time.
- **Cultural lag:** Cultural lag is the concept or theory used by sociologists W. E. Ogburn, which refers to the imbalance in the rate and speed of change between the material aspects of cultural and non-material aspects. Objects of material culture such as mode of housing, means of transport and communication, types of dresses, patterns of ornaments, technical and mechanical devices, machinery equipment, instruments change very quickly. But ideas, beliefs, values, attitudes, taste, philosophies, habits, ideologies, institutional structures and such other aspects of non-material culture change slowly and gradually. Hence, this will create a gap or a lag between the material and non-material aspects of culture. This lag referred to as cultural lag is mainly responsible for social disorganization.
- **Physical or geographic factors:** The maladjustment of man and his culture to certain extraordinary physical or geographic conditions or situations may be responsible for disorganization in society. This is especially true in the case of natural calamities such as storms, cyclones, hurricanes, famines, floods, epidemics or pandemic like COVID-19, etc. which upset the social balance and bring in social disorganization to great extent within society.

Unit VI Social Organization and Disorganization

- **Biological factors:** Population explosion or extreme scarcity of population, the instances of racial intermixture, defective hereditary traits and such other biological factors may also cause disorganizing effects upon entire society.
- **Ecological factor:** Social disorganization is related to environment in terms of regions and neighborhoods. Ecological factors act as external forces and sometimes create imbalance within the society.
- **Social problems leading to social disorganization:** Social problems and forces such as a revolution, social upheaval, a class struggle, and a financial or economic crisis, a war between nations, mental illness among individuals, as well as political corruption threaten the welfare of the society as well as whole nation.
- **Degeneration of values:** A social value is often regarded as the sustaining force of every society. Values contribute to the strength and stability of social order of any society. But due to rapid social change, new values come up and somewhat importance of old values decline. Sometimes people are not in a position to reject the old values completely and totally accepting the new altogether creates problems within society. Hence, conflict between the old mechanism and the new mechanisms is inevitable result of which leads to the social disorganization.
- **Disintegration and confusion of roles:** Members of society are expected to perform certain definite roles in accordance with their placements or status within society. Due to profound social changes these expectations also undergo some undesirable change; consequently, people are confused with regard to their new roles, this will further lead to social disorganization.
- **Conflict of goals and means:** Sometimes conflict of goals and means for achieving them may also lead to social disorganization. Most of the individuals share the dominant goals of the society and act accordingly for its achievement. But lacking the means for achieving the goals by legitimate means; they will find another way like some may resort to illegitimate and illegal means resulting in secondary consequences, such as crime, antisocial activities and other expression of social disorganization.
- **Decline of social control:** The declining control of religion, morals, customs, traditions, values, ethics, code of conducts and other institutions on the behavior of men has also enhanced the process of disorganization. There is an increase in interpersonal conflicts, crimes including cyber-crime, tensions, divorce, delinquency, mental derangement, etc. nowadays leading to disintegration of society as well as social structure. According to Thomas and Znaniecki, the very decrease of the influence of existing rule of behavior upon the individual members of the group itself indicates social disorganization.
- **Extreme divisions of labor:** According to Durkheim, social disorganization is often brought about by extreme division of labor. In normal course according to him, division of labor leads to social solidarity that may become disturbed or distorted.
- **Disruptive social change:** Society undergoes change mainly due to the operation of external factors like physical and technological or internal factors like biological and cultural factors. Sudden, impulsive, unexpected and radical social changes may disrupt the stability and the organization of the society. Finally, the result is the social disorganization.
- **Political subservience:** Political subordination of a country will result in social disorganization. The subordinate or poor country is not permitted to develop its economy and institutions independently and is made as a means to serve the interest of the dominant country.

It may also be noted that in modern societies, whereas the epidemic or pandemic diseases have been brought under control, other physical disabilities, circulatory disorders, cancer and various degenerative conditions have become more common. The increase in these non-communicable diseases is a product of the modern way of life. Nervous tensions that are induced by the stresses and strains of social change are thought to be primarily responsible for much of the high blood pressure, faulty heart action and gastric ulcers. The mental disorders are also considered to be directly related to the modern way of life due to working under mental pressure.

At the end, it may be said that social disorganization is a process prevailing all over the world. In actual fact, there is no society which is completely or systematically organized. All societies are changing rapidly accumulating numerous cultural lags or breaks at every point in day-to-day life. In the family, in the industry, in the government institutions, in the political organizations, in the school and in the church, a number of cultural lags can be observed.

Types of Social Disorganization

According to **Elliott and Merrill**, Social disorganization is classified into three types:

1. Individual disorganization
2. Family disorganization
3. Community disorganization

The individual disorganization, social disorganization and social problems are interrelated and dependent.

Thus, social disorganization is always the result of some breakdown in the social organization. Individual and society are closely related. When society is disorganized, then individual is also disorganized.

Individual Disorganization

Personal or individual disorganization represents the behavior of the individual which deviates from normal conditions, or just opposite to the social norms. **Individual disorganization** is a condition or process in which the person has not stabilized his behavior around major roles. Such disorganization may transitional or it may be continuous (Figs 6.14 and 6.15).

Stages of Personal Disorganization

Queen and Mann have described three critical stages in individual or personal disorganization. The stages are:

- **First stage:** In the first stage, individual's attempt is to find a solution of a problem. If there is a problem, then first the individual attempts to find a solution. But in case if the individual fails to find a solution, he loses his stability.
- **Second stage:** If the individual is unable to find satisfactory solution, the individual enters upon more or less permanently unadjusted situation; this will affect the entire personality of the individual. In the

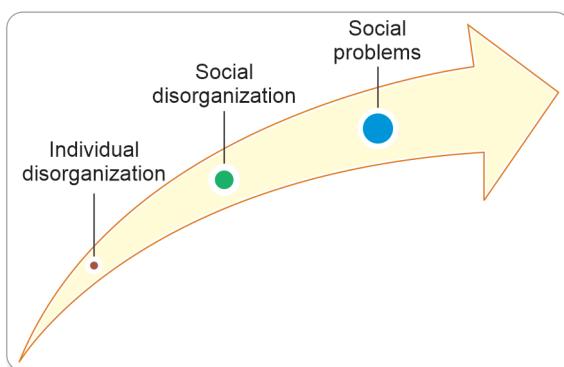


Figure 6.14: Individual disorganization is a cause of social problems

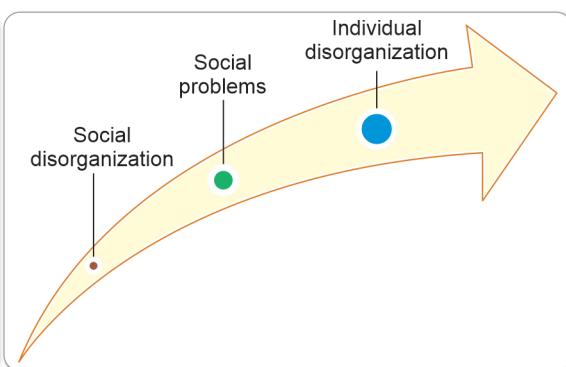


Figure 6.15: Process of individual disorganization

Unit VI Social Organization and Disorganization

second stage of personal disorganization, some persons may reach the third stage without even passing through the second stage. Therefore, the third stage becomes important.

- **Third stage:** In the third stage, the individual loses his stability completely, he may have a nervous breakdown. For example, the criminal loses all sense of social values or inner conscious. This personal disorganization may also lead to insanity, psychosis or even sometimes suicide.

Causes of Individual Disorganization

There are certain social causes of individual disorganization:

- **Economic causes:** Poverty, unemployment
- **Biological causes:** Permanent physical defects, physical illness, injury, mental deficiencies.
- **Psychological causes:** Alcoholism
- **Cultural causes:** Juvenile delinquency, divorce, prostitution, etc.
- **Environment factors:** Economic distress, confusion, contradiction and conflict in social relations in the family, distress in workplace, in the economic world, in religious institutions or in recreational activities, etc.

Elliott and **Merrill** have mentioned four kinds of factors or situations that often disturb the individual's pattern of living as described below:

- **Biological factors:** This includes difficulties arising out of functional disorder. Due to his biological nature, the disabled individual becomes maladjusted and unable to overcome his obvious disadvantages.
- **Environment factors:** This includes situations like economic distress, confusion, contradiction and conflict in social relations in the family, in the economic world, in religious institutions, distress in workplace or in recreational activities, which may convey some type of disorganization in the individual's life.
- **Insecurity of status and role:** When the child or the adult may search for security in the society sometimes, it leads to personal disorganization. When this sense is threatened and when the individual feels there is a lack of recognition and acceptance with the members of his family or his playmates or his fellow group or other associated status, this further result in personal disorganization. The psychological need of the individual to feel himself an essential part of the universe; every individual needs to be recognized by society; it is a fact when individuals feel low in self-esteem may lead to personal disorganization.
- **Social crises:** Social crises include sudden shocks in the life of an individual whether due to the death of his near relation or loss of routine services, loss of property, death of breadwinner, etc. which may disturb his entire life organization.

Types of Personal Disorganization

Some main types of personal disorganization are described below:

- **Sex offenders:** Rape, sodomy, plural sex, oral-genital contacts these are some of the examples of sexually deviant behavior.
- **Prostitution:** Both prostitute and her patrons are liable or considered to be unstable. It only aggravates their emotional conflict.
- **Alcoholism and drugaddiction:** Man drinks or gets addicted to certain drugs in order to escape from the realities of life and lives in spurious heaven. Their moderate use may be condoned or be accepted or normal but any excess in this matter is injurious to both body and mind.
- **Suicide:** Suicide is the most vicious form of personal disorganization. Durkheim describes there are four reasons of suicidal attempts:
 1. Egoistic suicide
 2. Altruistic suicide
 3. Anomic suicide
 4. Fatalistic suicide (It is due to social disorganization)

- **Juvenile delinquency:** Social and family disorganization affects most of the young people at large. The children coming from slums and broken homes have exposure of all types of sexual activities and crime while very young. Therefore, their minds are overexcited but immature. Thus they take to minor crimes or indulge in antisocial activities and lead a life of vagabondage or drifts from place to place. They are unstable to seek adjustment with society and leads to distorted personality.

Consequences of Personal Disorganization

The ultimate outcome or consequence of personal disorganization affects the personality of the individual in several ways:

- **Conflict aspects of personality:** This leads to antisocial behavior; this type of person is a threat to society.
- **Family aspects of personality:** Avoidance of responsibilities; leads to violence in family.
- Psychosis, mental illness or conflict.
- Loss of attention span, short-tempered and agitated behavior, hopelessness, restlessness, etc.
- Poor hygiene, low self-esteem, poor social appearance, social isolation.
- Severe depression and suicide is an extreme form.

Thus, personal disorganization means a breakdown in institutional control and group consensus. This disorganized person leads to an unbalanced, disturbed, uncoordinated and one sided from the society. At this point; this may grow into a gradual or a sudden, out of social disorganization and may further intensify to bring great extent of individual disorganization on a large scale and disturb the entire personality of an individual.

People forget their duties, social law diminishes balance between the various parts of society, social ideas become degenerated and the entire social structure will be disorganized.

Family Disorganization

According to Oxford Dictionary of Sociology, 'the family is an intimate domestic group made up of people related to one another by bonds of blood, sexual mating, or legal ties. The family has been a very resilient social unit that has survived and adapted through time.'

Family disorganization may be thought to include any sort of non-harmonious functioning within the family. Thus, it may include not only the tensions between the husband and wife but those arising between and among children and parents as well or entire family structure. Family disorganization in the external manifestation may take the form of neglect, overlook, separation, divorce, physical violence as well as use of abusive language. It is to be pointed out that tension in family life is growing in the modern age because of the rapid changes in the role as well as status of the partners.

Causes of Family Disorganization

Family tension is any conflicting situation that generates due to opposing attitudes among its members, particularly between husband and wife. Sometimes; in a sense tension grows out of an original disparity in attitudes and values of both partners; as the tension increases greater antagonism in attitudes develops. On the other hand, we can say family disorganization leads to personal and impersonal factors which play a greater part in family breakdown, disparities in attitudes and values which make life together intolerable to one or both.

Following are certain factors as discussed below:

Personal Factors

- **Idealistic belief:** Marriage is a practical and serious relationship, not a dreamy intermission. Some idealistic beliefs about marriage partner may be a cause of dispute.



Unit VI Social Organization and Disorganization

- **Clashing temperament:** Highly individualized temperaments take on a characteristic pattern of behavior, which the other resents and dislikes despite a certain bond of affection.
- **Philosophy of life:** More important than temperament is the role of an individual's philosophy of life in the marital relationship. In case if both husband and wife possess some identity of important values, as expressed in the social attitudes, their marriage problems will tend to be adjusted successfully. On the other hand, if they differ on fundamental values, the relations are likely to be tensed or strained easily.
- **Personal-behavior patterns:** Irritating petty habits, insignificant thought they may seem, may bring high marital friction.
- **Psychopathic personalities:** Psychopathic personality of one partner or the other may affect marital relationships or life of particular partner. Such persons have mental instability and are often charged with cruel and inhuman treatment, mental cruelty, or indulge towards physical violence (and have the symptoms of psychosis and neurosis).

Impersonal Factors or Social and Cultural Factors

- **Economic tensions:** Absolute poverty, business reverses, economic independence of wife, etc.
- **Occupational tensions:** Occupational misfits may be another cause of marital discord or family disorganization. Sometimes, partners may not adjust with the timings or schedules of their partner's job; this creates problems in their family life.
- **Differences in cultural background:** Persons having different cultural backgrounds in the absence of above similarities may find it difficult to adjust.
- **The disparity in age:** Any wide disparity in age is likely to mean divergences in attitudes and interests of both partners. Sometimes, age is however, only one element in this complex relationship.
- **Ill-health:** Long continued ill health, with its drain on the family budget, the irritability because of tension may, however, become a source of many family difficulties. Good health must be always an accepted premise of satisfactory marriage as well as successful marital relationships.
- **Parent-child relationships:** There may be disagreement as to the policy of discipline, the type of training, the nature of the child's education, social activities and many more things, this affects the family pattern.
- **Interference of in-laws:** Parents are often imbued with ambitions and the desire for their children's happiness always, and sometimes consequently they often insist upon imposing their decisions upon the reluctant children, this may be the cause of family disorganization.

The functions, responsibilities, tasks, and interests of the modern family have become more delimited and complex in day-to-day life; sometimes this will affect the mutual relationships of partners to a great extent and lead to family disorganization.

Community Disorganization

Community disorganization implies a state of inadequacy and disunity that gives free play to the forces of deterioration in community life.

Elliott and merrill has ascribed the four main causes for the disorganization:

1. Social processes mainly cultural, political and economic
2. Cultural lag
3. Conflicting attitudes and values
4. Social crises

Sorokin is of the opinion that disorganization is mainly due to cultural degeneration of values in various spheres such as art, science, philosophy, religion, law and politics. In brief, change from the idealistic and ideational culture to sensate culture is the main cause of social disorganization.

According to **Karl Mannheim**, unplanned capitalism and policy of laissez faire are responsible for social disintegration in the present age which Bertrand Russell observes that the lack of adjustment in institutions based on authority in the past is responsible for the present social disintegration.

MAJOR SOCIAL PROBLEMS

Social problems are the conditions that lead to threatening effect on the well-being of society. **Social problems** are situations or conditions which are regarded by society as threats to its established ways or to its well-being and, therefore, needing to be eliminated, eradicated or alleviated. These situations are deplored by many people within the society; they are having the symptoms of disturbances or social maladjustment.

Social problems cause dissatisfaction, suffering and misery. Societies are not always in harmonious balance or equilibrium. Some people face one another with feelings of hostility and suspicion. Therefore, several causes of maladjustment and disorganization present themselves within society. These kinds of people disturb the harmony of society and may begin the consequence of social problems.

Different sociologists define social problems in different ways as described below:

- **Lawrence K. Frank** in an article 'Social Problems' in the American Journal of Sociology defined a social problem as, "any difficulty of misbehavior of a fairly large number of persons which we wish to remove or correct."
- **Paul B. Horton and Gerald R. Leslie** defined it as, "a condition affecting a significant number of people in ways considered undesirable, and about which it is felt something can be done through collective social action."
- **Richard C. Fuller and Richard R. Meyers** define a social problem as a condition which is defined by a considerable number of persons as a deviation from some social norm which they cherish.
- According to **Lundberg and others**, "A social problem is any deviant behavior in a disapproved direction of such a degree that it exceeds the tolerance limit of the community."
- According to **Green**, "A social problem is a set of conditions which are defined as morally wrong by the majority or substantial minority within a society"

Major problems in rural India are poverty, illiteracy, unemployment, ill health, caste and casteism, untouchability and poor housing, etc., are more common. It is the purpose of sociology to study such cases and discover the underlying causes; this will further help to plan strategies to overcome this situations.

POVERTY

Poverty is the most important problem of rural people in India. There are two types of poverty namely;

1. **Abject poverty** is a condition in which a person has nothing to eat, to put on or no proper housing.
2. **Relative poverty** means that compared with others in a particular society, a person is lacking certain things.

Causes of Poverty

Some of the important causes of poverty are discussed below:

- **Landlessness:** Land is the chief means of production for rural people. A good percentage of rural people in India do not acquire any land, they are called landless agriculturalists. They work as agricultural labor and are engaged in some other non-agriculture occupations. They are very poor. The wages they receive as also low.

Unit VI Social Organization and Disorganization

- **Ill health:** Chronic diseases such as tuberculosis, asthma and other diseases make the rural people weak and physically unable to work properly. Still there is no proper facility of medical treatment in most of the villages; even people have lack of awareness regarding treatment.
- **Illiteracy and ignorance:** Illiteracy as well as ignorance make the rural people to lead a life full of superstitions and inefficiency. An illiterate and uneducated people can be exploited easily by others, including the moneylenders, government officials and traders.
- **Extravagancy:** Non-essential items of expenses like much money is spent an account of shradhs, festivals, marriage, and pilgrimages.
- **Unhealthy habits:** Bad habits like alcohol drinking, chewing tobacco and smoking also make the villager poor.
- **Natural calamities:** Natural calamities like famine, epidemic (virulent disease), flood and earthquake destroy life and property of the rural people, this make them very poor and needy.
- **Over population:** Birth control methods are not still fully used or utilize in our villages, while most of the educated urban people take to family planning; most of the rural people do not, with the result that the rural populations are increasing fast. There is overcrowding in villages, subdivision and fragmentation of land make the holding of land uneconomical.
- **Unemployment and underemployment:** Non agriculture people in the villages face unemployment very often. Agriculturalists have under employment. Agriculture is a seasonal occupation and much time during the year is wasted. There is no work between the time of sowing and harvesting.
- **Exploitation by the influential group:** A poor villager is often exploited by the moneylender, a rich farmer, a middle man, or even government officials like Patwari.
- **Lack of supporting industries:** Lack of facilities for transportation, poor marketing system and defective social organizations are directly or indirectly responsible for poverty.

Remedial Measures

- **Agriculture development:** Better farming, redistribution of land, development of animal husbandry, poultry and small cottage industries suiting the rural environment are needed.
- **Development of supporting occupation:** Facilities for supplementary employment such as handicraft, weaving, pottery may be helpful.
- **Increase educational awareness:** Education should be made compulsory at least up to high school standard, this will broaden the total outlook of the rural people, and will be helpful them to adopt better ways of life.
- **Family welfare programs:** Family welfare programs should be intensified at the village level, so that all unwanted births can be avoided and the trouble of overpopulation will be reduced.
- **Fixing minimum wages:** Just as the factory; minimum wages should be fixed for the agriculture labor also and it should be actually implemented.
- **Better marketing facilities:** A farmer get proper price for their product.
- **Prohibition:** Prohibition should be introduced all over the country; this will help the rural people to avoid from drinking.
- **Redistribution of land:** The unequal distribution of land should be changed, all exploitation in this regard be stopped.
- **Rural electrification:** Rural electrification done in villages which are not electrified. Electricity is needed for irrigation and housing.
- **Other measures:** Other measures like social security schemes, implementation of legislation as well as rules and regulations concerning rural people. Social security schemes like unemployment allowances,



old age pension, widow pension schemes, better education facilities, public awareness programs, etc. are beneficial to reduce or overcome this problem to some extent.

HOUSING

Housing is a basic and crucial need of every human being just as food and clothing. It is very essential as well as fundamental to the welfare, safety, survival and health of a man. Housing is one of the most important life components giving shelter, safety and comfort, as well as providing a place to rest. Housing problems occur in all types of communities; both in rich and poor communities across the globe.

Housing has an essential role in economic development of each country, accounting for 10–20% of total economic activity in the country as well as being to be the biggest fixed asset of households (European Commission, 2005).

Definitions of Housing

Today it is a topical issue that housing has to be comfortable, economical, reasonable, maintainable as well as architectonically expressive and compliant with the environment. Different sociologists give definition of housing as described below:

- According to **Lexicographer**, “A house is a place of abode or shelter, a structure designed as a habitation, especially, a building intended as a home or place of work for human beings.”

From this definition it is evident that housing is not to be considered merely as a form of shelter against the negative effects of elements, but must be thought of in so far as it fulfils its purpose of serving as a home or place of work for thinking, sustain privacy and for performing activities of daily living for human beings.

- According to **Kehinde**, “Shelter is central to the existence of men. He also stated that housing involves access to land, shelter and the necessary amenities to make the shelter functional, convenient, aesthetically pleasing, safe and hygienic.”

The need for housing is not only one of the basic human needs but also serves as the indicator of living standard of the population. House is very important to make available with a sense of physical safety, security, protection as well as comfort. Hence, housing is one of the best indicators of a person's standard of living or lifestyle and exhibits his place or position within the society.

Cause of Housing Problems in India

India, still being on the list of underdeveloped countries in the world, according to the 2011 census, still needs 18.78 million houses. In India, approximate 0.15 percent of the total population is still homeless.

- **Lack of resources:** We face problems with lack of resources and factory set ups; to produce the necessary raw materials to limit Housing Problems in India.
- **Improper architects and civil engineers:** Currently, we require a very well educated division of architects and civil engineers, to combat this situation that stay in our country and come up with a proper infrastructure plan at low costs that is easily accessible and affordable to common people.
- **Improper distribution of the population:** Improper distribution of the population in our nation is another cause of poor housing. People migrate within the country from one place to another toward already over-crowded or populated cities, in hope of getting better job opportunities into large MNCs, mostly in the cosmopolitan cities. This causes lack of housing facilities with high price demands by the greedy landlords, this will result in the unethical torture of the residents.

Unit VI Social Organization and Disorganization

- **Illegal immigration:** Illegal immigration of foreign citizens in our country, especially from Bangladesh, Nepal, etc., leads to a further rise in housing problems due to over population or over-crowding.
- **Other social issues:** Looking into a different dimension of housing problems, the property-owner have discrimination attitude sometimes more often than not, discriminate towards renting their apartment to the people belonging to their religion or caste.

Effects of Housing Problems

According to **Kehinde**, unsanitary, unhygienic, unsafe and inadequate housing can affect the security, physical health and privacy of man.

- In the absence of proper housing, we observe another social problem such as habit of open defecation in our country. The risk of increase of disease-causing bacteria and other pathogens, pollution of water bodies due to the improper drainage system, etc. are the other adverse effects.
- It is not shocking when we have an enormous amount of unhealthy citizens in our country due to this problem. Housing problem reflects as overall poor performance in our country's GDP.
- Housing problems directly affect the health of the individuals.

Control Measures

- There must be requirement to move in the direction of proper infrastructural plans at low costs, to ensure affordable and a healthy living of citizens and to solve the problem of housing.
- Government should take initiative to build low-cost houses to make available for the large number of people who, due to their low-income earnings could not afford a decent apartment.
- Formulation of better as well as healthier economic, social and environmental policies that facilitate housing that is both affordable and sustainable by government.
- Improvement of sanitation in poor neighborhoods with poor housing conditions through urban renewal programs.
- Employers should also award building loan to their staff with no or minimum interest rates to enable them build their own houses effectively. This will go a long way toward ensuring equal distribution of house ownership as well as toward development of the country.

FOOD SUPPLIES

The Food and Agriculture Organization (FAO) was formed in 1945 with its headquarters in Rome. This was the first United Nations Organization specialized esteemed agency created to look after several areas of World cooperation. Hunger is widespread, especially in developing countries. Food crises often occur in the poorest countries and even communities in the most developed parts of the world deal with health problems related to the lack of food, like malnutrition in children. Malnutrition results in loss of productivity.

The chief aims of FAO are:

- To help every Nation to raise living standards of the general public.
- To improve or enhance balancing nutrition of the people of all countries.
- To increase the efficiency of occupations of farming, forestry and fisheries.
- To improve better condition of rural people and through all these means, as well as widen the opportunity of all people for productive work.

FAO's prime or most important concern is the increased production of food to keep pace with the ever growing world population. The most important aspects of FAO's work is toward ensuring that the food is consumed

by the people who need it in sufficient quantities and in right or balance proportions. This activity helps to develop and maintain a better or healthier state of nutrition throughout the world.

Regarding this context, the FAO has organized a World Freedom from Hunger campaign (FFHC) in 1960. The main objective of the campaign or battle is to combat “malnutrition” and to disseminate information and education. The FAO is also working collaboratively with other international agencies in the applied nutrition programs. The joint FAO/WHO expert committees have provided the foundation for many cooperative activities – nutritional surveys, training courses, seminars and the coordination of research programs on brucellosis and other zoonoses.

The government of India have launched several nutritional programs to deal with major problems of malnutrition prevailing in India. There are:

- Applied nutrition program
- Midday school meal program
- Supplementary feeding program
- Prophylaxis against anemia
- Vitamin A prophylaxis for the prevention of blindness

Statistics of Poverty and Hunger in India

According to the International Food Policy Research Institute's 2011 Global Hunger Index, the malnutrition level is that about 60 million children in India are underweight and malnourished. A report by World Bank, productivity losses in India due to stunted growth, iodine deficiencies, and iron deficiencies are equivalent to almost 3% of GDP.

- The Washington-based International Food Policy Research Institute last year placed India 67 out of 88 countries listed in its global hunger index. India's position is lesser than Bangladesh and other nations.
- India ranks 24th in the Global Hunger Index.
- India's ranking in Human Development index (which incorporates life expectancy, adult literacy, and school enrollment and per capita income) is 127th/177 countries. In the same index Sri Lanka ranks 93rd and China 85th.
- In India, people living below poverty line are about 30% of Indian population of the total population of 380 million.
- India's Infant and maternal mortality rates 80 and 517 per 1000 respectively, are higher than even the neighboring countries like Sri Lanka (12 and 60) and Bangladesh (54 and 350).
- Acute malnutrition has higher concentration within children from rural areas (21%) tribal and Scheduled caste (28% and 21%), illiterate mother (23%) and children under 3 (23%).
- The poor living in India are about one quarter of the world's poor.
- In India about 30% of population is living on less than 1 Euro per day (₹ 50–55).
- With 212 million, India is a country with the highest number of undernourished people in the world.
- 19.8% of children under-5 years of age are wasted or around 30 million children in India suffer from a form of acute malnutrition.
- 6.4% (9,800,000) of them are severely malnourished or have 9 times higher risk to die than the normal children of their age.
- 48% of same group is stunted and 43% is underweight.
- India has 40% of the world's low weight (below 2.5 kg) babies.
- More than half of under - 5 deaths is related to malnutrition (54%). Mild to moderate underweight contributes to 43% of the deaths and severe underweight to 11%.
- Child malnutrition rate in India is 46%. India has 35% of world's malnourished children.



Unit VI Social Organization and Disorganization

- In India, 56.2% of women and 24.3% of men are suffering from anemia, and have lower than normal levels of blood in hemoglobin.
- In 2005, evaluation of the PBS schemes the planning commission estimates 58% of food did not reach BPL families.

Reason for Shortage of Food

- Economic problems
- Failure of monsoon
- Poverty
- Effect of floods
- Burden of loans for agriculture needs
- Unfavorable factors for good crops
- Poor electricity supply
- Lack of irrigation facilities
- Labor problems
- Rural people migration to urban for employment
- Poor information, communication regarding agricultural development
- High population
- Delay in getting supplies of seeds
- Insufficient water supply
- Low production

Health Problems due to Shortage of Food

- Malnutrition
- Anemia
- Low birth weight
- Impaired mental development
- Vitamin deficiency diseases

Planning and Suggestions for Food Development (Food Security)

- Socioeconomic Development of rural people
- Community Development Project
- Rural society development
- Agriculture improvement
- Appropriate menu planning
- Support NGOs who work toward providing food to poor households

ILLITERACY

The significance as well as implications of education in modern societies cannot be overestimated. Literate and educated people are an essential prerequisite both for maintaining and developing society. If an analysis of the different problems of Indian rural society be made, it may become evident that the most fundamental cause of these problems is illiteracy.

Beside education, other factors also have their place in solving of rural problems as they will help to liberate their way of life. Even if education is not the single solution of every rural problem, it is certainly

an indispensable condition. According to 2001 census, literacy rate of India is 65.38% only. India has faced a number of social problems. The most important among them is illiteracy. Illiteracy means the inability to read and write. Illiteracy leads to the problem of child labor, female infanticide and growth of population. An illiterate person because of ignorance loses an opportunity to know about various welfare schemes of government. According to National Statistical Office (NSO) data, India's average literacy rate is 77.70% and male literacy at the India level in 2021 stands at 84.70% and female literacy stands at 70.30%.

Definitions of Literacy

It can be said that literacy rate and education among people in the country determines the development of nation. Definition of literacy is as described below:

- “Literacy is defined as the ability to read and write.”
- According to the UNESCO, “Literacy is the ability to identify, understand, interpret, create, communicate and compute using printed and written materials associated with varying context.”

Causes of Illiteracy

- **Poverty:** Higher income groups have better access to educational facilities while the poor have lack of access. Many poor are laborers, who instead of sending children to school involve them in labor work to earn income for basic survival.
- **Inadequate school facilities:** One of the primary reasons for dismal literacy rates is inadequate school facilities. The teaching staffs that are employed across the government run schools are inefficient and unqualified and many time not there.
- **Lack of sanitation facilities:** Many children, especially girls dropout due to lack of sanitation facilities. Many schools still do not have proper toilets and safe drinking water facilities.
- **Belief:** Many parents do not send girls to school because they believe that a girl needs to be a homemaker. Some do not educate because they felt she will ultimately get married and be part of another family. These beliefs are found among the uneducated who do not understand the importance of education.
- **Lack of awareness about education:** Some people still today not much aware about importance of education. This is also important causes of illiteracy among rural as well as urban slums.

Measures to Eradicate Illiteracy

The national policy of education in the year 1986 declared to drive away the hazard of illiteracy especially among the young population. The national Literacy Mission in 1988 made literacy a community endeavor.

- University education commission of 1948–49 stressed the use of mother tongue as the medium of instruction so as to increase the level of literacy.
- The education policy of 1968 introduced uniform pattern of 10+2+3 education all over the country. It aimed to eradicate illiteracy from India.
- In 1991, Professor Dave's education commission introduced a method of commission known as minimum level of learning to improve primary education.
- National Education Policy of 1992 introduced the program like, “black board operation” to provide basic facilities in schools.
- In 1986, National Education Policy laid emphasis on compulsory primary education. Non formal education was introduced to reduce the school drop outs.
- National Literacy Mission gave importance to mainly adult education.
- Sarva Shiksha Abhiyaan 2001 is an effort to universalize elementary education by community ownership of the school system. Though the “Right to education” was incorporated in the Constitution by the

Unit VI Social Organization and Disorganization

86th Amendment, in the year 2002 (as per the Supreme Court rulings in 1993 said that children had the fundamental right to free education). This will was finally effective on April 1, 2010 and it made education free and compulsory for children up to fourteen years of age. Despite these schemes, full literacy has not been achieved. The reasons are corruption, inadequate budget allocation and poor implementation. The mid-day-meal scheme which was launched to attract children, but this also failed to attract children because of underprivileged quality food.

Other measures are:

- Improving government schools
- Appointing trained teachers
- Providing good quality food to children in the mid-day-meal
- Eradicating poverty
- Providing basic amenities such as proper sanitation and drinking water, etc. in schools
- Creating awareness about importance of education

UNO declared 1990 as the international literacy year and every year September 8th is celebrated as World Literacy Day. Thus, illiteracy is a hurdle or acts as a barrier in the progress and prosperity of a nation. There is needed to take serious steps to reduce the illiteracy rate.

PROSTITUTION

Prostitution is considered as one of the oldest professions. It has existed in all communities in some form or the other. There is mention of prostitution in our ancient texts like the Vedas, though, as an institution, it developed probably in the post-Vedic period. In the later literature, there is detailed description about the palace prostitutes mentioned. Kautilya mentions about several types of prostitutes, the most important one termed 'Ganika'. The institution has grown with civilization, and it can be said to be a necessary accompaniment of civilized life.

Definitions of Prostitution

Prostitution is considered as antisocial, immoral or disruptive. Some sociologists define prostitution as described below:

- A prostitute may be defined as, "An individual (male or female) who for some kind of reward (Monetary or otherwise) or for some other form of personal satisfaction and as a part or full time profession, engages in normal or abnormal sexual intercourse with various persons who may be of the same sex as or the opposite sex to the prostitute." From this definition, it is clear that prostitute need not be a woman as commonly understood. Anyone who indulges in sexual relations in return for monetary benefits may be termed as prostitute.
- According to **Elliott and Merrill**, "Prostitution involves illicit sex union on a promiscuous and necessary basis with accompanying emotional indifference."
- According to **Geoffery**, "The practice of habitual or intermittent sexual union, more or less promiscuous, for mercenary inducement with accompanying emotional indifference."

The Immoral Traffic (Prostitution) Act passed in India also lays stress on the above aspects of prostitution.

Thus, three important constituents of prostitution are:

1. Promiscuous sexual relationship
2. Mercenary basis, whether in cash or in kind, and
3. Lack of affection or personal interest.

Causes of Prostitution

There are many reasons that are responsible for the occurrence and perpetuation of the problem of prostitution.

- **Poverty:** The foundation of prostitution is hunger. Several studies have shown that 80% of the prostitutes enter into this profession out of sheer economic necessity. It is really tragedy or misfortune of women who are uneducated and poor; this condition will provoke women toward prostitution.
- **Religious factor:** In several places of India, young girls are dedicated to temples as Devadasis (temple servants). They sing and dance during day time, but are used as prostitutes and concubines by the influential class of people.
- **Widow remarriage:** In our country, widow remarriage was strictly prohibited still even in some villages. In states like Bengal, Bihar and Orissa, child marriage was widely practiced and child widows were abundant in number. Once widowed, they were neglected, ill-treated or even abandoned. Most of these young widows often become prostitutes.
- **Broken home and neglect of girls:** In many broken homes, children are abandoned by father or mother. Girls of broken homes are likely to divert; without proper care and guidance, many of them turn to evil ways like prostitution.
- **Desire for luxury:** Many young women are turned toward prostitution today just to lead a life of affluence. The meagre salary or income of their parents or husbands cannot buy the luxuries they desire and often take up prostitution as a part time activity. Call girls associated with modern hotels is a good example of this.
- **Excessive sexual drive:** Some women are over-sexual and to fulfil their sexual desire indulge in prostitution.
- **Idleness:** Prostitution is taken as an easy way to earn money. Some exceptional women who are lazy by nature may think this as an excellent opportunity to earn money.
- **Growth of modern cities:** Modern industrial and urban centers facilitate prostitution in many ways. All the cities have large number of unattached men. Even married men are forced to leave behind their wives because of the problem of housing accommodation in cities. This immensity or huge quantities of unattached men are the customers who support prostitutes. The anonymity existing in cities facilitate the prostitutes to operate in an unobtrusive way.
- **Unsatisfactory home and marital life:** The unsatisfactory marital life conditions existing in the home often drive women toward prostitution. Dissatisfaction in sexual life may especially be one reason which pushes women into prostitution.
- **Mental deficiency:** According to data obtained from certain studies, a large number of sex offenders and prostitutes have poor intelligence. Women of poor intelligence may be easily exploited and misled.
- **Temptation by antisocial elements:** Since prostitution is a profitable trade, many middle men may be engaged in attracting young women into prostitution. In several cities, hawkers who bring not only customers but also more women into the profession.
- **Demand for prostitution:** Probably we can believe, the most important reason for prostitution is its demand itself. Various types of men support prostitutes. The unmarried men, old bachelors, widowers, those who are dissatisfied in their marital relations, those who desire for variety, men with excessive and perverted sex urge, all go to prostitutes. If there is no demand for prostitution from men, this profession cannot continue. In other words, men and their demands are mainly responsible for the perpetuation of this evil trade.

Types of Prostitutes

Prostitutes can be categorized into two main groups:

1. The overt group
2. The covert group

The overt group include those who live in brothels.

The covert prostitutes include a wide variety of women who enter into sex relationships for mercenary considerations. They may be women employed in several occupations, students, or even married women, who use sex to procure monetary benefits. They usually serve restricted clients. Modern facilities like posh hotels and telephone network help their operations.

Impact of Prostitution

Prostitution is a sore on the society and erodes deeply into it, creating problems at various levels.

- **Prostitution results in personal disorganization:** Prostitutes are almost social outcasts. Though men utilize them in order to satisfy or fulfil their sexual desire, they are otherwise looked down upon and condemned. The prostitute loses all self-respect, and acts merely as a machine or piece of equipment. She lacks normal emotions and moral values. She often becomes vindictive and tries to bring more and more men to downfall. Even in the males, this condition leads to a lot of disorganization.

Professor Walter C. Reckless has mentioned two stages of maladjustment:

1. The dual person and
2. Demoralized person.

In the first instance, the person leads a dual life, and need not suffer a moral collapse, whereas in the later stage, he also loses his self-esteem. He may lose respect in the society when his habits are known to the public. He becomes a habitual transgressor and his mind loses sensitivity and moral value.

- **Family disorganization:** The person who habitually visits a prostitute loses any interest in his own family. Harmonious relationship within his family is affected. Husband-wife relationship is devastated. If father's behavior is known to the children, he loses esteem in their eyes too. This creates a complete confusion in the family. Similarly, if a woman enters into prostitution, her family is affected in several ways. The family loses its social standing.
- **Community disorganization:** Prostitution results in various types of community disorganization. The venereal diseases—syphilis, chancroid and gonorrhea are of vital social concern not only because they are epidemic and devastating diseases but also because they are factors in so many other social problems. Venereal diseases produce a large share of psychosis. Its victims are particularly likely to commit violent crimes. Children of syphilitic parents are apart to be maimed for life. Many are born blind. The result of syphilitic and gonorrhreal infections are so appalling that they rank it the major public health problem of the western world. With the spread of AIDS, the danger to human life and health is multiplied many more times.
- **Economic problems:** Any man who goes to a prostitute regularly loses a lot of money in this manner. His economic condition is adversely affected, and his family also suffers due to his delinquency.
- **Health hazards:** Both the prostitutes and the customers are in danger of serious health problems. Venereal diseases like gonorrhea and syphilis are transmitted through sexual contact. In modern times, AIDS is becoming a great threat. The AIDS is mainly transmitted through sexual contact, and the prostitutes and the customs are in grave danger of contracting this fatal problem.
- **Moral degeneration:** Prostitution defines results in moral degradation of the entire society. When a large number of women are engaged in such a profession and when large number of men indulge in illicit sex, moral standards of the society cannot be sustained.
- **Degradation of women:** With the increasing trend of prostitution, women are losing respect in the society. Women are more and more looked upon as sex symbols and the high ideals of womanhood cherished in our tradition are in threat. The unhealthy physical and social environment under which the prostitutes lived are shocking and absolutely demoralizing.

- **Children born to prostitutes:** In several cases, children are born to prostitutes. Such children can be called offspring of unwed mothers. Rearing of such children, their personality development, their standing in society, etc. are serious issues. In some cases, prostitute's children have turned antisocial beings too.

Prevention and Control of Prostitution

The measures to be adopted to fight this vice may be grouped into four:

1. Preventive
2. Prohibitory
3. Prophylaxis
4. Legislation

Preventive Measures

- There must be facilities for vocational and moral training for women of lower economic stratum that should be provided by governmental or non-governmental organizations.
- Set priorities in this way that women workers should not be retrenched from their jobs as far as possible.
- Rescue homes, shelter home and other facilities and should be adequately provided for the poor and destitute women. Girls who are in mortal danger should be put in reformatories or institutions where they can be kept safe from the clutches of antisocial elements. These types of institutions provide facilities for vocational training, so these types of girls will be more economically independent; this will help to certain extent.
- Males should be taught to respect woman folk and not to exploit them sexually.
- Unhealthy social customs like devdasi should be abolished completely.
- There must be sex education at school and college levels. Girls should be taught about the danger of sex exploitation by males and skilled about prevention.
- Social education and propaganda also are important measures to fight this evil. A healthy public opinion should be created against illicit sex relations.
- Pornographic literature and obscene films should be completely banned. The existing legislation measures against prostitution must be adequately and realistically implemented in all sectors.

Prohibitory Measures

There must be provision of medical examination of all prostitutes that should be conducted at frequent intervals. Any woman who is found to be infected should be segregated immediately, and should not be allowed to receive customers till she is cured. There must be provision of licensing system of prostitutes that will be helpful if it is permitted by law. This will facilitate to have constant check over them. Medical personnel dealing with prostitutes should be specially skilled as well as trained. Sympathetic, efficient and free care should be provided to the prostitutes, because, many of them are very poor and helpless.

Many of the brothels are situated near the market places or industrial. For example, in Bombay, there is a big red light area right on Grant Road. Such proximity is very undesirable and dangerous. No prostitution should be allowed in or near the working men's residences, educational institutions. The term brothel should be adequately defined in order to facilitate the enforcement of law against institutions which serve as brothels under other names. The penalty prescribed by law should be severe for procurers. Street solicitation should be severely dealt with. Brothels and taverns should be declared illegal. Employment of women in hotels and similar institutions should be under close supervision.



Prophylaxis

The prophylactic measures include prevention of communicable diseases and improvement of hygienic conditions of women. Many of the brothels are dirty and overcrowded. Anyone who is keeping a brothel (if it is permitted under the law) should be made to give adequate facilities. The prostitutes and the customers should be instructed to use protective measures. Condoms may be used by males and females can use chemical disinfection after the exposure. These will prevent the communicable as well as venereal diseases. Young men should be educated to practice continence and develop healthy habits of recreation.

Legislation

There is a good deal of difference of opinion about the efficacy of legislation in combating a vice like prostitution. Legislation alone may not be effective. Industrialization, growth of unhealthy slums, excess of male population in urban centers, employment of female labor in the factories and workshops in unhealthy social environment, poverty, alcoholism, all demand proper attention to prevent the problem of prostitution. The development of a single standard of ethics for men and women, education and economic freedom of movement, widow remarriage, establishment of rescue and destitute homes are all measures to be considered for preventing moral threat or danger to women.

According to law, prostitution as such is not an offence, where both parties to the act are adults and no fraud or force has been used. It is regarded as a personal affair beyond laws cognizance. The Indian law concerns itself with prostitution when it offends public decency or its practice amounts to public annoyance.

As per Section 2(f) of The Immoral Trafficking Act 1956 defines prostitution, "It means as sexual exploitation or misuse of any persons for any business purpose."

Section 372 and 373 of the Indian Penal Code 1860 also deals with prostitution but it is restricted to child prostitution only.

Sections 366A, 366B, 370A of the IPC deal with punishing for offences of procreation of minor girl, importation of girl from foreign for sex as well as exploitation of a trafficked person respectively. Thus under IPC laws related to prostitution is quite limited.

The activities mentioned as punishable under the various legislations in India are:

- Soliciting in the public places for prostitution
- Living on the earnings of a prostitute
- Procuring girls for the sake of prostitution
- Importing girls for prostitution
- Unlawful detention for the sake of prostitution
- Knowingly permitting prostitutes to be in public places for their trade
- Permitting the use of premises for brothel

The suppression of immoral traffic in Women and Girls Act 1956 came into operation through India in May, 1958, and this law provides punishment for all the above mentioned offence. But, in spite of all these, prostitution could not be checked legally; because prostitution is itself is no crime.

Rehabilitation of Prostitutes

This is a very important aspect of prostitution; rehabilitation. Take measures to rehabilitate those prostitutes who want to leave their profession. Till now unless and until society welcomes them back and gives them shelter, safety, security, assistance and assurance, we cannot be expecting these unfortunate women to simply leave their ways.

There should be adequate provision to train or skill them in some other vocational training or work; educate them and settle especially the younger women. The older women should be assisted through social security schemes and free medical service as well as complete free medical assistance. If prostitutes have children, they should be cared for by the state, especially female children should be protected, least they should follow the footsteps of their fallen mothers.

DOWRY

Dowry is the major problem of marriage in India, especially in certain communities. As with the increasing importance or magnitude of money, the amount of dowry is also increasing gradually. Even the spread of modern education and enlightenment has not been able to diminish this problem. Strangely enough, even in a highly educated state as Kerala the demand for dowry is on the increase. Further dowry has resulted in violence toward women; there are cases when the brides have been burnt as they were not able to convince more dowries.

The dowry system in India refers to the durable goods, cash, and real or movable property that the bride's family gives to the groom, his parents and his relatives as a condition of the marriage. The dowry system can put great financial burden on the bride's family.

Definitions of Dowry

- According to **Encyclopedia Britannica (Volume VII)**, "Dowry is the property which a woman brings with her or is given to her at the marriage."
- According to **Webster's New World Dictionary**, "The money, goods, or estate which a woman brings to her husband in marriage."
- **The Dowry Prohibition Act, 1961**, defines it as, "any property or valuable security which might be given or agreed to be given either directly or indirectly by one party in marriage to the other party in marriage, either by themselves or through parents or through any other person which may be presented either before or at the time of marriage or even after that." The act further states that any presents made at the time of marriage to either party in the form of cash, ornaments, clothes or other articles, unless they are made as considerations for the marriage of the said parties, shall not be deemed to be dowry.

"Ordinarily, dowry is the property which a man receives when he marries, either from his wife or from her family." Thus, we find that woman has to bring dowry in order to get her married. According to the Dowry Act passed in India, dowry is a consideration paid for marriage. Although dowry is supposed to be the amount or quantity given at the time of marriage, or as a condition of marriage, repeated demands for dowry in marriage is very common, that is, the woman is asked by her husband or husband's relatives to bring more money or property from her people. This results in many quarrels also.

Historical Perspectives about Dowry

Dowry has its root from ancient time; most probably in the early Vedic period. Though no dowry was demanded, but the bride was given fine clothes, jewelry and other gifts at the time of marriage by her parents and close relatives. Though in the beginning, all these were given to the bride by her parents or elders for her own use, gradually, the elders of the husband's family started receiving, controlling and using this property. With the gradual fall in the status of women, greater incidence of child marriage, and the demand for dowry started increasing.

Causes of Dowry

Several causes may be attributed to the problem of dowry as described below:

- **Endogamy and the problem of getting a proper groom:** Previously, the upper caste men started marrying even from lower, whereas the upper caste woman could marry only within her own caste or a higher caste. Thus, a shortage of boys in the upper social structure occurred, and girl's parents are willing to give anything in order to find a proper mate for their daughter. Further, there is the problem of caste and sub-caste endogamy. When castes are divided and subdivided into so many small groups, it is very difficult to find a suitable groom for a girl. This often forced the girl's parents to attract grooms by offering money.
- **Child marriage:** In child marriage, the marrying partners have nothing to say. The dealings are between the elders of the two parties and this encourages dowry.
- **The custom of kanyadan:** When the bride was gifted away, usually she was given enough things to set up a small household for herself. But with the advent of child marriage, the girl could hardly possess or control anything she received from her parents.
- **Unattractive-looking girls:** Father of these girls would like to have a good boy by offering huge sum of money as dowry.
- **Absolute necessity of marriage:** According to the Hindu scriptures, a Hindu cannot obtain social or religious fulfilment without marriage. Marriage was especially essential for girls according to Hindu rituals and customs. It was the absolute binding duty of every father to see his daughter married at proper age. This obligation often forced him to give money and get a proper mate for his ward.
- **Dowry a prestige symbol:** The giving and taking of dowry, and also the amounts involved were important for prestige. "How much your son received in marriage?" "How much was given for your daughter's marriage?" Such questions were to be answered to secure proper prestige.
- **Customary institution:** Dowry has become a customary institution which has become again a part of the sociocultural configuration. Nobody has any choice; one has to follow the custom that is all.
- **For the stability of the marital bond:** Marriage, though it is simply a union of a man and woman to live as husband and wife, has to be stable and durable. It cannot be entered into very easily. There should be something binding. For this purpose, dowry is useful.
- **Stridhanam:** Dowry is also known as "Stridhanam" that is the wealth of the woman. A girl is entitled to a share in the property of her father, like the sons. So, she is to be paid her share at the time of her marriage. As she will be married off, and will be leaving the parental home, she has to be given what is due to her. This is dowry. According to the law prevailing in India, both the sons and daughter have equal share in the wealth/property of their parents.
- **Materialistic outlook in life:** The materialistic outlook in life, or say, in other words, we can say "love of money" is an important reason for dowry in modern times. The spiritual and moral values of marriage are on the decline.

Merits of Dowry

There are certain advantages or merits for dowry system:

- **Dowry is helpful in establishing a new household:** The money or property received as dowry will help newly married couple to establish a home. The custom of giving household items like cots, mattresses, fan, television, refrigerator, utensils, clothes and even vehicles are found in many parts of India.
- **Parental share of property:** The girl receives a share of the parental property as dowry. In the traditional patriarchal system, girls were not given share in father's property, but the law is changed now, and the girls are also entitled to share of parental property.



- **Spread of education among girls:** Because of the burden of dowry, many parents have started educating the girls. When the girls are educated, and even employed, the demand of dowry will be less. Thus, it is an indirect advantage.
- **Advantageous for unattractive-looking girls:** It is easy for the parents that the girls can be married easily with attractive dowry.

Demerits of Dowry

Compared with the merits of the dowry system, there are many demerits too; the dowry system has turned to be a serious problem resulting in family violence and disorganization.

Some of these demerits are discussed below:

- **Cruelty behavior toward brides:** When the dowry demands of greedy in-laws are not met by the parents of the brides, many husband and his family members torture the girl of different types: physical and mental torture, starving, insulting, taunting, and even killing by burning.
- **Suicide attempt by married girl:** When repeated demands for dowry are made, many girls prefer to end their lives.
- **Indebtedness:** Often parents of especially poor girls are forced to take loan in order to marry off the girls. Such loans accumulate with interest, and the problem of indebtedness comes. Things become worse if there are several girls to marry off.
- **Remain unmarried:** Several girls have to remain unmarried if they or their parents are not able to collect the dowry amount. This, in turn, may encourage immorality.
- **Incompatible marriages:** When poor parents are not able to collect sufficient amounts as dowry many a time, they are forced to marry off their girls to unsuitable persons like widowers, aged people, ugly men, person with bad characters, people of poor intellect, and unemployed persons.
- **Constant quarrels:** Quarrels on account of dowry either partially paid or not paid may be a subject for which husband and wife might fight, or, in a joint family situation, the in-laws also may be a source of constant trouble. Peaceful and harmonious family living can never be expected under such conditions.
- **Low status of women:** Dowry is one of the most important reasons for the poor status of women in India. A girl's birth itself is considered to be a curse. Throughout her life, she is treated as a burden by her parents. Girls are not properly educated too, because, parents feel that more they educate the girls, greater will be the expenses on her, and later on dowry too. When a girl does not bring enough dowries, her status in the husband's family is poor. She is looked down upon.
- **Female infanticide:** Dowry marriage expenses result in deficiency, shortage or poverty, and thus it makes people think the girl child as a liability. Modern science and technology has helped to detect gender of the fetus, if there is female, the mother is forced for abortion. Thus, dowry might have encouraged female infanticide. Even today, when there are so many for prohibiting female feticide laws yet the statistics of the same are much more to one's expectations, there must be a large extent of male and female ratio differences in most of the states of India.

The Dowry Prohibition Act

Since dowry is recognized as a social evil, efforts had been made from time to time to eradicate it. Gandhiji was much against dowry, and he educated the youth to be self-dependent, and take pledge not to have any dowry.

Various other efforts have also been made by teachers, voluntary workers, and young people themselves. Because of the increasing public opinion against dowry, Dowry Prohibition Act was passed by the Central Government in 1961. It may be worthwhile to give some consideration to the Dowry Prohibition Act, 1961.

According to Section 2 of this Act, dowry is any security which is given by one party to the other party or by the parents of one party to the parents of the other party. Gifts given at the time of marriage are not included in dowry. This is a drawback. According to Clause 5, any agreement regarding dowry is illegal.

Any issue regarding dowry will be heard by a first class magistrate, according to Clause 7. The complaint is to be prepared or made within one year of paying the dowry or offerings. The crime is not cognizable. Hence, its effect is relatively low. The law is often misused. Generally, no one goes to the authorities to complain against the giving or taking of dowry.

Suggestions

- **Encourage inter-caste and inter-community marriages:** By allowing inter-caste and inter-community marriages, the difficulty of finding a mate within one's own caste/community is removed. When there is wide range of choice, and also freedom to choose, demands for dowry may come down.
- **Encourage boys to stand on their own legs and then marry:** Generally, it is due to the economic dependence of the boys on their parents that they also become a part to the demand for dowry.
- **Girls should be educated and economically independent:** If a girl is educated and employed, she is more confident and equipped to resist the demands for dowry. Such a girl may even refuse a man who demands dowry.
- **Encourage young people to choose their own mates in a balanced manner:** But if mature men and women deliberately think and choose their own life partners, there are chances that they find people more suited to their interests and attitudes. Moreover, in such marriages, the question of dowry will hardly arise.
- **Create healthy public opinion:** Any social evil can be eradicated only when healthy public opinion is created against it. This can be only achieved by educating the masses, creating social awareness among them, through media of mass communications and other devices. As we discussed earlier, dowry is a customary institution, and it has entered into the folkways and mores of the people. Therefore, the entire society is to be touched and changed; changing a few people here and there won't be enough. This is so, because, even the so called preachers and social workers who work against dowry are compelled to give and take dowry. We are all aware of concrete examples in this regard.
- **Young people should pledge against taking or giving dowry:** If young men decide that they will not take dowry under any circumstances, and resist their parents' demands, this evil can be eradicated easily. Similarly, if young women decide not to marry those people who demand dowry, the problem can be solved.
- **More effective legislation:** The present legislation cannot deliver the goods. Dowry should be made a cognizable crime and even gifts should be banned.
- **Equal rights to girls on father's property:** Girls are given equal share in the father's property (like that of the sons); the question of dowry will not arise. This will further enhance the status of female child in the family and society. According to existing laws (The Hindu Succession Act, 2005), a daughter has the same right as a son over the property of a father, but there is a need to change people's outlook toward girls. It has become a vicious evil. The problem of dowry is experienced by all sections of Indian society, but it has become a chronic evil particularly among the educated middle classes engaged in salaried jobs and trade and commerce. In some cases, the dowry system leads to crime against women, ranging from emotional abuse, minor injury to sometimes serious loss even deaths.

Women's organizations, voluntary associations, and the media have expressed their serious concern for finding legal and reformatory remedies to curb the menace of this social evil.

CHILD LABOR

The child labor means the working child or employed child. The problem of child labor has become a massive one. India has the largest number of child laborers in the world who are engaged in both organized and unorganized sectors. In March 1995, the number of employed children below 14 years of age and engaged in various economic activities constituted 17 million (9.5 million males and 7.5 million females). A large majority of these child laborers are engaged in agriculture and allied sectors, while others are found in urban, semi-urban and industrial areas.

Definitions of Child Labor

The term “child labor” is often defined as work that deprives children of their childhood, their potential and their dignity, and that is harmful to physical as well as mental development. Child labor means the type of work that; is mentally, physically, socially or morally dangerous and harmful to children. Some definitions of child labor are as described below:

- According to the Constitution of India, child laborer may be defined as a person who is below the age of 14 years and works for an earning.
- According to the Concerned for Working Children (CWC) of Bangalore, a child laborer is “a person who has not completed his/her 15 years of age and is working with or without wages/income on a part-time or a full-time basis.”
- According to Home Folks, “child labor is any work by children that interferes with their full physical development, their needed recreation.”

In most of the underdeveloped and the developing countries, children of inappropriate age are put on or forced to take part in different productive activities due to economic distress. Parents of poor class send their children for work to increase family income or for support only while the employers of various business establishments employ children to maximize their profits. It results as the economic exploitation of children due to work pressure. This economic exploitation continues both in organized and unorganized sectors.

Child Labor in Unorganized Sector

In the unorganized sector, child labor is mainly found in the rural areas, tea and coffee estates, and mining sectors and even in urban areas.

- **Child labor in rural area:** A large number of children are found to be working in rural areas. It is estimated that more than 60% of them are below the age of 10 years. A study conducted in Western UP has revealed that almost 35% of the girls in 6–11 age groups were engaged in some economic activity. Similarly, over 52% of the girls the age-group 11–18 were involved in economic pursuits.
 - In tea gardens and coffee estates, children below 12 years are made to work much against the law. Girls who bring food to their working mothers are often encouraged to stay back and help in the work.
 - In the mining operations also, boys below 12 years are preferred to carry things inside the tunnels without bending their head. It is said that in the mining sector, 56% workers are children below 15 years.
- **Working children in urban areas:** It is very difficult to estimate the exact data or number of children struggling to live in urban areas as child laborers. Sizeable numbers of them work in city canteens, petty shops, restaurants, garages, workshops, etc. For example, in Delhi alone, 60,000 children work in dhabas, (roadside canteens) tea-stalls, restaurants and small eating places on a daily wage of ₹8 to 10. They are also found to be picking rags, hawking goods, cleaning private cars, trucks, selling fruits, vegetables,



ice candy, newspaper, loading and unloading goods for the tempos and trucks, etc. Some of them are working in private houses as household servant or employed in domestic duties.

- **Child laborers working as bonded laborers:** Child labor is also associated with bonded type of labor. It is said that out of the total number of bonded labor of Karnataka, 10.3% are found to be children. The figure stands at 8.7% for Tamil Nadu and 21% for Andhra Pradesh.

Child Labor in Organized Sector

Studies conducted in several mega cities have revealed some of the shocking facts about child laborers. For example, Mumbai has the largest number of child laborers. In Varanasi, more than 5000 children are found working in silk weaving industry alone. Child laborers are found to be working in many factories in several cities much against the prevailing law.

The poor economic conditions of the child laborers are such that they are found even in the so called organized sector that is, in factories and various industrial units.

Working Children in Industrial Units

The most devastating working children are those employed in hazardous industries. Some examples of such industries employing children are as discussed here.

- In the glass industry of Firozabad in UP out of 2 lakhs workers, 50,000 (25%) are found to be children.
- In the brassware industry of Moradabad (UP), about 40,000–50,000 children (27–30%) are working.
- In the fireworks and matchbox units in Sivakasi (Tamil Nadu), 45,000 children are employed for work.
- In the slate industry in Markapur (Andhra Pradesh) out of 15,000, around 3,750 are child workers.
- In the carpet-weaving industry around Bhadohi (UP), 12,500 out of 50,000 employees are children.
- In and around Surat (Gujarat), many young boys in their teens are engaged in diamond-cutting operations.
- Madhya Pradesh accounts for highest number (18.3%) of child labor engaged in beedi industry are between 5-9 years of age.
- Small girls are made to work in the back-breaking carpet weaving industry in Kashmir, and so on.
- It is also observed in small scale industries like bangles making, cloth coloring or printing industries as well as in flower making industries.
- It is also observed that children are working at construction site as well as under small contracts like white washing, repairing, working as assistance of carpenter, etc. on daily wages basis or hourly basis.

Causes of Child Labor

Various factors have contributed to the problem of child labor among which the following may be noted.

Economic Factors

- **Poverty:** Child labor is commonly found in all the developing countries where poverty is usually seen. India is a country in which more than 26% of the people are living below the conditions of poverty as per 2001 estimate. Many families with extreme poverty are compelled to send their children for work who contribute something for the family income. Children of poor families are forced to work particularly when the working adult members of the family become disabled due to physical and mental deformities, diseases or accidents.
- **Possibility of extracting more work for fewer wage:** Employers of many enterprises search for child laborers because they can extract more work from them by giving less wages. Child laborers neither have a “labor union” of their own, nor the “bargaining power” to be employed in mining, glass-making, carpet-weaving and leather industries mainly with this intention.

- **To secure more profit for factories:** Some industrialists (owners of fireworks, match-box units, glass and brassware industries, etc.) believe that their units are able to maximize profits because of the appointment of child laborers whose labor is very cheap. For example, the carpet industry of UP which employs 75,000 children earns about ₹150/- crores, a year in foreign exchange. In 1993, its export earnings were estimated to be about ₹350/- crores. These industrialists put forward their own arguments in support of appointing little children.

Familial Factors

Family disorganization often leads to child labor. Extreme poverty and economic necessity of the family as it is already mentioned, is one of the factors favoring child labor. Divorce, desertion, rigid family relations, cruelty at home, parent too run away from the unpleasant family environment. Some children with disturbed families wander here and there as street children and finally get into some jobs. For example, according to one estimate, there are more than 4 lakh working children in Delhi; nearly 1.5 lakh children are found to be "street children."

A large number of such working children neither have families nor can rely on family support. In these circumstances, if the children do not go for work the alternative left for them is idleness, destitution or crime.

Other Factors

- **Temptation of bad habits:** Children belonging to the poor families often become the victims of certain bad and costly habits such as smoking, gambling, purchasing lottery tickets, seeing the movies regularly, consuming alcoholic drinks, etc. When they don't get enough pocket money from home, they often resort to outside work to earn money to satisfy their bad habits.
- **Justification of employers of child laborers:** Some employers justify their act of employing little children for work. They argue that these poor children work to keep away from hunger, starvation or malnourishment. Even there statement is that they are rendering a service to the society by providing some jobs to the wandering children who would otherwise have become criminals or joined the rank of antisocial elements.
- **Failure of government machinery and legislative system:** Though the government has a constitutional obligation and a moral responsibility to promote the welfare of the poor children, it is not serious about the problem of child labor. The half-hearted legislations undertaken in this regard are a bad failure due to some undue circumstances. The government bureaucracy is also indifferent of the problems of the working children.
- **Lack of public awareness:** Children constitute the treasury of future wealth of any nation throughout the world. But unfortunately in India, public awareness is not there regarding the social evils such as child abuse and child labor. No organization has launched or working seriously toward an effective movement at the all India level to rouse the consciousness of the public regarding its responsibility toward children.
- **Prisoner and blackmailing of children:** There are also antisocial forces which often kidnap children and take them to a different place for selling them to some employers who are in search of cheap human labor.

Working Conditions of Child Laborers

- **Revolting working conditions in urban and industrial organization:** Children work under intolerable conditions in private houses as domestic servants; in tea shops and restaurants as vessel-washers and waiters; in mining as well as in small or big industrial units as young laborers; in garages as cleaners in shops as salesmen, and so many more.
- **Hazardous environment:** Children work in dangerously polluted factories while a few others toil near furnaces which burn at a temperature of 1400°C. Daily they will handle or workout with dangerous

chemicals like arsenic and potassium. Continuous inhaling of impure air adversely affects their lungs and creates diseases like tuberculosis.

- **Distressing picture of working children in urban industrial units:** A large number of children working in leather, glass and brassware industries in slate industries and fireworks, etc. have sunken chests, and thin bone frames which give them a unhealthy look.
- **Unhealthy shelters provided to working children:** These children not only work under insanitary conditions but are also made to stay in unhygienic shelters. A large number of child workers are huddled or occupied in small rooms under inhuman conditions. These rooms are just like compartments of substandard, poorly-ventilated, insanitary and poorly lighted shelters. These dwelling places are virtually unfit for human habitation and leads to certain diseases.
- **Children becoming sufferers of diseases:** Child workers who are made to toil for long hours under hazardous conditions hardly maintain good health. Many of them suffer from lung diseases, back pain, skin diseases, typhoid, dysentery, lung diseases, liver complaints, etc.
- **Exploitation at the hands of the middlemen:** Little children are drawn from the rural areas to work as child workers by some agents on some commission basis. These children who earn on an average not more than 500/- a month have to handover almost the whole money or maximum portion of it to the so called local “guardians” or “dadas” of that area. Those children who work during night shifts are subject to lack of money or several hardships.

Distressing Conditions of the Child Workers in the Rural Agricultural Areas

Majority of the child workers are mainly from the rural areas. These children are made to work hard in agricultural related works and also as domestic servants.

- **Child workers mostly belong to the landless families:** The National Sample Survey Organization (NSSO) which conducted a survey in 1971 revealed that the families to which the child workers belonged do not possess any piece of land worth mentioning. This situation has not improved much even at present.
- **The supportive rural environment:** Low literacy level of women, poor salary paid to adult workers, presence of large number of landless scheduled caste people, rural indebtedness and other factors in the rural areas have directly or indirectly supported the practice of child labor.
- **Child workers as domestic servants:** There is a greater demand for girl child workers between 10 and 14 years to work as maid servants at home while similar demand is there for boy child workers to work outside the family, that is, mostly in paddy fields, gardens, plantations, estates, etc. Studies have revealed that most of these domestic servants are not given reasonable salary and much work is extracted from them.

Government Measures to Prevent Child Labor

- **Legal measures against child labor:** In the Constitution of India, provisions are made to protect the interests of children. Article 24 of the Constitution states that children below 14 years shall not be employed in any factory or in any hazardous unit.
- **Directive principles of state policy:** Directive principle of state policy also declares their commitment to safeguard children's interests. Though some legislation was undertaken during the British rule, they were not properly enforced. The providence of a few more legislations undertaken soon after independence was also no better example of the legislations undertaken after independence.
 - The Indian Factories Act 1948 which forbids appointing children below 14 years for work and fixes the duration of work at 4–6 hours per day.
 - The Plantations Labor Act 1951 which forbids appointment of children below 12 years for plantation work.

- The Mines Act 1952 which prevents the appointment of children below 15 years from working deep mines.
- The Child Labor (Prohibition and Regulation) Act, 1986: The first national level and universally applicable legislation undertaken by the Government of India to prevent the appointment of children below 14 years.

Some Suggestions to Improve the Present Position of the Child Laborers

It is really a matter of disgrace for the entire society to make the children work as full-fledged employees. Enforcing them to work in risky conditions dangerous to their health and safety is a type of crime. Under no circumstances, they should be compelled to work before they become matured enough to work.

- **There may be provision for existing legislations be made more effective:** The government instead of thinking in terms of introducing new legislations must take necessary steps to implement effectively and strictly the already existing legislations.
- **Punishments for violators:** To ensure compliance with the 1986 Act, stringent punishment should be given to those who violate its provisions.
- **Promotion of the general welfare of the child workers be insist upon:** It must be made compulsory for all the employers to take proper steps to promote the vocational, educational, medical and intellectual well-being of the child workers whether they are working as domestic servants, factory workers or children with other works.
- **Law enforcement machinery is instituted:** Laws and regulations relating to child labor must be backed by effective enforcement machinery with statutory powers to take necessary action. This effort is helpful for the strengthening of labor inspection and such related services.
- **Maintenance of record is made compulsory:** It should be mandatory for employers to maintain registers and document indicating the names and age of all the employed children.
- **Exploitation of children is stopped in the unorganized sector also:** It is necessary for the government to make proper arrangements and take appropriate precautions to prevent unhealthy and exploitative child labor not only in the organized field but also in the unorganized sector.
- **Cooperation with International agencies:** Such as World Health Organization, the United Nations International Children's Emergency Fund and the International Union for Child Welfare are also working for promoting child welfare. Due cooperation must be provided to these agencies to obtain their best help.

At the end, it could be said that the government in cooperation with the public should take such appropriate steps with the help of which the child of the 21st century will find himself into the heaven of freedom, autonomy and self-determination.

CHILD ABUSE

According to UNICEF, violence against children can be physical and mental abuse and injury, neglect or negligent treatment, exploitation and sexual abuse. Violence may take place anywhere such as in homes, schools, orphanages, residential care facilities, on the streets, in the workplace, in prisons and in places of detention. Such violence can affect the normal growth and development of a child impairing their mental, physical and social being. In extreme cases, abuse of a child can result in permanent disabilities or even death.

According to the World Health Organization, child sexual abuse is the involvement of a child in sexual activity that he or she does not fully comprehend, is unable to give informed consent to, or that violates the laws or social taboos of society.

Child abuse has many forms or types, physical, emotional, sexual, neglect, and also exploitation. Any of these that are potentially or actually harmful to a child's health, survival, dignity and development are considered abuse.

Definitions According to WHO

- **WHO states physical abuse:** Physical abuse is considered when a child has been physically harmed due to some interaction or lack of interaction by another person, which could have been prevented by any person in a position of responsibility, trust or power.
- **According to WHO emotional abuse:** Emotional abuse can be seen as a failure to provide a supportive environment and primary attachment figure for a child so that they may develop a full and healthy range of emotional abilities. Emotional abuse is also the act of causing harm to a child's developmental stage, when they could have been within reasonable control of a person responsible for the child. Examples of these acts are such as restricting movement, threatening, scaring, discriminating, ridiculing, belittling, etc. In India, a rising concern is the pressure that children feel to perform well in school and college examinations, which can be seen as a form of emotional stress and abuse.
- **According to WHO sexual abuse:** Sexual abuse is considered that engaging a child in any sexual activity that he/she does not understand or cannot give informed consent for or is not physically, mentally or emotionally prepared for the same. Abuse can be conducted by an adult or another child who is developmentally superior to the victim. This includes using a child for pornography, sexual materials, prostitution and unlawful sexual practices.
- **WHO defines neglect:** Neglect or negligent treatment means the purposeful omission of some or all developmental needs of the child by a caregiver with the intention of harming the child. This includes the failure of protecting the child from a harmful situation or harmful environment when feasible.
- **WHO explains about exploitation:** Exploitation can be commercial or otherwise, where by the child is used for some form of labor or any other activity that is beneficial for others. For example, child labor or child prostitution.

Causes of Child Abuse

In the family, marital discord or conflict, domestic violence, unemployment and poverty, and social isolation are all important factors that can precipitate abuse. Child abuse extends across racial, ethnic, and socioeconomic lines, but there are consistently more reports concerning children born into poverty. It is considered to be an escalating problem, and one that can result in serious psychological damage among victims.

Social Welfare Planning in India

The various social welfare programs for women and children in India may be broadly categorized under seven headings:

- Programs for the welfare of women
- Programs for welfare of children
- Composite programs for both women and children
- Schemes for the maladjusted or vulnerable groups
- Schemes for the physically handicapped persons and
- Programs for the welfare of backward classes
- Programs for poor or disadvantaged groups

Child Welfare

Child welfare covers the entire spectrum of needs of children who by reason of handicap, social, economic, physical or mental are unable to avail of services provided by the community. Child Welfare Programs thus seek to provide supportive or compassionate services to the families of these children because one of the important responsibilities of the society and state is to assist the family in its natural commitments or obligations for the welfare of the children. Child welfare services in their various facets are preventive, promotive, developmental and rehabilitative in nature. The problem is gigantic and the resources available are only supplementary in nature designed to meet certain needs of the most deprived and among country's child population. Attention is generally focused on three categories of children in the poverty group's children of working mother's destitute children and handicapped children.

Child Welfare Agencies

The important child welfare agencies working in India are:

- **Indian Council for Child Welfare (ICCW):** Indian Council for Child Welfare organization touches or handles the lives of hundreds and thousands of disadvantaged children in our country. This council provides through a wide arrangement of programs from ameliorative to developmental support, protection and services to such children that are actually their birth right.
- **Central Social Welfare Board:** The Central Social Welfare Board was established in 1953 by a Resolution of Government of India to carry out social welfare activities. This welfare board is working for promoting voluntarism, providing technical and financial assistance to the voluntary organizations for the general welfare of society; family, women and specially children.
- **Kasturba Gandhi Memorial Trust:** The Kasturba Gandhi National Memorial Trust is an organization entirely dedicated to the social welfare. This organization carries out activities for development of women and children especially in population of rural India. It was created by Mahatma Gandhi in 1945 and has its headquarters in Kasturbagram, Indore, (Madhya Pradesh). This organization has branches in 22 States and its services mainly focus on health care, education, vocational training as well as employment of poor people.
- **The Indian Red Cross Society:** These agencies have got branches all over the country. They get financial aid from the government to organize child welfare services in the country. The following are some of their activities.
 - **Day care services:** This is for children of working mothers. Nursery schools, Balwadis and crèches are set up to help the children of working mothers. Day care centers are mainly for infants and toddlers.
 - **Holiday homes:** These are organized for children in the age group 12–16 years at hill stations and sea-side resorts. The children spend their holidays in a useful manner.
 - **Recreation facilities:** These comprise organization of play centers, public parks, children's libraries, Bal Bhavans, children's films, national museums, hobby classes, etc. Besides the national agencies, the following international agencies are interested in child welfare; UNICEF, WHO, International Union for Child Welfare, CARE and FAO of the United Nations.

Integrated Child Development Services

Currently, the most important scheme in the field of child welfare is the Integrated Child Development Services (ICDS) scheme. It was initiated by the Government of India in the Ministry of Social and Women's Welfare in 1975 in pursuance of the National Policy for Children. The integrated child development services

Unit VI Social Organization and Disorganization

seek to lay a solid foundation for the development of the nation's human resource by providing an integrated package of early childhood services.

These consist of supplementary nutrition, immunization, and health check-up, medical referral services, nutrition and health education for women and non-formal education of children up to the age of 6 years and education and health teaching of pregnant and nursing mothers in rural, urban as well as tribal areas. Integrated child development services scheme is designed both as a preventive as well as for development effort.

Objectives

The ultimate objectives of the ICDS scheme are:

- To improve or get better the nutritional as well as health status of children in the age group between 0–6 years.
- To put down the foundations for proper psychological, physical as well as social development of the child.
- To reduce mortality and morbidity, malnutrition and school drop-outs.
- To achieve an effective coordination of policies and procedures and implementation among the various departments working for the promotion of child development.
- To enhance the capability of the mother and nutritional needs of their child through proper nutrition as well as proper health education strategies.
- To accomplish or attain the above mentioned objectives, the Integrated Child Development Services (ICDS) aims at providing the following package of services:

The strategy adopted in the Integrated Child Development Services (ICDS) is one of simultaneous deliveries of early childhood services; while the health component is a major fundamental component or basic right of each and every individual. ICDS is much more than a mere health program for delivery of social services input for social development or welfare. The blueprint or design for the scheme was prepared by the Department of Social Welfare in 1975.

Beneficiaries

- Children <6 years
- Pregnant and lactating mothers
- Women in reproductive age group between 15 and 44 years
- Adolescent girls in selected blocks

Activities

- Target groups identified from community.
- Provided supplementary feeding support for 300 days in a calendar year.
- There must be record of weight for age growth cards are maintained on regular basis for all children less than 6 years.
- Severely malnourished children are given special supplementary feeding and referral to medical services.

Services

- Supplementary nutrition (supplementary feeding and growth monitoring, prophylaxis against vitamin A, control of nutritional deficiency anemia)
- Non formal pre-school education

- Immunization
- Health check-up
- Nutrition and health education
- Referral services

Supplementary Nutrition

Supplementary nutrition is given to children below the age 6 years and nursing and expectant mothers from poor or low income group. The type of food services depends upon local availability, type of beneficiary, location of the project, etc. The aim is to supplement nutritional intake by about 200 cal and 8-10 grams of protein for children below 1 year about 300 days a year. An adequate fund for supplementary nutrition is provided in the state plan under Minimum Need Program. Children are weighed every month or regular basis, nutrition education and health education is given to mothers of children; suffering from 1st degree of malnutrition. Supplementary nutrition is given to children who are suffering from 2nd and 3rd degree of malnutrition. There are proper referral services for children suffering from 4th degree malnutrition; these children are recommended for hospitalization as well as close growth and monitoring.

Non-formal Preschool Education

Children between the ages 3 and 6 years are imparted non-formal preschool education in an anganwadi in each village with about 1,000 populations. The objective is to provide opportunities to develop desirable attitude values and behavior pattern among children. Locally produced inexpensive toys and material are used in organizing play and creative activity. The administrative unit of an Integrated Child Development Services (ICDS) project is the; community development block, in rural areas; the “tribal development block” in tribal areas and a group of slums in urban areas. In selection of project areas, preference was given to areas predominantly inhabited by backward tribes, backward areas, drought prone areas and areas in which nutritional deficiencies are out of control.

The rural/urban project has population of 100,000 and a tribal project about 35,000 populations. The number of villages in the rural project may be 100 while in tribal areas it may be only about 50 taking into account the difficult territory in which the tribal projects are located. The focal point for the delivery of integrated early childhood services under the ICDS scheme is the trained local woman known as anganwadi worker. Other functionaries in the ICDS are the child development project officers (CDPO), who is in charge of four supervisors is responsible for 20–25 anganwadis and act as mentor to AWWs and assist in record keeping, visits of health personnel and organizing community visits and provides on the job training to AWWs. Anganwadi worker is the multipurpose agent, selected from the community. AWW provides direct link to children and mother; assists child development project officers (CDPO) in survey of community and beneficiaries. Organizes non-formal education sessions; provides health and nutrition education to mothers. Assists PHC staff in providing health services, maintains records of immunization, feeding and preschool attendance liaises with block administrator local school, health staff and community, and works for other community based activities like family planning activities.

The ICDS scheme began in selected blocks in different parts of the country. Two major evaluations were conducted in 1978 and 1982. The positive results of these evaluations formed the basis for the government decision to accelerate the expansion of ICDS in 1982. At present, 5320 ICDS projects are operational; Adolescent Girls Scheme is sanctioned in 507 ICDS blocks as a special intervention benefiting 3.51 lakh adolescent girls in the age group of 11–18 years. Uniformity of ICDS scheme is under consideration with setting up of 1000 Community Nutrition Centers and sanction of Indira Mahila Yojana (IMY) in 200 blocks. NGOs are involved in running anganwadi centers in 67 ICDS projects. Two World Bank assisted ICDS projects cover four states of Andhra Pradesh, Orissa, Bihar and Madhya Pradesh.

Unit VI Social Organization and Disorganization

The impact of the program on the lives of children is evident in several crucial indicators, increased birth weight, reduced incidence of malnutrition, increased immunization coverage and a reduced infant and child mortality rate in areas covered by the ICDS.

Immunization

There must be immunization of children against 7 vaccine preventable diseases, while for expectant mothers, immunization against tetanus is recommended.

Health Check-up

- Antenatal care of highest quality for expectant mothers
- Essential postnatal care especially of nursing mother as well as care of newborn infants
- Special care of children under 6 years of age

Besides immunization, expectant mothers are given iron and folic acid tablets along with protein supplements. A minimum of four physical examinations are necessary. High-risk mothers are referred to appropriate high-tech institutions for special care and constant observation, treatment and management.

The specific health care of children under 6 years of age consists of:

- Documentation and record of weight and height of children at periodical intervals.
- Continue watch over developmental milestones.
- Proper Immunization.
- Routine and general check-up every 3–6 months for early detection of diseases, malnutrition, etc.
- Prompt treatment for disease like diarrhea, dysentery, respiratory tract infections, etc. which are widely prevalent.
- Medications for worm infestations
- Prophylaxis against vitamin A deficiency and anemia.

Nutrition and Health Education

Nutrition education and health education is given to all women in the age group 15–45 years, giving priority to nursing and expectant mothers. It is imparted by specially organized courses in village during home visits by anganwadi workers.

Referral services: Referral of serious cases to hospital has also been provided.

Health records: Health records of the children, antenatal care and delivery card, etc. are adequately maintained. A card containing the health record of the child is handed over to the mother.

Interventions

Cases of child abuse are handled by a multidisciplinary team approach including medical personnel, law enforcement officers, the schools, social workers, and the courts.

- School personnel may be the first person to notice and report signs of any abuse. Child-abuse cases are often especially dealt or coordinated by a community's child protective services unit, which sends case workers to the home for evaluation and offers services to the child and family.
- Medical professionals may report cases, provide managed care and treatment for injured children, provide testimony in court, or help to educate parents.
- Law enforcement personnel may be involved in services when cases are reported or when there is a question of a criminal action or in matter of medico-legal cases. The courts only make decision or provide final emergency protective orders or decide whether the child should be removed from the home.

Child abuse may be strictly punished by incarceration of the perpetrator or by the denial of custody rights to abusive parents or guardians. India is said to have reported over 24 lakh instances of online child sexual abuse during three year from 2017–2020 with 80% of the victims are being girls below the age of 14 years.

JUVENILE DELINQUENCY

Juvenile delinquency means an antisocial activity that occurs when a minor violates a criminal statute. Juvenile delinquency in simple term we can say “Juvenile Offending”, is the act of participating in unlawful antisocial behavior as a minor or individual younger than the statutory (legislative) age of majority. When a juvenile involves into criminal activity or commits a crime, the procedures that take place is totally different from those of an adult offender. In all states of India, juvenile court systems, and juvenile detention facilities, deal specifically with underage delinquents or offenders.

A revamped Juvenile Justice Bill was approved or passed in the Lok Sabha on 7 May 2015. The new bill will allow minors between the age group of 16–18 to be tried as adults if they commit heinous or dreadful crimes. The crime will be examined by the Juvenile Justice Board to ascertain if the crime was committed as a ‘child’ or an ‘adult’. It completely replaced the Indian Juvenile Delinquency Law, Juvenile Justice (Care and Protection of Children) Act, 2000, and allows for juveniles in conflict with law in the age group of 16–18, involved in Heinous or dreadful Offences, to be tried as adults.

Juvenile Delinquents

In the Indian context, a juvenile or child refers to any person who is below the age of 18 years. However, the Indian Penal Code specifies that a child cannot be charged for any crime until he has attained seven years of age.

There are two main categories of offenders: repeat offenders and age specific offenders.

- Repeat offenders:** Repeat offenders or delinquents are also known as “life-course persistent offenders.” These juvenile delinquents begin offending or showing other signs of antisocial behavior during adolescence. Repeat offenders continue to engage in criminal activities or aggressive behaviors even after they enter adulthood.
- Age-specific offenders:** This type of juvenile delinquent behavior begins during adolescence stage. In contrast; the repeat offenders, however, the behaviors of the age-specific delinquents or offender end before the minor becomes an adult.

Definitions of Delinquency

Delinquency is an act, conduct or interaction which is socially undesirable or offensive. Juvenile delinquency generally means the failure of children to meet certain obligations expected of them by as a member of society. The juvenile delinquent has even been defined as “a child trying to act like a grown up.”

- According to a **Social worker**, “delinquency consisted of socially unaccepted acts.”
- In the words of **W.H. Sheldon**, it is “behavior disappointing beyond reasonable expectation.”
- Cyril Burt** says delinquency occurs in a child when his antisocial tendencies appear so grave that he becomes or ought to become the subject of official action.
- According to **Reckless**, the term ‘juvenile delinquency’ applies to the “violation of criminal code and/or pursuit of certain patterns of behavior disapproved of for children and young adolescents.”

Risk Factors and Causes of Juvenile Delinquency

There are several causes that are responsible for the act of juvenile delinquency. According to **Healy and Bronner**, bad company, adolescent instability and impulses, early sex experiences, mental conflicts, extreme social stability, love for adventure, motion pictures, school dissatisfaction, poor recreation, street life, vocational dissatisfaction, sudden impulses and physical conditions of all sorts are some of them. Many children get the label of juvenile delinquent in early age group, often between the ages of 6 and 12 years. Many juvenile behaviors during the pre-teen and teenage years may be considered somewhat normal behavior for children, as they stretch their boundaries, and struggle to develop their self-perception. There are, however, certain signs or conditions that a child might be headed in a terrible direction.

Some manifestations of Juvenile Delinquents often include:

- Abnormal or slow development of certain basic skills, such as speech and language
- Chronic violation of the rules or regulations
- Serious aggressive behavior toward fellow beings, other students as well as towards teachers

Studies have found that a number of daily life circumstances constitute as risk factors for a child to become a juvenile delinquent. In India, some of the serious forms of juvenile delinquency are stealing, damaging, murder and suicide, assault, gambling, sexual offences, travelling without ticket in train, escape from custody, etc.

Common risk factors for juvenile delinquency include:

- **Individual factors:**
 - A minor has low intelligence
 - Lack of education: Improper education and illiteracy is more likely to be involved in destructive behavior
 - Impulsive behavior: uncontrolled aggression
 - Poor school performance
 - Rejection by peer
 - Mental state of children: Sound mental status is extremely important to behave properly in a society. Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder and other mental disorders play a role to mold the behavior of child.
- **Family factors:**
 - Family factors such as family dispute, breakdown of joint family, ineffective supervision of children by parents play a major role.
 - Breakdown or morals and values
 - Authoritarian parenting—means using harsh disciplinary methods, and refusal to justify disciplinary actions among children.
 - Permissive parenting—permissive parenting classified into:
 - Neglectful parenting, which is a lack of monitoring a child's activities, and
 - Indulgent parenting, which possibly allows the child toward bad behavior
- **Social factors:**
 - Peer association—usually resulting from leaving adolescents unsupervised, encouraging a child to engage in bad behaviors when acting with his peer group.
 - Low socioeconomic status or poverty
 - Substance abuse: Additionally child indulge in drugs or alcoholism
 - Lack of care by government

- Industrialization and urbanization with migration of cities.
- Political problems; democracy without adequate education is useless. Therefore, there is much political corruption, and exploitation.
- Social change; the traditional Indian society is fast changing owing to a number of reasons. Inconsistency between ideals and ambitions compared with achievements creates problems in the minds of young people.

Preventing Juvenile Delinquency

Prevention of juvenile delinquency serves at-risk youths, their families, and the public, as it can put a stop to the transition of juvenile offenders to adult offenders by proper identification of cause. Prevention services are provided or offered by a number of governmental as well as non-governmental private agencies, and include such services as:

- Individual counseling, psychotherapy and proper health education to children
- Formulation of minimum standards
- Provision of better education and schooling
- Special training programs necessary for child welfare
- Substance abuse treatment
- Improvement in socioeconomic conditions
- Family counseling services
- Parenting education to have responsible parenthood
- Reinforcement in the system of religion and morals
- Providing assistance with recreation and functional programs
- Facilities for proper treatment and reformation of juvenile delinquents, with the provision of juvenile courts, juvenile police and reformation centers.

The availability of education, and encouragement of minors in obtaining a better education, plays a major role in prevention of such crime as juvenile delinquency. This is because education promotes social organization, and helps children of all ages learn to make good choices, and to practice self-control.

CRIME

Crime is a violation or destruction of criminal law for which some governmental authorities apply formal penalties. Crime represents a deviation or movement of a person away from formal social norms administered by the state. Laws divide crimes into various categories, depending on the severity of the offense, the age of the offender, the potential punishment, and the court that holds jurisdiction over the case.

Definitions of Crime

Crime means any antisocial behavior committed by the members of the society, especially those against the law of the state.

- According to **Elliott and Merrill**, "Crime may be defined as antisocial behavior which the group rejects and to which it attaches penalties."
- According to **E.A. Ross**, "Crime is an objectively evil act, a violation of social validity, an offense against the superior dignity of a collective system."
- According to **Sethna**, "Crime is any form of conduct which is forbidden by the law, under the pain of some punishment."

- **Neumeyer** furnished a legal definition of crime, "Crime is defined legally as any overt act of commission or omission that is in violation of law."

On the other hand, we can say that when a person breaks the laws existing in a nation or offends the social norms in a serious way, he is said to be a criminal.

Causes of Crime

The sociocultural factors are considered to be more important than the biological or physical ones as sociologists hold the view that '**man is not born criminal but made criminal**'. That is, the biological heredity is much less important than the social environment to make a person antisocial or criminal.

Crimes are of various types such as there are crimes against person like murder, rape and injuring another person, crimes against property like theft and robbery, crimes against public decency and crimes against public order and morality.

Sociologists study crime with the view of identifying their causes, which will further help to reduce the risk of crime.

- **Poverty:** This is possibly the biggest factor which drives people to crime. When the basic needs of human beings are not fulfilled, they turn to crime in desperation. The increase in population has led to unemployment and lack of food for many. For them the only option to survive are begging or turning to crime. Extreme economic disparities create feeling of resentment toward society and frustration, and become a breeding cause of crime.
- **Drug addiction:** A person who has become addicted to drugs often turns to crime like stealing or theft or kidnapping to sustain her/his drug needs. It is also seen that many who are addicts often become drug dealers and attract others to such habits to support their lifestyle.
- **Mental disorders:** It has been found that people with mental disorders or those who are depressed also end up committing crimes. The depressed person are often isolated from others and frustrated, and they lost their mind and possibly indulge in criminal activity.
- **Biological factors:** Some theories have explained crime and deviance on the basis of biological factors such as body type. William Sheldon propagated that those who have muscular, big and strong body builds tend to show violent and deviant behavior. It has also been propagated that glandular secretions determine our temperament and personality as well as physical and mental growth, and when these are not normal, they could lead to abnormal and unstable deviant behavior. However, these theories have been leftover due to lack of substantial evidence.
- **Psychological factors:** Psychologists have brought forward that those people who are inherently pleasure seeking and have strong 'Id' have a tendency toward deviant behavior. Such people have an inability to follow social norms and are prone to committing crimes.
- **Environmental factors:** Family environment, school environment as well as neighborhood all has an impact on process of socialization. When the family has been disorganized, members do not get adequate attention; the social control mechanisms are ineffective, leading to antisocial behavior. Similarly, quality of peers and friends has a role especially during adolescence periods and bad company can lead to involvement in crime; even families where children are abused physically or neglected develop violent tendencies themselves.
- **Impact of media:** Television has become an integral part of modern living. The violence shown on television or in cinemas influences people, who then try to imitate the fictional characters. This is the major cause of crime especially among younger people who are unable to differentiate between fiction and reality.

- **Unfair circumstances:** It has been seen that victims of unfair or incorrect rulings from court often enter a life of crime. They feel a sense of revenge against society. Some people are often falsely accused of committing crimes which end up in a conviction and being sent to jail. In jail they face inhuman conditions of living and come in contact with criminals, who initiate them into a life of crime once they are free. The injustice felt in such circumstances make criminals out of people, who are not so in the first place.
- **Regionalism and Racism:** Regionalism and racism lead to feeling of hatred toward others who are different. This becomes a major cause of crime and turbulence among people. Often these feelings are aroused by supporting leaders for their own interest, and common people activate to kill and harm others. The victims of regionalism also get influenced and enter the area of crime.
- **Discrimination:** Discrimination is a serious issue all around the world. When members of a society are treated unfairly due to their caste or religion, it leads to anger and frustration, and the end result of discrimination can be crime.
- **Social practice:** In the Indian context, the practice of dowry makes people greedy and promotes violence (burning attack, harassment, etc.) further some people create wealth to give away in dowry through illegal means (white collar crime). Therefore, for both it is a type of crime or a means of provoking crimes.
- **Power and politics:** Some powerful person instigate common people of society for their own gain. Many political associations all around the world have their own supporters; they use their power to manipulate people. Political power is often sometimes misused to take advantage of weaker groups and people of the society and the dissidence or disagreement that rises out of such situations often force the victims to resort to crimes.

In earlier days, a criminal was always considered as an enemy of the society and, therefore, efforts were made either to eliminate him completely or to give severe punishments to inflict pain so that he as well as others would not dare to do the offence again.

There is no single cause for the development of any social problem; there may be number of factors from family to environment that play role in development of these problems. There may be possibility to control risk factors as well as all the parents should be aware of the career and all activities of their children.

Types of Crime

Sociologists would like to investigate when an individual deviates from the course of normal social life. Rather than relying solely or exclusively on legal categories, sociologists classify crimes in terms of how they are committed and how society views as well as analyze the offenses (Fig. 6.16).

In this section, we will examine four types of crime differentiated by sociologists: professional crime, organized crime, white-collar crime, and victimless crime.

- **Professional crime:** Although the adage “Crime doesn’t pay” is familiar, many people do make a career of illegal activities. A professional criminal (or career criminal) is a person who pursues crime as a day-to-day occupation, develops skilled techniques and enjoys a certain degree of status among other criminals.

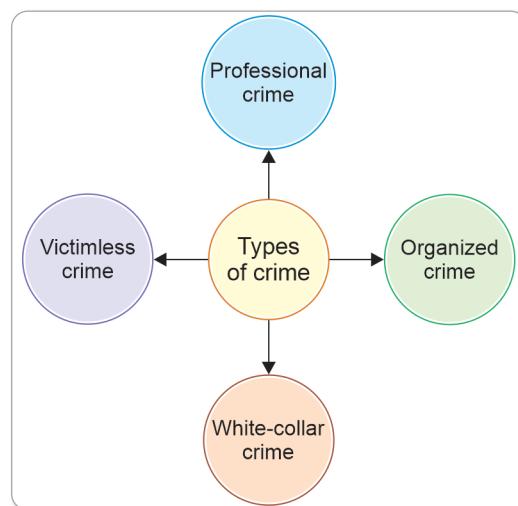


Figure 6.16: Types of crime

Unit VI Social Organization and Disorganization

Some professional criminals specialize in burglary, safecracking, and hijacking of cargo, pick pocketing, and shoplifting. Such people have acquired skills that reduce the likelihood of arrest, conviction, and imprisonment. As a result, they may have long careers in their chosen “professions.” Edwin Sutherland (1937) offered pioneering insights into the behavior of professional criminals by publishing an annotated account written by a professional thief. Unlike the person who engages in crime only once or twice, professional thieves make a business of stealing. They devote their entire working time to planning and executing crimes, and sometimes travel across the nation to pursue their professional duties. Like people in regular occupations, professional thieves consult with their colleagues concerning the demands of work, becoming part of a subculture of similarly occupied individuals.

- **Organized crime:** The work of a group (indulges in antisocial activities) that regulates relations among people criminal enterprises involved in illegal activities. Transnational organized crime includes drug and arms (weapon, guns, fire substances) smuggling, money laundering, and trafficking in illegal immigrants and stolen goods, such as automobiles. Organized crime is pre-planned and done by large groups of people. Their goals are to gain power within the society and make more quantities of money through illegal ways. Common organized crimes in India include:

- Drug trafficking (moving and selling illegal drugs)
- Gunrunning (getting illegal guns, weapons, sneaking them into the country, and selling them)
- Money laundering
- Pressure or extortion (telling a person that he has to pay money, or something bad will happen to him, his business, or his family)
- Murder (killing) for hire (killing someone for pay)
- Fraud of any kind (related to money, property, etc.)
- Act of human trafficking (tricking or kidnapping people, usually children or young women, into becoming slaves)
- Act of poaching (killing plants or animals that are illegal to kill, then selling them)

- **White-collar and technology-based crime:** Income tax evasion, stock manipulation, consumer fraud, bribery and extraction of kickbacks, embezzlement, and misrepresentation in advertising, these are all examples of white collar crime. This is a type of illegal act committed in the course of business activities, often by affluent, ‘respectable’ people.

A new type of white collar crime has emerged in recent decade’s computer crime. Nowadays, the use of high technology allows criminals to carry out embezzlement or electronic fraud, often leaving few traces, or to gain access to a company’s inventory without leaving their home. Sutherland (1940) used the term white collar crime in 1939 to refer to acts by individuals, but the term has been broadened more recently to include offenses by businesses as well as for corporations. Corporate crime, or any antisocial act by a corporation that is punishable by the government, takes many forms and includes individuals, organizations, and institutions among its victims. Corporations may engage in anticompetitive behavior, environmental pollution, tax fraud, stock fraud and manipulation, accounting fraud, the production of unsafe goods, bribery and corruption, and health and safety violations.

- **Victimless crimes:** A term victimless crime is used by sociologists to describe the willing exchange among adults of widely desired, but illegal, goods and services.

Cybercrimes: These types of crime are done with the help of computer and are very common in India.

Examples of cybercrime include:

- Act of Computer hacking (where a person breaks into a computer using another computer, and steals information)
- Cyber stalking (following someone all the time, using a computer, to make them feel scared)

- Fraud through E-mail (for example, emailing people asking to send money in scams)
- Spam (where “spammers” get email addresses for thousands of people and send them all unwanted advertisement)

Examples of different types of cybercrime in different places of India as discussed below:

- In 2006, the highest crime rate was reported in the city of Pondicherry (447.7%) for crimes under Indian Penal Code. This is about 2.7 times the national crime rate of 167.7%. Among states in India, Kerala reported the highest crime rate at 312.5%.
- About 34% (one out of three) IPC crimes in India’s very large cities happened in only three of those metro cities: Delhi (16.2%), Mumbai (9.5%), and in the Bangalore (8.1%).
- Of the 35 very large cities in India, Indore reported the highest overall crime rate (769.1%). The second- and third-highest crime rates were from Bhopal (719.5%) and Jaipur (597.1%).
- Some cities had higher rates of violent type of crime than the whole country of India. India’s national violent crime rate was 18.4%. Jammu and Kashmir’s violent crime rate was 33.7%; Manipur’s was 33.0%; Assam’s was 30.4%; and both Daman and Diu’s and Pondicherry’s were 29.4%.
- Uttar Pradesh reported the highest rate of violent type of crimes. Violent crimes in Uttar Pradesh made up 12.1% of the total violent crimes in all of India (24,851 out of 2,05,656). Violent crimes in Bihar made up 11.8% of violent crimes in India. (24, 271 out of 2, 05, 6556).
- Among India’s 35 very big cities, rapes in Delhi made up 31.2% of total rape cases in the 35 cities (533 out of 1,706). Madhya Pradesh has reported the highest number of rape cases (2,900), making up 15.0% of the rape cases reported in all of India.
- Uttar Pradesh reported 16.9% (5,480 out of 32,481) of India’s murder cases, and 18.4% (4,997 out of 27,230) of the country’s attempted murder cases.

Prevention of crime requires joint efforts of a host of institutions including the individual, community, business, government and non-government organizations. While governments in most countries play an active role in crime prevention through specialized policies and laws, nongovernmental organizations have shown an increasing interest in helping to make communities safe and relatively free from crime. Most of the non-governmental interventions are development oriented with more emphasis on training and rehabilitation.

Some of important preventive strategies are as described below:

- **Target hardening:** Making your property harder or difficult for an offender to access.
- **Target removal:** Ensuring that a potential target or object is out of view of the criminals.
- **Reducing the means:** Removing such items or things that may help commit an offence.
- **Reducing the payoff:** Reducing the profit the criminal can make from the offence.
- **Access control:** Looking at measures that will control or manage access to a location, a person or object.
- **Surveillance:** Improving continue surveillance around homes, businesses or public places to deter criminals.
- **Environmental change:** Ensuring your property and wider community looks cared for the particular things.
- **Rule setting:** Changing our habits by setting rules and positioning signage in appropriate locations.
- **Increase the chances of being caught:** Increasing the likelihood that an offender will be caught to prevent crime occurring.
- **Deflecting offenders:** Deterring an offender or deflecting their intention.

The problem of crime can be controlled or remedied by creating better social institutions and environment in our society. Better homes, better economic conditions, better education, recreation and better state and government can go a long way in this correlation. The government should make the people aware and should provide free education to poor children.

Unit VI Social Organization and Disorganization

Thus, there is a need for change and develop flexibility within the criminal justice system, greater coordination and integration in planning and policy, and a move from a narrow law enforcement orientation to one addressing the broader issues of crime prevention strategies.

In modern times, criminal is considered as a product of his environment and, hence, is given every chance to reform himself. Modern concept is to treat him with all humanitarian considerations, so that he will start loving the society rather than hating it. Today's open jail is a very good example under which a person is given sufficient freedom of movement and, activities within the specified area. It is observed that people serving their terms in open Jails are reformed easily.

SUBSTANCE ABUSE

Substance abuse and addiction is a serious problem affecting the health care system and society today. Addiction to chemical substances usually include dependence on psychoactive agents that results in pleasure or modified thinking and perception. These include legal substances such as alcohol and tobacco and drugs with therapeutic value such as analgesics, sedatives-hypnotics, tranquilizers, and amphetamines. Illegal substances most commonly used in India include cocaine, hallucinogens, and heroin. Addictions also include some compulsive behavior such as eating disorders, gambling, computer gaming, and interacting and even strenuous exercising. Addictions to illegal substances are commonly thought to be the major health problem. Dependence on alcohol, tobacco and gambling is responsible for more illness and death; if it is the use of illicit drugs. Exact prevalence of substance abuse and addictions is difficult to determine because of underreporting.

Substance-related disorders, also known by substance use disorders, all these can lead to large societal problems in modern society. This disorder is found to be greatest in individuals aged between 18–25 years, with a higher likelihood occurring in men compared to women, and in urban residents compared to rural residents. On average, general medical facilities hold 20% of patients with substance-related disorders, possibly leading to development of psychiatric disorders later on in their life. Over 50% of individuals with substance-related disorders will often have a “dual diagnosis,” where they are diagnosed with the substance use, as well as a psychiatric diagnosis on the other hand, the most common psychiatric disorders are major depression, personality disorder, anxiety disorders, and dysthymia. Substance use, also known as drug substance use, is a patterned use of a substance (drug) in which the user consumes the substance in large amounts or with different methods which are harmful to themselves or others also. Substance abuse problem in older adults are most commonly related to misuse of prescribed and over the counter drugs as well as use of alcohol.

The drugs used are often associated with levels of substance intoxication that alter judgment, perception, attention and physical control, not related with medical effects. It is often thought that the main used substances are illegal drugs and alcohol; however, it is becoming more common that prescription drugs and tobacco are a prevalent problem. A major public health problem related to behavior of substance abuse is the prevalence of hepatitis C in younger who are substance abuser.

Common clinical manifestations include:

- Sudden changes in behavior of drug abuser—drug abusers may always engage in secretive or suspicious behavior.
- Observes mood swings or mood fluctuations—showing anger toward others, paranoia and little care shown about themselves or their future.
- There may be difficulty or problems with work place or school activities—such as more absence or lack of attendance.
- Changes in daily eating and sleeping habit or behavior pattern.
- Changes in friendship group life as well as poor relationships among family members.

- A sudden unexplained change in financial needs of the person—this needs further may be problematic leading to borrowing or stealing money or sometimes involvement in antisocial activities.

There are many more different symptoms or clinical manifestations such as physical as well as psychological changes, though this is often dependent on type of substance being used by a person. However, it is very common that people who use substances will experience unpleasant withdrawal symptoms if the drug is not taken or taking drug away from them. The symptoms also documented or reported that others have strong cravings even after they have not used the drug for a long duration of time.

Causes of Substance Abuse

- **Prestige and parties:** Drug use is functional for several parties in society. It provides drug users the various positive physiological effects that drugs have; it provides the sellers of legal or illegal drugs a source of income; and it provides jobs for the criminal justice system and the various other parties that are dealing with drug use. At the same time, both legal drugs and illegal drugs contribute to dysfunctions or disorganization within society.
- **Poverty, racial inequality, and other conditions:** Much drug use in poor urban areas results from the poverty, racial inequality, and other conditions are also responsible affecting people in these locations. Racial and ethnic prejudice and inequality help determine why some drugs are illegal as well as the legal penalties for these types of drugs. The large multinational corporations that market and sell alcohol, tobacco, and other legal drugs play a powerful role in the advertisement or popularity of these kinds of drugs. There must be provision of strong legislative body to minimize free regulation of these drugs.
- **Group interaction:** Drug use arises from an individual's interaction with people who engage in drug use. From this type of social interaction, an individual learns how to use a drug and also learns various attitudes that justify drug use and define the effects of a drug as effects that are enjoyable.

Prevention

The overall goals are that the patient with addictive behavior will have normal physiologic functioning, acknowledge a substance abuse problem, and explain the psychological and physiological effects of substance use. Abstain from the use of addicting substances and cooperate with a proposed treatment plan.

Health impact of avoiding substance abuse:

- Reduces risk of sexually transmitted and blood borne diseases including HIV.
- Reduces risk of heart and liver disease, cancer and pancreatitis.
- Lowers risk of accidental death from overdose, motor vehicle and drowning.
- Decreases risk of depression, abuse, teen pregnancy, suicide and homicide.
- Prevents many complications during pregnancy, including fetal alcohol syndrome.

Prevention of substance abuse problems and addictive behavior include primary, secondary, and tertiary prevention. Primary prevention targets primarily adolescents and young adults with education about effects and negative outcomes of continued use of addictive substances. Secondary prevention focuses on early detection of substance abuse, interventions through peer or employee assistance programs, and continuing education about substance free alternative and stress management techniques. Tertiary prevention occurs when individuals enter addiction treatment and referral to treatment and relapse prevention programs.

ACQUIRED IMMUNODEFICIENCY SYNDROME

Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) is a sexually transmitted disease caused by the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV). It destroys the antibody producing white blood cells (WBC) which are called T-cells and thus cripples the immune system.

Unit VI Social Organization and Disorganization

Human immunodeficiency virus infection had been present prior to 1981. The first case of AIDS was discovered at the Center for Disease Control in Atlanta, USA, in the year 1981. By 1983, the causative agent HIV was discovered and documented the presence of new disease that would become known as the acquired immunodeficiency syndrome in 1985. In a short span of about 15 years, AIDS has spread to every corner of the world. It is a highly dynamic and volatile syndrome for which no cure has been discovered as yet. Hence, there is need to fear. The first case of AIDS reported in our country was from Tamil Nadu in 1986.

Definitions

AIDS was determined to be an advanced stage of chronic HIV infection.

Mode of Transmission

HIV is a fragile virus. It can only be transmitted under specific conditions.

- Contact with infected body fluids (including blood, semen, vaginal secretions, breast milk, open wounds, etc.).
- Sexual transmission by infected person.
- Perinatal transmission, most common route from infected mother to child.
- Other causes such as intravenous drug abuse, using unsterilized needles and syringes, getting tattooed without sterilizing the needle. Using a common razor at the barber's shop or tonsuring at religious places. Transfusion of HIV positive blood.

Major Symptoms of AIDS

The rate of virus progression varies; depends on many factors such as age, body's ability to defend against HIV, genetic inheritance, etc. (Take at least 10–12 years for clinical symptoms)

- Acute retroviral syndrome (1–3 weeks) frequently accompanied by flu like symptoms like fever, swollen lymph nodes, sore throat, headache, malaise, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, muscle and joint pain, rashes, etc.
- Symptoms of chronic HIV infection such as sudden loss of more than 10% of body weight, prolonged fever, extra-pulmonary tuberculosis, and some people may develop neurological complications such as peripheral neuropathy, facial palsy, etc.

Diagnosis of HIV and AIDS

The ELISA (Enzyme-linked immune-sorbent assay) blood test is conducted for diagnosis of HIV. It has to be confirmed by the western blot test or an ELISA test with a different kit. Generally it takes 3–24 weeks for persons to test positive after they have been infected.

Prevention

- Make people aware about HIV transmission.
- Make voluntary HIV testing as routine part of health care.
- Health education about prevention of HIV/AIDS.
- Sex education.
- Careful screening of people during blood donation.

Treatment for AIDS

There is as yet no cure for AIDS. No drug can cure HIV, but antiretroviral therapy can decrease viral load and delay progression of disease. Hence, awareness camps to educate people regarding the dangers and prevention of AIDS must be undertaken on a large scale by government and voluntary organizations. Messages regarding the effects of AIDS should be spread through the television, radio, press and other methods.

World AIDS Day is observed on December 1, every year to spread awareness on its prevention and control.

Rights of HIV Person

Universal Declaration of Human Right (UDHR)

- Right to life, liberty and security of person.
 - No person must be subject to force or testing or cruel degrading treatment.
 - Everyone or person living with HIV positive, right to work and participate in cultural activities and in community. To enjoy arts and to share in scientific advancement and its benefits.
 - Equal before the law and are entitled without any discrimination to equal protection by the law.
 - Right to adequate standards of living, assistance, medical care, and necessary social services, and the right to security in the event of unemployment according to their needs and their treatment choices.
- * People with HIV or at risk of infection with HIV should not donate blood, organs or other tissue. In almost all countries, all donated blood and body organs are screened for HIV infection.

COVID-19

A pandemic is an epidemic of disease that has spread across a large region, multiple continents or throughout the world. A new corona virus was first identified in Wuhan, Hubei, China, in late December 2019 as causing a cluster of cases of an acute respiratory disease, referred to as corona virus disease 2019 (COVID-19).

COVID-19 is a serious issue worldwide, more than 200 countries and territories have been affected with major outbreaks in the United States, Central China, Italy, Spain and Iran. According to World Health Organization, the novel corona virus (COVID-19), named for the crown like spikes that protrude from its surface, causes range of respiratory illnesses from the common cold to pneumonia. On 11th March 2020, the World Health Organization characterized the spread of COVID-19 as pandemic.

Severe acute respiratory syndrome corona virus 2 (SARS-CoV-2) and associated COVID-19 have caused a global pandemic or global emergency that requires an engaged, integrated, interdisciplinary, and rapid response from the scientific community to combat the emergency. Sometimes climate change, ecological change, and biodiversity loss might have played an important role in the occurrence of this zoonotic pandemic. Climatic and environmental factors, such as temperature, humidity, and air pollution, are potentially influencing the mode of transmission, spread, and severity of the current pandemic or SARS-CoV-2 infection. There must be strong scientific evidence about the contributions of these environmental determinants regarding the COVID-19 pandemic is needed. Other than climatic and environmental factors, a thorough understanding of the role of other important societal factors and public health interventions are required for better understanding of this pandemic. This evidence will support the public health community in responding to the current crisis, and inform strategies to prevent the recurring effects of the COVID-19 pandemic and future emergencies.

Prevention and Management

According to CDC guide, preventive healthcare strategies are introduced to keep the population healthy and disease free as possible, by providing general education (assist in preventive health efforts), identifying at risk patient, helping facilitate access to care and educating the community.

- Emphasis on preventive care; preventive care encompasses a wide range of techniques to identify, educate, prevent and treat diseases in population. Nurses in preventive health care services for improving the health and well-being of the patients through evidence-based recommendations while encouraging individuals to receive preventive services such as screening and counseling. There must be implementation of infection control measures or practices to prevent transmission.
- Facilitate access to most up-to-date government and related health pandemic information. Increase awareness among general public toward the need of the programs.
- Lead and manage nursing team, provide directions that are clear, concise, accurate and complete. Encourage adaptability to change circumstances.
- Consultation with health care team and among health care departments. There must be effective collaboration with others.
- Serves as case manager, isolation and identification of cases.
- Allocate resources in a cost-effective manner, anticipating resource needs, and gather the necessary supplies.
- Provide link to all standard guidelines according to new pandemics. Provision of individual conference, group meetings for team.
- Compliance in achieving the predetermined standard through quality assurance as well as evidence-based care.
- Writing reports and maintaining records, document task completion and necessary client data important for legal safeguard, this highlights the magnitude of an illness as a public health problem.
- Collaborate with governmental officials regarding health care legislation and policy making. Responsible for updating policies and standing orders.

Nurses Responsibilities

Nurses are important in managing a health crisis because they are a vital link between the patient and the rest of the health care delivery system. They are able to determine the human response to the acute or chronic medical problems.

Nurses relay their assessment findings to providers, they are able to assess the patient's response to medical treatments, and they educate the patients, along with providing a listening ear or a calming touch.

Nurses as effective partners of the health care system or health care services, of necessity, have to meet the demands of these changes adequately and appropriately in respect of their expanded and enriched roles and responsibilities.

VULNERABLE GROUP

Vulnerable populations are those which are more susceptible to social, psychological, legal, economic and physical harm and will include such groups as children, drug users, runaways, prisoners, patients, victims of violence or the mentally ill. Certain groups in the society often come across or encounter discriminatory or

prejudice treatment and need special attention to avoid potential exploitation. This population constitutes what is known as Vulnerable Groups.

Vulnerable groups are disadvantaged group of people in the society as compared to others mainly on account of their reduced access to medical or other health care services and the underlying determinants of health such as pure, safe and uncontaminated drinking water, good nutrition, good housing, better sanitation facilities, etc.

For example, persons with disabilities often do not get better occupation facility or employment or adequate treatment or people living with HIV/AIDS, face various forms of social discrimination or social isolation that affects their health and reduces their access to health care services or facilities.

A **vulnerable group** can be defined as a population within a country with specific characteristics that make it at a higher risk of needing humanitarian assistance than others or being excluded from financial and social services.

In a crisis, such groups would need extra support, assistance, which appeals for additional measures. For example, being a health care worker we need extra competence or ability as a part of the emergency phase of disaster management.

Common problems faced by vulnerable group:

- Health problems
- Economic insecurity
- Boredom and feeling of isolation
- Low self-esteem
- Fear and anxiety
- Neglect
- Abuse
- Loss of control
- Emotional instability

Rights of vulnerable group are shown in Figure 6.17.

The specific examples of violations of right to health of vulnerable groups would be as discussed below:

- Purposeful withholding or misrepresentation of information on the health status of disadvantaged or vulnerable groups that may have been essential for the prevention and treatment of illness or disability.



Figure 6.17: Rights of vulnerable group

Unit VI Social Organization and Disorganization

- Imposing or arresting discriminatory practices affecting the group's health status and needs.
- There must be adaptation of laws and policies that interfere with the rights of the groups, for example, women's reproductive rights.
- Failure to defend or protect women against violence; violence against women is often systematic and serious enough to require women to seek hospital treatment for injuries and involve other health complications related to such violence. When governments fail to take anticipatory actions or steps to prevent and treat victims of violence, it is considered practically the same as to violation of right.
- Failure of governmental policies to provide adequate public health measures against many infectious diseases that affect the disadvantaged groups.
- Failure of government to cover the eligible population with timely child immunization packages.
- Failure of government to provide adequate obstetric and family planning services in rural or remote areas.
- Failure to assess or identify the priority needs of disadvantaged group. These conditions occur if healthcare service personnel have inadequate knowledge about social structure.
- Failure to provide adequate preventive services to the vulnerable population.
- Failure to provide adequate primary healthcare, basic healthcare service to disadvantaged group.

Advocacy on Health and Human Rights of Vulnerable Groups in India

- Identify disadvantaged/marginalized groups; their health status and needs in different situations.
- Review the health information and services that are available to protect the health of the poor, vulnerable, or otherwise disadvantaged groups, including their quality, accessibility, affordability and acceptability.
- Collect disaggregated information on the health disparities among the marginalized groups.
- Identify the need those are difficult to fulfil, particularly those resulting from adverse discrimination and helping the people.
- Consider the relevance of public health messages and determine whether they are accessible and meaningful for vulnerable group.
- Assess and measure whether the vulnerable group's dignity is preserved by the health services made available and are easy accessible to them; verify whether they have the necessary health information and services that they require according to their needs; determine whether they are allowed freedom for the choice of treatment; consider whether their full, free and informed consent was obtained primarily during specific interventions; and confirm whether patient's autonomy and confidentiality has been maintained as part of the treatment where it was necessary.
- Identify and consider barriers or difficulties to the implementation of relevant laws, obligations, commitments, policies and procedures; this could mean lack of political will; weak architect or infrastructure or supportive mechanisms for effective administration of policies and programs; harmful traditional practices; rigid cultural norms or policies imposed by and as a result of adverse social reforms of the health sector to funding health services.
- There must be provision of promoting capacity-building among health professionals to ensure conformity with the right to health in quality service delivery.
- Inspect the curriculum of medical and other health professional training schools and advocate for the addition or enclosure of health and human rights of vulnerable groups in current Medical Education.
- Increase public awareness programs on the right to health of the vulnerable groups and engage in community information, education and mobilization.
- Assess or consider government compliance with specific obligations; whether government is meeting minimum essential level of health rights; whether there is systematic discrimination associated with the health care treatment of poor, vulnerable and otherwise disadvantaged groups.
- There must be measures to undertake advocacy to facilitate change by identifying violations to right to health; make acquainted with the nature of the state obligations arising from the fundamental right to

health and the common ways in which government violates them; document any identified violations and use it as a basis for monitoring and advocacy.

- There must be provision of working on national enforcement procedures to ensure state accountability.
- Documentation is must; prepare parallel reports.

Focus on the vulnerable group is very useful for human rights documentation. Different societies have different conditions or situations that generate and perpetrate vulnerability among certain individuals and groups. Hence, identifying needs of vulnerable groups within the right to health framework is a progressive and continuous ongoing process.

ELDERLY

The rights of the aged persons can be divided into three categories:

- Protection
- Participation
- Image

Universal declaration of human rights is established that; everyone has the right to a standard of living adequate for health and well-being of himself and his family, including food, clothing, and housing and medical care and necessary social services, and the right to security in the event of unemployment, sickness, disabilities, widowhood, old age or other lack of living hood in circumstances beyond his control.

Elderly person has:

- Right to security
- Right to health care
- Right to adequate standard of living
- Right to non-discrimination
- Right to participation
- Right to free from torture, cruel or inhuman or degrading treatment

Problems of the Elderly

- **Health problems:** The aging process is synonymous with failing health. While death in young people in countries such as India is mainly due to infectious diseases, older people are mostly vulnerable to non-communicable diseases. Decline in health status is mainly due to non-availability of good quality, age sensitive health care to large proportion of elderly people in the country. In addition, poor accessibility and reach, lack of information and knowledge are the other factors. It is of prime importance that good quality of health care is made available and accessible to elderly in an age sensitive manner. Effective care and support are required for those elderly suffering from various diseases through primary, secondary and tertiary health care systems. The rehabilitation services, home based disability support and end-of-life care should also be provided where needed.
- **Economic insecurity:** Many older persons either lack opportunity and the capacity to be as productive as they were. Increasing competition with younger people, individual, family and societal mindsets, chronic malnutrition and slowing physical and mental functions, limited access to resources and lack of awareness of their rights play significant role in reducing the ability to the elderly to remain financially productive and independent. Those people who are unable to generate an adequate source of income should be facilitated to do so. As far as possible, elderly who are capable should be encouraged for financial farm out. Families and community may be encouraged to support the elderly.
 - Isolation
 - Neglect

- Abuse
- Fear
- Boredom (idleness)
- Low self-esteem
- Loss of control
- Lack of preparedness for old age

According to National Council on Ageing, community based programs benefit older adults in improving quality of life, greater capacity to conserve personal health, improved independence, decreases pain, enhanced cognitive function, and improved mental health.

National Program for Healthcare of Elderly (NPHCE)

Keeping in outlook on the recommendations made in the “National Policy on Older Persons” as well as the State’s obligation under the “Maintenance & Welfare of Parents & Senior Citizens Act 2007,” the Ministry of Health & Family Welfare launched the “National Program for the Health Care of Elderly” (NPHCE) during the year 2010, in the 11th Plan period, to address various health related problems of elderly people.

Main Strategies

Following strategies will be adopted to achieve the above mentioned objectives:

- **Preventive and promotive care:** The preventive and promotive health care services such as regular physical exercise, balanced diet, vegetarianism, stress management, avoidance of smoking or tobacco products and prevention of fall, etc. are provided by expanding access to health practices through domiciliary visits by trained health workers. They will impart health education to old persons as well as health education of their family members on appropriate care methods of older persons. Besides, regular monitoring and assessment of old persons are carried out for any infirmity or illness by organizing weekly clinic at PHCs.
- **Management of illness:** Dedicated outdoor and indoor patients services will be developed at PHCs, CHCs, District Hospitals and Regional Geriatric Centers for management of chronic and disabling diseases by providing central assistance to the State Governments.
- **Health man power development for geriatric services:** To overcome the shortage of trained medical and para-medical professionals in geriatric medicine, in service training will be imparted to the health manpower using standard training modules or protocols prepared with the help of medical colleges and regional institutions. The postgraduate courses in geriatric medicine will be introduced in Regional Geriatric Centers for which additional teaching and supportive faculties are provided to these institutions.
- **Medical rehabilitation & therapeutic intervention:** By arranging therapeutic modalities like therapeutic exercises, training in activities of daily life (ADL) & treatment of pain and inflammation through physiotherapy unit at community health centers (CHC), district hospital and Regional Geriatric Center levels for which necessary infrastructure, medicine and equipment are provided to these identified units.
- **Information, education & communication (IEC):** Health education programs using mass media, folk media and other communication channels are being promoted to reach out to the target community for promoting the concept of healthy ageing with quality of life, importance of physical exercise, healthy habits, and reduction of stress. Arranging medical health camps for regular medical check-up are at various levels where IEC activities are also specifically promoted.

HANDICAPPED

Persons with disabilities suffer from discrimination based on society prejudice and ignorance. In addition, they often do not enjoy the same opportunities as other people because of the lack of access to essential services.

Person with disability means a person with long term physical, mental, intellectual or sensory impairment or illness which, in interaction with barriers, hinders his full and effective participation in society equally with others people. Person with disability having high support and care needs means a person with benchmark (point of reference) disability certified under clause (a) of sub-section (2) of section 58 who needs high support, observation and care.

Rights of Person with Disability Act, 2016

In the RPWD Act, 2016, the list has been expanded from 7 to 21 conditions and the list now also includes cerebral palsy, dwarfism, muscular dystrophy, acid attack victims, hard of hearing, speech as well as language disability, specific learning disabilities, autism spectrum disorders, chronic neurological disorders such as multiple sclerosis and Parkinson's disease, conditions of genetic blood disorders such as all types of hemophilia, thalassemia, and sickle cell anemia, and other genetic multiple disabilities or disorders. The nomenclature mental retardation is replaced by intellectual disability which is defined as "Mental retardation is a condition characterized by significant limitation both in intellectual functioning (reasoning, learning, problem-solving) and in adaptive behavior which cover up a range of every day activity skills; like social and practical skills including specific learning disabilities and autism spectrum disorders."

International human right law determines that every person has:

- Right to equality before law
- Right to non-discrimination
- Right to equal opportunity
- Right to independent living
- Right to fall integration
- Right to security

The Rights of Person with Disabilities (RPWD) Act, 2016 provides that, "the appropriate Government shall ensure that the person with disabilities (PWD) enjoy the right to equality with others, life with full of dignity, and respect for his or her own integrity equally with others." The Government is to take steps to utilize the existing capacity of the person with disabilities by providing appropriate environment. This will help the people to use his/her maximum potentials and adjust with their social environment.

MINORITY AND OTHER MARGINAL GROUP

A minority or subordinate group means group of people whose members have significantly less control or power over their own lives than the members of a dominant or majority group have over theirs.

Marginalized populations are groups and communities that experience discrimination and exclusion (social, political and economic) because of unequal power relationships across economic, political, social and cultural dimensions.

The term 'Marginalization' refers to individual or groups who live at the margin or boundaries of society. Marginalized groups are excluded from privileges and powers.

Definitions of Marginal Group

- According to **Peter Leonard**, "Marginality is being outside the mainstream of productive activity and or social reproductive activity."
- According to **The encyclopedia of public health** marginalized groups as, "To be marginalized is to be placed in the margins and thus excluded from the privilege and power found at the center."
- **Latin** observes that "Marginality is so thoroughly demeaning, for economic well-being, for human dignity, as well as for physical security. Marginal groups can always be identified by members of dominant society, and will face irrevocable discrimination."

Various Marginalized Groups in India

- Women
- People living in extreme poverty
- People with disabilities
- Scheduled castes
- Scheduled tribes
- Elderly of aged people
- Children
- Sexual minorities
- Migrants

A minority group has the following characteristics:

- It suffers from discrimination and subordination.
- They have physical or cultural traits that set them apart, and which are disapproved of, by a dominant group.
- They share a sense of collective identity and common burdens.
- They have shared social rules about who belongs, and who does not.
- They have a tendency to marry within the group.

Thus, marginalization is complex as well as a shifting phenomenon linked to social status of the individual within society.

FUNDAMENTAL RIGHTS OF INDIVIDUAL

The human society is a system. The society is a collection of status and roles of its members. The members of the society have certain rights and duties to be performed. The awareness of rights and responsibilities is real education. Democracy is based on independence, freedom, liberty, equality and fraternity. In such a system, it is essential that all citizens know their rights and duties, and function accordingly. In modern times, even the constitution of a nation lays down the rights and duties of its citizens. Many a time, it is observed that people are conscious of their rights, but not of their duties or obligations.

When people realize their rights and carry out their duties faithfully, there will be a healthy and integrated nation. The United Nations has laid much stress on human rights. All human beings have certain basic rights to lead a healthy and useful life in the society. Therefore, all discriminations and disabilities are contrary to democratic, human values.

Rights Laid Down in the Indian Constitution

The constitution of the Republic of India is considered to be one of the most comprehensive constitutions of the whole world. It has stated the rights of the citizens in clear terms. The Indian Parliament regulates the rights of citizenship by law. The Indian constitution declares India a sovereign (independent), socialist, secular, and democratic (self-governing) republic, assures its citizens justice, integrity, freedom, fairness, equality and liberty, and endeavors to promote fraternity.

Part III of the Indian constitution has stated the 'Fundamental Rights of its citizens.'

They are as follows:

- **Right to equality:** All are equal before the law, irrespective of sex, religion, caste or color. "The state shall not discriminate against any citizen on grounds only of religion, race, caste, sex, and place of birth or any of them." All can make use of shops, places of recreation, places of worship, wells and rivers. However, special provision may be made in favor of women, children, socially and educationally backward classes of citizens or the scheduled castes and tribes.

This equality is ensured in matters of public employment in India. In order to bring about equality, abolition of untouchability and titles was envisaged in the Indian constitution.

- **Right to freedom**

All citizens of India have the rights:

- To freedom of speech and expression
- To assemble peacefully
- To form associations or unions
- To move freely throughout the country
- To reside and settle in any part of our country India
- To acquire, hold and dispose of property of any kind
- To practice any profession, or to carry out any occupation, trade or business.

Beside these the constitution also has provision for:

- Protection in respect of conviction for offences or crime
- Protection of life and personal liberty
- Protection against arrest and detention in certain legal matters or cases

- **Right against exploitation:** According to this, traffic in human beings, and beggar and other similar forms of forced labor are prohibited. There cannot be child labor also “No child below the age of fourteen years shall be employed to work in any factory or mine or engaged in any other hazardous employment.” (Part III – 24)

- **Right to freedom of religion:** According to this, anybody can practice or profess any religion. All are free to manage religious institutions. There will be no compulsion in regard to any particular region. Since India is a multi-religion country, where Hindus, Muslims, Sikhs, Christians and many other communities living together. The Constitution declares India as a ‘secular state’, which means that Indian state has no official state religion of its own. But the constitution of India allows full freedom to all the citizens to have faith in any religion and to worship, the way they like. But this should not interfere with the religious beliefs and ways of worship of other fellow beings. This freedom is also available to the foreigners as well; who resides in our country. In respect of the rights to freedom, the Constitution makes the following four provisions under Article 25–28.

- There is; freedom to conscience and free profession, practice and propagation of religion
- There is; freedom to manage religious affairs
- There is; freedom as to the payment of taxes for promotion of any particular religion
- There is; freedom as to attendance at religious instruction or religious worship in certain educational institutions

- **Cultural and educational rights:** By this, the interests of minorities are protected. These minorities can own and manage educational institutions also. “All minorities whether based on religion or language, shall have the right to establish and administer educational institutions of their choice.” (Part III–30)

- **Right to property:** Anybody can own property. Nobody’s property will be snatched by the state. Appeal against the violation of the principles of fundamental rights can be filed before the Supreme Court of India. Further, “the right guaranteed by this article shall not be suspended except as otherwise provided for by the constitution.”

- **Right to constitutional remedies:** The Constitution provides for the protection of our fundamental rights through legal means. It does not allow even the legislature or executive to curb these rights. When any of our rights are dishonored or violated, we can seek justice through law and courts. Anyone in India can directly approach the Supreme Court for justice.

- **Right to education:** Right to education was added by introducing a new Article 21A in the chapter on Fundamental Rights in 2002 by the 86th Constitutional Amendment. It was a long standing demand

Unit VI Social Organization and Disorganization

so that all children in the age group of 6-14 years (and their parents) can claim compulsory and free education as a Fundamental Right. It is a major step forward in making the country free of one of social problems; illiteracy. As illiteracy is major social problem and is considered an evil for growth of country. But this addition remained meaningless, as it could not be enforced until 2009 when the parliament passed the Right to Education Act, 2009 (came into force on April 1, 2010). It is this Act which aims at ensuring that every child who is between 6–14 years of age goes to school and receive quality education, that is his/her right.

Besides, these individuals also have a right to work in any field and right to spend their leisure time as they desire.

Responsibilities or Duties of the Citizens of India

Just as we have certain rights guaranteed in our constitution, we have certain obligations too. These are mentioned in Part IV. A – “Fundamental duties of the Indian Constitution.” According to this, it shall be the duty or responsibility of every citizen of India:

- To abide by the constitution and respect its ideals and institutions, the National Flag, and the National Anthem.
- To cherish and follow the noble ideals which inspired our national struggle for freedom.
- To uphold and protect the sovereignty, unity and integrity of India.
- To defend the country and render national service when called upon to do so.
- To promote harmony and the spirit of common brotherhood amongst all the people of India transcending religious, linguistic, or sectional diversities, to renounce practices derogatory to the dignity of women.
- To value and preserve the rich heritage of our composite culture.
- To protect and improve the natural environment including forests, lakes, rivers and wild life, and to have compassion for living creatures.
- To develop the scientific temper, humanism and the spirit of inquiry and reform.
- To safeguard public property and to abjure violence.
- To strive toward excellence in all spheres of individual and collective activity so that the nation constantly rises to higher levels of endeavor and achievement.
- Further, one more fundamental duty has been added to the Indian constitution by 86th Amendment of the constitution in 2002.
- A parent or guardian should provide opportunities for education to his child or as the case may be, ward between the age of six and fourteen years.

Originally -10 duties Now -11 duties (added by 86th Amendment Act, 2002)

It is the responsibility of every citizen to:

- Abide by the Constitution and respect National Flag & National Anthem
- Follow ideals of the freedom struggle
- Protect sovereignty and integrity of India
- Defend the country and render national services when called upon
- Spirit of common brotherhood
- Preserve composite culture
- Preserve natural environment
- Develop scientific temper
- Safeguard public property
- Strive for excellence
- Send their children in the age group of 6–14 years to school; it is duty for all parents or guardians

The importance of fundamental duties:

- **To promote cultural harmony:** India is a diverse nation with different racial and religious groups. Thus, such a vast democratic country like India can prosper only when the citizens of this country respects its integrity and promote cultural harmony.
- **To make free, unrestricted and healthy society:** The fundamental duties are a constant reminder to the citizens; that they have duties in building up a free, egalitarian, healthy and responsible society.
- **To protect our environment:** Since environmental pollution has become a great cause of concern all over the world.
- **Safeguarding of human rights:** Providing opportunity for education for children as a fundamental duty is a big step toward safeguarding of human rights and abolition of social injustice.

These duties are in consonance with the preamble to the Constitution of India, which says, "We the people of India, having solemnly resolved to constitute India into a Sovereign Socialist Secular Democratic Republic and to secure to all its citizens: Justice, social, economic and political; Liberty of thought, expression, belief, faith and worship; Equality of status and of opportunity; and to promote among them all Fraternity assuring the dignity of the individual and the unity and integrity of the Nation; do Hereby Adopt, Enact, and Give to Ourselves this Constitution."

These duties can be further expanded and explained to include all those responsibilities to have a wholesome life in India. Provisions as to fundamental duties cannot be enforced by writs. They can be promoted only by constitutional methods. But they can be used for interpreting ambiguous statutes.

Rights of Women

Because of globalization and a larger percentage of women entering the workforce, the perceived value of the women has extended beyond the homemaker, wife and mother. This has caused a dramatic and positive shift in the area of women's rights legally and culturally.

The Indian Government is involved and trying to improve matters.

- Dowry Prohibition Act 1961
- Protection of women from Domestic Violence Act 2005 came into force on October 2006.
- **Trafficking:** The immoral traffic Act was passed in 1956.
- **Female infanticide:** In 1994, Indian Government passed the law forbidding women for their families from asking about the sex of the baby after ultrasonography and also expressly forbade doctors or any other staff from giving that information.
- Child marriage—legal age 18 years.
- **Other concerns**
 - Health
 - Family planning
 - Sanitation

Our Indian Constitution provides exclusive rights to women for their protection and development.

- **Right to maintenance:** The condition of maintenance includes the basic necessities of life such as food, shelter, clothes, education and health care facilities. A married woman is allowed to get maintenance from her husband even after her divorce till she does not remarry. Maintenance depends on the standard of living of the wife, circumstances as well as income of the husband. Section 125 of the Code of Criminal Procedure, 1973, puts an obligation on the husband to sustain her divorced wife except when the wife lives in adultery or refuses to live with her husband without reasonable cause or when both of them live separately by mutual consent or agreement. According to this aforesaid section, any Indian woman irrespective of her caste and religion can directly claim maintenance from her husband. The Hindu

Marriage Act, 1955 also facilitates maintenance but to Hindu women only. Whereas, the Dissolution of Muslim Marriage Act, 1939 covers only for Muslim woman.

- **Right to equal pay:** In any firm or organization, a male and a female are entitled to the same pay for the same work. There is provision of Equal Remuneration Act for the same. This act ensures payment or remuneration of equal remuneration to both men and women workers for the same work or work of a similar nature. In the circumstance and terms or conditions of recruitment and service conditions, there will be not at all any kind of discrimination on the basis of gender.
- **Right to dignity and decency:** Dignity, self-respect and decency are women's personal jewels. Anybody who tries to snatch and disturb her modesty or humanity is considered a sinner and law very well entails its punishment. Every woman has the right to live with dignity and respect, free of fear, without cruelty, free of violence and discrimination. Law very well respects every woman's dignity and humanity. The criminal law provides for the punishments or penalty for offences committed against women like Sexual Harassment (Sec. 354A), assault with intent to disrobe her (Sec. 354B) or to outrage her modesty (Sec. 354), Voyeurism (Sec. 354C), Stalking (354D), etc. If in case the woman herself is accused of an offence and arrested due to any antisocial activity, she is behaved and dealt with decency. The medical examination should be carried out by a woman medical officer or only under supervision of a woman medical officer. In extreme conditions such as rape cases, so far as practicable, a woman police officer should register the FIR. In addition, there is provision that the women cannot be arrested after sunset and before sunrise except for a special permission of the Magistrate by a woman police officer.
- **Right against domestic violence:** Every woman is at liberty to the right against Domestic Violence with her by virtue of the enactment of the Protection of Women from Domestic Violence Act in 2005. Domestic Violence includes within its range not only Physical abuse but also mental, sexual and economic abuse. The Indian Penal code (IPC) also provides protection to such women who are subjected to Domestic violence, under Sec 498A by punishing the husband or his relatives with the imprisonment which may extend to 3 years and addition of fine also.
- **Rights at workplace:** There must be a right to have a ladies toilet at working institutions. At any organizations, with more than 30 female workers, providing facilities for care and feeding of children is mandatory. Further, the Supreme Court and the Government had put efforts to ensure the safety of women at workplaces. There is prerequisite of Sexual Harassment of Women at Workplace (PREVENTION, PROHIBITION and REDRESSAL) Act, 2013. This Act is implemented to provide protection against sexual harassment of women at workplace and for the prevention and readdress of complaints of sexual harassment. In addition, Indian Penal code (IPC) also, penalizes Sexual Harassment under 354A by providing an imprisonment of 1–3 years.
- **Right against dowry:** Dowry system means giving and taking of dowry by bride or bridegroom or by their parents at, before or after the marriage is penalized by Dowry Prohibition Act, 1961. If any complaints are made against any person demanding dowry; that person will be punishable with a minimum imprisonment of 5 years and minimum fine of ₹15,000.
- **Right to free legal aid:** Woman can be entitled to claim free legal services from the legal services authorities recognized under the Legal Services Authorities Act, 1987. At District, State as well as at National level there are District, State, and National legal Services Authorities constituted respectively. A legal service consists of assisting in the conduct of any case or other legal proceedings before any Court or tribunal or authority and advising on legal subject matters.
- **Right of private defense or self-defense:** If a woman feels that the assailant is about to cause death or grievous hurt or commit rape, kidnapping or abduction or intends to lock in a room or throws or attempts to throw acid on women and in such type of extreme conditions; the person gets killed by women in her self-defense; it is a defensive right, or law to protect the women.

Rights of Children

India is uniformity to the UN declaration on the Rights of the child 1959. Accordingly, it adapted a national policy on children in 1974.

Some rights of children are:

- Right to education
- Right to expression
- Right to information
- Right to nutrition
- Right to health and care
- Right to protection from abuse
- Right to protection from exploitation
- Right to protection from neglect
- Right to development
- Right to recreation
- Right to name and nationality
- Right to survival

In addition, children also have rights as equal citizens of India, without any discrimination just as any other adult male or female.

ROLE OF NURSE IN REDUCING SOCIAL PROBLEMS AND ENHANCE COPING

Nurse plays an important role in controlling social problems. Community health nurses are responsible to make thorough assessment of the community and in identification of social problems. Nurses must be aware of various means of economic growth of family and also responsible for providing social support system of those families.

Roles and responsibilities of nurse in reducing social problems are:

- **Community assessment:** Nurses are responsible to assess social health problems such as poverty, illiteracy, etc. They plan and guide the people various means of economic growth such as kitchen gardening, doing craft work, at home and telling them about cooperative societies. A nurse also guides financial support services to people.
- **Providing care:** Nurses are responsible to provide preventive, promotive and curative health services to vulnerable group such as women, children and elderly people to achieve their maximum health. This is important in preventing individual and family disorganization.
- **Identification of social problems:** Nurses educate the public about certain health problems and the origin of social problems and how these problems are interrelated to each other. They suggest various alternatives or remedies to control or eliminate these problems.
- **Rehabilitative care:** Nurses care for disabled and rehabilitate them vocationally and functionally so as to restore their functions up to maximum level. A nurse always acts as an advocate for the health and well-being of patients.
- **Health education:** Nurse gives health education to patients and their family members also. Works as changing agents in providing quality health care services. The fundamental responsibility of nursing personnel is to instruct individuals about Family Planning. The well-being instruction can be held in the safety environment, emergency clinics, centers, schools, homes and so forth.

- **Active participation in social welfare programs:** Nurses are the key members who always participate actively in social welfare programs. As an assistant, they participate in Family Welfare Department at National, Regional and Local level. Nurse may need to set-up a family government assistance center and deal with the authoritative movements.

The nurse must have an enthusiastic brain to address the inquiries and discover the answer for it, it is important to use critical thinking skills. As an individual from the well-being group, nurses need to have enough information to respond to such inquiries. It is essential to keep precise records to each and every activity provided by her.

SOCIAL WELFARE PROGRAMS IN INDIA

In 1950, Government of India set up the Planning Commission to formulate the programs of social welfare in the country through most effective and balanced utilization of the country's resources.

In 1953, a central social welfare board was set to distribute funds to voluntary service organizations for strengthening, improving and extending the existing activities in the field of social welfare and for developing new programs and carrying out the pilot projects. This board is an autonomous body and consists of women social workers and representatives of the state government.

In 1964, the department of social welfare was created for general social welfare. In 1985, it plans social welfare programs and coordinates welfare services. It is maintained by government of India, state government and national voluntary agencies.

Under the welfare programs:

Child Welfare

The National Policy for children put down that the State shall provide adequate services toward children, both before and after birth and during the growing stages for their full physical, mental and social development. The measures include a comprehensive health program supplementary nutrition for mothers and children free and compulsory education for all children up to the age of 14 years promotion of physical education and recreational activities special consideration for children of weaker sections including SCs and STs and prevention of exploitation of children, etc.

The Government of India has also approved the National Charter for Children in 2004. The document emphasizes Government of India's commitment to children's rights to survival, health and nutrition, standard of living, play and leisure, early childhood care, education, protection of the girl child, empowering adolescents, equality, life and liberty, name and nationality, freedom of expression, freedom of association and peaceful assembly, the right to a family and the right to be protected from economic exploitation and all forms of abuse. This service also provides for protection of children in difficult circumstances, children with disabilities, children from marginalized and disadvantaged communities, and child victims. India has also ratified to the UN Convention on the Rights of the Child.

The ultimate objective of the Convention is to give every child the right to survival and development in a healthy and congenial environment. India is also adapted to the Millennium Development Goals and the SAARC Conventions on Child Welfare and Combating malnutrition. There may be prevalence of Trafficking of Women and Children in SAARC Region. To prevent this condition, the Ministry of Women and Child Development has prepared a National Plan of Action for Children 2005. The Action Plan has been prepared in consultation with concerned Ministries and Departments, States, Governments, non-Governmental organizations and opinion of experts. The National Plan of Action includes goals, objectives, strategies and

activities for improving nutritional status of children, reducing IMR and MMR, increasing enrollment ratio in schools and reducing dropout rates, general aim of this only to enhance primary education, increasing coverage for basic immunization, etc.

Child Welfare Programs

Several Ministries and Departments of the governmental organizations of India are implementing various schemes and programs for the benefit of children. Some of the Schemes and programs are as discussed below:

- **Integrated Child Development Services (ICDS)** has been implemented by Ministry of Women and Child Development. It is the world's largest program aimed at enhancing the health, nutrition and learning opportunities of infants, young children (0–6 years) and their mothers.
The services are provided at the 'Anganwadi', which is a childcare center located within the village itself. The packages of services provided are:
 - Supplementary nutrition,
 - Immunization,
 - Health check-up,
 - Referral services,
 - Pre-school non-formal education and
 - Nutrition and health education
- **Creche scheme for the children of working mothers:** The Ministry of Women and Child Development has launched a new Creche Scheme in January 2006, for the children of working mothers.
- **Reproductive and child health program:** This program by the Ministry of Health and Family Welfare, provides effective maternal and child health care, micronutrient interventions for vulnerable groups, reproductive health services for adolescent etc. The program covers:
 - Immunization for children DTP, Polio and Tetanus Toxoid for women
 - Vitamin A administration
 - Iron and folic Acid for pregnant women.
 This program incorporated all family welfare, women as well as child health services.
- **Pulse polio immunization program:** This program is carried out under the Ministry of Health and Family Welfare and covers all children below five years. This is a massive program which covers 166 million children in every round of National Immunization Day. In addition, the other immunization programs include Hepatitis B, DPT and other routine immunization. Other noteworthy programs for child health include:
 - Universal immunization program,
 - Control of deaths due to acute respiratory infections and illness
 - Control of diarrheal diseases,
 - There must be provision of essential newborn care to address the issue of the neonates,
 - Prophylactic programs for the prevention and treatment of two micronutrient deficiencies relating to Vitamin A and iron,
 - Anemia control program, and
 - Integrated Management of Neonatal and childhood illness.
- **Sarva Siksha Abhiyan:** This program is regulated by the Department of Education and provides for school infrastructure and quality improvement in education of the children. The specific objectives are:
 - **All children to be in school:** A National Program for education of girls at elementary level is also being implemented by the Department of Education for children in difficult circumstances including drop out girls, working girls, girls from marginalized social groups, girls with low levels

of achievement to gain quality elementary education and to develop self-esteem of girls through a community based approach.

- **Kasturba Gandhi Balika Vidyalaya:** Kasturba Gandhi Balika Vidyalaya is a new scheme being implemented by the Department of Education, which enables opening of 750 special residential schools for the girl child belonging to Scheduled Caste and Scheduled Tribes, Other Backward Classes and Minority in educationally backward blocks having low female literacy.
- **Mid-day Meal Scheme:** Mid-day meal program is also one of the important schemes of the Government to enable universal enrollment and retention of children. Under the program, nutritious snacks are provided to children attending schools.
- **Integrated program for Street Children:** The program is being implemented by the Ministry of Social Justice and Empowerment. The program is targeted towards children without homes and family ties, especially those who are vulnerable to abuse and exploitation. It was started to help children living on the street fulfil their basic rights. The program provides for food, shelter, clothes, better health care, education, recreation facilities to street children, and seeks to protect them against abuse as well as exploitation. According to Human Rights Watch, approximately 18 million children live or work on the streets of India. Majority of these children are indulging in criminal activity, prostitution, gang related violence and even drug trafficking. This program is ultimate aim at preventing destitution of children and facilitate their withdrawal from life on the streets and providing safety and support of them.
- **The National Rural Health Mission,** a scheme of the Health Ministry seeks to provide effective healthcare to rural population including large population of children throughout the country with special focus on 18 States, which have weak public health indicators.
- **Elimination of Child Labor** is being implemented by the Ministry of Labor which sanctions projects for rehabilitation of working children and for elimination of child labor.
- **The Protection of Children from Sexual Offences Act, 2012:** This Act regards the best interests and well-being of the child as being of paramount importance at every developmental stage. People who traffic children for sexual purposes are also punishable under the provisions relating to abetment Act. Abetment means the act of helping or encouraging someone to do something wrong or illegal. The Act prescribes stringent punishment graded as per the gravity of the offence, with a maximum term of rigorous imprisonment for life, and fine.
- **The Integrated Child Protection Scheme (ICPS):** aimed at building a protective environment for children in difficult circumstances, as well as other vulnerable children.
- **Early Childhood Education:** A scheme for education of 3-6 age group children under the Program under prerequisites of Elementary Education.
- **The Balika Samridhhi Yojana:** This scheme was started in 1997 by the government with the aim to raise the status of the girl child. The scheme focuses on changing the negative attitudes towards girl child, to increase enrollment in schools and also their retention, to rise the marriage age of girls and to create income opportunities and activities. There is provision of a series of incentives are incorporated into the Yojana, such as a gift or reward of ₹500/- to the mother on delivery of a baby girl and the condition of an annual scholarship for the girl child education.
- **Kishori Shakti Yojana (KSY):** It seeks to empower adolescent girls, to make them capable to take charge of their lives.
- **Nutrition Program for Adolescent Girls (NPAG):** This program was started in 2002–03 to address the nutritional needs of undernourished adolescent girls, pregnant women and lactating mothers by giving them 6 kg of food grains.
- **Scheme for welfare of Working Children in Need of Care and Protection:** The program aims at preventing and stopping the exploitation of working children and safeguarding their right to education. It provides non-formal education and vocational training.

- **Central Adoption Resource Agency (CARA):** Established in 1990 by Ministry of Welfare, the purpose of CARA is to ensure that every orphan, destitute and surrendered child has a loving and caring family.

WELFARE SCHEMES FOR WOMEN IN INDIA

Women suffer many disadvantages as compared to men in literacy rates, labor participation rates and earnings even though they constitute almost 48 percent of the total population of the country. Therefore, in 1953, the Central Social Welfare Board was set up which acts at the Center to take up welfare related activities for women and children.

The subsequent five year plans continued giving priority to women's education, and launching measures to improve maternal and child health services, supplementary feeding for children and expectant and nursing mothers. In the Sixth Plan, there was a shift in the approach from 'welfare' to 'development of women, with special emphasis on the three core sectors of health, education and employment. The Seventh and Eighth Plan aimed at raising their economic and social status and bringing them at par with men as equal participants in national development. The Ninth Plan focused on the 'Empowerment of Women'. Its aim was to create a conductive environment where women could freely exercise their rights both within and outside home, and would be equal partners along with men.

For social and economic development of women, the Center has set up the Department of Women and Child Development which has been implementing the following schemes:

- **Swayamsiddha:** This scheme is an integrated scheme for the development and empowerment of women through self-help groups. It promotes microenterprises and helps women with credit.
- **Swashakti project:** This Project imparts skills to women so that they can earn income and aim to better the quality of their life, by providing health and education services.
- **Support to Training and Employment Program for Women:** This scheme provides new skills and knowledge to poor women in agriculture, animal husbandry, dairying, fisheries, sericulture, handlooms, handicrafts and khadi and village industry so that they can get employment.
- **Swavlamban:** This scheme provides training and skills in computer programming, medical transcription, electronics, radio and TV repairs, garment making, handloom weaving, handicrafts, embroidery and community health etc. to enable women to obtain employment or become self-employed.
- **Creche or day care centers for the children of working and ailing mothers:** This scheme provides day care services to children (0–5 years) of parents whose income does not exceed ₹1,800 per month.
- **Hostels for working women:** This scheme has provisions for safe and affordable accommodation for working women (single or married), those getting training for employment and girl students studying in professional courses.
- **Swadhar:** This scheme provides integrated services to women without support from their families such as widows living at Vrindavan and Kashi; prisoners released from jail; survivors of natural calamities; women/girls rescued from brothels and other places; victims of sexual crimes, etc. The scheme includes such services as food, clothing, shelters, health care, counseling and legal aid and rehabilitation through education awareness, skill development and behavioral training.
- **Rashtriya Mahila Kosh:** Poor women are supported with credit and microfinance to start their own income generating enterprise in agriculture, dairy or handicrafts.
- **Indira Gandhi Matritva Sahyog Yojana (IGMSY):** Introduced in 2010 by the Ministry of Women and Child Development, this is a Maternity Benefit Scheme for pregnant and lactating mothers. They are paid cash amount of ₹4000/- (paid in 3 instalments). For a woman to avail this scheme, she should be above 19 years old, this should be her first or second live birth and she or her husband should not be working in Government/Public Sector Undertaking (Central or State).

- **Rajiv Gandhi Scheme for Empowerment of Adolescent Girls (RGSEAG):** This scheme is aimed at imparting life skills education, nutrition and health education, awareness about socio-legal issues, etc. to all out-of-school Adolescent Girls in the age group of 11 to 18 years.
- **Stree Shakti Puraskar Yojana:** This scheme recognizes women for their exceptional talent and confers national honors.
- **Short Stay Home for Women and Girls (SSH):** This scheme provides temporary accommodation, maintenance, medical care, counseling and rehabilitative services to women and girls in distress.
- **UJJAWALA:** A Comprehensive Scheme for rescue, rehabilitation and reintegration of victims of trafficking and commercial sexual exploitation and ensure safety as well as security of women.

WELFARE SCHEMES FOR SCHEDULED CASTES/TRIBES

There is provision or certain schemes or plan for the welfare of scheduled caste or scheduled tribes in India as discussed below:

- **Grant to NGOs:** This scheme gives aid to voluntary organizations working for Scheduled Castes.
- **Ministry's Schemes for SC:** Rajiv Gandhi National Fellowship was started in 2010, this provides scholarships to Scheduled Caste Students for higher education such as MPhil and PhD National Overseas Scholarship scheme for SC candidates.
- **Post-metric scholarship for SC students:** Post-Metric Scholarships for the Children of those Engaged in Unclean Occupations. Babu Jagjivan Ram Chhatrawas Yojana. Central Sector Scholarship Scheme of Top Class Education for SC Students. (from 2007) Self-Employment Scheme for Rehabilitation of Manual Scavengers. Special Educational Development Program for Scheduled Castes Girls have low literacy levels. Scheme for providing free Coaching to SC and OBC Students. Finance schemes to provide credit to SC students.
- **Pradhan Mantri Adarsh Gram Yojana (PMAYG):** This scheme was launched in 2009–10 as a pilot project to develop those villages which had a higher ratio (above 50%) of scheduled castes.
- **National Scheduled Castes Finance & Development Corporation (NSFDC):** NSFDC is the apex institution for financing, facilitating and mobilizing funds for the economic development activities of the persons belonging to the Scheduled Castes living below double the poverty line.
- **National Safai karamcharis Finance & Development Corporation (NSKFDC):** Set up by the Ministry of Social Justice and Empowerment in 1997 for the all-round socioeconomic upliftment of the Safai Karamcharis, Scavengers and their dependents throughout India, through various loan and non-loan based schemes.
- **Scheduled Castes Development Corporations (SCDCs):** This scheme is also for the economic development and for providing financial assistance to SC. Supporting Project of All India Nature of SCs.
- **National Commission for Safai Karamcharis:** This body was established to study, evaluate and monitor the implementation of various schemes for Safai Karamcharis and make recommendations to the government.
- **Schemes of the Ministry of Tribal Affairs for STs:** The ministry provides Grant-in-aid to Voluntary Organizations working for welfare of Scheduled Tribes (GVWST), for developing educational complex in low literacy pockets for the development of women in tribal areas (ECLP) and Vocational Training Centers (VTC).
- **Scheme of Development of Primitive Tribal Groups (PTGs):** There are certain tribal communities who are having low level of literacy, declining or stagnant population, and pre-agricultural level of technology and are economically backward. (75 such groups in 15 States/UTs have been identified and have been categorized as Primitive Tribal Groups (PTGs). This scheme is for their protection and social enrichment.

- **Tribal Research Institutes:** These have been set up in states to study about the state of tribal population and sensitizing the people about them.
- **Girls/Boys Hostels for STs:** This scheme aims for construction of hostels for creating a congenial study atmosphere free from discrimination, so as to encourage students belonging to the target groups to pursue their education career without dropping out.
- **Ashram Schools in Tribal Sub-Plan Areas:** This is a centrally sponsored scheme since 1990–91 and provides funding for ashram schools. The scheme covers primary, middle, secondary and senior secondary level of education.
- **Vocational Training Centers in Tribal Areas:** This scheme was introduced in 1992–93 and revised in 2009. Training is provided depending upon employment requirements of the area.
- **Grants-in-aid to State Tribal Development Cooperative Corporations and others:** Started in 1992, these were established for procuring Minor Forest Produce from tribals and protecting them against exploitation by private traders.
- **Village Grain Bank Scheme:** This scheme was implemented since November 2004 by the Department of Food & Public Distribution. It aims to help marginalized and insecure households who do not have sufficient resources to purchase rations during lean season or natural calamities to protect them from starvation. So far (January 2013), the government has sanctioned 21,751 village grain banks in 20 states.
- **Reservation for SC/ST:** The central government of India reserves 27% seats in institutions of higher education for SC/ST candidates. The individual states have freedom to legislate further reservations. Reservation in most states is at 50%. The Constitution also laid down 15% and 7.5% of vacancies in government aided educational institutes and for jobs in the government/public sector, as reserved quota for the SC and ST candidates respectively for a period of five years, after which the situation is reviewed.

SCHEMES FOR AGED

In our society, elderly are a treasure or fortune of knowledge as well as experience for the youngsters as well as in the economy at large. As life expectancy improves because of better health awareness, the geriatric population in India is expected to be a witness of explosion. According to estimated statistics of our nation, by 2050, the elderly population will account approximately a quarter of the total population of India. Economic and financial savings play a crucial role in such situations. After retirement, dealing with medical expenses becomes difficult for a common man as source of income might drop off during this time. The government of India has launched various schemes, policies or financial plans in favor of senior citizens to protect their rights and maintain good quality health and well-being.

Some of the topmost governmental schemes, policies and plans for senior citizens in India are discussed below:

- **Pradhan Mantri Vaya Vandana Scheme:** This is one of the most popular senior citizen pension plans or schemes in India; especially designed for senior citizens above 60 years of age. The policy term of this Prime Minister Senior Citizen Scheme extends up to ten years of tenure. The pensioner can choose the frequency of the payment according to their needs—monthly, quarterly, half-yearly, as well as annually. The minimum and maximum limits of pension plan are ₹3,000 per months and 10,000 per months, respectively.
- **Indira Gandhi National Old Age Pension Scheme (IGNOAPS):** This plan is especially intended for older adults above the age of 60 years, who come under below the poverty line, according to the guidelines prescribed by the Government of India. The IGNOAPS assists with money up to 200 per months, and 500 per months; for those people between age group of 60 and 79 years and above 80 years of age, respectively.

Unit VI Social Organization and Disorganization

- **National Program for the Health Care of Elderly (NPHCE):** This program was introduced in 2010; this scheme or plan concentrates on preventive as well as promotive care for the maintenance of overall health of elder people. This program was launched to address the health issues faced by senior citizens. The district-level objectives include providing dedicated health care facilities in district hospitals, community health centers, primary health centers, and sub-centers levels through State Health Society.
- **Varishta Mediclaim Policy:** This policy confers to covering the cost of medicines, blood, ambulance charges, and other investigations or diagnosis related charges. Especially designed for senior citizens between the age of 60 and 80 years, this plan helps meet the health-related expenses of senior citizens. In addition, provision of income tax benefits for payment of premium under Section 80D. The policy period is for one year only, but it can extend the renewal up to the age of 90 years.
- **Rashtriya Vayoshri Yojana:** This Yojana or scheme provides physical aids and assisted-living devices for older adults above 60 years of age that belong to the below the poverty line category. If senior citizens wish to avail this facility, then they must have a below the poverty line (BPL) card. This is a Central Sector Scheme and is entirely funded under the ministry of Central Government.
- **Varishta Pension Bima Yojana:** This Pension Yojana or scheme, launched by the Ministry of Finance, is especially for senior citizens above age of 60 years. The Life Insurance Corporation (LIC) of India has the authority to operate this scheme. This plan offers assured pension with a guaranteed interest rate of 8% per annum for up to 10 years. Senior citizens can opt for monthly, quarterly, half-yearly and yearly pension according to their convenience.
- **Senior Citizens' Welfare Fund:** This is launched by the Ministry of Social Justice and Empowerment. This fund includes unclaimed amounts from small savings and savings accounts in the Central government schemes. This fund mainly aims to make seniors financially stable for their overall welfare and health care.
- **Vayosreshtha Samman:** This scheme focuses mainly on those seniors who have made significant contributions in their disciplines and recognizes their efforts in India. It was upgraded to the National Award in 2013, and since then, awards have been granted fewer than thirteen categories.
- **Reverse Mortgage Scheme:** This scheme was launched in 2007 by the Ministry of Finance, with underlying aim is to benefit mainly senior citizens. They can mortgage or credit their residential property against a loan of 60% of the value of the house, with a minimum tenure up to 10 years.
- **Pradhan Mantri Jan Arogya Yojana:** This scheme was launched in 2018 by the Ministry of Health and Family Welfare for covering up to 10 crore people belonging to poor and vulnerable families within society. Under this scheme, coverage of up to ₹5 lakhs per family for secondary and tertiary hospitalization services is provided.
- **National Social Assistance Program (NSAP):** This scheme was started in 1995 (modified in 1998) to provide social assistance to old people who are poor and also for poor family where bread winner dies as well as for motherhood.
- **Annapurna Scheme:** Launched in the year 2000, this scheme provides food security to senior citizens who are not covered in the public distribution system and have no income.
- **Free Legal Aids:** Provides free legal services to those who cannot afford such as health Insurance scheme for families below the poverty line. This scheme was launched in year (2016). It provides a health cover of ₹1 lakh per family with ₹30,000 top up available for senior citizens (over 60 years).

There is provision with a broad spectrum of different schemes launched by the Government of India, benefitting senior citizens belonging to various classes or groups.



Nursing skills important for identifying and managing social issues are enlisted in case study 1 and 2:

Case Study 1 Nursing Skills Important for Identifying and Managing Social Issues

Breast cancer is the most common cancer in women over 40 years of age and will occur in 1 out of every 11 women. Although breast cancer is the most common cancer found in women, most breast lumps are not cancer. In fact, more than 80 percent of them end up being benign. The risk of breast cancer is increased among those who have previously had breast cancer and among women whose mothers or sisters have had breast cancer.

Rama is 24-year-old female recently married, who came to health care checkup and diagnosed with lump in the breast. She has been scheduled for surgical intervention lumpectomy (removal of lump). Perioperative nurse prepares her for surgery but Rama refuses to remove Mangalsutra before surgery. Patient looking very anxious and having fear of surgical intervention.

Applied sociology: Values and belief.

Nursing skills required: Effective listener, evidence-based knowledge impartation.

Explanation: Patient having autonomy to participate in health care decisions, but it is the responsibility of the nurse to respect the values and belief of the patient. She provides psychological support, reassurance and helps the patient to explore feelings and explain about purpose of preoperative preparation. Side by side she explains the consequence of not removing jewelry such as source of infection and sometimes metal can hinder any diagnostic procedure performed during surgery. Nurse is also liable to explain patient about the techniques of Breast Self-Examination; when and how it is performed and what symptoms should be noticed as well as explain about the importance of regular follow up visits.

Case Study 2 Nursing Skills Important for Identifying and Managing Social Issues

Youngsters constitute around 40% of India's general population and India has a National Policy for Children announcing kids to be a national resource. Due to new innovations and technologies there may be a kid's introduction to media including TV, radio, music, computer games and the Internet has expanded more complex. According to one survey report around 33,000 adolescents, for the most part between the age group of 16 to 18, have been captured for violations like assault and murder crosswise over Indian states in 2011.

A school health nurse observes that Aman is a 13-year-old young Indian male inhabit in a slum area, extrovert in nature. He is brilliant in his studies but nowadays not concentrating on his studies as well as cut-off from school friends. His mother calls to obtain history or to find out the cause. Mother tells the nurse that she also noticed some changes in his behavior as well as she catches him during stealing money from home. Nurse also came to know that his father is a chronic drinker and there is daily violence and fight in their family.

Applied sociology: Prevention from antisocial conduct.

Nursing skills required: Effective listener, evidence-based knowledge impartation.

Explanation: Nurses are important in managing a health crisis because they are a vital link between the patient and the rest of the health care team. Early identification is necessary to stop the progress of the worst situation in future. Examine the dimensions of the problem in order to define it with the help of examination of causative factors. They educate the parents, as well as counsel child along with providing a listening ear or a calming touch. Discuss parents about ill effect of family violence on their growing children. Side by side increase public awareness regarding strategies that support the development of safe, stable, and nurturing relationships between parents and their children. This is important means in preventing development of violent behavior in children. Work with the local area agencies in implementation of public awareness campaigns. Main role to generate and explore alternatives and specific solutions.



SUMMARY

The term social organization is used to refer the interdependence of parts in groups. All function differently to achieve some purpose. Different sociologists expressed the term social organization in their own ways.

- **Ogburn and Nimkoff** have defined, "Organization is an articulation of different parts which perform various functions; it is an active group device for getting something done."
- **Role of individual in organization:** Definite purpose; individual motives; role identification; cooperation and coordination; continued participation of all participants.
- **Elements of organization:** Status; role; norms, goals and objectives, sanctions and authority.
- **Types of social organizations:** Mainly two type; formal organizations and informal organizations.
- According to Davis, Voluntary organization is a group of person organized on the basis of voluntary membership without state control for furtherance of some common interests of its members.
- **Functions of voluntary associations:** Identifies needs of individuals; performs duties in emergency situations; provide wide ranging services; collaboration with other health care organizations; social control.
- **Examples of organizations in the voluntary sector include:** World Vision, Red Cross Society, Social Welfare Organizations such as Human Rights Watch, Environmental Protection Agency, etc.
- According to Parson T, "A social system is a mode of organization of action elements relative to the persistence or ordered process of change of the interactive patterns of a plurality of individual actor."
- **Characteristics of social system:** Social system is a unity; based on the interaction of individuals; related with cultural system; relationship with environment; it is adjustment toward change.
- Types of social system according to Durkheim, mechanical social system and organic social system.
- Status and roles are important in society because it is the fundamental unit of analyses of social structure.
- Major institutions of any society are family, education, recreation, religion, economic life and politics.
- Horton & Hunt says that social control is a complete process where a society provides security to its members and conformity to their prospects.
- **Characteristics of social control:** Social control is a lifelong process; is universal; exercised for some specific ends and goals; necessary for group welfare; achieved through process of socialization; differ from society to society. Active and passive process of group regulation.
- **Aims of social control:** Re-establishing the odd social system; regulation of individual social behavior; obedience to social decisions; to establish social unity; to bring solidarity; conformity in society; to check cultural maladjustment; maintain social order; help in socialization.
- Types are formal and informal; formal agencies are education, law, administration coercion, state etc. Informal agencies are folkways, mores customs, social norms, etc.
- Johnson stated, "A norm is an abstract pattern held in the mind, which sets certain limits for behavior."
- **Importance of social norms:** Social life, social progress, ideal behavior, personality development, social welfare.
- Morality refers to the set of standards that enable people to live cooperatively in groups. It's what societies determine to be "right" and "acceptable."
- According to H.M. Johnson, "Values are general standards and may be regarded as higher order norms."
- Values are developed through various agencies like family, educational institutions, peer group, religion, and culture as well as through media. Values are universal as they are shared by all individuals regardless of their nationality, religion, gender, culture or history.
- According to Emile Durkheim, "Social disorganization is a state of disequilibrium and a lack of social solidarity or consensus among the members of society."
- **Causes of social disorganization:** Division of labor; violation of social rules; industrialization;

- cultural lag; natural catastrophes, war, cultural maladaptation.
- Individual disorganization is a condition or process in which the person has not stabilized his behavior around major roles. Causes are economic, biological, psychological, cultural and environmental.
 - Family disorganization may be thought to include any sort of non-harmonious functioning within the family. Personal causes are clashing temperament, philosophy of life, behavior and psychopathic personalities. Impersonal factors like economic tension, occupational factors, ill health.
 - Community disorganization implies a state of an inadequacy and disunity that gives free play to the forces of deterioration in community life. Causes are social process, cultural lag, conflicting attitude and values, and social crisis.
 - According to Lundberg and others, "A social problem is any deviant behavior in a disapproved direction of such a degree that it exceeds the tolerance limit of the community."
 - Poverty is the most important problem of rural people in India.
 - Housing problem, according to 2011 census 0.15% of the total population is homeless.
 - Food supplies; according to the International Food Policy Research Institute's 2011 Global Hunger Index, the malnutrition level is that about 60 million children in India are underweight and malnourished.
 - Illiteracy; according to National Statistical Office (NSO) data India's average literacy rate is 77.70% & male literacy at the India level in 2021 stands at 84.70% & female literacy stands at 70.30%.
 - Prostitution; as per Section 2(f) of The Immoral Trafficking Act 1956 defines prostitution "It means as sexual exploitation or misuse of any persons for any business purpose."
 - Dowry means, "The money, goods, or estate which a woman brings to her husband in marriage." It is advantageous but in some cases, the dowry system leads to crime against women, ranging from emotional abuse and injury to even deaths.
 - Child labor; the problem of child labor has become a massive one. According to the Constitution of India, child laborer may be defined as a person who is below the age of 14 years and is working for an earning.

- Child abuse has many forms: physical, emotional, sexual, neglect, and exploitation. Cases of child abuse are handled by a multidisciplinary team including medical personnel, law enforcement officers, the schools, social workers, and the courts.
- Juvenile delinquency occurs when a minor violates a criminal statute. The availability of education, and encouragement of minors in obtaining an education, plays a large role in prevention of juvenile delinquency.
- Crime is a violation of criminal law for which some governmental authority applies formal penalties. It represents a deviation from formal social norms administered by the state. Poverty and drug addiction are the main causes.
- Substance-related disorders, also known as substance use disorders, can lead to large societal problems. It is found to be greatest in individuals ages 18–25, with a higher likelihood occurring in men compared to women.
- There is as yet no cure for HIV/AIDS, but antiretroviral therapy can decrease viral load and delay progression of disease. Awareness camps to educate people regarding the dangers and prevention of AIDS must be undertaken on a large scale by government and a voluntary organization plays an important role.
- COVID-19, according to CDC guide, preventive healthcare strategies are introduced to keep the population as healthy and disease free as possible, by providing general education (assist in preventive health efforts), identifying at risk patient, helping facilitate access to care and educating the community.
- Vulnerable groups are disadvantaged as compared to others mainly on account of their reduced access to medical services. Review the health information and services that are available to protect the health of the poor, vulnerable group to improve quality of life.
- **Role and responsibilities of nurse in reducing social problems are:** community assessment, providing care, identification of social problem, rehabilitative care, health education, participation in social welfare programs.

ASSESS YOURSELF

Short Answer Questions

1. What do you mean by social organizations?
2. What are the different types of social organizations existing within society?
3. Define voluntary associations.
4. Explain about characteristics of organizations.
5. Write aims of social control.
6. Differentiate between formal and informal organizations.
7. What do you understand by social system?
8. Define personal disorganization.
9. Write about importance of social norms.
10. Enlist social problems in India.
11. Explain family disorganization.
12. Explain about types of social control.

Long Answer Questions

1. Define social organization. Write down the elements of social organizations.
2. Describe the various types of social organizations.
3. Describe interrelationship of institutions.
4. Define social system. Write down about characteristics of social system.
5. List down social problems. Discuss any one social problem in detail.
6. Define social disorganization. Explain the causes of social disorganization.
7. Discuss role and status as structural elements of society.
8. Write in detail about formal agencies of social control.
9. Describe personal or individual disorganization that leads to social disorganization.
10. Describe problems of vulnerable group in detail.
11. Explain role of nurse in reducing social problems and enhance coping.
12. Write in detail about social welfare programs in India.

Multiple Choice Questions

1. Meaning of social organization is:
 - a. Social structure
 - b. Fixed responsibility
 - c. Arrangements of person or parts
 - d. A tradition
2. Aims of social control are all; except:
 - a. Tradition
 - b. Conformity
 - c. Solidarity
 - d. Continuity
 3. Voluntary association means:
 - a. Two or more associates
 - b. External control
 - c. Freedom of associations
 - d. Togetherness with common purpose
 4. Formal means of social control are all; except:
 - a. Law
 - b. Police
 - c. Court
 - d. Mores
 5. The social system means:
 - a. Abide by social norm
 - b. A network of relationship in a systematic way
 - c. Faulty coordination
 - d. Authority
 6. Informal agencies of social control are:
 - a. Law and police
 - b. State
 - c. Customs and traditions
 - d. Government
 7. The status of a person refers to:
 - a. Caste of a person
 - b. Prestige of a person
 - c. Position which one holds in social system
 - d. Religion
 8. The term Folkways and Mores were coined by:
 - a. Ogburn and Nimkoff
 - b. Karl Marx
 - c. Max Weber
 - d. William Graham Sumner
 9. Substance abuse problem in older adults are most commonly related to:
 - a. Use of drugs and alcohol as a social activity
 - b. Misuse of prescribed and over the counter drugs and alcohol
 - c. Continuing the use of illegal drugs initiated during middle age
 - d. A pattern of binge drinking for weeks or months
 10. A major public health problem related to behavior of substance abuse is the prevalence of:
 - a. Hepatitis C
 - b. Malnutrition
 - c. Infective endocarditis
 - d. Respiratory depression

11. In what ways does religion serve the role of a social institution; except?
 - a. Religions have a complex and integrated set of norms.
 - b. Religious practices and beliefs are related to societal values.
 - c. Religion leads to social disorganization
 - d. Religions often meet several basic needs.
12. The dowry prohibition act was passed in:
 - a. 1941
 - b. 1951
 - c. 1961
 - d. 1971
13. Mostly the customs and mores are powerful means which regulate our behavior:
 - a. In urban society
 - b. In rural society
 - c. In primitive society
 - d. In modern society
14. Two types; mechanical social system and organic social system described by:
 - a. Ogburn and Nimkoff
 - b. William Graham Sumner
 - c. Durkheim
 - d. Herbert Spencer
15. The informal organizations resemble:
 - a. Written laws
 - b. Primary Groups and in-groups
 - c. Large in size
 - d. Official purpose

Answer Key

- | | | | | | | |
|-------|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. c | 2. a | 3. d | 4. d | 5. b | 6. c | 7. c |
| 8. d | 9. b | 10. a | 11. c | 12. c | 13. b | 14. c |
| 15. b | | | | | | |

FURTHER READINGS

1. Amy Morin, What is Morality. On November 09, 2020. <https://www.verywellmind.com>
2. Gowda Krishne, Sociology for nurses. 5th edition. Noida: CBS Publishers and distributors Pvt. Limited: 2009.
3. Kendra Cherry. An Overview of Social psychology. 5 July 2020; www.verywellmind.com
4. Puja Mandol, Folkways in Sociology: Meaning, Characteristics and Importance. <https://www.yourarticle.com>
5. Richard T. Schaefer. Sociology A Brief introduction. 6th edition, Tata McGraw-Hill Publishing Company Limited; New Delhi: 2006.
6. Sociology Guide. A Student Guide to sociology. www.sociologyguide.com
7. Source: <https://cseindiaportal.wordpress.com/2012/11/06/child-welfare-in-india-programmes-policy-initiatives>

Congratulations!!

You have completed the CHAPTER thoroughly, now it's time to assess your knowledge and learn more through *My Phygital Book*

Scan the QR Code
to Download the App

Nursing Next Live
The Next Level of Nursing Education
CBS Phygital Books >
Essentials of Applied Sociology >
My Phygital Book



My Phygital Book
Listen, Learn & Practice

Reading is not enough, Now *Listen, Learn & Practice* Every Chapter

Golden Points
Get One Liners of Chapter summary in the PODCAST form

Solved Exercises
Subjective and objective exercises given in book with their solutions to evaluate and assess the complete chapter knowledge

MCQs
Chapter-wise extra MCQs in the form of Practice test to give in-depth concept clarity

UNIT VII

Clinical Sociology

Sociologists, in general, are interested in the pattern of behavior and attitudes that emerge throughout the life course, from infancy to the old age. These patterns are the parts of the lifelong process of socialization, in which people learn the attitudes, values, and behaviors appropriate for the members of a particular culture. How much of a person's personality is shaped by culture, as opposed to inborn traits? How particular behavior affects the underlying social values. This chapter explores about how sociologists work. This chapter focuses on needs, characteristics of clinical sociology, nurse's roles, responsibilities and sociological strategies in developing services to the abuse and finally a vision on scope of clinical sociology.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- » Define clinical sociology.
- » Explain need for clinical sociology.
- » Describe characteristics of clinical sociology.
- » Discuss specific nursing roles and responsibilities and sociological strategies for developing services for the abuse.
- » Integrate the knowledge about use of clinical sociology in crisis intervention.
- » Identify the scope of clinical sociology.

UNIT OUTLINE

- » Introduction
- » Historical Perspective of Clinical Sociology
- » Meaning of Clinical Sociology
- » Need for Clinical Sociology
- » Definitions of Clinical Sociology
- » Clinical Sociology and Applied Sociology
- » Characteristics of Clinical Sociology
- » Clinical Sociologists
- » Role of Nurse in Sociological Strategies for Developing Services for the Abuse
- » Use of Clinical Sociology in Crisis Intervention
- » Scopes of Clinical Sociology

KEY TERMS

Applied sociology: Applied sociology is a branch of sociology sometimes referred to as pragmatic, realistic, matter of facts, evidence-based or practical sociology - refers to a form of sociological practice that is principally concerned with using sociological theories and research to intervene in the ongoing activities contained within applied or practical settings, like offices, parks, schools, health care settings and other places where daily life activities take place.

Case study: A method which involves investigating a certain issue as a case taking longer time and investigating a phenomenon in depth.

Case work: A method of social work in which individuals in problems are addressed.

Catharsis: Catharsis means the release of feelings that take place as the patient talks about emotionally charged areas.

Change agents: Change agents are the people who work to bring about desired, positive change in the life of target groups.

Clarification: Clarification means encouraging the patient to express more clear relationship between certain events of the counseling.

Client system: Client system also called target groups; consists of people who are in need of the guidance and professional assistance of change agents.

Clinical: A problem solving perspective, relating to the observation, assessment, intervention and treatment of actual patients rather than theoretical or laboratory studies.

Clinical analysis: Clinical analysis involves assessing a situation. This entails examining the beliefs, philosophies, policies, or practices of both individuals and the groups or organizations to which they belong with the goal of improving the situation.

Clinical sociologists: A clinical sociologist, who might also be called a socio-therapist or life enrichment therapist, is usually concurrently a member of another relevant profession; medical doctor, psychiatrist, psychologist, nurse, social worker, criminologist, or activity and recreational professionals, among others. They are directly as well as honestly involved in case management and care planning.

Clinical sociology: In general, clinical sociology is a practice-oriented science, with a focus on diagnoses and change. Clinical sociology is the application of a sociological perspective to the analysis and design of interventions for positive social change at any level of social organization.

Crisis: Crisis is an acute emotional upset arising from situational, developmental, or social sources and resulting in a temporary inability to cope by means of one's usual problem solving mechanisms.

Crisis intervention: Crisis intervention is a helping process that focuses on the resolution of the immediate or urgent crisis through the use of personal, social, and environmental resources.

Intervention: Intervention means action taken to improve a medical disorder.

Social pathology: Social pathology generally refers to the pathos of society such as social diseases that affect whole society.

Social problem: A social problem means any problem or trouble that has social origin, affecting at least two persons, which goes beyond mere psychological and physiological levels.

Social work: It is described as an individual's, group's, or community's effort within the framework of social philosophy and practices that aim at achieving social progress to modify social policies or procedures to improve or get better social legislation, well-being, health and welfare services.

Social workers: Social workers work with individuals and families to help improve outcomes in their lives. This may be helping to protect vulnerable people from harm or abuse or supporting people to live independently. Social workers support people, act as advocates and direct people to the services they may require.

Vulnerability: Vulnerability is a sociological concept which refers to the characteristics of individuals and social groups (along the lines of gender, age, ethnicity, occupation, etc.) that determine their capacity to protect or guard themselves, withstand and recover from disasters, including health hazards based on their access to material and non-material resources.

INTRODUCTION

Clinical sociology involves the study of groups of people using learned information in case and care management toward holistic life enhancement or improvement of social and life conditions. In general, clinical sociology is a practice-oriented science, skill and knowledge with a focus on diagnosis and change. Clinical sociologists usually focus on vulnerable population groups, such as children, youths, adults or elderly, and are employed in various settings such as treatment facilities or life care communities like nursing homes. They are directly involved in case management, care planning and case study; **case study** is a method which involves investigating a certain issue as a case taking longer time and investigating a phenomenon in depth.

Clinical sociology consists basically of the analysis of one human personality or individuality as a social unit. Clinical sociology is the application of a sociological perspective to the analysis and design of interventions for positive as well as constructive social change at any level of social organization. Thus, clinical sociology is the same as all sociology except that it adds prevention, assessment, intervention, evaluation and social amelioration components to its framework.

HISTORICAL PERSPECTIVE OF CLINICAL SOCIOLOGY

Clinical sociology is as old as the field of sociology and its roots as well as extractions are found in many parts of the world. The clinical sociology field or specialization, for instance, often is traced back to the fourteenth-century work of the Arab scholar and statesperson Abd-al-Rahman ibn Khaldun (1332–1406). Ibn Khaldun provided various clinical observations based on his varied work experiences or efforts such as Secretary of State to the rule of Morocco and Chief Judge of Egypt.

Auguste Comte (1798–1857) and Emile Durkheim (1858–1917) are among those whose work frequently is mentioned as precursors or pioneer to the field. The term “clinical sociology” first appears in issue. The first well known or acknowledged published linking of the words clinical and sociology was in 1930 when Milton C. Winternitz, a pathologist and Dean of the Yale Medical School, wanted to establish or set up a department of clinical sociology.

A discussion of “clinical sociology” or the “clinical” approach appeared in the literature at least every few years between 1931 and 1969. The term “clinical sociology” generally has been used to refer to sociologists doing intervention work in a variety of practical settings.

MEANING OF CLINICAL SOCIOLOGY

Clinical sociology is the application of sociological theories, research, modalities, method, techniques, and interventions to social issues and problems presented by clients. “**Clinical**” means a problem-solving

perspective, relating to the observation, assessment, intervention and treatment of actual patients rather than theoretical or laboratory studies. Clinical sociologists deal with “problems in living” or problems that really exist.

Clinical sociologist's work or functions are as change agents. A **change agent** means those who work to bring about desired, positive change in the lives of target group. Clinical sociologists always believe on case work. **Case work** means method of social work in which individuals in problems are addressed.

Clinical analysis involves assessing a situation. This entails examining the beliefs, philosophies, policies, or practices of both individuals and the groups or organizations to which they belong with the ultimate goal of improving the situation. Intervention involves the creation of new beliefs, philosophies, policies or practices as well as change of those that currently exist in the situation.

NEED FOR CLINICAL SOCIOLOGY

Clinical sociology is an applied practice that focuses on health intervention, such as working with medical practitioners, community health services, and social policy and public health campaigns.

The nature of macro-micro linkages is increasingly important as the etiologies, prevention, treatment and solutions to contemporary societal problems is the vital aspect. Problem solving should be interactive or trustworthy between levels of human behavior, and this requires an interdisciplinary perspective or standpoint.

The needs or importance of clinical sociology are (Fig. 7.1):

- **Identification of those sociocultural factors that are responsible for deviant behavior:** The ever increasing social pressure for using sociological knowledge points to the requirement for the development of the field of clinical sociology in order to establish the role of social-cultural factors which are responsible for certain types of behavior not acceptable to a given cultural system. With such development, sociology would have a valuable tool for pointing more specifically to the manner in which sociocultural factors influence, modify, shape, arrest and change personality organization and behavior. Thus, clinical sociology becomes a crucial tool for comprehending the central processes involved in a given social system. There is a need for clinical sociology whose main function would be to discover those social factors that are vital for explaining the infinite varieties of deviant human behavior.
- **Identifying social issues:** Social issues destabilize social functioning and leave negative impact on the lives of individuals, groups, and organizations (Bruhn and Rebach 2007). People affected by a particular social issue may face a variety of obstacles and challenges associated with the problem including category, stigma, discrimination, and isolation. Sociological practitioners work to address or deal with the problem by changing the social setting, arrangement, norms, standards and behaviors surrounding the issue and the people involved. A sociological practitioner may serve as the facilitator of this social change; a change agent by acting on the behalf of others for change, or a clinician by providing direct services or help to change the situation of individuals as well as their families. The main roles of clinical sociologists understand the interfaces and linkages between individual behavior and factors at the societal level.

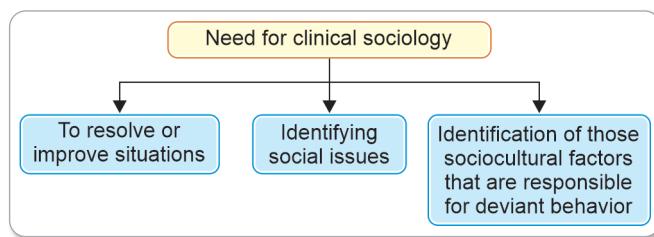


Figure 7.1: Need for clinical sociology



Unit VII Clinical Sociology

- **To resolve or improve situations:** Different problems require different approaches based on the client needs, requirements as well as social resources available to them. Each sociological approach incorporates a different level of analysis to assess the problem with a specific focal area of intervention.
In the most fundamental sense, clinical sociology is a method for assessing the impact of social process on human experience, and in turn of human experience upon the social issues.

In short, the importance of clinical sociology is:

- To study the social structure.
- To obtain knowledge about social factors responsible for deviant behavior.
- To study the problems of personality.
- To study the entire social system and social pathology. **Social pathology** generally refers to the pathos of society such as social diseases that affect whole society.
- To provide rehabilitative and therapeutic services.

Thus, clinical sociology becomes an essential tool for comprehending the central process involved in a given social system.

DEFINITIONS OF CLINICAL SOCIOLOGY

In 1944, the first formal or recognized definition of clinical sociology appeared in H. P. Fairchild's Dictionary of Sociology. Alfred McClung Lee (1944:303) is known as one of the founders of the Society for the Study of Social Problems.

The Association for Humanist Sociology and the Sociological Practice Association defined the term as follows:

- "Clinical sociology is the kind of applied sociology or sociological practice which involves intimate, sharply realistic investigations linked with efforts to diagnose problems and to suggest strategies for coping with these problems." —Lee, 1979
- "Clinical sociology uses a variety of techniques or methods for facilitating change. The field's value orientation is humanistic, holistic, and multi-disciplinary." —Glass, 1979
- "Clinical sociology is a humanistic, multidisciplinary specialization that seeks to improve the quality of people's lives. Clinical sociologists assess situations and reduce problems through analysis and intervention. Clinical analysis is the critical assessment of beliefs, policies and or practices with an interest in improving the situation. Intervention, the creation of new systems as well as the change of existing systems, is based on continuing analysis." —Fritz, 2001

Clinical sociology thus stresses the development of effective, manipulative and therapeutic techniques and of accurate functional information concerning society and social relationships. Applied or clinical sociology both use sociological insights, techniques, means or method to guide, practice, research, or even social reform.

Clinical sociology focuses on client system; **client system** is also called target or intention group; that consists of people who are in need of the guidance and professional assistance of change agents.

CLINICAL SOCIOLOGY AND APPLIED SOCIOLOGY

Clinical sociology is the application of a sociological perspective to the analysis and design of interventions for positive social change at any level of social organization. Clinical analysis involves assessing a situation or measure to identify circumstances. This entails examining the beliefs, policies, procedures or practices of both

individuals and the groups or organizations to which they belong with the goal of improving the situation. Intervention involves the creation of new beliefs, policies, procedures or practices as well as the change of those that currently exist in the situation. It is based on continuous analysis and can include the main focus on prevention or health promotion strategies.

Clinical sociologists have different areas of specialization, such as all levels of prevention, health promotion, aging, organizational development, or addressing social conflict. Clinical sociologists can work in a variety of different areas or settings. For instance, they can be employed as community organizers, socio-therapists, mediators, social policy implementers, and action researchers.

Applied sociology is sometimes referred to as pragmatic, realistic, matter of facts, evidence-based or practical sociology that refers to a form of sociological practice that is primarily concerned with using sociological theories and research. These sociological theories and research help to intervene in the ongoing practical activities in a realistic environment; consists within applied or practical settings, like offices, parks, schools, health care settings and other places where activities of daily life take place.

Applied sociologists use sociological theory, techniques, methods, expertise, competence and skills to collect information and analyze data and to communicate their findings. All these activities help to understand and resolve existing social problems. Applied sociology meets the needs of an individual as well as groups who want to use the knowledge generated through research; this will further help to enhance their understanding of an issue and/or to evaluate a social problem in a better way.

Clinical sociologists are often available for social work. **Social work** is described as an individual's, group's, or community's effort within the framework of social philosophy and practices that aim at achieving social progress to modify social policies to improve social legislation, well-being, health and welfare services.

They work with intervention teams whose members have a variety of academic backgrounds and perspectives (e.g., psychologists, psychiatrists, medical doctors). The unique input made by sociologists to the analysis and the planning of the intervention in multi-disciplinary teams is the understanding of sociocultural influences on behavior.

Clinical sociologists use a range of theoretical approaches in their work such as grounded theory, conflict theory, social constructionism theory, symbolic interactionism theory, etc. Some clinical sociologists use qualitative and/or quantitative research skills in assessment and evaluation in their intervention work. In that respect, they are as similar as to applied sociologists.

CHARACTERISTICS OF CLINICAL SOCIOLOGY

Clinical sociology consists basically of the analysis of one human personality as a social unit with respect to the ingestion into the psychic of various types of social experiences that emerge from the person's involvement with ecological structure, historical events, interpersonal relations and cultural patterns. A social unit means; personality which in its organization can be regarded as analogous to an entire social system.

Characteristics of clinical sociology are (Fig. 7.2):

- **Practice oriented:** The clinical task may involve, for example, a redefinition of the self, role, or situation. The sociologist, considered the method of approach to problems of personality and behavior, taking on the proposition that human beings everywhere live in social groups and that the conduct of the individuals, however, it may differ from others, is always expressive of the culture of the group. The sociological approach requires the marital and family therapist to understand the conditions, values and relationships which characterize the real or actual world of the society as well as social system. Its data consist of the recording of conceptualizations, interpersonal relations and cultural patterns.

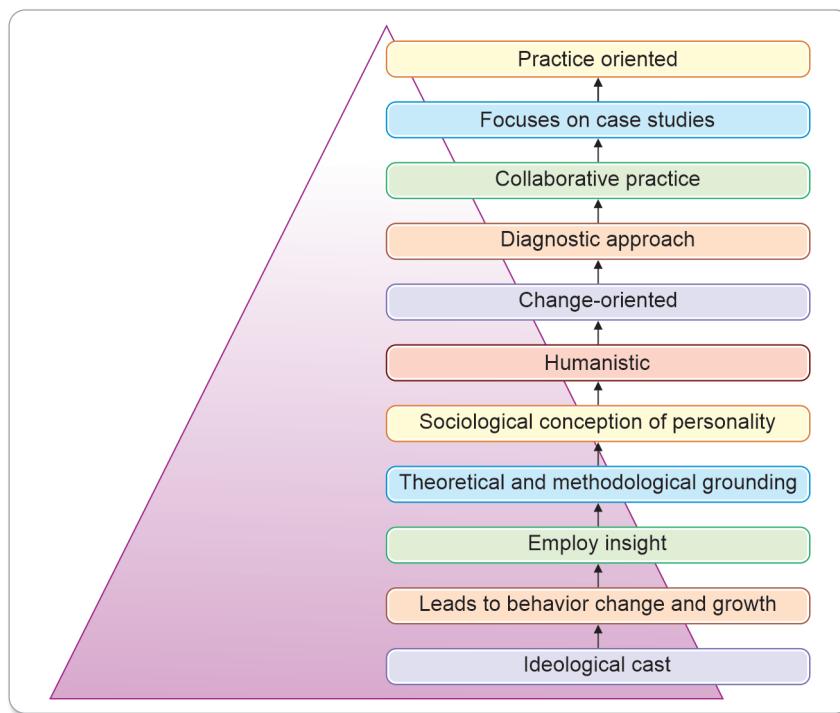


Figure 7.2: Characteristics of clinical sociology

- **Focuses on case studies:** Clinical procedure is characterized by the case method, cooperative work, and a therapeutic aim. The attention of the investigator is focused on a “case,” such as, on a person presenting concrete problems; it is a cooperative enterprise and enroll the support and help of a number of specialists; whatever may be the theoretical interests of the participants, clinical procedure has an immediate therapeutic aim and includes, therefore, not merely a study of the “case,” but the formulation of a program of adjustment, correction or treatment.
- **Collaborative practice:** Clinical sociologists work with individuals, groups, organizations, and communities. Clinical sociology is a collaborative effort of medical doctor, psychiatrist, psychologist, nurse, social worker, criminologist, or activity and recreational professionals and others. It is the application of a variety of critically applied practices which attempt sociological diagnosis and treatment of groups and group members in the community.
- **Diagnostic approach:** Sociologists tend to have early knowledge of emerging social problems. The clinical sociologist, however, makes his own independent or self-determining diagnosis of the client’s problems. Clinical sociology is the class of applied sociology or sociological practice which involves intimate, sharply realistic investigations linked with efforts to diagnose problems and to suggest strategies for coping with these problems. Its focus is on the historical events, interpersonal relations and cultural patterns into which the person has been born and thus becomes involved.
- **Change-oriented:** Clinical sociology brings a sociological perspective to intervention and action for change. The clinical sociologist essentially works as a change agent rather than a researcher or evaluator. Clients may be individuals, groups or organizations. The clinical task or assignment may involve, for example, a redefinition of the self, role, or situation. Clinical sociology uses a numerous and variety of techniques or methods for facilitating a change.



- **Humanistic:** Clinical sociology is a humanistic, holistic, and multidisciplinary specialization that seeks to improve the quality of people's lives. Its data consist of the recording or documentation of conceptualizations, interpersonal relations existing among individuals and their cultural patterns. Its methods for data collection are mainly the interview, the life history of a person and through direct observation of the people's behavior. Clinical sociologist utilizes not a structured questionnaire but a series of open-ended, original guiding questions related to real life situations that are designed for an analytic conceptualization of the person under examination. Its analytic procedure consists of probing for those private, realistic and public experiences of a person that have served to organize or disorganize the personality of the individual and to those responses and actions that have produced some degree of changes in his or her society. Its summation consists of isolating or separating those experiences from the historical process, interpersonal relations, their unique identity and cultural patterns which explain the attitude dimensions as well as the overt behavior of the person under examination.
- **Sociological conception of personality:** Sociologists always try to comprehend the societal factors which restrict the individual from being effective. Clinical sociologists have made a contribution through the cultural approach, which is based upon the conception that behavior becomes a problem when it represents a deviation from the definitions prevailing in a cultural environment, and can be understood and controlled only in terms of this cultural background. Through the sociological conception of personality which emphasizes social status and the playing of roles in social groups, many forms of conduct become understandable. The manipulation of the social world and the modification of attitudes are the chief therapeutic concern for clinical sociologist.
- **Theoretical and methodological grounding:** Clinical sociology can move beyond the client's formulation of the problem to consider other factors that affect functioning, especially broad social trends or movements. Clinical sociologists work with problems of personality and community life. This includes theoretical grounding in historical, systems, dramaturgical, conflict, and interactional approaches with the ability to develop alternative theoretical perspectives or integrate theoretical approaches; methodological grounding is the basic skill of looking, listening, questioning, reporting and critical thinking, and how these skills are used as methods in participant observation, survey research, interviewing, and documentary analysis. There may be substantive comprehension of ethnicity, stratification, aging, family and sex roles, social change and everyday metaphysics.
- **Employ insight:** Clinical sociology uses insights derived from immersion in the critical sociological tradition; uses sociological imagination. A clinical sociologist assumes that the problems formulated by the client may often have a defensive significance and may ambiguous, rather than expose, the client's tensions. Clinical sociologists also consider associated values including extreme individualism, success, racism, and prejudice; and associated relationships such as aggressive competition and exploitation, which is directly or indirectly connected with individual behavior.
- **Leads to behavior change and growth:** Clinical sociology fosters change in students' attitudes as well as behavior as a result of the classroom experiences. Rather than adjust people to the "realities" of the "way things are" or "the system" clinical sociologists commit to helping people cope with their sociocultural and historical situations and institutions and situations in the direction of self-determination, human value, belief and human dignity.
- **Ideological cast:** Clinical sociology tends to have a liberal, pessimistic or radical ideological cast. Sociologists are increasingly participating in child guidance clinics. The emerging or promising field of clinical sociology can be of value to practice as well as science. The roles of clinical sociology and social psychiatry are very important. In the organization of clinics, psychiatrists have played the most important or leading role. Apart from clinical sociologists, the social workers also have been the representatives of the social sciences.



CLINICAL SOCIOLOGISTS

Clinical sociology involves the study of groups of people using learned information in case and care management toward holistic life enrichment or improvement of social and life circumstances.

A **clinical sociologist**, who might also be called a socio-therapist or life enrichment therapist, is usually concurrently a member of another relevant profession: medical doctor, psychiatrist, psychologist, nurse, social worker. **Social worker** (social workers work with individuals and families to help improve outcomes in their lives. This may be helping to protect vulnerable people from harm, cruelty or abuse or supporting people to live independently. Social workers support people, act as advocates and direct people, to the criminologist, or activity and recreational professionals, and among others for help and assistance as well as for the services they may require.

Clinical sociologists usually focus on vulnerability groups. A **vulnerability group** refers to younger children, youths or elderly, and are employed in various settings such as treatment facilities or life care communities like nursing homes. They are directly involved in case studies like case management and care planning.

Clinical sociologists have different areas of specialization, such as health promotion, aging, organizational development, as well as addressing social conflict or social disorganization. A clinical sociologist is someone who seeks to observe, investigate and analyze the behavior of a group. The main goal is to help group so that the group manifests positive change.

Clinical sociologists help clients understand how interpersonal and social forces affect their behavior, and they encourage clients to enact positive change in their lives. In general, clinical sociologists should have excellent communication, logic and analytical and critical thinking skills. They should also have an interest in working with others to explore or investigate actual human behavior.

Specific Role and Responsibilities of Clinical Sociologists

- **Working as consulting positions:** Clinical sociologists working in consulting positions; advise organizations on how to improve their social structure in the office, often through discussion of ideas such as power relationships, communication gaps and gender inequality.
- **Direct participation in study and treatment of cases:** Direct participation in study and treatment of cases are possible tasks of sociologists in clinics.
- **Specific duties:** Other duties vary depending on the specifics of the clinical sociology position. If a clinical sociologist is working in mitigation process; he/she should prepare and present the life history of a client as declaration in order to provide the competent authority with any relevant life details. Community health nurse, teachers or trainers might present information to given groups of people to facilitate change. For example, they may teach cultural competency to a social services organization or lead workshops about death and bereavement for those who work in life-threatening or terminal care settings.

Job Responsibilities of Clinical Sociologists

Clinical sociology brings a sociological perspective to intervention and action for social change. The clinical sociologist essentially works as a change agent rather than a researcher or evaluator. Clients may be individuals, family, groups, community or organizations. The clinical task may involve, for example, a redefinition of the self, role, or situation. There may be consideration of some prospects such as substantive comprehension of ethnicity, social stratification, aging, family and gender roles, social change, social values and everyday metaphysics are some limitations.

Clinical sociology would share with all other types of sociological analysis and promise; that the cumulative character of social knowledge would provide the foundation for bringing about a change in society that would produce a more perfect balance between the needs of man and these essential requirements for making an organized society possible.

Job responsibilities of clinical sociologists are described below (Fig. 7.3):

- **Identifies social problems and proposes solutions:** Through critical examination of any social problem area of the society, a clinical sociologist can discover situations and finding variety of practices to resolve them. In a therapeutic or counseling scenario, clinical sociologists help clients alleviate issues with society or with other individuals, such as in marriage counseling. They might work with specific groups, families or an entire community to pinpoint issues and find ways to eliminate or resolve them.
- **Critical examination of any problem area of the society:** This entails examining the beliefs, policies, or practices of both individuals and the groups or organizations to which they belong with the goal of improving the situation.
- **Sociological diagnosis and treatment of groups and group members in the community:** Clinical sociologists work in hospitals and different health care settings and they deliver community services, often carrying out social work. Though the activities of clinical sociologists are diverse, their active intervention as change agents sets them apart from other practicing sociologists.
- **Develop specific intervention strategies:** Intervention involves the creation of new beliefs, policies or practices as well as the change of those that currently exist in the situation. **Intervention** means action taken to improve a medical disorder. It is based on continuous analysis and can include a focus on prevention or health promotion strategies.

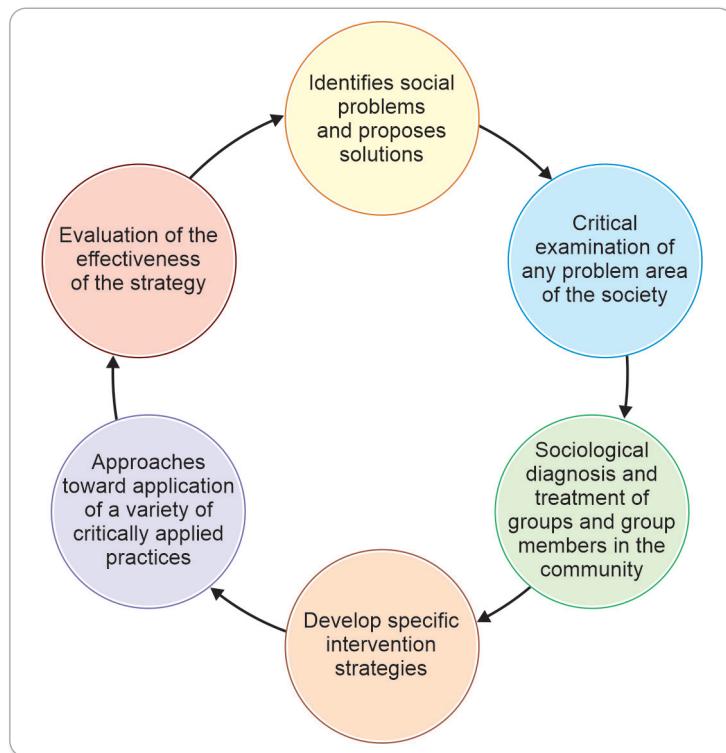


Figure 7.3: Job responsibilities of clinical sociologists

- **Approaches toward application of a variety of critically applied practices:** Research is the foundation of applied sociology, just as it is of basic sociology. The principles of the scientific method underlie all sociological research; both basic and applied. Sociologists draw upon conclusions from the same pool of research methods. In addition, applied sociologists have developed a special set of techniques they use to make observations, investigations and recommendations that will be useful to their clients.
- **Evaluation of the effectiveness of the strategy:** This is the final step to evaluate the expected outcome or effectiveness of the planned interventions.

Fundamentally, the work of the clinical sociologist rests on the body of empirical knowledge that is concerned with the socialization process - the process by which a newborn child is made into an acceptable functioning member of society, thereby achieving selfhood and a personality organization. Thus finally we can say 'a clinical sociology starts out as a microsociology, but ends up by making a contribution to a macrosociology'.

ROLE OF NURSE IN SOCIOLOGICAL STRATEGIES FOR DEVELOPING SERVICES FOR THE ABUSE

Health care in India is a complicated structure of social roles, processes, and communication, involving equally for patients and for professionals. Understanding the social dimensions of the health care practices can assist health professionals in providing better care to their patients. Effective prevention strategies focus on modifying policies, practices, training, guidelines, and societal norms to create safe, stable, harmless, nurturing relationships and healthy living environments.

All health care providers and social workers have a role in preventing abuse, health care providers must possess special characteristics and skills particularly those who provide care to children or dependent adults in facilities, health care agencies and health programs.

Intervention Strategies (Fig. 7.4)

- **Assessing and describing the way individuals react to illnesses:** In order to anticipate how they will be defined from the viewpoint of their social and cultural group within that society. Determining client's thinking pattern and cognitive abilities is essential in assessing current abilities to cope with the present situation.
- **Formulation of committee:** It is a joint effort of health care team members. Partnership among community, health care, legal and financial organizations is also important.
- **Selection of committee members:** Selected members are required to have specific skills and trainings and possess effective decision-making and supervision abilities for *social work*.

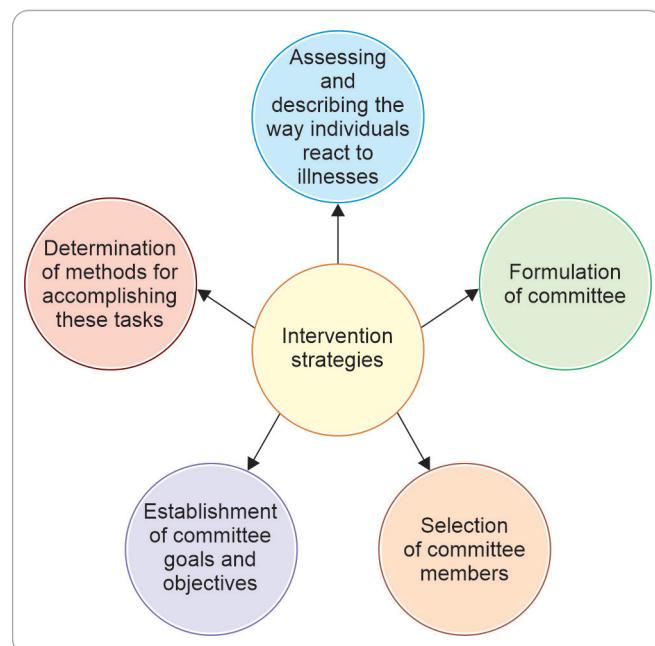


Figure 7.4: Intervention strategies

Social work is described as an individual's, group's, or community's effort within the framework of social philosophy and practices that aim at achieving social progress to modify social policies or procedures to improve social legislation, health and welfare services.

- **Establishment of committee goals and objectives:** Effective crisis intervention must follow ethical principles which ensure that clients are not placed in further harm, their decisions and opinions are respected throughout the process and the intervention upholds a right based approach.
- **Determination of methods for accomplishing these tasks:** Three major clinical strategies were in use for accomplishing tasks:
 1. **Provision of information about social structure and its consequences:** Information about social structure enabling individuals and groups to use knowledge of social structure to develop more effective plans for group action.
 2. **Statistics about social structure:** Use of sociological principles and utilization of data; this will help to make people aware about aspects of the social situation and circumstances of which they had previously been unacquainted or unaware.
 3. **Involvement of members:** Involvement or participation of the individuals as well as group members in the initial level of planning process, this will help to maximize the likelihood that they will have an investment in the outcomes.

In reality, all three above mentioned processes occur once a time. Principles, information and data relating to the social structure act as a key approach designed to integrate them into the planning process. This results in the development of a sense of involvement as well as contribution on the part of those actors most able to effectuate change in the social structure. In terms of clarity and precision; however, each of these strategies will be explored separately or independently.

Developing Services for the Abused

- **Strengthen economic supports to families:**
 - Strengthening household financial security
 - Family-friendly work policies
- **Change social norms to support parents and positive as well as optimistic parenting:**
 - Arrange public meetings, commitment, engagement as well as education campaigns
 - Implementation or execution of Legislative approaches to reduce corporal punishment
- **Provide extraordinary or excellent quality care and better education facilities early in life:**
 - Facility of preschool enrichment with family commitment or engagement
 - There must be measures toward improving quality of child care through licensing, authorization, endorsement, certification and accreditation
- **There must be appraise to enhance parenting skills to promote strong, healthy and all round child development:**
 - Provision of early childhood home visitation
 - Motivating parents and family members to develop parenting skill proficiency and family relationship approaches
- **Plan preventive strategies and intervene to lessen troubles, harms and prevent future risk:**
 - Enhanced primary and basic care facilities
 - Implement early behavioral parent training programs
 - Early diagnosis and treatment to lessen or reduce harms of abuse as well as neglect exposure
 - Better treatment to prevent problematic behavior early in the life and later involvement in violence

Special Consideration While Developing Services for Abused

- **Focus on the preventive strategies:** Increase public awareness regarding strategies that support the development of safe, stable, and nurturing relationships between parents or caregivers and their children. This is important means in preventing development of violent behavior in children. Work with the local area agencies in implementation of public awareness campaigns.
- **Early assessment of the person to know signs of abuse or neglect:** Early identification is necessary to stop the progress of the worst situation in future.

These two aspects are very important; focus on preventive strategies and early assessment, because this is important to stop the worst situations in future.

USE OF CLINICAL SOCIOLOGY IN CRISIS INTERVENTION

Crisis intervention is a practice-oriented set of procedures or methods designed to offer someone experiencing incapacitating stress emotional first-aid. Concepts and ideas found in the sociological tradition are quite applicable or related to crisis intervention practice. The interventions offered are alternatives to the traditional psychological and psychiatric positions. The understanding of crisis events is a social act in that the individual experiencing the crisis is influenced through social circumstances. Social circumstances play a vital role in crisis formation, development and intervention. Intervention strategies are offered which integrate aspects of clinical sociology while using a case study for application.

“**Crisis**” is an acute emotional upset arising from situational, developmental, or social sources and resulting in a temporary inability to cope by means of one’s usual problem solving mechanisms.

“**Crisis intervention**” is a helping process that focuses on the resolution of the immediate or urgent crisis through the use of personal, social, and environmental resources.

Purpose: The purpose of crisis intervention is to prevent illness.

Prerequisite of crisis intervention: Assessment is an initial step to obtain commitment; thorough patient assessment done; ensure patient safety, security and confidentiality (Fig. 7.5).

Clarification: Clarification is also important. **Clarification** means encouraging the patient to express more clear relationship between certain events of the counseling.

Catharsis: The term **Catharsis** means the release of feelings that takes place as the patient talks about emotionally charged areas.

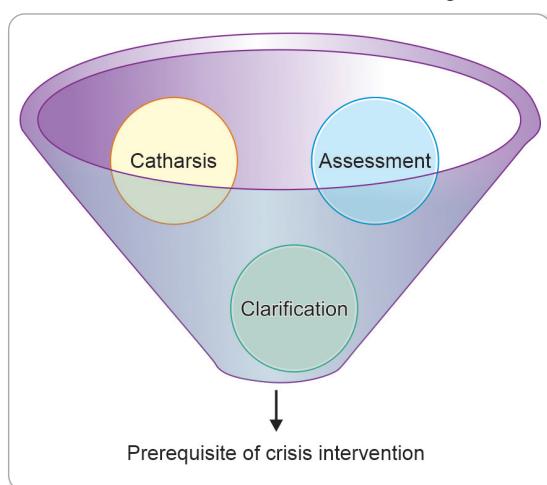


Figure 7.5: Prerequisite of crisis intervention

Crisis Intervention Steps (Fig. 7.6)

- **Assessment:** The crisis intervention steps include crisis assessment. Assessment is an intentional practice that occurs throughout the crisis intervention process and involves seeking information from patient. Assessment allows the health care professionals to draw conclusions about the patient conditions and his or her responses toward present situation and abilities in assistance of self-care.

- **Establish rapport:** A number of specific strategies can be used to promote effective listing during crisis intervention. Use open ended questions, this will help gain more information regarding particular event or situation.
- **Identify major problem or crisis precipitants:** Health care professionals are skilled in information gathering related to precipitating factors that may increase emotional insecurity. Staff may be trained to help abused to regain control and emotional stability.
- **Deal with feelings and emotions:** Emotional distress is often an initial sign that abused person experience during crisis. Health care professionals and sociologists always deal with the feelings and emotions of the client's through appropriate control and direction activities.
- **Generate and explore alternatives:** Health care professionals are always ready to generate and create specific alternatives appropriate for particular crisis situations.
- **Implement an action plan:** Taking action in crisis intervention involves intentionally responding to the assessment of the client's situation. Implement a safety plan such as relocation, transfer, a protective order, or admission to a hospital.
- **Follow-up and referral:** Measuring progress or evaluation, and referral. Through these procedures, the intervener may work with the patient toward the goal of socio-emotional stability. Consult social workers about referring the person to community agencies or providing alternative arrangements.

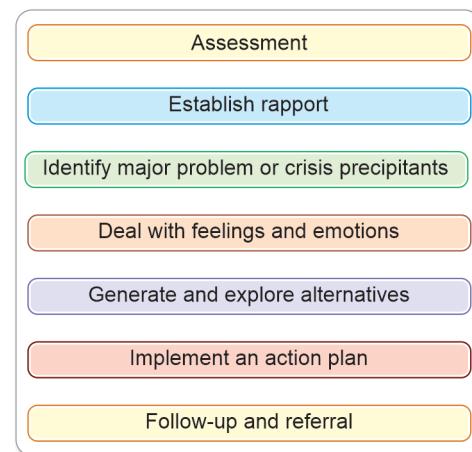


Figure 7.6: Steps of crisis intervention

SCOPES OF CLINICAL SOCIOLOGY

Clinical sociology has the task or mission of determining the extent to which the cultural setting is interwoven with human experience. Always human experience is related to social elements such as role confusion, role strain, role marginality, role conflict, class conflicts, status inconsistency, group conflict, sub-cultural involvement, inadequate socialization and atypical self-conceptions.

Little bit involvement toward these social elements is necessary for maintaining balance in the day-to-day life of every individual. The extent to which one or more of these social elements are present in excessive quantity will affect the current attitudes and behavior of an individual. The clinical sociologist focuses on the study of how these social elements affect human personality and behavior. Such findings, when verified, would then be suggestive of the type of social therapy needed to reduce, modify or control the problematic behavior. Thus, the clinical sociologist is always working with team; the clinical psychiatrist and psychologist. This would help to determine what type of therapy will be suggested to a particular person. Therapy should be physical, psychological, social or some combination of them.

In current scenario, clinical sociology has much more scopes. Scopes of clinical sociology are:

- **Research:** However, the central use of clinical sociology is, of course, the study of the problem personality. Sociologists often begin the research process by asking a question or enquiry about how or why things happen in this world. Sociologists make use of tried, evidence-based and true methods of research, such as experiments, surveys, and field research.
- **Consultation with and training of other specialists:** Social workers, in addition to their present training, need advanced training in clinical sociology. The manipulation of the social world and the modification of attitudes are the important aspects. They also work with problems of personality and community life.



Add Ons
Dil Mange More Content
Don't settle for less go beyond with Conceptual Videos, Recent Updates, e-Books & Much more...

Unit VII Clinical Sociology

- **Occupational or vocational aim:** Clinical sociology is emerging as a response to both employment and ideological conditions within the discipline of sociology.

Thus, clinical sociology is important to understand and meet needs of the individual, family and societal needs, to understand human behavior in relation with the society. Clinical sociology is important to gain greater insight into human problems as well as to suggest the ways to work with the families, community organizations to provide health counseling in planning for continuity of care as well as quality of life and well-being of individual.

Nursing skills important for identifying and managing social issues are enlisted in case study 1:

Case Study 1 Nursing Skills Important for Identifying and Managing Social Issues

According to the World Health Organization (1974), substance dependence is a state, psychic and sometimes also physical, resulting from the interaction between a living organism and a drug, characterized by behavioral and other responses that always include a compulsion to take the drug on a continuous or periodic basis in order to experience its psychic effects, and sometimes to avoid the discomfort of its absence.

Ravi is a 20-year-old young male, engineering second year student, admitted in drug de-addiction camp with management of withdrawal symptoms by parents. Ravi is a poly-substance-dependent individual who presents in acute withdrawal from several substances, including cocaine, heroin, and methamphetamine. This habit began at age 12 and has progressed to complete loss of control. At this point, Ravi has been asked to leave the university and discontinue studies, he has been also not interested toward life.

Applied sociology: Emotional instability due to peer pressure.

Nursing skills required: Effective listener, evidence-based knowledge impartation.

Explanation: Nurses always functioning within the managed care delivery system have been challenged to provide cost-effective treatment within the least restrictive environment. Making psychological contact through acceptance, support, empathy and mirroring nonverbal communication. Examine the dimensions of the problem in order to define it with the help of examination of resilience factors, empowering the patient, assess support factors. Encourage exploration of feelings and emotions. Exploring and assessing past coping attempts, through exception question, scaling question, past success. Main role to generate and explore alternatives and specific solutions. Restore cognitive functioning through implementation of action plan. Finally, performing appropriate follow-up, through scaling in the form of outcome studies. Besides, conducting behavioral parent training programs, providing treatment to lessen harms of abuse and neglect exposure. Performing career guidance such as explaining the consequences of discontinuation of studies as well as treatment to prevent problem behavior and later involvement in violence and antisocial activities.

Congratulations!!

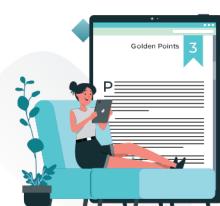
You have completed the CHAPTER thoroughly, now it's time to assess your knowledge and learn more through *My Phygital Book*

Scan the QR Code
to Download the App



Nursing Next Live
The Next Level of Nursing Education

CBS Phygital Books >
Essentials of Applied Sociology >
My Phygital Book



My Phygital Book
Listen, Learn & Practice

Reading is not enough, Now **Listen, Learn & Practice** Every Chapter

Golden Points
Get One Liners of Chapter summary in the PODCAST form

Solved Exercises
Subjective and objective exercises given in book with their solutions to evaluate and assess the complete chapter knowledge

MCQs
Chapter-wise extra MCQs in the form of Practice test to give in-depth concept clarity

SUMMARY

Clinical sociology is the application of sociological theories, research/methods, and interventions to social issues and problems presented by clients. "Clinical" means a problem-solving perspective, relating to the observation and treatment of actual patients rather than theoretical or laboratory studies. Clinical sociologists deal with "problems in living". In present chapter, we looked at the need of clinical sociology, definitions of clinical sociology by different sociologists and characteristics of clinical sociology, scope of clinical sociology, nurse's role in formulating sociological strategies for developing services for the abused and use of clinical sociology in crisis intervention.

- **The Association for Humanist Sociology and the Sociological Practice Association defined the term as follows:** *Clinical sociology* is the kind of applied sociology or sociological practice which involves intimate, sharply realistic investigations linked with efforts to diagnose problems and to suggest strategies for coping with these problems (Lee, 1979:489).
- **Characteristics of clinical sociology are:** Practice-oriented; focuses on case studies; collaborative practice; diagnostic; change oriented; humanistic; sociological conception of the personality; theoretical and methodological grounding; employ insight; leads to behavior change and growth; ideological cast.
- **Specific roles and responsibilities of clinical sociologists are:** Roles such as working with consulting position; direct participation of the study and treatment of case; other duties to work as teacher or trainer to facilitate change.
- **Nurse's role in formulating sociological strategies for developing services for the abused:** Strengthen economic supports to families; Change social norms to support parents and positive parenting; Provide quality care and education early in life; Enhance parenting skills to promote healthy child development; Intervene to lessen harms and prevent future risk.
- **Use of clinical sociology in crisis intervention:** The crisis intervention steps include crisis assessment, information gathering, control, direction, progress assessment and referral.
- **Scope of clinical sociology:** Research; occupational and vocational aim; Consultation with and training of other specialists.

ASSESS YOURSELF

Short Answer Questions

1. Define clinical sociology.
2. Explain about characteristics of clinical sociology.
3. Differentiate between clinical sociology and applied sociology.
4. Explain importance of clinical sociology in nursing.
5. Discuss scope of clinical sociology.
6. Discuss about steps of crisis intervention.

Long Answer Questions

1. Define clinical sociology. Discuss nurse's role in formulating sociological strategies for developing services for the abuse.
2. Describe use of clinical sociology in crisis intervention.

Multiple Choice Questions

1. **Clinical sociology means:**
 - a. Study of society
 - b. Study of medicine
 - c. Study of environment
 - d. Study of causes and consequences of health and illness
2. **Work of clinical sociologists mainly focuses on:**
 - a. Investigation
 - b. Case management and care planning
 - c. Case management
 - d. Care planning
3. **The clinical analysis means:**
 - a. Rehabilitative services
 - b. Sociocultural analysis
 - c. Preventive services
 - d. Assessing a situation

Unit VII Clinical Sociology

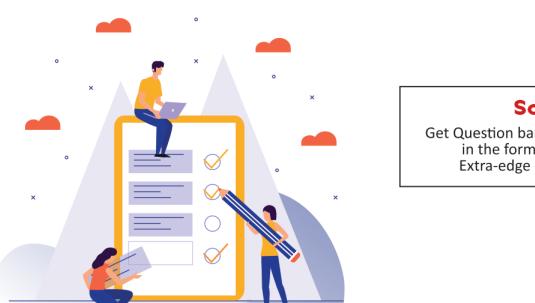
- 4. Community health nurse works as *change agents* means:**
- Work to bring about desired, positive change in the lives of target group
 - Work to change the cultural values
 - Work to change the family norms
 - Work to change individual beliefs
- 5. The importance of clinical sociology is all; except:**
- To study the social structure
 - To obtain knowledge about social factors responsible for deviant behavior
 - To study achievement of sociologists
 - To study the problems of personality

Answer Key

1. d 2. b 3. d 4. a 5. c

FURTHER READINGS

- Byers, Bryan D. (1987) "Uses of Clinical Sociology in Crisis Intervention Practice," Clinical Sociology Review: Vol. 5: Iss. 1, Article 11.<https://digitalcommons.wayne.edu/csr/vol5/iss1/11>
- Dunham, H. Warren () "Clinical Sociology: Its Nature and Function," Clinical Sociology Review: Vol. 1: Iss. 1, Article 5. Available at: <http://digitalcommons.wayne.edu/csr/vol1/iss1/5>
- Fritz, Jan M. (1989) "The History of Clinical Sociology," Sociological Practice: Vol. 7: Iss. 1, Article 11. Available at: <http://digitalcommons.wayne.edu/socprac/vol7/iss1/11>
- John G. Bruhn, Howard M. Rebach, Clinical Sociology; Problem Solving at the Macrolevel. pp-143-162. DOI: 10.1007/978-1-4757-2516-2_5
- Louis Wirth, Clinical Sociology. American Journal of Sociology. Volume 37, Number 1.
- Stanley S. Clawar, clinical sociology 15 September 2008. Willey online library. <https://doi.org/10.1002/9781405165518.wbeosc207>.



My Exam Centre
Read & Learn



Solved Papers

Get Question bank covering the complete subject in the form of Subjective exercises and Extra-edge exercises with their solution

Unsolved Papers

Explore the pool of Unsolved Previous Year Exam Papers of top Universities

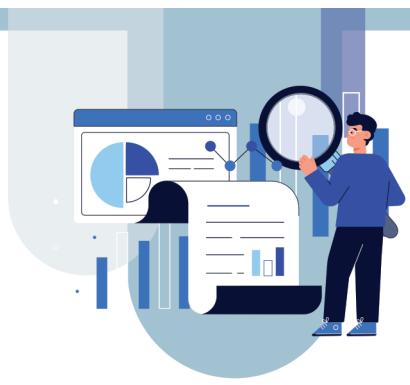


Nursing Next Live
The Next Level of Nursing Education

CBS Phygital Books >
Essentials of Applied Sociology > My Exam Centre



Note



Assess Yourself Every Step Counts

It's time to do self-assessment. Are you ready for the competition!



Mini Test (Topic-wise)

6 Tests based on important topics of the respective subjects

Semester-wise Test (All semester subject)

2 Tests based on all the subjects of particular semester

Mega Grand Test (All subject)

2 Tests based on all the UG subjects
(1 Test from Target High book)

Scan the QR Code
to Download the App



Nursing Next Live
The Next Level of Nursing Education

CBS Phygital Books >
Essentials of Applied Sociology > Assess Yourself

ANNEXURE

A Review about Sociological Research

Research means the systematic investigation or step by step process to finding a solution of a problem.

MEANING OF SOCIOLOGICAL RESEARCH

Sociological research or social research means study of individuals as well as societies to identify everyday patterns of their social life. It is defined as the orderly or step by step process to understand social facts or phenomena.

OBJECTIVE

The objective of social research is to identify the cause-and-effect relationship between existing social problems within society. It is used to gather information about the social structure, in order to develop new knowledge to solve problems and improve social welfare.

IMPORTANCE OF SOCIOLOGICAL RESEARCH

Sociological research is important for a number of reasons as discussed here:

- **Solve social problems:** An ultimate aim of social research is to solve social problems arising within society and is a major cause of social disorganization.
- **Helps to study social factors:** Social research helps to study all those social factors responsible for changes in human behavior.
- **Improve wellbeing within society:** Sociological research is helpful in maintaining harmony within society as well as enhancing the welfare of humanity.
- **Predict human behavior:** Social research helps us to understand behavior of different people individually or in a group situation.
- **Upgrading of current knowledge:** Social research helps us in upgrading our current knowledge through evidence-based practices.

- **Give an understanding about social structure, social process and social changes:** Social research is used to gather information on social phenomena. It provides us with an understanding of the social structure, social process and social change directly or indirectly responsible for changes in human behavior.
- **Helps in social progress:** Social research is one step forward to advancement or social progress.
- **Formulates new social theories:** There are many existing theories on perspectives of human behavior and social background such as theory of leadership style, motivational theories, and environmental theories. Social research allows us to formulate new theories in sociological context.
- **Helps to develop new research methodologies:** Social research helps to develop new research methodologies to best deal with social problems such as drug addiction, child labour, prostitution, juvenile delinquency, etc. and so on... and is continually used to modify or replace old research methodologies to new ones.

Congratulations!!

You have completed the CHAPTER thoroughly, now it's time to assess your knowledge and learn more through *My Phygital Book*

Scan the QR Code
to Download the App



Nursing Next Live
The Next Level of Nursing Education
CBS Phygital Books >
Essentials of Applied Sociology >
My Phygital Book



My Phygital Book
Listen, Learn & Practice

Reading is not enough, Now *Listen, Learn & Practice* Every Chapter

Golden Points
Get One Liners of Chapter summary in the PODCAST form

Solved Exercises
Subjective and objective exercises given in book with their solutions to evaluate and assess the complete chapter knowledge

MCQs
Chapter-wise extra MCQs in the form of Practice test to give in-depth concept clarity

Model Test Paper

Subject: Sociology

Time: 3 Hours

Maximum Marks 75

Attempt all Questions

I. Multiple Choice Questions:

$$(1 \times 5 = 5)$$

1. Who is considered the father of sociology?
 - a. Morris Ginsberg
 - b. Auguste Comte
 - c. Max Weber
 - d. Emile Durkheim
 2. Work of clinical sociologists mainly focuses on:
 - a. Investigation
 - b. Case management
 - c. Case management & care planning
 - d. Care planning
 3. Which of the following is not a classical feature of Indian culture?
 - a. Spiritualism
 - b. Freedom
 - c. Materialistic outlook
 - d. Social control
 4. Class struggle is more intense in a:
 - a. Capitalistic society
 - b. Historic society
 - c. Primitive society
 - d. Religious society
 5. According to D.N. Mazumdar & T. N. Madan, Caste is agroup.
 - a. Historic group
 - b. Social group
 - c. Open group
 - d. Closed group

II. Long Answer Questions

$$(10 \times 3 = 30)$$

1. Write down difference between society and community.
 2. Define culture and discuss positive and negative impact of cultural practices on health.
 3. Define social change. Describe the factors of social change.
 4. Define social disorganization. Explain the causes of social disorganization.

Or

5. List of social problems. Discuss any one social problem in detail.

III. Write Short Notes On (Any Five):

$$(5 \times 5 = 25)$$

1. Concept of social stratifications
 2. Agencies of socialization
 3. Significance of sociology in nursing
 4. Sociological strategies for developing services for the abused
 5. Difference between primary group and secondary group
 6. Classification of forms of marriage

EXPLANATIONS

I. Multiple Choice Questions

Answer Key

1. b 2. c 3. c 4. a 5. d

II. Long Answer Questions

1. Write down difference between society and community.

Society: The term or word “society” is derived from Latin word *societas* means “companionship or friendship”. Man is social being expressive in nature. Mans needs society, enjoy group life, human life.

Definition: According to Giddings, “Society is the sum of formal relations in which individuals are associating together or bounded together”.

Community: Community is an organized and planned social life of a locality. We can observe the social relations within the community. People develop attachment and sentimental identification with the area in which they live. It represents the common interest of the group. Thus, community is a ring or circle in which common life is lived.

Definition: According to Bogardus, Community is a social group with some degree of ‘we feeling’ and ‘living in a given area’.

Differences between society and community are as discussed below:

Sl. No.	Society	Community
1.	Society is a large group	As compared with society community is limited group
2.	Web of relationship	Consists of group of individuals
3.	Society composed of community	Community exists in a society
4.	Society is a system of social relationships. It is abstract.	It is formed by group of human beings. It is concrete
5.	Society is not limited by geographical area or boundaries.	Community has a definite geographical area
6.	Society is wider.	Community is smaller than society
7.	Within the society there are many communities.	Community is limited group as compared to society
8.	Society is highly complex	Community is less complex
9.	Society is an ever changing system	Community is relatively stable
10.	Society comprises likeness and differences	Lots of common things in communities, people share their common interest
11.	Sentiments are not essential	Sentiments are essential; people remain conscious of their unity; ‘community sentiments’ and ‘we-feeling’ are important elements
12.	The objective and interests of society are more extensive and varied	The objective and interests of community are comparatively less extensive and varied
13.	Society involves both formal and informal means of social regulations	Informal means of regulations are more important in community

Sl. No.	Society	Community
14.	Society has no name	Community has its specific name
15.	In society, group is merely a means to end	In a community, group members have their own pattern of living
16.	In the society, members have doctrine, public opinion, contractual solidarity and individual will	In the community, members have faith, reliance, confidence, customs, natural solidarity and a common will

Conclusion: Community is entirely different from society. Every community grows itself spontaneously and impulsively. A community is not deliberately, intentionally or purposively created. A kind of natural or expected force acts behind the origin and development of communities. Various factors, like traditions, customs, conventions, and religious beliefs bind the individuals together.

2. Define culture and discuss positive and negative impact of cultural practices on health.

Culture is the characteristics and facts of a particular group of people, encompassing language, religion, cuisine, social habits, music and arts. Culture is the whole of learned, socially transmitted customs, knowledge, material objects, and behavior.

Definitions

- “Culture is a symbolic continuous, cumulative and progressive process.” —**Leglic A.Y. White**
- According to **E.B. Taylor** “Culture is a complex whole, which includes knowledge, belief, art, morals, law, customs and any other capabilities and habits acquired by the man as a member of society.”

Positive Effects of Cultural Practices on Our Health

- Getting up early in the morning and going for a walk help to refresh our body and mind and prevent risk of many non-communicable diseases, like hypertension and diabetes mellitus.
- Drinking tulsi water or eating tulsi leaves is good for health and boosts immunity.
- Chickenpox-affected child should be bathed with neem leaves, which in turn helps in early recovery.
- Some societies apply honey for burn injury; it has proven to be helpful in quicker healing.
- Periodic fasting is good for health and useful for proper functioning of gastrointestinal system.
- Culture of meditation increases concentration and attention and reduces stress, conflicts and tensions.
- Some cultures place very little stigma on mental illness, like schizophrenia or psychosis, thus provide better opportunity to patients seeking assistance and support.

Negative Effects of Cultural Practices on Our Health

- People only eating vegetarian diet having risk of vitamin B₁₂ deficiency.
- Excess periodic fasting is responsible for poor immune system and weakness in our body.
- Some societies not allow women to use contraceptive methods; which is a cause of poor maternal and child health as well as responsible for population explosion.
- In some societies; during pregnancy, the women are advised not to take healthy diet for easy child birth; this will further lead to low birth weight babies.

- In some of cultures, it is practiced that girl child will eat leftover food in the family which can lead to malnutrition and iron deficiency anemia.

Conclusion: Culture is the product of human society and is handed down from one generation to the next. Culture influences the human behavior and health programs of the population. Health belief and practices are part of every culture. Ancient as well as modern people consider disease is caused due to the worth of supernatural power. Sickness is considered misfortune. For example, in India, smallpox was considered to be caused due to anger of Goddess Shitala Mata. Diseases such as leprosy, tuberculosis, and venereal diseases are considered punishment from supernatural power.

3. Define social change. Describe the factors of social change.

Change is the law of nature, what is today will be different from what it would be tomorrow. Society is not a static phenomenon, but it is a dynamic entity. Social change has occurred in all societies and at all times. Society passes through various stages. It has an ever changing phenomenon growing, decaying, renewing, and accommodating itself to changing conditions. Change symbolizes life. All living things transform in one form to another form. Since society is a living institute, it is also changing subtly.

Definitions of Social Change

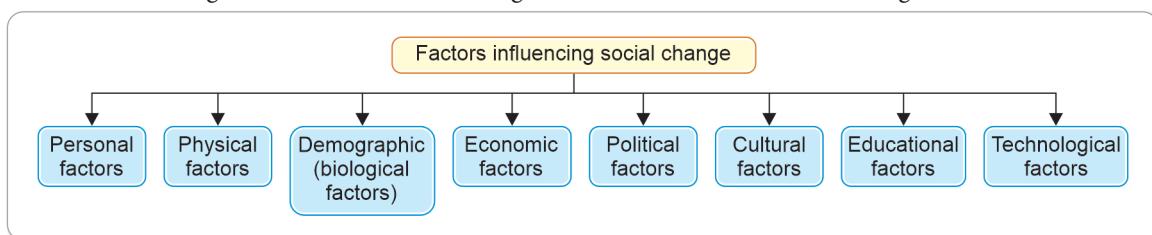
- According to Gillin and Gillin, "Social changes are variations from the accepted modes of life; whether due to alteration in geographical conditions, in cultural equipment, composition of the population or ideologies and whether brought about by diffusion or inventions within the group".
- According to Kingsley Davis "Social change is any alteration that occurs in social organization that is the structure and the functions of society".

Factors Influencing Social Change

Social change is brought about by a number of factors — technological, industrial, economic, ideological and religious. Geographical and biological changes in addition result in socio-cultural changes.

The rate of social change varies or differs from place to place and time to time. Social changes meet with opposition too. Several factors have been emphasized by sociologists for social change.

The following are the factors which has significant contribution in social change:



- **Personal factors:** Personal factors such as change in the lifestyle; change in the marriage system, the influence of great men. All these factors directly or indirectly affect process of social change. For example, India was fortunate to have some great men as their leaders. In the 20th century, Mahatma Gandhi and his compatriot brought about many social changes, including political freedom. Thus, the role of great men is bringing about changes in society in undisputable.

- **Physical factors:** A societal change corresponds to physical or geographical conditions, like climate, earthquake, floods, draughts epidemic diseases, etc. The geographic factor comprises all those inorganic phenomena which exert an influence on human life. Our infrastructure our lifestyle depends upon the physical factors persist in society. A change in the geographic environment may lead to the development of a different physical type of human being who is physiologically adapted to the new conditions. This new hereditary type will create a different culture. Geographic changes also affect the food supply, leading to new dietary habits.
- **Demographic (biological factors):** Societal changes have correlation with demographic characteristics of population and size of family. Societal changes in the city have different pace than societal changes in villages. Change in death rate, birth rate, average age, marriage, gender, hereditary; all these factors affect a process of social change. For example, population increase or decrease determine social institutions and social relations very much. Population explosion creates problems of low standard of life, unemployment, higher density, etc. This is what happening in India, at the same time; inadequate population will hinder the exploitation of natural resources of a country.
- **Economical factors:** Effects of socioeconomic problems, like industrialization, urbanization, migration, change in the medical and health services, corporate sector all has economical impact on society and thus it is changing.
- **Political factors:** Political force is the most vital determining factors in societal changes. Political leader and individuals in power influences the rate and direction of social changes. Decentralization of administration through panchayat raj has effect much changes in the rural communities in India. Direct programs of the government such as community development projects, national extension service blocks and several other activities envisaged in the five-year plans of India are the foundation of changes in the Indian society.
- **Cultural factors:** Our values, beliefs our thoughts propel changes in society. Like education, fashion, cultural also influence social change. Culture is the unique possession or control of human society and it is transmitted from generation to generation. These beliefs, customs, values, and traditions exert great influence on human society and also the extent to which a society can accept new patterns. The possibilities of innovations depend on the existing culture to a great extent. Diffusion of culture within a society and also from one society to another is an important factor in cultural and social change.
- **Educational factors:** Change in the educational field plays important role in the process of social change.
- **Technological factors:** Technological innovation in agriculture, industry, effect of technology on family life, economic life, religious life, social institutions, means of transportation, means of communication; all influence social change.

Conclusion: Society passes through various stages. All living things transform in one form to another form. Since society is a living institute, it is also changing subtly.

4. Define social disorganization. Explain the causes of social disorganization.

In social disorganization, all the processes, like habits, institutions, organizations, and associations will be disorganized. Social disorganization implies some collapse, disintegration or breakdown in the social organization.

The definitions of social disorganization are:

- According to **Elliot** and **Merril**, “Social disorganization means decay in the social structure so that old habits and form of social control no longer function effectively”.
- According to **Emile Durkheim** “Social disorganization is a state of disequilibrium and a lack of social solidarity or consensus among the members of society”.

Causes of Social Disorganization

Social disorganization has been constant and is always present in every society.

- **Division of labor:** According to Emile Durkheim, extreme division of labor is one of the important causes of social disorganization. Division of labor is generally productive of social solidarity; but when it becomes excessive and complex then solidarity diminishes or disappears which leads to burden and finally, social equilibrium is disturbed.
- **Violation of social rules:** In society, there are always some individuals who violate social rules to great extent. This has a massive disorganizing effect upon social institutions, and unless the violations are checked; they may eventually lead to the death, loss or failure or loss of functions of any institutions.
- **Industrialization:** Industrialization creates such circumstances or conditions leading to social disorganization. Industrialization as seen in system had led to capitalism, exploitation, and extreme utilization and also class conflicts.
- **Cultural lag:** Ogburn discussed in social change; that disorganization is caused primarily due to the unequal rates of change in the different parts of culture, resulting in a conflict between them.
- **Natural catastrophes:** Ecological disturbances; like disturbances in the relationship of man to his environment, including such natural phenomena as disease, earthquakes, floods, famine, volcanic eruptions and various other catastrophic phenomena of nature, may also have a enormous or huge disorganizing effect upon society.
- **War:** War is also the consequence or result of social disorganization. War disturbs the economy of a whole country and introduces confusion, uncertainty, insecurity and many disorders within the society. War leads to scarcity, shortage and insufficiency.
- **Maladaptation of inherited nature to culture:** Ogburn mentioned another cause of social disorganization is the lack of adaptation or Maladaptation of man's inherited nature to the environment of group, culture and surroundings.

G.R. Madan has scheduled a few factors responsible for social disorganization:

- Psychological factors
- Cultural lag
- Physical or geographic factors
- Biological factors, like population explosion
- Ecological factor: Social disorganization is related to environment
- Social problems leading to social disorganization
- Degeneration of values
- Disintegration and confusion of roles
- Conflict of goals and means
- Decline of social control
- Extreme divisions of labour
- Disruptive social change
- Political subservience

Conclusion: In actual fact, there is no society completely or systematically organised. All societies are changing rapidly accumulating numerous cultural lags or breaks at every point in day-to-day life.

Or

5. Discuss any one social problem in detail.

Social problems are the conditions leads to threatening effect on the well-being of society. Social problems are situations or conditions which are regarded by society as threats to its established ways or to its well-being and therefore, needing to be eliminated, eradicated or alleviated. These situations are deplored by many people within the society; they are having the symptoms of disturbances or social maladjustment.

Major social problems are:

- Poverty
- Housing
- Food supplies
- Illiteracy
- Prostitution
- Dowry
- Child labor
- Child abuse
- Delinquency
- Crime
- Substance abuse
- HIV/AIDS

Poverty

Poverty is the most serious problem of rural people in India. There are two types of poverty, namely;

- **Abject poverty:** Abject poverty is a condition in which a person has nothing to eat, to put on or no proper housing.
- **Relative poverty:** Relative poverty means that compared with others in a particular society, a person is lacking certain things.

Causes of Poverty

Some of the important causes of poverty are as follows:

- **Landlessness:** Land is the chief means of production for a rural people. A good percentage of rural people in India do not acquire any land, they are called landless agriculturalists. They work as agricultural labor and are engaged in some other non-agriculture occupations.
- **Ill health:** Chronic diseases such as tuberculosis, asthma and other diseases make the rural people weak and physically unable to work properly. Still no proper facility of medical treatment in most of the villages is available; even people are not aware of proper treatment method.
- **Illiteracy and ignorance:** Illiteracy as well as ignorance make the rural people lead a life full of superstitions and inefficiency. An illiterate and uneducated people can be exploited easily by others, including the moneylenders, government officials and traders.
- **Extravagancy:** Non-essential items of expenses, like much money is spent on an account of sradhs, festivals, marriage, and pilgrimages.
- **Unhealthy habits:** Bad habits, like alcohol drinking, chewing tobacco and smoking also make the villager poor.

- **Natural calamities:** Natural calamities, like famine, epidemic (virulent disease), flood and earthquake destroy life and property of the rural people, this make them very poor and needy.
- **Over-population:** Birth control methods are not still fully used or utilized in our villages, while most of the educated urban people take to family planning; most of the rural people do not adopt it which results in the rapid increase of the rural population.
- **Unemployment and underemployment:** Agriculture is a seasonal occupation and much time during the year is wasted. There is no work between the time of sowing and harvesting.
- **Exploitation by the influential group:** A poor villager is often exploited by the moneylender; a rich farmer, a middle man, or even government officials.
- **Lack of supporting industries:** Lack of facilities for transportation, poor marketing system and defective social organizations is directly or indirectly responsible for poverty.

Remedial Measures

- Agriculture development
- Development of supporting occupation
- Educational awareness
- Family welfare programs
- Fixing minimum wages
- Better marketing facilities
- Prohibition
- Redistribution of land
- Rural electrification
- Other measures

Conclusion: Nurse plays an important role in controlling social problems. Community health nurses are responsible to make thorough assessment of the community and in identification of social problems. Nurses must be aware of various means of economic growth of family and also responsible for providing social support system of those families.

III. Write Short Notes On (Any Five)

1. Concept of social stratification

The term social stratification is not new; this term is as old as ancient society. Social stratification is a particular form of social inequality or discrimination. All societies arrange their members in terms of superiority, inferiority as well as equality. Social stratification is the allocation of individuals and groups according to various social hierarchies of differing social class, power, status, or prestige.

According to **Talcot Parson**, “Stratification is in its valuational aspect is the ranking of unit in social system in accordance with the standard of the common value system”.

Weber introduced three independent factors that form his theory of stratification hierarchy, which are; class, status, and power.

The Indian Caste system provides an example of stratification system. The society in which divisions of social classes exist is known as a stratified society.

Functionalists and conflict sociologists offer contrasting explanations for the existence and necessity of social stratification. Regarding the origin of stratification many views have been given by different

sociologists as discussed below;

- According to Davis, social stratification has come into continuation being due to the functional necessity of the social system. Davis and Moore disagree about the fact that stratification is universal and that social inequality is necessary so that people will be motivated to fill functionally important positions.
- Professor Sorokin attributed social stratification mainly to inherited difference due to environmental conditions.

Conclusion: Stratification is everywhere; all societies maintain some form or figure of social inequality. Social stratification refers to a society's categorization of its people into groups based on socioeconomic factors such as wealth, income, race, education, ethnicity, gender, occupation, social status or derived power may be social as well as political.

2. Agencies of socialization

According to **Ogburn** "Socialization is the process by which the individual learns to conform to the group norms".

Socialization makes the child a useful member of a society. The socialization occurs by two sources;

1. First source includes those who have authority over him. For example, parents, teachers, elderly person, and others.
2. Second source includes who are equal in authority for example, friends, playgroups, fellow on job or in club.

Agencies of socialization are:

- **Family:** The family members are closely related to the child. They are the first one, who socialize the child; the child learns languages, speech, and gesture; his first lesson of cooperation, tolerance, sacrifices, love and affection in the family. The environment of family influences the growth of child. In disturbed or broken family, the child learns bad habits and good habits in a good family.
- **School:** Functionalists point out that schools, as agents of socialization, fulfil the function of teaching children the values and customs of the larger society.
- **Playmates:** The child acquires something from his friends which he cannot acquire from parents. He learns cooperation, morality, fashion, etc., which are important from social perspectives.
- **The religion:** In every religion, religious practices are performed or carried out on occasions. These religious activities continue to mold our belief and way of life.
- **Occupation/workplace:** Learning to behave appropriately within occupation is a fundamental or basic aspect of human socialization. While working, the individual enters into relations of cooperation, involving specialization of tasks and at the same time learns the nature or character of class divisions.
- **The state:** State makes law for people and lay down to mold the behavior of people. If anyone fails to adjust his behavior in accordance to the law of the state, then punishment is given to mold his behavior.
- **Political parties:** Political parties attempt to seize political power and maintain it. They try to win the support of the members of the society on the basis of a socio-economic policy and program. In the process, they disseminate political values and norms and socialize the citizen. The political parties socialize the citizen for stability, strength and change of political system.
- **Mass media:** The mass media of communication, particularly television, or nowadays social media play an important role in the process of socialization. The mass media of communication transmit

and exchange information, and messages which influence the personality of an individual to a great extent.

Conclusion: Socialization is the process through which people are taught to be a proficient member of a society. It describes the ways and means that people come to understand societal norms and expectations, to accept society's beliefs, and to be aware of societal values.

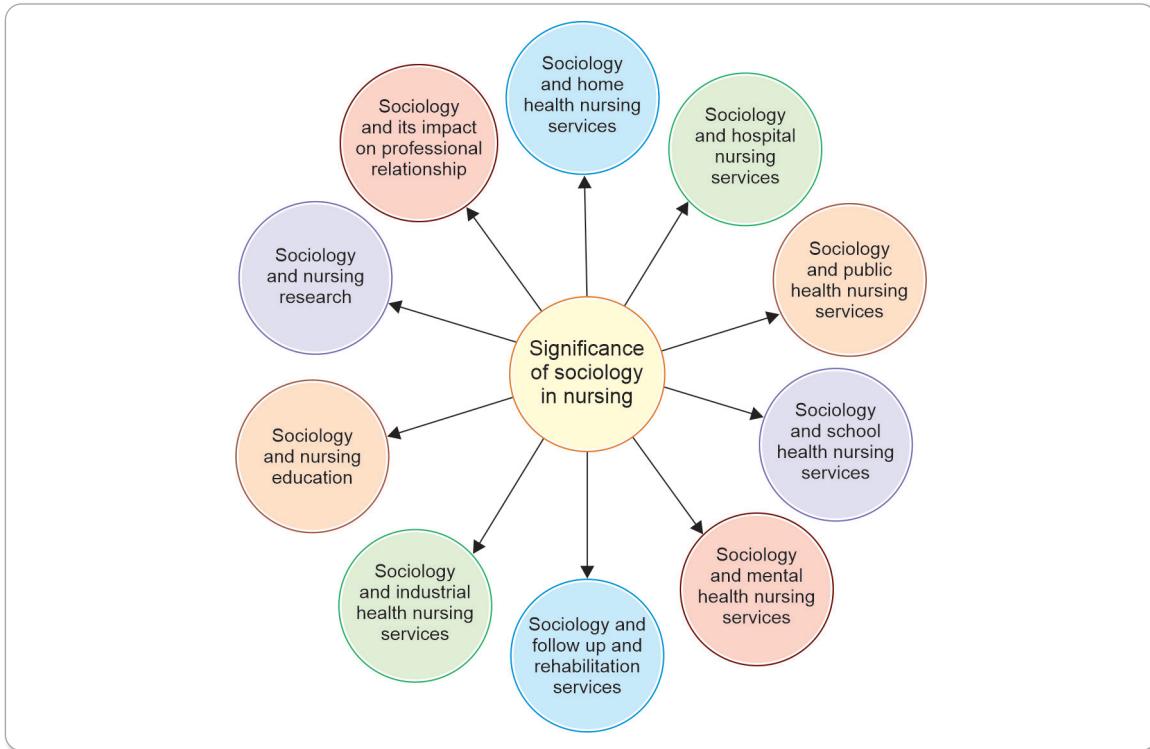
3. Significance of sociology in nursing

According to **Gidding and Gidding**, "Sociology is the scientific study of society".

The study of sociology helps nurses recognize the psycho-social problems of patients, which help in improving the quality of treatment. Nurse will act as an effective person between the patient and health team members. The knowledge of sociology helps the nurse to identify and analyze different social situations which are responsible for the incidence and prevalence of morbidity and mortality conditions of the individuals.

Significance of sociology in nursing are:

- **Sociology and home health nursing services:** Sociology helps us to understand human behavior, interpersonal relationship and social interactions in context of family, community and society. A nurse who understands social dimensions of home and family environment can render effective health care at home. For example, if a nurse advises to antenatal women about diet and if she is aware about cultural practices related to diet and antenatal status she can customize her nursing care plan.
- **Sociology and hospital nursing services:** Hospital is an integral institute of any society. An efficient nurse must collaborate with all the components of sociology in her services to patient and for effective interpersonal relationship.
- **Sociology and public health nursing services:** Public health nurses can improve health seeking behavior of community. The study of sociology helps the nurses to improve the quality of family welfare programs and the community health services with the government.
- **Sociology and school health nursing services:** School is the elementary institution of socialization. Children learn values, custom and tradition from their teachers and peers. If a school health nurse applies principles of socialization; this will enhance psychosocial development of children.
- **Sociology and mental health nursing services:** Role of environment modification in the treatment of mental health is crucial. Better social context promote better mental health. For instance, a nurse doing psychotherapy should also consider social network of the patient and give equal importance to social relationships.
- **Sociology and follow up and rehabilitation services:** Positive sociological environment is the key for effective rehabilitation services. The patient suffering from permanent disabilities; in this very deep understanding of human behavior is very essential. The sociology as well as psychology is very useful in handling such situations.
- **Sociology and industrial health nursing services:** Nurses who work in factory as a health care providers are mainly responsible for safety and prevention from occupational health hazards, maintenance and promotion of workers health, improvement of working atmosphere.
- **Sociology and nursing education:** Significance of sociological concepts in education is vital. It helps educators and teachers to accept and understand each other's differences and similarities. It dilutes boundaries of caste, class and religion. Knowledge of sociology helps students to adjust with fellow student, patients and co-worker.



- **Sociology and nursing research:** Studying sociology helps nursing student to analyse data and generate theories. It also helps in analysing health conditions of people and bringing about changes and innovation in health care based on research.
- **Sociology and its impact on professional relationship:** Effective professional relationship is the core of any organization. Sociology not only facilitates understanding of self. It also guides social networking but helps to understand the behavior pattern of others.

The horizon of sociology is expanding and the possibilities are endless. Gradually, it will cover man's entire life. Thus, sociology helps nurses in:

- Understanding human behavior
- Maintaining continuity of patient care
- Providing evidenced based health care
- Providing quality care through holistic approach
- Cultural value identification and clarification
- Enhancing health promotion activities in community
- Preventive and remedial approach in all levels of disease prevention
- Analyzing social situations
- Professional development and career advancement
- Effective collaboration with other health care agencies

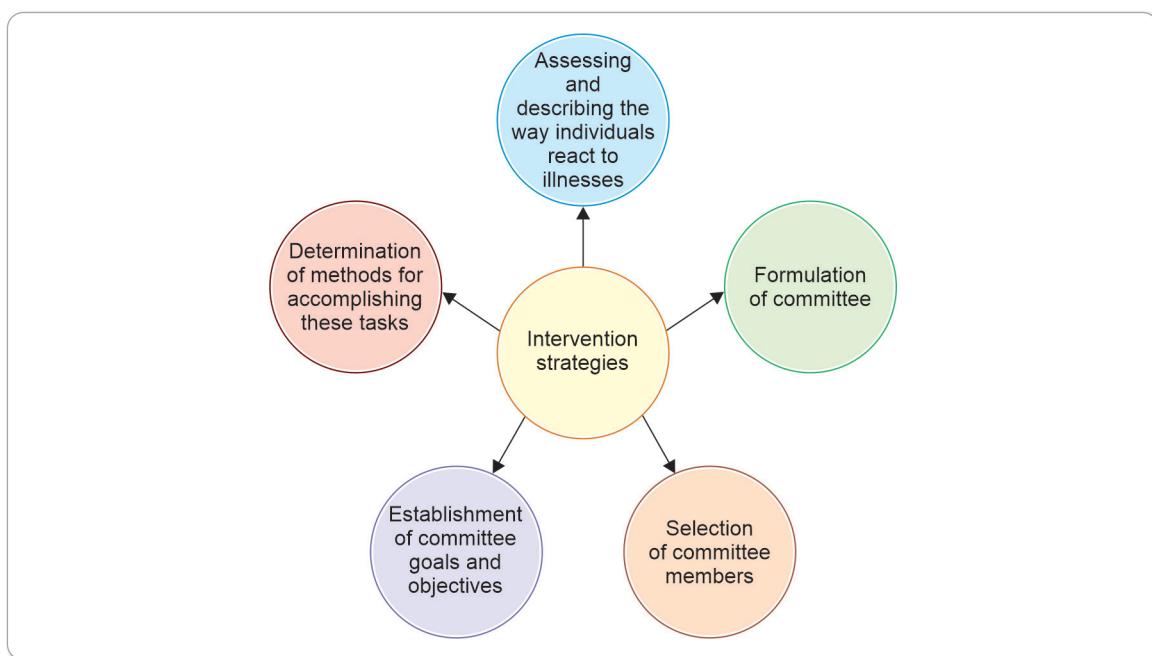
Conclusion: The study of sociology is extremely useful to all, more especially in medical and nursing and the field of social welfare. Preventive services and promotion of health are also important aspect of nursing. To be an effective agent of health promotion, knowledge of community and facilities and resources available therein are essential. Sociology, which is called the science of human society, can play an important role in the understanding of community.

4. Sociological strategies for developing services for the abused

Health care in India is a complicated structure of social roles, processes, and communication, involving equally for patients and for professionals. Understanding the social dimensions of the health care practices can assist health professionals in providing better care to their patients. Effective prevention strategies focus on modifying policies, practices, training, guidelines, and societal norms to create safe, stable, harmless, nurturing relationships and healthy living environments.

All health care providers and social workers have a role in preventing abuse, health care providers must possess special characteristics and skills, particularly those who provide care to children or dependent adults in facilities, health care agencies and health programs.

Intervention Strategies



- **Assessing and describing the way individuals react to illnesses:** In order to anticipate how they will be defined from the viewpoint of their social and cultural group within that society. Determining client's thinking pattern and cognitive abilities is essential in assessing current abilities to cope with the present situation.
- **Formulation of committee:** It is a joint effort of health care team members. Partnership among community, health care, legal and financial organizations is also important.
- **Selection of committee members:** Members may be selected require specific skills and trainings and possess effective decision-making and supervision abilities for social work.
- **Establishment of committee goals and objectives:** Effective crisis intervention must follow ethical principles which ensure that clients are not placed in further harm, their decisions and opinions are respected throughout the process and the intervention upholds a right-based approach.
- **Determination of methods for accomplishing these tasks:** Three major clinical strategies were in use for accomplishing tasks;

1. **Provision of information about social structure and its consequences:** Information about social structure enabling individuals and groups to use knowledge of social structure to develop more effective plans for group action.
2. **Statistics about social structure:** Use of sociological principles and data to make people aware of aspects of the social situation of which they had previously been not aware of.
3. **Involvement of members:** Involvement of the individuals and group members in the planning process, to maximize the likelihood that they will have an investment in the outcomes.

Developing Services for the Abused

- Strengthen economic supports to families
 - Strengthening household financial security
 - Family-friendly work policies
- Change social norms to support parents and positive as well as optimistic parenting
 - Arrange public engagement and education campaigns
 - Legislative approaches to reduce corporal punishment
- Provide excellent quality care and education early in life
 - Preschool enrichment with family engagement
 - Improving quality of child care through licensing, authorization and accreditation
- Enhance parenting skills to promote strong, healthy child development
 - Early childhood home visitation
 - Develop parenting skill proficiency and family relationship approaches
- Intervene to lessen troubles, harms and prevent future risk
 - Enhanced primary care
 - Behavioral parent training programs
 - Treatment to lessen or reduce harms of abuse and neglect exposure
 - Treatment to prevent problematic behavior and later involvement in violence

Conclusion: Early identification is necessary to stop the progress of the worst situation in future. Increase public awareness regarding strategies that support the development of safe, stable, and nurturing relationships between parents or caregivers and their children. This is important means in preventing development of violent behavior in children. Work with the local area agencies in implementation of public awareness campaigns.

5. Difference between primary group and secondary group

Primary group: The primary group is a small group in which the members live together with close primary contact.

According to **C.H. Cooley**, “By primary groups means those characterized by intimate face to face association and cooperation called primary groups; they are primary, in several senses, but chiefly in that they are fundamental in framing the social nature and ideal, of the individual”. Such groups in Cooley’s phrase are “the nursery of human nature”.

Secondary group: Secondary groups are relatively large and huge in size.

According to **C.H. Cooley**, “Secondary groups are wholly lacking in intimacy of association and usually in most of the other primary and quasi-primary characteristics”.



The individual belongs to number of social groups to fulfil his social functions. The distinction between primary and secondary groups is not always clear-cut. There are some significant points discussed which will help us for easy understanding about primary and secondary groups.

Significant Differences between Primary Group and Secondary Group

Primary group	Secondary group
• Small in size	• Large in size
• Limited in a small area	• Spread in extensive area
• Durable in nature, relatively long period of interaction	• Temporary in nature, relatively short duration
• Close, face to face, direct, intimate and personal relationships	• Distant and formal relationships
• Direct cooperation, friendly	• Indirect cooperation, more formal and impersonal
• Inborn membership	• Membership due to some specific purpose or goals
• Involuntary membership	• Voluntary membership
• Status due to inheritance	• Status depends upon role
• Spontaneous and natural relation	• Impersonal or artificial relation
• Primary groups are as old as human society itself	• Relatively new concern
• Made of mostly blood relatives	• Group members other than blood relatives
• Universal	• Not universal
• Mutual cooperation	• Competition
• Deep 'we-feeling' among the members	• No 'we-feeling' united with some specific goals
• Intrinsic valuation of the persons and relationships	• Extrinsic valuation of the persons and relationships
• Some emotional depth in relationships	• Relationship generally superficial
• The whole personality of the individual involved in relationship	• Only limited aspects of personality of the individual involved in relationship
• Stable and durable relationships	• Unstable relationships; duration according to accomplishment of goals

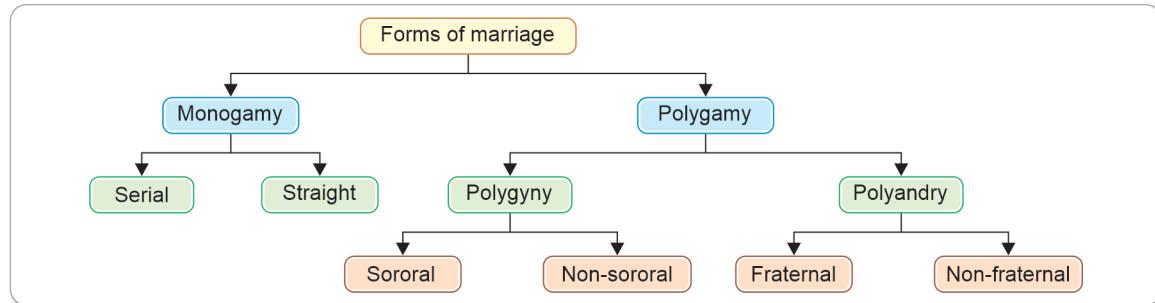
Conclusion: Society is a web of social relationships. Relationships exist between individuals, between groups and between nations. By virtue of nature human beings need multiple people to share thoughts, feelings and ideas. Human beings cannot survive in vacuum.

6. Classification of forms of marriage

According to **Gillin and Gillin**, "Marriage is a socially approved way of establishing a family of procreation".

In general, there are two forms of marriage; first, civil marriage or legislative marriages and second, religious marriage or traditional marriage. Typically marriages take up a combination of both; religious marriages must often be licensed and recognized by the state, and conversely civil marriages, while not sanctioned under religious law, are nevertheless respected.

Various forms of marriages are based on number of wives or husband a person having.



- **Monogamy:** It is a form of marriage in which one man marries one woman. This is most popular form of marriage. It is the most common form of marriage throughout the world.

Monogamy is additional classified in two other types—Serial monogamy and Straight monogamy.

1. **Serial monogamy:** In this type a man can marry again only after the death of his first wife or after a divorce but he is not permitted to marry more than one wife and left overs monogamous throughout his entire life.
2. **Straight monogamy:** In this case remarriage is not allowed for either of the couple even one of them is death or has divorced.

Monogamy is considered an ideal marriage throughout the world.

- **Polygamy:** It is a form of marriage where one man marries more than one woman at a given time. In India, various religious and tribal community follow this form of marriage. It is further divided into two types: Polygyny and Polyandry
- **Polygyny:** It is a form of marriage in which men have more than one wife.
 - **Sororal polygyny:** It is a type of marriage where wives are sisters.
 - **Non-sororal polygyny:** It is a type of marriage where wives are not related to each other.
- **Polyandry:** It is a form of marriage in which women have more than one husband.
 - Fraternal polyandry: In this type of marriage when several brothers share the same wife.
 - Non-fraternal polyandry: In this type of marriage wife some time lives with each husband and at last decides to live with one of them but other left husband has no right to claim over her.

Marriages Based on One's Status

- **Isogamy:** It means marriage takes place between the individuals of two equal social status families.
- **Anisogamy:** This type of marriage is just opposite to Isogamy.

Marriages Based on Rule of Preferences or Priority

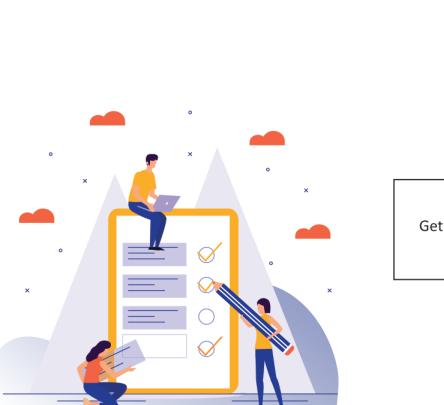
- **Cross-cousin marriage:** Cross-cousin marriage takes place when a person is married to its paternal uncle's daughter or son or with the paternal aunt's son or daughter.
- **Parallel cousin marriage:** The parallel cousin marriage takes place between the children of either two sisters or two brothers.
- **Levirate marriage:** Levirate marriage is a type of marriage in this, the woman marries her husband's brother after his death.
- **Sororate:** In Sororate type of marriage, the man marries his wife's sister after her death or some cases even if she is alive.



Essentials of Applied Sociology for BSc Nursing Students

Civil marriages: Civil marriages are contracted under State laws, which set out the conditions that must be met for a marriage to be official as well as valid. Civil marriages also called statutory marriages, constitutional marriages or legislative marriages.

Conclusion: Marriage is found in all societies. Depending on cultural differences, marriage can require religious, traditional, ceremonial, as well as civil approval.



346

My Exam Centre Read & Learn



Solved Papers

Get Question bank covering the complete subject in the form of Subjective exercises and Extra-edge exercises with their solution

Unsolved Papers

Explore the pool of Unsolved Previous Year Exam Papers of top Universities



Nursing Next Live

The Next Level of Nursing Education

CBS Phygital Books >

Essentials of Applied Sociology > My Exam Centre



Index

Refer **f**'for figure and **t**'for table respectively.

A

- Abject poverty 194, 250
- Abstract 42, 49
- Accommodation 30, 64
- Acculturation 194
- Acquired
 - immunodeficiency syndrome 284
- Active participation
 - in social welfare programs 299
- Acts and laws related
 - to tribal community 105
- Actual changes
 - taking place in villages 94
- Adoption 140
- Adult socialization 72
- Affection and companionship 146, 218
- Agencies of
 - social control 232
 - socialization 76
- Age-specific offenders 276
- Agrarian societies 30
- Alcoholism 247
- Anisogamy 140
- Annapurna Scheme 305
- Anomie 2
- Anthony Giddens 142
- Anticipatory socialization 72
- Applied sociology 2, 312
- Arbitrator or Judgement stage 73
- Arnold Toynbee's 86
- Ascribed
 - social status 170
 - status 30
- Assimilation 30, 65

- Association 194
- Authorized status 203

B

- Basic concept of society 40
- Belief system 194
- Belittling 114
- Beneficiaries 273
- Blended family 140

C

- Capitalism 170
- Case study 312
- Causes of
 - child
 - abuse 271
 - labor 267
 - crime 279
 - dowry 263
 - family disorganization 248, 249
 - illiteracy 256
 - individual disorganization 247
 - modernization 131
 - poverty 250
 - prostitution 258
 - social disorganization 243
 - substance abuse 284
 - urban problems 99
- Central Adoption Resource Agency (CARA) 302
- Central Social Welfare Board 205, 272
- Characteristics of
 - a primary group 58
 - association 47
 - community 44, 44f

- family 142
- Indian tribes 103
- institutions 49
- modernization 131
- mores 229
- norms 238
- nuclear family 150
- religion 221
- secondary group 59
- social groups 54, 54*f*
- socialization 70
- social system 208
- society 41
- voluntary associations 203
- Charles Horton Cooley 6
- Child
 - labor 266
 - laborer 194
 - labor in
 - organized sector 267
 - unorganized sector 266
 - welfare 272, 299
 - agencies 272
 - programs 300
 - workers
 - as domestic servants 269
 - mostly belong to the landless families 269
- Civilization 114, 128
- Civil marriages 140, 156
- Classification of
 - norms 237
 - social group 56
 - tribes 104
- Class system 170
- Client system 312
- Clinical
 - sociologists 312
 - sociology 22, 312
- Cohabitation 140, 151
- Common ends 58
- Community
 - assessment 298
 - development project and planning 91
- disorganization 195, 249
- sentiments 44
- Companionship 157
- Competition 66
- Components of culture 127
- Concept of
 - association 46
 - community 42
 - family 141
 - institutions 48
 - marriage 153
 - race 187
 - rural community 88
 - social
 - change 77
 - control 224
 - disorganization 242
 - stratification 171
 - system 207
 - tribe 102
- Concrete operations stage 74
- Conflict 67
 - aspects of personality 248
 - of goals and means 245
 - perspectives 125*t*
 - theory 85
- Conjugal family 140
- Consanguine family 140
- Consanguineous marriage 189
- Control measures 253
- Cooperation 63
- Counter culture 114
- COVID-19 286
- Crescive institutions 50
- Criminal sociology 20
- Crisis 323
- Crisis intervention 312, 323
 - steps 323
- Criticism 38, 39
- Cross-cousin marriage 140, 156
- Crowding 98
- Cultural
 - and educational rights 294
 - area 114
 - diversity 114, 124
 - evolutionism 114, 122

factors 83
influences on health and diseases 133
lag 117, 244
objects of functional value 49
relativism 114, 125
shock 114
traits 114
universals 114, 116
values 114, 121
Culture 114
Customs 230
Cyclical theories 86

D

Day care services 272
Definitions
of
association 47
caste 180
child labor 266
city 97
class 183
community 43
crime 278
customs 230
delinquency 276
dowry 262
economic institutions 222
family 142
institutions 48
literacy 256
marginal group 292
marriage 153
modernization 130
mores 229, 239
political system as an institution 222
primary group 57
prostitution 257
recreational institutions 220
rural community 88
secondary group 59
social
change 77
control 225
disorganization 243

group 53
organization 198
process 61
role 214
system 208
socialization 70
society 40
status 212
tribe 102
values 241
voluntary association 202
Deflecting offenders 282
Delinquency 195
Democratic and totalitarian in nature 231
Demography sociology 21
Difference between
primary group and secondary group 60
association and institutions 51
caste and class 184
rural and urban community 101
Diffusion 114, 116
Discovery 114
Discrimination 280
Disjunctive processes 65
Disruptive social change 245
Distributors system 39
Diverse in nature 228
Division of
class system 184
labor 243
work 42
Divorce 140, 162
Domestic violence 162
Dominance of non-agriculture occupation 97
Dominant values 241
Domination 65
Downward social mobility 186
Dowry 140, 162, 262
Drug addiction 279
Duncan Mitchell 198, 230
Durability 58
Durkheim 19
classification 209
mechanical and organic solidarity 32
Dysfunction 2

E

Early childhood education 301
 Earnest Jones 198
 Economic
 development 106
 factors 83, 267
 insecurity 290
 institutions 195
 organizations 232, 235
 provision 143
 sociology 21
 Educational
 institutions 234
 sociology 22
 Egalitarian family 140
 Elder abuse 161
 Elements of
 community 43
 culture 120
 organization 199
 social
 process 62
 structure 35^f
 system 211
 child labor 301
 Elliott and Merrill 214
 Emile Durkheim 21
 Emphasis 147^t
 Employ insight 318
 Enacted institutions 50
 Endogamy 140, 180
 Environmental
 changes 94
 factors 279
 Equilibrium 179
 Estate 177
 system 170
 Esteem 170
 Ethnicity 170
 Ethnocentrism 114, 125
 Etiquette 236
 Evolutionary theory 84
 Exogamy 140
 Extended family 140, 150

F

Family 140, 233
 and
 health 162
 kinship 213
 disorganization 195, 248
 matrilocal residence 148
 patrilocal residence 149
 Planning Association of India 206
 sociology 21
 welfare services 151
 Fashion 235
 Features of
 class system 184
 family 143
 Indian caste system 180
 rural community 89
 Female infanticide 264, 296
 Feminist view 2
 Folkways 114, 227
 Food
 habits 188
 supplies 253
 Formalistic School of Thought 18
 Formality 59
 Formal
 means of social control 232
 norms 121
 organizations 200, 201^t
 social control 195, 227
 ways of social control 48
 Forms of marriage 154
 Free legal aids 305
 Functionalist
 perspectives 125^t
 theory 84
 Functions of
 education in modern times 219
 family 145
 institutions 50
 marriage 156
 political organizations 223
 recreational institutions 220
 values 241
 voluntary associations 204



Index

G

Gemeinschaft 30, 33^t
 General sociology 2
 Geographical
 environment 126
 location of tribes 104
 Gesellschaft 31, 33^t
 Gillin and Gillin 228
 Gisbert 174
 Globalization 115, 116
 Gordon Allport 21
 Government 223
 measures to prevent child labor 269
 Govind Sadashiv Ghurye 7
 Group
 concern 229
 interaction 284
 norms 55

H

Handicapped 291
 Harold Laski 202
 Health
 check-up 275
 education 298
 problems 290
 problems due to shortage of food 255
 Hereditary 180
 Hierarchy 180
 Hind Kusht Nivarjan Sangh 206
 Historical
 accidents 126
 perspective of
 clinical sociology 313
 sociology 5
 sociology 20
 Horizontal mobility 186
 Horticultural societies 31
 Hospital nursing services 24
 Humanistic 318

I

Idealistic belief 248
 Ideological cast 318

Illiteracy 255
 Imitation 73
 Immunization 275
 Imperial Gazetteer of India 102
 Impersonality 59
 Importance of
 folkways 228
 interrelationship of institutions 217
 marriage 158
 mores 229
 socialization 70
 social norms 238
 sociology 13
 in nursing 15
 Indebtedness 264
 Indian Council of Child Welfare (ICCW) 205
 Indira Gandhi Matriita Sahyog Yojana (IGMSY) 302
 Indira Gandhi National Old Age
 Pension Scheme (IGNOAPS) 304
 Indirect cooperation 60
 Individualization 98, 244
 Industrial
 societies 34
 sociology 21
 Informal
 means of social control 228, 229, 232
 norms 115, 121
 organizations 200, 201^t
 social control 196, 227
 Information, education & communication (IEC) 291
 In-group and out-group 60
 Innovation 115, 116
 Integrated
 child
 development services 272
 Protection Scheme (ICPS) 301
 Program for Street Children 301
 Interventions 275
 Intervention strategies 321^f
 Intra-role conflict 215
 Intrinsic and extrinsic values 242
 Invention 115
 Isogamy 140
 Isolation 65

J

- James Frazer 221
- Jane Addams 6
- Jean
 - Jacques Rousseau 38
 - Piaget 74
- John Locke 38
- Johnson 221
- Joint family 140, 150
- Judiciary 232
- Juridical sociology 20
- Juvenile
 - delinquency 248, 276
 - delinquents 276

K

- Karl Mannheim 35
- Karl Marx 85, 178
- Kasturba Gandhi
 - Balika Vidyalaya 301
 - Memorial Trust 272
- Kasturba Memorial Trust 206
- Kimball Young 123
- Kingsley Davis 49, 142, 147, 214
- Kishori Shakti Yojana (KSY) 301
- Kohlberg's moral reasoning 240

L

- Lack of
 - exactness 17
 - experimentation 17
 - objectivity 17
- Landlessness 250
- Language 120
- Latent functions 8
- Law dictionary 230
- Legislation 261
- Legislative process 196, 232
- Leopold von Wiese 18
- Level of analysis emphasized 9t
- Levirate marriage 140, 156
- Likeness 41
- Lineage 140
- Locality 43, 44

- Lord Veberidge 203
- Low status of women 264
- Lundeberg 43, 228

M

- Major
 - social problems 250
 - symptoms of aids 285
 - types of stratification 176
- Malinowski 221
- Marginalized groups 196
- Marriages 153
- Marxian theory of social change 86
- Material
 - aspect of culture 122
 - culture 115
- Mating 143
- Matriarchy family 141
- Max Weber 178
- Meaning of
 - association 46
 - community 43
 - culture 117
 - family 142
 - institutions 48
 - modernization 130
 - recreational institutions 220
 - social
 - control 224
 - disorganization 242
 - groups 53
 - mobility 185
 - organization 197
 - process 61
 - stratification 172
 - system 208
 - socialization 69
 - society 40
 - status 212
 - the role 214
 - voluntary associations 202
- Melvin M. Tumin 174
- Mental
 - disorders 279
 - health nursing services 25
- Meritocracy 170, 173

Michal Benton 202
 Microsociology 2, 6
 Mid-day Meal Scheme 301
 Modernization 130
 Monogamy 141, 154
 Moral
 degeneration 259
 sociology 20
 Mores 115, 229
 Morris Ginsberg 49
 Muslim Marriage Act 160
 Mutual awareness 55

N

National
 Commission for Safai Karamcharis 303
 movement 93
 program for
 healthcare of elderly (NPHCE) 291
 the health care of elderly (NPHCE) 305
 Safai Karamcharis Finance & Development Corporation (NSKDFC) 303
 Scheduled Castes Finance & Development Corporation (NSCFDC) 303
 Social Assistance Program (NSAP) 305
 Natural
 catastrophes 244
 science 2
 Nature of
 culture 118
 role 215
 social change 78
 sociology 16f
 Neighborhood 234
 Nimkoff 43
 Non-formal preschool education 274
 Nonmaterial culture 115
 Non-sororal polygyny 155
 Normal behavior 228
 Norman Johnson 203
 Norms 120
 Nuclear family 141, 149
 Nutritional disorders 101

Nutrition
 and health education 275
 Program for Adolescent Girls (NPAG) 301

O

Ogburn 43
 Ogburn and Nimkoff 174, 214
 Open system 170
 Organic
 isolation 68
 social system 210
 Organismic theory of society 39
 Organized crime 281
 Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary 102

P

Parallel cousin marriage 141, 156
 Patriarchy society 141
 Personality development 42, 238
 Peter
 Berger 37
 Leonard 292
 Worsley 70
 Physical
 attributes 213
 health 220
 influence 163
 mobility 89
 or geographic factors 244
 proximity 58
 Placement 147
 Political
 authority 213
 changes 94
 development 106
 parties and leaders 93
 sociology 22
 sources 233
 subservience 245
 system 196
 Pollution 99
 Polygamy 141, 155

Polygyny 141
 Postmodern society 31
 Poverty 279
 Pradhan Mantri
 Adarsh Gram Yojana (PMAGY) 303
 Jan Arogya Yojana 305
 Vaya Vandana Scheme 304
 Preindustrial
 societies 34
 society 31
 Preoperational stage 74
 Primary
 group 60t
 socialization 72
 Procreation 145
 Professional crime 280
 Promote cultural harmony 296
 Propaganda 235
 Prophylaxis 261
 Proponents 10t
 Prostitution 196, 247, 257
 Protection 146, 218
 and upbringing 157
 of Children from Sexual Offences Act, 2012 301
 Public
 health nursing services 24
 opinion 234
 Pulse polio immunization program 300

R

Race 170
 Racial
 group 171
 purity 181
 Racism 171
 Rajiv Gandhi Scheme for Empowerment of Adolescent Girls (RGSEAG) 303
 Ralf Dahrendorf 86
 Rashtriya Vayoshri Yojana 305
 Raymond W. Murray 174
 Recreational institutions 219
 Regional diseases 100
 Regional health services 101
 Regionalism 280
 Registration process Special Marriage Act 161

Regulating system 39
 Rehabilitation
 of prostitutes 261
 services 25
 Rehabilitative care 298
 Relative poverty 250
 Religion 234
 and customs 180
 Religious
 and spiritual influence 163
 practices 189
 sociology 20
 Remedial measures 251
 Repeat offenders 276
 Reproduction 146, 147, 218
 Requisites of stratification 176
 Research 324
 Re-socialization 73
 Reuter and Hart 228
 Reverse Mortgage Scheme 305
 Rites 236
 Robert Merton 6
 Rural
 community 88, 101t
 sociology 22

S

Sanctions 99, 121t
 Sapir-Whorf hypothesis 120
 Sarva Siksha Abhiyan 300
 Scheduled Castes Development Corporations (SCDCs) 303
 Scope
 of sociology 18f
 Secondary
 functions of family 145
 group 58, 60t
 socialization 72
 Senior Citizens' Welfare Fund 305
 Sensorimotor stage 74
 Services 273
 Sex offenders 247
 Significance
 of sociology in nursing 23f
 Single-parent family 141



Index

- Slavery 171, 177
Social
 adjustment or acceptance 98
 administration 196, 232
 anthropology 12^t
 characteristics of marriage 154
 contract theory 38
 control 224
 is a lifelong process 225
 customs related to marriage 158
 development 105
 disorganization 197
 heritage 231
 inequality 171
 institutions 36
 isolation 68
 mobility 185
 networks 31, 36
 norms 236
 norms normally internalized by the people 238
 planning 15
 practice 280
 problems leading to social disorganization 245
 processes 61
 psychology 21
 roles 36, 216
 stratification 171
 structure 31
 welfare 239
 planning in India 271
 workers 313
Socialization 31, 69, 115, 146, 147, 218
Society 40
Sociocultural 31, 33, 179
Socio-economical influence 164
Sociology 12^t
 and
 economics 12
 history 12
 political science 12
 social anthropology 11
 as a profession 15
 versus psychology 12
Sororal polygyny 155
Sororate 141, 156
Spatial isolation 68
Spengler 86
Stability 44, 47
State 223, 233
Statuses 216
Stratification 171
Stree Shakti Puraskar Yojana 303
Subculture 115
Subfields of sociology 21
Substance abuse 283
Suicide 247
Supplementary
 nutrition 274
 with each other 37
Sustaining system 39
Suzanne Keller 237
System of
 authority 41
 control 41
 cooperation 42
 interdependence 42
 relationships 41
 stratification 173
-
- T
- Talcott Parsons 8, 35, 210
Target
 hardening 282
 removal 282
Technology 115, 116
The
 Balika Samriddhi Yojana 301
 Christian Marriage Act 160
 Dowry Prohibition Act 264
 Hindu Marriage Act, 1955 160
 Indian Red Cross Society 272
 modern family 151
 National Rural Health Mission 301
 non-material aspect 122
Thomas Hobbes 38
Tonnies 18
Tonnies Gemeinschaft and Gesellschaft 32
Trafficking 296
Transcultural society 115

Tribal

- community 101
- Research Institutes 304

Types of

- crime 280
- family or family forms 148
- institutions 50
- norms 121
- personal disorganization 247
- social
 - disorganization 246
 - mobility 185
 - organizations 200
 - processes 62
 - system 210^f
 - values 241
- socialization 71

U

- Ujjawala 303
- Unconscious behavior 228, 229
- Unfair circumstances 280
- Unique culture 42
- United integrity 181
- Universal 49
 - Declaration of Human Right (UDHR) 286
- Universality 144
- Upportive rural environment 269
- Upward social mobility 186
- Urban
 - community 31, 96, 101^t
 - sociology 22

V

- Values 121
- Variants values 241
- Varishta
 - Mediclaim Policy 305
 - Pension Bima Yojana 305
- Vayoshreshtha Samman 305
- Veridical 17
- Verstehen 2
- Vertical mobility 185
- Vested interest 32, 83
- Victimless crimes 281
- Vierkandt 18
- Village
 - community 32
 - Grain Bank Scheme 304
- Voluntary
 - associations 76, 197, 202
 - membership 47, 60
- Vulnerability 313
- Vulnerable group 197, 287

W

- We-feeling 55
- White-collar and technology-based crime 281
- William
 - F. Ogburn 146
 - Ogburn 81

X

- Xenocentrism 115

Congratulations!!

You have completed the CHAPTER thoroughly, now it's time to assess your knowledge and learn more through *My Phygital Book*

Scan the QR Code to Download the App



Nursing Next Live
The Next Level of Nursing Education
CBS Phygital Books >
Essentials of Applied Sociology >
My Phygital Book



My Phygital Book
Listen, Learn & Practice

Reading is not enough, Now *Listen, Learn & Practice* Every Chapter

Golden Points

Get One Liners of Chapter summary in the PODCAST form

Solved Exercises

Subjective and objective exercises given in book with their solutions to evaluate and assess the complete chapter knowledge

MCQs

Chapter-wise extra MCQs in the form of Practice test to give in-depth concept clarity



Nursing Knowledge Tree

PREPARATION

Selection

तक



UG-Centric Approach of TARGET HIGH™

- Futuristic approach:** Extensive coverage of important topics under each nursing subject to get prepared for your present as well as future career opportunities
- All in One:** All nursing subjects important synopsis and MCQs covered under one compendium making it more beneficial from exam point of view.
- Subject wise/Topic wise synopsis:** All important topics covered with subject wise cum topic wise approach to make your basic concepts clear
- Subject wise/Topic wise MCQs with Rationale:** This section will help you to give your studies an extra edge during examination
- Golden Points:** One-liner on important topics in the form of Golden Points for last-minute revision
- Illustrations and important tables:** Extensive coverage of figures and tables which makes concepts easier to understand

Authors

Muthuvenkatachalam S
Ambili M Venugopal

What the Nursing Undergraduate Students say about "Target High"

Subhadatta Sahoo
Berhampur**A solid foundation for the Undergrads!**

If you are in any year of your college, Target High will be the best for you. Just revise target high 5 times...that will develop your eyesight how to deal with central government exams ☺☺

Saurav Verma
Lucknow**A Nursing success compendium!**

If you are an Undergraduate, Target High will clear your concepts with the futuristic approach of the content. Its Golden key Points & important diagrams of every subjects helped me in my college exams ☺☺

Manish Kumar Saini
Udaipur**Everything that a Undergrad will need!**

In Target High Book, many questions have been given for each topic of each subject with explanations, so that the practice of all the topics becomes good & clear ☺☺

Shobha Kumari
Ranchi**The content will help you create a solid base level!**

Get ready efficiently and effectively with the futuristic approach-filled content of Target High, made for Undergrads! The content of the book is excellent and adequate ☺☺

Anil Kumar Royal
Sikar**This book will prepare you to achieve success in any Nursing Exam!**

To achieve Nursing Success in the competitive exams, UG students need to start preparing from the very beginning and hence the Target High Book will suffice all such requirements ☺☺

Khushboo
Rohtak**Preparation made easy for UNDERGRADS!**

Preparation made easy for UNDERGRADS! As a UG student, I have studied from Target High and it has truly helped me strengthen my foundation with the excellent content made for the Undergrads ☺☺

Now, Get the Nursing Success Compendium TARGET HIGH in your pocket

Read Anytime, Anywhere with TARGET HIGH™ Digital Lite

Amazing Features of
TARGET HIGH
Digital Lite

- Golden Points**
3000+ Golden Points in Podcast Format covering all Subjects
- Assess Yourself**
60+ Subject-wise tests & 20+ Grand Tests focusing on AIIMS NORCET 2022-23
- High Yield Topics**
250+ High Yield Topics (Tables + Images) for quick access

**Add ONs**
100+ Previous Year Papers, 73+ Appendices, Monthly Current Affairs/Recent Updates, 20 Nursing Skill Procedures, and much more**Be in SPOTLIGHT**
Steal the spotlight by sharing your success stories & feedback**Any Doubt Ask AMLI**
Get your TH queries resolved by AMLI... your TH Educator

Scan the QR Code & Get Free Access to Target High Digital Lite for 15 Days

Please note: This offer is applicable only once on the mobile number registered with the Nursing Next Live App.



Essentials of *Applied*

SOCIOLOGY

for BSc Nursing Students

Salient Features

- This textbook has been written as per the Revised INC syllabus
- Important key terms of the respective Units have been covered separately in the beginning
- The subject matter has been thoroughly reviewed by the experts
- Supplemented with Case Studies covering all the applied aspects of Sociology in the clinical practice for real-time understanding
- All the important points are covered in detail as per the need of the students
- Written in a lucid language which helps the students to understand the crux of the matter
- Summary of the Unit has been provided at the end of each Unit for quick glance over the important points
- Probable multiple-choice questions with short and long answer questions are covered at the end of each chapter for self-evaluation

About the Authors

Mamta Verma, MSc (N), PhD (Scholar)(Public Health), is presently working as an Associate Professor at College of Nursing, All India Institute of Medical Sciences (AIIMS) Bhopal, Madhya Pradesh. She earned her graduate degree in nursing from Government College of Nursing, Indore, Madhya Pradesh and Masters of Science degree from Raj Kumari Amrit Kaur College of Nursing Delhi University. She is a PhD (Public Health) from Tata Institute of Social Sciences Mumbai. Due to her passion for social sciences, she obtained Master of Arts degree in Sociology from Barkatullah Vishwavidyalaya, Bhopal Madhya Pradesh. She has been teaching Sociology and sociological concepts interrelations to undergraduate nursing students since a decade. She is fascinated towards Qualitative and Mix Methodology Research. Her core research area includes social contextual influence on health and wellness.



Vandana Pakhide, MSc (N), is presently working as an Associate Professor, Pragyan College of Nursing, Bhopal (Madhya Pradesh). She obtained BSc Nursing degree from Government College of Nursing, Indore, MP. She accomplished Master degree specialization in Medical Surgical Nursing from Barkatullah University, Bhopal (Madhya Pradesh). She achieved Master's degree in Social Science from Doctor Harisingh Gour Vishwavidyalaya Sagar (Madhya Pradesh).



Scan the QR Code to Download the **UPDATED
CBS Nursing
Catalogue 2022-23**



CBS Publishers & Distributors Pvt. Ltd.

4819/XI, Prahlad Street, 24 Ansari Road, Daryaganj, New Delhi 110 002, India

E-mail: feedback@cbspd.com, Website: www.cbspd.com

New Delhi | Bengaluru | Chennai | Kochi | Kolkata | Lucknow | Mumbai | Pune

Hyderabad | Nagpur | Patna | Vijayawada